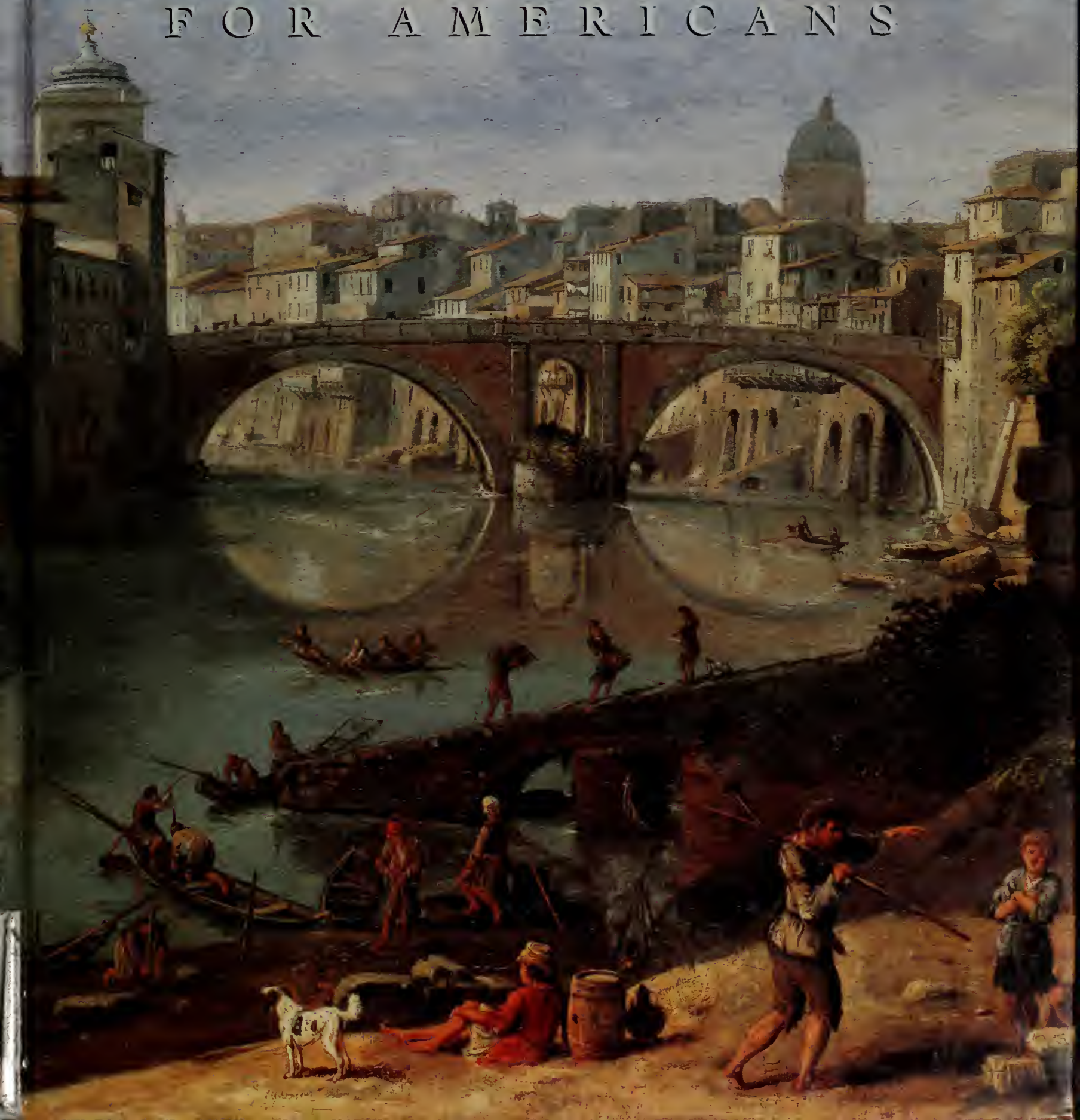


Latin

FOR AMERICANS

THIRD
BOOK



THIS BOOK IS THE PROPERTY OF:

STATE _____
 PROVINCE _____
 COUNTY _____
 PARISH _____
 SCHOOL DISTRICT _____
 OTHER _____

Book No. _____

Enter information
 in spaces
 to the left as
 instructed

ISSUED TO	Year Used	CONDITION	
		ISSUED	RETURNED
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			

PUPILS to whom this textbook is issued must not write on any page or mark any part of it in any way, consumable textbooks excepted.

1. Teachers should see that the pupil's name is clearly written in ink in the spaces above in every book issued.
2. The following terms should be used in recording the condition of the book: New; Good; Fair; Poor; Bad.



THIRD BOOK

Latin
FOR AMERICANS







THIRD BOOK

Latin

FOR AMERICANS

B. L. Ullman
Albert I. Suskin



**Glencoe
McGraw-Hill**

New York, New York

Columbus, Ohio

Woodland Hills, California

Peoria, Illinois

Front cover:

Gaspar Adriaens van Wittel, *The Tiber Island in Rome*, 1685,
Kunsthistorisches Museum, Vienna, Austria. Photobusiness—ARTOTHEK

The city of Rome has fascinated both its citizens and tourists for centuries. The city itself, spread out on seven hills, with its ancient and modern bridges, churches, palaces, and public buildings, has been the subject of painters for well over five hundred years. One of the most popular subjects is the Tiber, which flows through the most ancient part of the city.

The painting on the cover shows a part of the river that passes near the Isola Tiberiana (Tiber Island—left side of the cover), on which was built the Temple of Aesculapius, the Roman god of medicine. On this site now stands the medieval church of St. Bartholomew, the Christian patron of medicine. In the background is one of the oldest bridges in Rome, the Ponte Cestio, and beyond that a view of the Renaissance city with the Basilica of St. Peter. The painting evokes fifteen hundred years of Roman history and memories, and shows how the combination of “ancient” and “modern” which is seen throughout the city still continues to inspire visitors to Rome.

Title page:

PHOTRI/J. A. Cash

The Roman Forum with the Sacred Way running through the middle. The Sacred Way was the main processional street in the Forum. It ran from the Arch of Titus through the Forum and up to the Temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill. The main building in the photo is the Temple of Antoninus and Faustina reconstructed as a church on the Via Sacra. In the upper left of the photo is the Basilica Aemilia. In the foreground is the garden of the Vestal Virgins.

Glencoe/McGraw-Hill



A Division of The McGraw-Hill Companies

Copyright © 1997 by Glencoe/McGraw-Hill. All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the United States Copyright Act, no part of this publication may be reproduced or distributed in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without prior written permission from the publisher.

Send all inquiries to:
Glencoe/McGraw-Hill
21600 Oxnard Street
Woodland Hills, CA 91367

ISBN 0-02-640914-3 (Student Text)

Printed in the United States of America

5 6 7 8 9 10 027 02 01

Contents

Introduction	x
--------------	---

Unit I—Pliny's Letters

Pliny's Life	2
April Showers Bring Verse Flowers (I, 13)	2
A Perfect Wife (IV, 19)	5
Oratorical Twins (VII, 20)	7
Working Hours in Vacation (IX, 36)	10
Fame (IX, 23)	12
Pliny's Kindness to a Servant (V, 19)	14
Three Strikes and Out for Regulus (II, 20, 1–11)	17
A Home by the Seaside (II, 17, 1–5, 8–9, 11–12, 29)	19
Over Sea and Over Land (X, 17; X, 18)	22
More Carelessness and Waste in Building (X, 39, 1–4, 6; X, 40)	26
Hunting with a Notebook (I, 6)	28
Buying a Home in the Country (I, 24)	28
Why Don't You Write? (III, 17)	30
Neglect of a Great Man's Tomb (VI, 10)	30
I Miss You (VII, 5)	31
Is the Praise of Friends a Fault? (VII, 28)	31
Congratulations (X, 1)	32
Fire Department Needed (X, 33; X, 34)	32
Roman Efficiency: A Water Supply (X, 90; X, 91)	33
What Shall We Do About the Christians? (X, 96; X, 97)	34

Unit II—Short Selections from Aulus Gellius

Aulus Gellius	38
A Filibuster in the Senate (IV, 10)	38
Scipiō, a Man Beyond Reproach (IV, 18)	40
A Promise Must Be Kept (VI, 18, 1–10)	41
Crow Eats Man (IX, 11)	44
Reconciliation, a Sign of Greatness (XII, 8)	46
How to Give a Dinner Party (XIII, 11, 1–5)	48
Which Is Right? (XIV, 5)	50
Newfangled Education Not Wanted (XV, 11)	52
Secret Writing (XVII, 9, 1–5, 16–17)	54
Saturnalia Dinner Away from Home (XVIII, 2, 1–5, 9–10, 12, 15–16)	55
Take It or Leave It (I, 19)	58
The Tale of a Snake (VII, 3)	58
The First Public Library in Athens (VII, 17)	59
The Ring Finger (X, 10)	59
Boys, Young Men, and Old Men (X, 28)	60
The Etiquette of Swearing (XI, 6)	60
How to Write Plays (XIII, 8)	61
Can You Speak Twenty-Five Languages? (XVII, 17)	61

Unit III—Cicero Against Catiline

Cicero's Life	64
Cicero's Style	66
Catiline's Conspiracy	67
First Oration Against Catiline	68
Catiline's Audacity—68; Why Not Put Catiline to Death?—70; We Know Your Plans, Catiline—72; Failure of the Plot—74; Get Out of Rome, Catiline—75; Catiline's Criminal Career—77; Your Country Begg You to Leave—79; On Your Way, Catiline—80; Catiline Wants Civil War—83; Catiline, The Hardened Criminal—85; Why Don't You Act, Cicero?—86; Watchful Waiting—88; Out with Them All!—90	
The Government of Rome	92
The Ciceronian Sentence	94
Second Oration Against Catiline	95
Catiline Has Left!—96; Conspirators: Class I—96; Classes II and III—97; Classes IV, V, and VI—98	
Third Oration Against Catiline	101
Rome Is Saved—102; Evidence of Treason—103; The Conspirators Under Arrest—104; Testimony in the Senate—105; Confession—108; The Senate Takes Action—109; If Catiline Had Been in Rome—111; The Will of the Gods—112; Jupiter Is Our Savior—113; The Greatest of Bloodless Victories—114; All I Ask Is Gratitude—115; I Need Your Protection—116	
Fourth Oration Against Catiline	119
Don't Worry About Me, Senators—119; The Senate Must Decide—120; Death or Imprisonment?—121; What Might Have Happened—123; It Is Up to You, Senators—124	

Unit IV—Sallust's Catiline (Selections)

Roman Politics	128
Sallust's Life	130
The Superiority of the Mind	130
Catiline's Character	131
Rise and Decline of Rome	132
Catiline Speaks to His Men	134
<i>Cherchez La Femme</i>	136
Catiline and Manlius Speak Up	137
The Scum of the Earth	138
Lentulus and the Allobroges	140
Documents Seized—Caesar Involved?	141
Caesar and Cato	142

Unit V—Cicero for Archias (Entire)

Archias	146
Cicero Is Indebted to Archias	147
A New Style of Speaking	148
Archias Comes to Rome	149
Archias Enrolled as a Roman Citizen	150
The Census Records	151
The Value of Literature	152
Natural Ability and Training	155
Poets Are Sacred	156
No Fame Without Poets	157

Poets Give Immortality	158
The Statesman's Reward Is Immortal Fame	159
Be Kind to the Poet	160

Unit VI—Cicero Against Verres and Antony

Verres and Antony	164
The Second Action Against Verres	164
The Importance of Sicily–164; Verres' "Interest" in Art–166; The House of Heius–167; The Temple of Hercules–168; Ceres and Proserpina–170; A Roman Citizen Is Crucified–171; The Struggles of a <i>Novus Homō</i> –173	
The Second Speech Against Antony	174
Cicero, Caesar, and Pompey–174; I Am Not Afraid of You, Antony–175	

Unit VII—Cicero's Letters

Introducing Cicero's Letters	178
The Campaign for the Consulship	178
It's a Boy! (A. I, 2)	179
The Trial of Clodius (A. I, 16, 1–2, 5, 9–10, 12)	180
Clodius' Threats (A. II, 19, 4–5)	181
On the Way to Exile (A. III, 3)	182
Nothing to Write (F. XIV, 2, 1)	182
The Shows Were Poor (F. VII, 1, 2–3)	183
A Tragedy About Britain? (Q. Fr. II, 16, 4–5)	184
The Best Lawyer In—Samarobriva (F. VII, 16, 3)	184
Trebatius Is No Channel Swimmer (F. VII, 10, 1–3)	186
The Panthers Protest (F. II, 11, 2)	186
Get Well! (F. XVI, 6)	187
Peace or War (A. VIII, 13)	187
Come Back to Rome (A. IX, 6A)	188
Cicero the Peacemaker (A. IX, 11A)	188
Tullia's Illness (F. XIV, 19)	189
Tullia Has Arrived (F. XIV, 11)	189
Have Everything Ready (F. XIV, 20)	189
My Day (F. IX, 20, 3)	190
Only Solitude Brings Comfort (A. XII, 16)	190
Mother-in-Law Trouble and a Boy in College (A. XII, 32)	191
What a Father Likes to Hear (F. XII, 16, 1–2)	192
Young Cicero Puts on the Charm (F. XVI, 21, 1–4, 6–8)	192

Unit VIII—Cicero's Philosophical Works

Introducing Cicero's Philosophical Works	196
Justice (<i>Off.</i> I, 4, 20, 23, 41)	197
Sense of Duty (<i>Off.</i> I, 58)	198
Civic Courage (<i>Off.</i> I, 77–78)	198
Choice of a Career (<i>Off.</i> I, 117–119)	199
Personal Appearance (<i>Off.</i> I, 130)	199
Honorable Careers for Gentlemen (<i>Off.</i> I, 150–151)	200
Knowledge and Courage and Their Value in Society (<i>Off.</i> I, 157–158)	201
Honor Among Thieves (<i>Off.</i> II, 40)	201
The Responsibility of Wealth (<i>Off.</i> II, 54, 60, 61)	202
Cancellation of Debts (<i>Off.</i> II, 84)	204

The Activities of Old Age (<i>Sen.</i> 15, 17–18)	204
A Busy Old Age (<i>Sen.</i> 20, 24, 26)	205
Occupations in Old Age (<i>Sen.</i> 50, 51, 56)	206
Authority, The Reward of Old Age (<i>Sen.</i> 62–64)	206
The Meaning of Friendship (<i>Am.</i> 20, 22)	207
The Ultimate in Friendship (<i>Am.</i> 24)	208
The Friendship of Laelius and Scīpiō (<i>Am.</i> 102–104)	208

Unit IX—Two Thousand Years of Latin

Plautus	212
Who Is Who? (<i>Menaechmī</i> , 707–752)	212
Catullus	214
A Dinner Invitation (13)	214
Writ in Water (70)	214
Mixed Feelings (85)	215
At His Brother's Tomb (101)	215
Livy (XXI)	215
Hannibal (I, II, III)	216
Hannibal's Virtues and Vices (IV)	217
Horace	218
<i>Integer Vītae</i> (<i>Od.</i> I, 22)	218
The City Mouse and His Country Cousin (<i>Sat.</i> II, 6, 80–117)	219
Sulpicia	220
Phaedrus	222
<i>Mūlī Duo et Rapōrēs</i> (Two Mules and Thieves) (II, 7)	222
<i>Lupus ad Canem</i> (The Wolf to the Dog) (III, 7)	222
<i>Soror et Frāter</i> (Sister and Brother) (III, 8)	223
<i>Dē Vitiīs Hominum</i> (The Imperfections of Man) (IV, 10)	223
Seneca	224
Read Intensively, Not Extensively (<i>Epist.</i> 2, 2–6)	224
The Proper Treatment of Slaves (<i>Epist.</i> 47, 1–2, 5–6, 8, 10–11, 13–17)	225
Petronius	226
Trimalchio's Dinner (50, 2–6)	226
Quintilian (I, 3, 7–12)	226
Martial (I, 10; I, 32; I, 47; I, 61; II, 41; V, 34; X, 47)	227
Apuleius (<i>Met.</i> VI, 23)	231
Hadrian (<i>S. H. A.</i> , Had. 25)	231
Macrobius (II, 3)	232
The Vulgate (<i>Gen.</i> I, 1–17)	233
Bede (II, 1)	234
Paulus Diaconus (I, 4)	235
Hildegard von Bingen	235
Caesar of Heisterbach (II, 14)	236
Petrarch	238
The Craving for Books (<i>Fam.</i> III, 18)	238
To Marcus Tullius Cicero (<i>Fam.</i> XXIV, 4)	239
Coluccio Salutati	240
To Manuel Chrysoloras	240
The Defense of Poetry	240
Leonardo Bruni	241
Poggio Bracciolini	242
Great Discoveries	243
The Ruins of Rome	243

Lorenzo Valla	244
Pius II (<i>Enea Silvio Piccolomini</i>)	245

Unit X—Ovid

Ovid's Life	248
Poetic Word Order—248; Reading Latin Verse—249	
Pyramus and Thisbe (<i>Met.</i> IV, 55–166)	250
Midas (<i>Met.</i> XI, 94–193)	254
Daedalus (<i>Met.</i> VIII, 183–235)	258
Niobe (<i>Met.</i> VI, 165–312)	259
Philemon and Baucis (<i>Met.</i> VIII, 626–724)	265
Daphne and Apollo (<i>Met.</i> I, 452–567)	268

Appendix

Vocabulary

Latin–English	313
English–Latin	377

Subject Index

Grammar/Vocabulary Index

Forum Romanum

Aerial View of Roman Forum from the Tabularium	9
Arch of Titus	15
Basilica of Maxentius	23
Temple of Romulus	29
Temple of Antoninus and Faustina	43
Statues of Vestal Virgins	49
Temple of Vesta	57
Temple and Altar of Caesar	71
Basilica Aemilia	81
Senate House (<i>Cūria</i>)	89
Arch of Septimius Severus	99
Aerial View of Roman Forum toward the Tabularium	107
Equestrian Statue of Marcus Aurelius on Capitoline Hill	117
Palatine Hill	135
Forum of Julius Caesar	153
Plan of Forum— <i>Republic</i> ; Plan of Forum— <i>Empire</i>	169

Transmission of Latin and Greek Works Before Printing

1: Palimpsest—Cicero's <i>De República</i> (4th century) and St. Augustine on the Psalms (7th century)	185
2: Pliny's Letter (6th century)	203
3: Carolingian manuscript from Gospel of John (9th century)	221
4: Medical text (12th century)	229
5: French translation of Cicero's <i>De Oratore</i> (13th century)	237
6: Ovid's <i>Metamorphoses</i> (14th century)	255
7: Renaissance manuscript (15th century)	263

Introduction

This book combines two approaches to the Latin course in the third year. One approach continues to make Cicero the core of the third-year curriculum; the other approach presents a wide range of Latin literature. Some teachers prefer the one, some the other, and still other teachers would like to see the two approaches reconciled. The present book makes this possible.

As a result, the book contains much more reading matter than can be completed in one year. Teachers will have to select what is most useful for a particular class. A survey of the contents unit by unit will be helpful for this purpose.

Unit I continues the lesson form of the *Second Book* in this series and is a review of second-year grammar and vocabulary. The stories are taken from Pliny because that author's simple style is familiar from the numerous selections in the *Second Book* and because his letters are interesting.

Unit II presents simple and interesting stories from Aulus Gellius. These may be omitted in whole or in part.

Unit III contains Cicero's orations against Catiline. The first and third orations are given in complete form, the second and fourth in selections. The material is presented in lessons, with vocabulary drills and English sentences for translation into Latin. Paragraphs on Cicero's style help in the mastery of his periodic sentence structure. Most teachers will wish to teach this entire unit.

Unit IV gives selections from Sallust's *Catiline* to supplement Cicero's version. The lesson form is kept. Some teachers may prefer to omit part of this unit.

Unit V consists of Cicero's speech for Archias. This is a universal favorite because of its praise of literature, and most teachers will wish to read it. But some chapters dealing with the technical matters of citizenship may well be omitted.

Unit VI, containing selections from the speeches against Verres, with which Cicero had his first great success, and Antony, the last of his orations, is optional. Parts may be read at sight.

Unit VII presents some of Cicero's letters. These may be read at sight. It is urged, however, that they not be omitted entirely; they are interesting and valuable for the light they throw on Cicero's personality.

Unit VIII contains selections from Cicero's philosophical works and, like Unit VI, is optional.

Unit IX in its "Two Thousand Years of Latin" continues the popular unit of a similar name in the *Second Book*, but gives a different selection from twenty-four authors. Rapid reading at sight is suggested for part of this unit.

Unit X has six stories from Ovid's *Metamorphoses* and is particularly useful in schools which do not offer a fourth year of Latin.

English sentences for translation into Latin are given in Units I-IV. This fact may cause teachers to decide to teach those units.

An attempt has been made to key the numerous illustrations to the text. They supplement the reading matter in giving a broad idea of the Roman civilization. Two special visual sections are in the text. One deals with the Forum Romanum, with photos and captions on surviving monuments that follow a path from the Arch of Titus up and onto the Capitoline Hill. The other section deals with photos of various manuscripts that show how Roman and Greek works were transmitted through the centuries up to the invention of printing. A list of these photos is found at the end of the Contents (p. ix).

Words translated in the footnotes do not appear in the end vocabulary.

Tapes to Accompany Latin for Americans, Second Book, include some readings from the selections in the present *Third Book*.





Unit I

Pliny's Letters

Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

In the Church of St. Mary in Cosmedin, not far from the Roman Forum and the Cloāca Maxima, is the Mouth of Truth, an ancient marble mask with a human face. Legend has it that anyone who put his hand in the mouth and swore falsely would be unable to pull his hand out.

Pliny's Life

You may have read some of Pliny's letters in *Latin for Americans, Second Book*. You may even remember those about the eruption of Mt. Vesuvius. Pliny was born at Como, north of Milan, in A.D. 62. He was a successful lawyer and officeholder. After serving in various preliminary offices, he became consul in A.D. 100, during the reign of Nerva. He was later appointed governor of Bithynia, in Asia Minor. Among the following readings are some interesting letters he wrote to the emperor Trajan from Bithynia.

April Showers Bring Verse Flowers

¹ crop (literally, coming forth)

² public places

³ from time to time

⁴ by Hercules

⁵ they say

⁶ all the idlest

⁷ I have failed no one (i.e., he attended everyone's readings)

Magnum prōventum¹ poētārum annus hic attulit. Tōtō mēse Aprīlī nūllus ferē diēs quō nōn recitāret aliquis. Iuvat mē quod vigent studia, prōferunt sē ingenia hominum et ostentant, tametsī ad audiendum pigrē coitur.¹ Plērīque in statiōnibus² sedent tempusque audiendī fābulīs con-
5 terunt ac subinde³ sibi nūntiārī iubent an iam recitātor intrāverit, an dīxerit praefātiōnem, an ex magnā parte ēvoluerit librum. Tunc dēmum, ac tunc quoque lentē cūctanterque veniunt; nec tamen permanent, sed ante finem recēdunt, aliī dissimulanter et fūrtim, aliī simpliciter et liberē. At hercule⁴ memoriā parentum Claudium Caesarem² ferunt,⁵ cum in Palātiō spatiārētur
10 audissetque clāmōrem, causam requīsisse, cumque dictum esset recitāre Nōniānum, subitum recitantī vēnisse. Nunc ōtiōsissimus quisque,⁶ multō ante rogātus et identidem admonitus, aut nōn venit aut, sī venit, queritur sē diem, quia nōn perdiderit, perdidisse. Sed tantō magis laudandī probandīque sunt quōs ā scribendī recitandīque studiō haec audītōrum vel dēsidia vel
15 superbia nōn retardat. Equidem prope nēminī dēfuī.⁷ Erant sānē plērīque amīcī; neque enim est ferē quisquam quī studia, ut nōn simul et nōs amet.³ Hīs ex causīs longius quam dēstināveram tempus in urbe cōsūmpsī.⁴ Possum iam repetere sēcēssum et scribere aliquid quod nōn recitem, nē videar, quōrum⁵ recitātiōnibus adfuī, nōn audītōr fuisse sed crēditor. Nam ut in cēterīs
20 rēbus, ita in audiendī officiō perit grātia sī reposcātur. Valē. (I, 13)

¹ People do not want to go but feel they have to.

² Emperor Claudius, who ruled A.D. 41–54

³ Supply amet with the quī clause.

⁴ He went to his country home later than usual.

⁵ The antecedent eōrum is understood.

QUESTIONS

1. What happened in the month of April?
2. What did Pliny do during his vacations?
3. What does one have to do to get people to attend a reading?
4. Why does Pliny criticize those who attend readings of poetry?

Grammar

Form Review

1. Review **ferō**, including principal parts and meanings. Pay particular attention to the present tense, active and passive.
2. Review **eō**, including principal parts and meanings. Pay particular attention to the present and future tenses.
3. Review the formation and translation of deponent verbs. Remember that deponent verbs are passive in form but active in meaning.

Syntax Review

1. Review impersonal verbs, including **decet** (it becomes, benefits), **libet** (it pleases), **licet** (it is permitted; one may), **oportet** (it is fitting, necessary; ought), **piget** (it grieves), **pudet** (it makes ashamed), and **taedet** (it causes weariness, boredom). Remember that impersonal verbs are used only in the third person singular and the infinitive.
2. Review indirect questions. Remember that an indirect question is introduced by a main verb of asking, knowing, telling, or perceiving and includes an interrogative word such as who, what, or where. The subordinate verb is in the subjunctive.
3. Review descriptive relative clauses. Remember that a relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an indefinite antecedent. This construction is especially common after **ūnus, sōlus, sunt quī** (there are those who), and **nēmō est quī** (there is no one who).
4. Review the gerund and gerundive. Remember that the gerund is a verbal noun and the gerundive is a verbal adjective. The gerundive is used to express obligation (what *must be* done) with a form of **sum**. The person who must do the obligation is in the dative. The gerundive may also simply modify a noun or pronoun. Finally, the gerund and gerundive may be used with **ad** + accusative or **causā** or **grātiā** + genitive to express purpose.

1. Ask him to what city he is going.
2. I shall complain because no one is bringing my books.
3. Those who come for the sake of hearing recitations should be praised.
4. People come (*use impersonal construction*) quickly for the sake of talking with friends.

Vocabulary

ingenium
mēnsis

aliquis
plērīque

afferō
dēsum
eō
ferō
iuvō
perdō
queror
requīrō
sedeō
volvō

equidem
ferē
fūrtim
identidem
simul
tunc

Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: *coeō*, *ostentō*, *prōventus*, *retardō*, *sēcessus*, *spatior*, *statiō*?

Explain *dissimulate*, *evolution*, *furtive*, *querulous*, *secession*.

A Perfect Wife

Cum sīs pietātis exemplum frātreque optimum et amantissimum tuī¹ parī cāritāte dīlēxerīs filiāque eius ut tuam dīligās nec tantum amitae² eī affectum vērū etiam patris āmissī repraesentēs, nōn dubitō maximō tibi gaudiō fore, cum cognōveris dignam patre,³ dignam tē, dignam avō ēvādere.⁴ Summum est acūmen, summa frūgālītās; amat mē. Accēdit hīs studium lit-⁵ terārū, quod ex meī cāritāte concēpit. Meōs libellōs³ habet, lēctitat, ēdiscit etiam. Quā illa sollicitūdine, cum videor āctūrus,⁴ quantō, cum ēgī, gaudiō afficitur! Dispōnit⁵ quī nūntient sibi quem assēsum, quōs clāmōrēs excitārim, quem ēventum iūdicī tulerim. Eadem, sī quandō recitō, in proximō discrēta vėlō sedet laudēsque nostrās avidissimīs auribus excipit.¹⁰ Versūs quidem meōs cantat etiam fōrmatque³ citharā, nōn artifice aliquō docente sed amōre, quī magister est optimus.

Hīs ex causīs in spem certissimam addūcor perpetuam nōbīs maiōremque in diēs futūram esse concordiam. Nōn enim aetātem meam aut corpus, quae paulātīm occidunt ac senēscunt, sed glōriam dīligit. Nec aliud decet¹⁵ tuīs manibus ēducātam, tuīs praeceptīs īnstitūtā, quae nihil in contuberniō tuō vīderit nisi sānctum honestumque, quae dēnique amāre mē ex tuā praedīcātiōne cōnsuēverit. Nam cum mātrem meam parentis locō verērēris, mē ā pueritiā statim fōrmāre, laudāre, tālemque quālis nunc uxōrī meae videor ōminārī solēbās. Certātīm ergō tibi grātiās agimus, ego quod illam mihi,²⁰ illa quod mē sibi dederīs, quasi in vīcem⁴ ēlēgerīs. Valē. (IV, 19)

QUESTIONS

1. What did Calpurnia do with Pliny's verses?
2. How did Calpurnia find out what success Pliny had had in court?
3. How does Pliny account for his wife's admirable qualities?
4. How did Calpurnia find out what sort of reception Pliny's readings had?

¹ pronoun, not adjective

² Supply **eam** as subject.

³ his speeches in court

⁴ Supply **causam**: *plead a case*.

⁵ Supply a word such as **hominēs**.

Grammar

Form Review

Review personal pronouns including: **ego**, **nōs**; **tū**, **vōs**; and **is**, **ea**, **id**. Remember that with the ablative of accompaniment, the **cum** attaches directly to the ablative form (**mēcum**, etc.).

Syntax Review

1. Review the datives of reference and purpose. Remember that the dative is sometimes used to express purpose (dative of purpose) or to show the person concerned or referred to (dative of reference). These two constructions are often used together as a double dative.
2. Review relative purpose clauses. Remember that **quī** may replace **ut** in a purpose clause if the antecedent is clear and definite.
3. Review **cum** clauses. Recall that in secondary sequence, **cum** translated as *when* is used only with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. When **cum** means *since* or *although*, the verb in the subordinate clause can be in any tense of the subjunctive.

TRANSLATION

1. She sends slaves to find out what I have said.
2. I must thank you because your words caused Calpurnia to love me.
3. Calpurnia sang Pliny's verses, although she never had a singing teacher.
4. It is an honor to you and to me that she likes my speeches and verses.

Vocabulary

auris	avidus	accēdō	paulātim
avus	dignus	concupiō	statim
cāritās	perpetuus	cōnsuēscō	
clāmor		dubitō	
ēventus		īstituō	
gaudium		occidō	
iūdicium		soleō	
		vereor	

Word Studies

Review intensive prefixes in the Appendix. Give an example from the reading. Give an English derivative of **amita**, **cāritās**, **decet**, **dispōnō**.

Oratorical Twins

Librum tuum lēgī et, quam dīligentissimē potuī, adnotāvī quae commū-
tanda, quae eximenda arbitrārer. Nam et ego vērū dīcere assuēvī et tū
libenter audīre. Neque enim ūllī patientius reprehenduntur quam quī
maximē laudārī merentur. Nunc ā tē librum meum cum adnotātiōnibus tuīs
exspectō. Ō iūcundās, ō pulchrās vicēs! Quam¹ mē dēlectat quod, sī qua

5 ¹ how

² it makes no difference to me
(the feminine ablative adjective
is used with interest)

posterīs cūra nostrī,₁ usquequāque nārrābitur quā concordīā, simplicitāte,
fidē vīxerīmus! Erit rārū et īnsigne duōs hominēs aetāte, dignitāte prope-
modum aequālēs, nōn nūllius in litterīs nōminis (cōgor enim dē tē quoque
parcius dīcere, quia dē mē simul dīcō), alterum alterius studia fōvisse.

Equidem adulēscentulus, cum iam tū fāmā glōriāque flōrērēs, tē sequī¹⁰
“longō sed proximus intervāllō” et esse et habērī concupiscēbam. Et erant
multa clārissima ingenia; sed tū mihi (ita similitūdō nātūrae ferēbat)
maximē imitābilis, maximē imitandus vidēbāris. Quō magis gaudeō quod,
sī quis dē studiīs sermō, ūnā nōmināmur, quod dē tē loquentibus statim
occurrō. Nec dēsunt quī utrīque nostrum praeferantur. Sed nōs, nihil inter-¹⁵
est meā² quō locō, iungimur: nam mihi prīmus quī ā tē proximus. Quīn
etiam in testāmentīs dēbēs adnotāsse: nisi quis forte alterutrī nostrum amī-
cissimus, eadem lēgāta et quidem pariter accipimus.

Quae omnia hūc spectant, ut in vicem ardentius dīligāmus, cum tot vīn-
culīs nōs studia, mōrēs, fāma, suprēma dēnique hominum iūdicia cōnstringant.²⁰
Valē. (VII, 20)

QUESTIONS

1. What had Pliny done for Tacitus?
2. What four things link Tacitus and Pliny?
3. What is Pliny expecting to get from Tacitus?

₁ genitive plural of the pronoun

Grammar

Form Review

Review the comparison of adjectives and adverbs. Remember that most superlatives are formed by adding **-issimus, -a, -um** to the base; but that some add **-rimus, -a, -um**; others **-limus, -a, -um**; and some are quite irregular. There is a list of the irregular comparatives and superlatives in the Appendix.

Syntax Review

1. Review the genitive of description. Remember that the descriptive genitive requires that an adjective be used. Generally, it is used to describe permanent qualities.
2. Review the ablative of respect. Remember that the ablative of respect tells in what respect a certain condition applies. There is no preposition.

TRANSLATION

1. Pliny's friend was a man of great reputation.
2. Pliny was not inferior in oratory, but Tacitus also wrote histories.
3. A man who heard Pliny talk about his writings asked him whether he was Pliny or Tacitus.

Vocabulary

aetās	īnsignis	arbitror	iam
fidēs	iūcundus	flōreō	libenter
sermō	proximus	foveō	quīn etiam
	tot	gaudeō	
quis	ūllus	legō	
	uterque	loquor	
		sequor	

Word Studies

Review the diminutive suffix **-lus** and find an example in the reading.
Give an English derivative of each: **adnotō, cōstringō, eximō, posterī, praeferō.**



Scala/Art Resource, NY

This aerial view of the Roman Forum is taken from the *Tabulārium*, or Record Office. The three columns are the remains of the Temple of Castor and Pollux. The large area in front of that temple was the Basilica Julia. To the left of the three columns of Castor and Pollux is the small, round Temple of Vesta. The road leading toward the Temple of Vesta and passing by the single Column of Phocas is part of the Via Sacra. The Palatine Hill with its mansions serves as the backdrop to it all. In the distance is the Arch of Titus.

Working Hours in Vacation

¹ in my Tuscan (villa)

² terrace

³ covered walk

⁴ concentration

⁵ nap

⁶ musician (nominative)

⁷ however long

⁸ sometimes (literally, not never)

⁹ (a thing) which

¹⁰ tenant farmers

¹¹ literary activity

Quaeris quem ad modum in Tuscīs¹ diem aestāte dispōnam. Ēvigilō cum libuit, plērumque circā hōram prīmam,¹ saepe ante, tardius rārō: clausae fenestrae manent. Mīrē enim silentiō et tenebrīs ab iīs² quae āvocant abductus et līber et mihi relīctus, nōn oculōs animō sed animum oculīs
5 sequor, quī eadem quae mēns vident, quotiēns nōn vident alia. Cōgitō scrībentī ēmendantīque similis. Notārium vocō et, diē admissō, quae fōrmāveram dictō; abit rūrsusque revocātur rūrsusque dīmittitur. Ubi³ hōra quārta vel quīnta (neque enim certum dīmēnsūque tempus), ut diēs suāsīt, in xystum² mē vel cryptoporticum³ cōnferō, reliqua meditor et
10 dictō. Vehiculum ascendō. Ibi quoque idem⁴ quod ambulāns aut iacēns.⁴ Dūrat intentiō⁴ mūtātiōne ipsā refecta. Paulum redormiō,⁵ deinde ambulō, mox ōrātiōnem Graecam Latīnamve clārē et intentē, nōn tam vōcis causā quam stomachī, legō; pariter tamen et⁵ illa firmātur. Iterum ambulō, ungor, exerceor,⁶ labor.⁶ Cēnantī mihi, sī cum uxōre vel paucīs, liber legitur; post
15 cēnam comoedus aut lyristēs.⁶ Mox cum meīs⁷ ambulō, quōrum in numerō sunt ērudītī. Ita variīs sermōnibus vespera extenditur, et quamquam⁷ longissimus diēs citō conditur. Nōn numquam⁸ ex hōc ōrdine aliqua mūtatur. Nam sī diū iacuī vel ambulāvī, post somnum dēmum lēctiōnemque nōn vehiculō sed (quod⁹ brevius, quia vėlōcius) equō gestor. Interveniunt amīcī
20 ex proximīs oppidīs partemque diēi ad sē trahunt interdumque lassō mihi opportūnā interpellātiōne subveniunt. Vēnor aliquandō, sed nōn sine pugillāribus, ut, quamvīs nihil cēperim,⁸ nōn nihil referam. Datur et colōnīs,¹⁰ ut vidētur ipsīs, nōn satis temporis, quōrum mihi agrestēs querēlae litterās¹¹ nostrās et haec urbāna opera commendant.⁹ Valē. (IX, 36)

QUESTIONS

1. When does Pliny usually wake up?
2. What is the first thing he does?
3. What kind of exercise does Pliny take?
4. What does Pliny do before going to bed?

¹ i.e., after daybreak

² neuter antecedent of quae

³ Supply est.

⁴ Supply faciō in both places.

⁵ for etiam

⁶ used reflexively; the usage is called "middle voice"

⁷ i.e., amīcīs

⁸ Quamvis is used with the subjunctive.

⁹ i.e., make them seem relatively more pleasant

Grammar

Form Review

Review demonstrative pronouns. Remember that **hic** is translated as *this* or *the latter*; **ille** as *that* or *the former*. **Is** can be translated as *this*, *that*, or *he (she, it)*. The demonstrative **idem** is best translated as *the same*, *also*, *likewise*, and the emphatics **ipse** by *–self*, *very* and **iste** by *that (of yours)*, *such*, *this*. Pay particular attention to the irregular forms.

Syntax Review

1. Review the ablative absolute. Remember that the ablative absolute must be grammatically unconnected to the rest of the sentence. It exists in three combinations: noun + noun, noun + adjective, noun + participle.
2. Review the genitive of the whole. Also called the partitive genitive, it represents the whole to which a part belongs. The genitive of the whole is often used after such words as **nihil**, **satis**, and **quid**; the English word “of” is omitted.

TRANSLATION

1. He decided to walk in the garden with his friends.
2. When the windows were opened, Pliny began to dictate.
3. He complained that too much time had to be given to his tenants.
4. Pliny lived in the mountains in the summer for the purpose of writing books.

Vocabulary

causa	ambulō	citō
ōrdō	claudō	iterum
	cōgitō	plērumque
reliquus	mē cōnferō	mox
	dormiō	quem ad modum
	iaceō	quotiēns
	quaerō	rūrsus
	suādeō	tamen
	trahō	

Word Studies

Review prefixes **dis–** and **ex–**, and explain the meaning of words in the reading that contains them.

Define *defenestration*, *quotient*, *ambulatory*, *mutation*, *dormitory*.

Fame

Frequenter agentī¹ mihi ēvēnit ut centumvirī,² cum diū sē intrā iūdicum auctōritātem gravitātemque tenuissent, omnēs repente quasi victī coāctīque cōnsurgerent laudārentque; frequenter ē senātū fāmam, quālem maximē optāveram, rettulī. Numquam tamen maiōrem cēpī voluptātem quam nūper
5 ex sermōne Cornēlī Tacitī. Nārrābat sēdisse sēcum Circēnsibus proximīs¹ equitem Rōmānum; hunc post variōs ērudītōsque sermōnēs requīsisse: “Ītalicus es an prōvinciālis?”. sē respondisse: “nostī mē, et quidem ex studiīs.” Ad hoc illum,³ “Tacitus es an Plīnius?” Exprimere nōn possum quam sit iūcundum mihi quod nōmina nostra, quasi litterārum propria,² nōn hominum,
10 litterīs redduntur, quod uterque nostrum hīs etiam ex studiīs nōtus quibus aliter ignōtus est.

Accidit aliud ante pauculōs diēs simile. Recumbēbat⁴ mēcum vir ēgregius, Fadius Rūfīnus, super³ eum mūniceps ipsīus, quī illō diē prīmum vēnerat in urbem; cui Rūfīnus, dēmōnstrāns mē, “vidēs hunc?” Multa deinde dē studiīs
15 nostrīs. Et ille⁵ “Plīnius est” inquit.

Vērū fatēbor, cupiō magnum labōris mei frūctum. An, sī Dēmōsthenēs iūre laetātus est quod illum anus Attica ita nōscitāvit, ego celebritāte nōminis mei gaudēre nōn dēbeō? Ego vērō et gaudeō et gaudēre mē dīcō. Neque enim vereor nē iactantior videar, cum dē mē aliōrum iūdicium, nōn
20 meum prōferō, praesertim apud tē, quī nec ūllīus invidēs laudibus et favēs nostrīs. Valē. (IX, 23)

QUESTIONS

1. What is the point of this letter?
2. What honor was shown Pliny in court?
3. What did Tacitus and the stranger talk about?

Grammar

Form Review

Review **volō**, **nolō**, and **malō**, while paying particular attention to the present indicative and subjunctive.

¹ Supply *causās*.

² a kind of supreme court, consisting originally of 100 men

³ Supply *quaesisse*.

⁴ at the dinner table

⁵ i.e., the man from out of town

Syntax Review

1. Review the dative with special verbs. Remember that the dative is used with a few special verbs, including **cōnfīdō**, **crēdō**, **dēsum**, **faveō**, **ignōscō**, **imperō**, **invidēō**, **minitor**, **noceō**, **parcō**, **pāreō**, **persuādeō**, **placeō**, **praestō**, **resistō**, **serviō**, and **studeō**. Some of these verbs become impersonal in the passive and the dative is retained.
2. Review noun clauses of result. Remember that after **accido** (to happen) and **efficio** (to cause or effect) you use **ut** (or **ut nōn**) plus the subjunctive to express a result clause.
3. Review the subjunctive after verbs of fearing. Remember that a verb of fearing is following by a clause in the subjunctive introduced by **nē** if it is positive and **ut** if it is negative.

TRANSLATION

1. Do you think that Pliny envied Tacitus?
2. Pliny feared that he might not be recognized.
3. Pliny persuaded Tacitus to tell what the Roman knight had said.
4. It happened that all praised Pliny when he finished his speech.

Vocabulary

frūctus	ēveniō	diū	apud
gravitās	faveō	frequenter	intrā
voluptās	invidēō	numquam	
	nārrō	praesertim	
proprius	reddō	quasi	
quidem	respondeō	repente	
	surgō		

Word Studies

Give an English derivative of each of the following: **ērudītus**, **exprimō**, **faveō**, **invidēō**, **recumbō**.

Review the prefixes **ad-**, **con-**, **in-**, **re-** in the Appendix and find three examples of each in the readings you have encountered thus far. Note the assimilated forms of each.

Pliny's Kindness to a Servant

¹ you treat your (servants)

² therefore (literally, by which the more frankly)

³ this (phrase of) ours

⁴ all the more (literally, by so much by which)

⁵ his occupation (literally, his label, so to speak)

⁶ put too much strain on

⁷ a slight cough

⁸ i.e., servants

⁹ at his expense

Videō quam molliter tuōs habeās;¹ quō² simplicius tibi cōfitebor quā indulgentiā meōs trāctem. Est mihi semper in animō hoc nostrum³ “pater familiae.” Quod sī essem nātūrā asperior et dūrior, frangeret mē tamen infirmitās libertī meī Zōsimī, cui tantō⁴ maior hūmanitās exhibenda est, 5 quantō⁴ nunc illā magis eget. Homō probus, officiōsus, litterātus; et ars quidem eius et quasi inscriptio⁵ comoedus, in quā plūrimum facit. Nam prōnūntiat ācriter, sapienter, aptē, decenter etiam. Īdem tam commodē ōrātiōnēs et historiās et carmina legit ut hoc solum didicisse videātur.

Haec tibi sēdulō exposuī quō magis scīrēs quam multa ūnus mihi et 10 quam iūcunda ministeria praestāret. Accēdit longa iam cāritās hominis, quam ipsa perīcula auxērunt. Ante aliquot annōs, dum intentē īstanterque prōnūntiat, sanguinem reiēcit,¹ atque ob hoc in Aegyptum missus ā mē, post longum peregrīnātiōnem cōfirmātus rediit nūper. Deinde dum per continuōs diēs nimis imperat⁶ vōcī, veteris infirmitātis tussiculā⁷ admoni- 15 tus, rūsus sanguinem reddidit. Quā ex causā dēstināvī eum mittere in praedia tua quae Forō Iūli possidēs. Audīvī enim tē saepe referentem esse ibi et āera salūbrem et lac eius modī cūrātiōnibus accommodātissimum. Rogō ergō scrībās² tuīs⁸ ut illī villa, ut domus pateat, offerant³ etiam sūmptibus⁹ eius sī quid opus erit; erit autem opus modicō. Est enim tam 20 parcus et continēns ut nōn solum dēliciās vērū etiam necessitatēs valētūdinis frūgālitate restringat. Ego proficīscētī⁴ tantum viāticī dabō quantum sufficiat euntī in tua. Valē. (V, 19)

QUESTIONS

1. About whom is Pliny writing?
2. What does he ask his friend to do?
3. What duties does Zosimus perform in Pliny's home?
4. To what country had Pliny previously sent Zosimus? Why?

¹ He had tuberculosis.

² ut is generally used

³ Supply the subject from tuīs; the object is the sī clause (whatever; literally, if anything).

⁴ modifies eī, to be supplied



Scala/Art Resource, NY

Built in A.D. 81, the Arch of Titus is a fairly simple triumphal arch with just a single archway. It was erected after his death to commemorate the conquest of Jerusalem. The inside contains two well-preserved and well-known reliefs, one of the emperor on his triumphal chariot and the other a procession of Roman soldiers carrying away the sacred furnishings of the Temple of Jerusalem during the siege of Jerusalem in A.D. 70.

Grammar

Form Review

Review irregular adjectives and numerals. Remember that **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **neuter**, and **uterque** are declined like **ūnus**. The plurals are regular. **Ambō** is declined like **duo**.

Syntax Review

1. Review the ablative of degree of difference. Remember that the ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference.
2. Review purpose clauses with **quō**. Remember that if the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, **quō** generally replaces **ut**.

TRANSLATION

1. My friend is a foot taller than I.
2. Pliny gave him as much money as sufficed for the journey.
3. I fear that the man is very ill and may not be well again.
4. He walked to the top of the hill so that he might see better.

Vocabulary

carmen	admoneō	aptē
hūmānitās	augeō	nimis
libertus	discō	semper
valētūdō	expōnō	
	pateō	
asper	praestō	
dūrus	proficīscor	
parcus	redeō	
vetus	sciō	

Word Studies

Give English derivatives of the following: **asper**, **comoedus**, **discō**, **lac**, **mollis**, **possideō**, **probus**, **salūbris**, **sēdulus**.

In the reading, find one word with suffix **-tia**, five words with suffix **-tās**, and three words with suffix **-tiō**.

Three Strikes and Out for Regulus

Assem parā¹ et accipe auream fābulam, fābulās immō. Verānia, Pīsōnis uxor, graviter iacēbat,² huius dīcō Pīsōnis quem Galba adoptāvit. Ad hanc Rēgulus vēnit. Prīmum impudentiam hominis quī vēnerit ad aegram, cuius marītō inimīcissimus, ipsī invīsissimus fuerat! Estō,³ sī vēnit tantum;⁴ at ille etiam proximus torō sēdit, quō diē, quā hōrā nāta esset interrogāvit.⁵ Ubi audiit, compōnit vultum,⁶ intendit oculōs, movet labra, agit digitōs,⁸ computat; nihil. Ut diū miseram expectātiōne suspendit, “habēs,” inquit, “clīmactēricum⁶ tempus, sed ēvādēs. Quod ut tibi magis liqueat,⁷ haruspicem cōsulam quem sum frequenter expertus.” Nec mora; sacrificium facit, affirmat exta⁸ cum sīderum significātiōne congruere. Illa, ut in¹⁰ periculō crēdula, poscit codicillōs, lēgātum Rēgulō scribit. Mox ingravēscit, clāmat moriēns hominem nēquam,⁹ perfidum, ac plūs etiam quam periūrum, quī sibi per salutem filiī peierāset. Facit hoc Rēgulus nōn minus scelerātē quam frequenter, quod īram deōrum, quōs ipse cotīdiē fallit, in caput infēlicis puerī dētestātur.

¹ get your penny ready

² lay seriously (ill)

³ so be it, okay

⁴ merely

⁵ put on a (thoughtful) expression

⁶ dangerous

⁷ be clear

⁸ entrails

⁹ worthless (indeclinable)

¹⁰ last illness

¹¹ a tiny bit

¹² not (to say) much, to cut the story short

Velleius Blaesus, ille locuplēs cōsulāris, novissimā¹⁰ valētūdine cōflīctābātur; cupiēbat mutāre testāmentum. Rēgulus, quī spērāret aliquid ex novīs tabulīs, quia nūper captāre² eum coeperat, medicōs hortārī, rogāre quōquō modō spīritum hominī prōrogārent. Postquam signātum est testāmentum, mūtāt persōnam, vertit allocūtiōnem, īsdem medicīs,³ “quō usque miserum²⁰ cruciātis?” Moritur Blaesus, et tamquam omnia audīset, Rēgulō nē tantulum¹¹ quidem.

Sufficiunt duae fābulae, an scholasticā lēge tertiam poscis? Est unde fīat. Aurēlia, ōrnāta fēmina, signātūra testāmentum sūmpserat pulcherrimās tunicās. Rēgulus cum vēnisset ad signandum, “rogō,” inquit, “hās mihi²⁵ lēgēs.” Aurēlia lūdere hominem putābat, ille sēriō īnstābat. Nē multa,¹² coēgit mulierem aperīre tabulās ac sibi tunicās lēgāre. Observāvit scrībentem, īspexit an scrīpsisset. Et Aurēlia quidem vīvit, ille tamen istud tamquam moritūram coēgit. (II, 20, 1–11)

¹ for the purpose of making her horoscope

² i.e., he was “buttering him up” to get something out of him

³ Supply inquit.

QUESTIONS

1. How did Aurelia outwit Regulus?
2. Why was Verania angry with Regulus?
3. What did Velleius leave Regulus in his will?
4. What sort of questions did Regulus ask Verania?

Grammar

Form Review

1. Review the conjugation of **fiō**, paying particular attention to the present tense.
2. Review defective verbs and contracted verb forms. Remember that **coepī** is used only in the perfect tenses; likewise, **meminī** and **ōdī**, although they have a present meaning. The verbs **inquam** and **aiō** are lacking several persons. Verbs whose perfect stems end in **-āv-**, **-ēv-**, or **-iv-** may be contracted, depending on the consonant that follows.

Syntax Review

1. Review the use of the reflexive pronoun. Remember that reflexive pronouns have no nominative. Personal pronouns are used for the first and second persons; **suī** for the third person.
2. Review indirect command. Remember that an indirect command is introduced by a verb such as **hortor**, **imperō**, **moneō**, **persuādeō**, **petō**, and **rogō**, plus **ut** (or **ne**) and the subjunctive.

TRANSLATION

1. Will Regulus become the heir of many Romans?
2. Regulus asked that the tunics be given to him.
3. Aurelia began to ask herself why Regulus wished the will to be opened.
4. Sacrifice is being made by Regulus in order to find out what the gods desire.

Vocabulary

diēs	aperiō	nūper
mora	coepī	tamquam
	cōgō	
aeger	experior	quia
aureus	hortor	
infēlix	īnstō	
	mōrior	
	mūtō	
	nāscor	
	poscō	
	sūmō	
	vertō	

Word Studies

Give English derivatives of the following words: **computō**, **congruō**, **digitus**, **oculus**, **sīdus**, **suspendō**.

A Home by the Seaside

Mīrāris cūr mē Laurentīnum₁ meum tantō opere dēlectet; dēsinēs mīrārī, cum cognōveris grātiā villae, opportunitātem locī, lītoris spatium.

Decem septem mīlibus passuum ab urbe sēcessit, ut, perāctīs₂ quae agenda fuerint, salvō iam et compositō diē₃ possīs ibi manēre. Aditur nōn ūnā viā; nam et Laurentīna et Ōstiēnsis eōdem ferunt, sed Laurentīna ā⁵ quārtō decimō lapide,¹ Ōstiēnsis ab ūndecimō relinquenda est. Utrimque excipit iter aliquā ex parte arēnōsum, iūctīs₄ paulō gravius et longius, equō breve et molle. Varia hinc atque inde faciēs; nam modo occurrentibus silvīs via coartātur, modo lātissimīs prātīs diffunditur et patēscit; multī gregēs ovium, multa ibi equōrum, boum armenta, quae montibus hieme¹⁰ dēpulsa herbīs et tepōre vernō nitēscunt. Villa ūsibus capāx,² nōn sūmptuōsā tutēlā.³ Cuius in prīmā parte ātrium frūgī⁴ nec tamen sordidum, deinde porticūs in D litterae similitudinē circumāctae, quibus parvula sed fēstīva ārea inclūdatur. Ēgregium hae adversus tempestātēs receptāculum:

¹ milestone

² big (enough) for one's needs

³ upkeep not expensive

⁴ modest (indeclinable adjective)

₁ villa at Laurentum

₂ Supply the subject of the ablative absolute from quae.

₃ i.e., at the end of the business day

₄ i.e., a carriage with a team of horses; equō refers to riding on horseback

⁵ = ātrium

⁶ African (wind)

⁷ the last (i.e., ends) of the waves

⁸ curve, apse, i.e., a bay window

⁹ cold baths

¹⁰ massage room and furnace

¹¹ swimming pool

¹² ball ground

15 nam specularibus ac multō magis imminentibus tectīs mūniuntur. Est contrā mediās cavaedium⁵ hilare, mox triclinium satis pulchrum, quod in litus excurrit, ac sī quāndō Āfricō⁶ mare impulsus est, fractīs iam et novissimīs⁷ fluctibus leviter adluitur. Undique valvās aut fenestrās nōn minōrēs valvīs habet, atque ita ā lateribus, ā fronte quasi tria maria prōspectat.

20 Annectitur angulō cubiculum in apsida⁸ curvātum, quod ambitum sōlis fenestrīs omnibus sequitur. Parietī eius in bibliothēcae speciem armārium insertum est, quod nōn legendōs librōs sed lēctitandōs capit. Adhaeret dormitōrium membrum, trānsitū interiacente, quī suspēnsus⁵ et tubulātus conceptum vapōrem salūbrī temperāmentō hūc illūc dīgerit et ministrat.

25 Inde balneī cella frīgidāria spatiōsa et effūsa, cuius in contrāriīs parietibus duo baptistēria⁹ abundē capācia, sī mare in proximō cōgitēs. Adiacet ūnctōrium,¹⁰ hypocauston;¹⁰ cohaeret calida piscīna¹¹ mīrifica, ex quā natantēs mare aspiciunt. Nec procul sphaeristērium,¹² quod calidissimō sōlī, inclinātō iam diē, occurrit.

30 Iustīsne dē causīs iam tibi videor incolere, inhabitāre, dīligere sēcessum, quem tū nimis urbānus es nisi concupīscis? Atque utinam concupīscās! Ut tot tantisque dōtibus villulae nostrae maxima commendātiō ex tuō contuberniō accēdat. Valē. (II, 17, 1–5, 8–9, 11–12, 29)

QUESTIONS

1. How far was Pliny's country place from Rome?
2. In what direction did one get a view of the sea?
3. What provisions were made for getting exercise?
4. Name three things that make it seem like a modern house.

Grammar

Form Review

Review **possum**, paying particular attention to the present tense and the use of **–s** or **–t** in the stem.

⁵ i.e., it had a double floor with pipes distributing heat

Syntax Review

Review the ablative of comparison. Remember that you must omit **quam** if you use the ablative after the comparative.

TRANSLATION

1. The facilities for swimming were excellent.
2. The chances of seeing friends were numerous.
3. In order to be able to reach Rome quickly, we had to go on horse(back).
4. After leaving Rome Pliny proceeded on a road narrower than the Appian Way to reach his villa.

Vocabulary

bōs	calidus	adhaereō	hūc
faciēs	ēgregius	cognōscō	
flūctus	lātus	frangō	
hiems		iungō	
lītus		mīror	
passus		mūniō	
tēctum		occurrō	
tempestās		pellō	

Word Studies

Review suffixes **-āx**, **-ium**, **-lus**, **-ōsus**, **-tūdō** and find examples of their use in the reading.

Give an English derivative of each of the following words and show its connection in meaning with the Latin word: **bōs**, **capāx**, **flūctus**, **grex**, **hilaris**, **lītus**, **sordidus**, **tutēla**, **valva**, **vernus**.

Over Sea and Over Land



¹ Master, Sir, i.e., Trajan

² are being paid out

³ architect

⁴ if they should be made

⁵ cum maximē = nunc

⁶ I could wish . . . that you might have been able

⁷ as

⁸ there (adverb)

⁹ see to it

¹⁰ provided that

Sicut salūberrimam nāvigātiōnem, domine,¹ usque Ephesum expertus, ita inde, postquam vehiculīs iter facere coepī, gravissimīs aestibus atque etiam febriculīs vexātus Pergamī substitī. Rūrsus, cum trānsissem in ōrariās nāviculās, contrāriīs ventīs retentus aliquantō tardius quam spērāveram, id
5 est XV Kal. Octōbrēs,¹ Bithyniam intrāvī. Nōn possum tamen dē morā querī, cum mihi contigerit, quod erat auspicātissimum, nātālem tuum in prōvinciā celebrāre.

Nunc rei publicae Prūsēnsium impendia, redditūs, dēbitōrēs excutiō; quod ex ipsō trāctātū magis ac magis necessārium intellegō.² Multae enim
10 pecūniae variīs ex causīs ā prīvātīs dētinentur; praetereā quaedam minimē lēgitimīs sūmptibus ērogantur.² Haec tibi, domine, in ipsō ingressū meō scripsī.

Dispice, domine an necessārium putēs mittere hūc mēnsōrem.³ Videntur enim nōn mediocrēs pecūniae posse revocārī ā cūrātōribus operum, sī
15 mēnsūrae fidēliter agantur.⁴ Ita certē prōspiciō ex ratiōne Prūsēnsium, quam cum maximē⁵ trāctō. (X, 17)

Cuperem⁶ sine querelā corpusculi tuī et tuōrum pervenīre in Bithyniam potuissēs ac simile tibi iter ab Ephesō ut⁷ nāvigātiōnī fuisset, quam expertus usque illō⁸ erās. Quō autem diē pervēnissēs in Bithyniam cognōvī,
20 Secunde³ cārissime, litterīs tuīs. Prōvinciālēs, crēdō, prōspectum⁴ sibi ā mē intellegent. Nam et tū dabis operam⁹ ut manifēstum sit illīs, ēlēctum tē esse quī ad eōsdem meī locō mitterēris. Ratiōnēs autem in prīmīs tibi rērum publicārum excutiendae sunt; nam et esse eās vexātās satis cōstat.

Mēnsōrēs vix etiam iīs operibus quae aut Rōmae aut in proximō fiunt
25 sufficientēs habeō; sed in omnī prōvinciā inveniuntur quibus crēdī possit, et ideō nōn deerunt tibi, modo¹⁰ velīs dīligenter excutere. (X, 18)

QUESTIONS

1. About when was Trajan's birthday?
2. What made the land journey in Asia difficult?
3. What request did Trajan turn down?
4. What was the first job that Pliny undertook in the province of Bithynia?

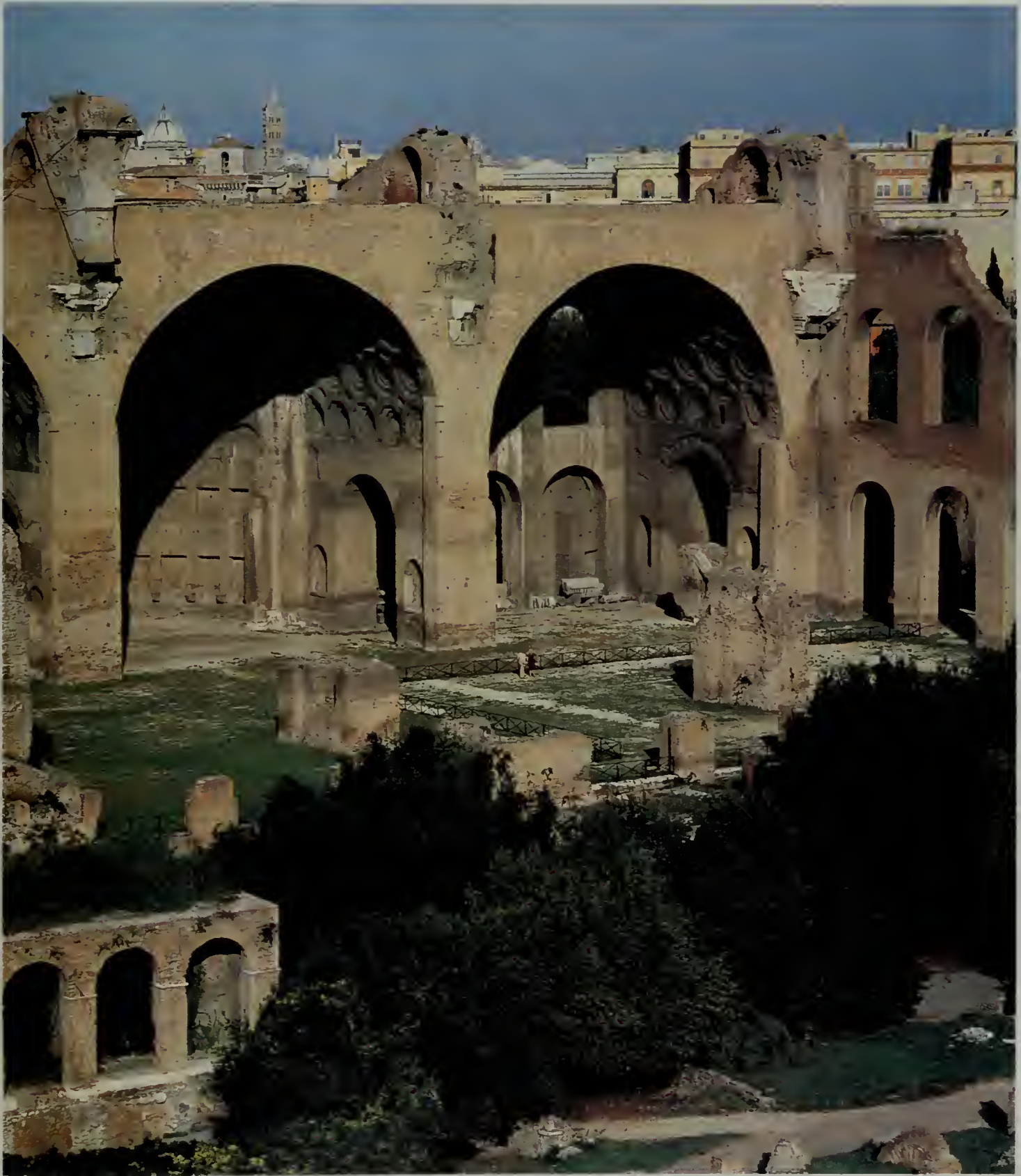
¹ September 17

² He is doing an audit of the books of the city of Prusa.

³ Pliny's cognomen

⁴ Supply esse: that I have looked out for them.

⁵ with manifēstum



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The Basilica of Maxentius is also called the Basilica of Constantine. It was begun by the former but completed by the latter. Immense in size, it is one of the last monuments built in the memory and style of ancient Rome during the early 4th century. Its enormous vaults and arches set it apart from most other monuments. After Diocletian split the empire into two, Maxentius ruled in the west, but he was ultimately defeated by Constantine, the first Christian emperor. It is said that the Basilica of Maxentius served as the inspiration for the new St. Peter's Basilica in Rome, built in the 16th century.

Form Review

Review indefinite pronouns. Remember that the pronoun forms are **aliquis**, **–quid**, whereas the adjective is **aliquī**, **–qua**, **–quod**; similarly the pronoun is **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quiddam** and the adjective has **quoddam** for **quiddam**; the pronoun **quisque**, **quidque** has as an adjective **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**.

Syntax Review

Review the locative case. Remember that the locative is used with the names of cities, towns, small islands, **domus**, **humus**, and **rūs**. Otherwise, use the ablative of *place where*.

Conditions

A condition consists of two clauses: a subordinate clause (the condition) introduced by **si**, **nisi**, or **si nōn**, and a principal clause (the conclusion). There are three main types of conditions.

A *simple* condition, or condition of fact, can have any combination of tenses, as in English.

Sī loquitur, audiō.

If he speaks, I listen.

A *contrary to fact* condition can have three different tense sequences.

Sī loqueretur, audīrem.

If he were speaking (but he isn't), I should listen.

Sī locūtus esset, audīvissem.

If he had spoken (but he didn't), I should have listened (then).

Sī locūtus esset, audīrem.

If he had spoken (but he didn't), I should listen.

Note that in the first example, the *present* condition, the imperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses. In the second example, a *past* condition, the pluperfect subjunctive is used in both clauses. In the third example, the *mixed* condition, the condition is past but the conclusion is present.

A *future less vivid* (should/would) condition uses the present subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī loquātur, audiam.

If he should speak, I would listen.

TRANSLATION

1. He stopped at Pergamum on account of the heat.
2. Trajan sent Pliny to Bithynia to examine the accounts of the cities.
3. The people of Prusa had paid too much money for their buildings.
4. If they had been more careful they should now have more money.

Vocabulary

aestus	contrārius	cōnstat	diligenter
opus	gravis	contingō	inde
ratio	mediocris	cupiō	praetereā
vehiculum	varius	dētineō	sicut
		intrō	usque
		trānseō	
		vexō	

Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: **contingō**, **contrārius**, **cūrātor**, **lēgitimus**, **mediocris**, **nāvicula**, **reditus**?

More Carelessness and Waste in Building



¹ with *centiēns*: more than ten million sesterces; literally, one hundred times (100,000) sesterces

² cracks

³ rotten

⁴ supports

⁵ here and there

⁶ promises

⁷ larger

⁸ irregular and sprawling

⁹ to see

¹⁰ about, with reference to

Theātrum, domine, Nicaeae maximā iam parte cōnstrūctum, imperfectum tamen, sēstertium,¹ ut audiō (neque enim ratiō excussa est), amplius centiēns¹ hausit; vereor nē frūstrā. Ingentibus enim rīmīs² dēsēdit et hiat, sive in causā solum¹ ūmidum et molle, sive lapis ipse gracilis et putris.³
5 Dignum est certē dēliberātiōne sitne faciendum an sit relinquendum an etiam dēstruendum. Nam fultūrae⁴ ac substrūctiōnēs quibus subinde⁵ suscipitur nōn tam firmae mihi quam sūmptuōsae videntur.

Huic theātrō ex prīvātōrum pollicitātiōnibus⁶ multa dēbentur, ut basilicae circā, ut porticūs suprà caveam. Quae nunc omnia differuntur, cessante
10 eō quod ante peragendum est.

Iīdem Nicaeēnsēs gymnasium incendiō āmissum ante adventum meum restituere coepērunt, longē numerōsius⁷ laxiusque quam fuerat, et iam aliquantum² ērogāvērunt; perīculum est nē parum ūtiliter; incompositum⁸ enim et sparsum est. Praetereā architectus, sānē aemulus eius ā quō opus
15 inchoātum est, affirmat parietēs, quamquam vīgintī et duōs pedēs lātōs, imposita onera sustinēre nōn posse. Cōgor petere ā tē mittās architectum dispectūrum⁹ utrum sit ūtilius post sūmptum quī factus est quōquō modō cōnsummāre opus. (X, 39, 1–4, 6)

Quid oporteat fierī circā¹⁰ theātrum quod inchoātum apud Nicaeēnsēs
20 est in rē praesentī optimē dēliberābis et cōstituēs. Mihi sufficiet indicārī cui sententiae accesserīs. Tunc autem ā prīvātīs exigī opera tibi cūrae sit cum theātrum, propter quod illa prōmissa sunt, factum erit.

Gymnasiīs indulgent Graeculī;³ ideō forsitan Nicaeēnsēs maiōre animō cōnstrūctiōnem eius aggressī sunt. Sed oportet illōs eō contentōs esse quod
25 possit illīs sufficere. Architectī tibi dēesse nōn possunt. Nulla prōvincia est quae nōn perītōs et ingeniōsōs hominēs habeat. (X, 40)

QUESTIONS

1. What was the matter with the unfinished theater at Nicaea?
2. What was the matter with the gymnasium that had been begun?
3. What did Pliny want Trajan to do about these two projects?
4. What did Trajan tell Pliny to do about the projects at Nicaea?

¹ noun

² Supply *pecūniae*.

³ The diminutive is contemptuous.

Grammar

Form Review

Review infinitives. Remember that most verbs have six infinitives: present, perfect, and future, active and passive.

Syntax Review

1. Review the accusative of extent. Remember that extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.
2. Review the ablative with **dignus**. Remember that both **dignus** (*worthy*) and **indignus** (*unworthy*) are followed by the ablative.

Vocabulary

adventus	aggredior	enim
incendium	differō	frūstrā
lapis	exigō	
onus	hauriō	sive
	oportet	
ingēns	restituō	
mollis	spargō	
perītus	sufficiō	
	suscipiō	
	sustineō	

Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: cessō, imperfectus, restituō, suscipiō?

Give English derivatives of the following: aemulus, cōsummō, dēstruō, frūstrā, hauriō, hiō, incendium, inchoō, spargō.

Excutiō literally means *to shake out*. So discuss means *to shake apart* the arguments. A concussion is a *shaking up*. Percussion instruments are played by being *shaken thoroughly*, or *struck*. What is *repercussion*?

NOTA-BENE

Now that you have gained experience in translating and familiarity with Pliny's writing style, the next ten reading selections are presented with footnotes as your primary support. You might find it helpful to review the Verba Utilia before you begin each piece.

Hunting with a Notebook

Verba Ūtilia: contemnō, genus, licet, omnīnō, quīēs, rīdeō

¹ = nōvistī

² (you) yourself, followed by (I) myself

³ (with the result) that

⁴ hunting spear

⁵ I was composing (either a poem or, less likely, a speech)

⁶ notebooks

⁷ there is no reason why

⁸ how

⁹ on my authority

¹⁰ as . . . so, i.e., not only . . . but also

¹¹ lunch basket and bottle of wine

Rīdēbis, et licet rīdeās. Ego ille quem nōstī¹ aprōs trēs et quidem pulcherrimōs cēpī. “Ipse?”² inquis. Ipse;² nōn tamen ut³ omnīnō ab inertīā meā et quīēte discēderem. Ad rētia sedēbam: erat in proximō nōn vēnābulum⁴ aut lancea, sed stilus et pugillārēs; meditābar⁵ aliquid ēnotābamque, ut, sī
5 manūs vacuās, plēnās tamen cērās⁶ reportārem. Nōn est quod⁷ contemnās hoc studiendī genus. Mīrum est ut⁸ animus agitātiōne mōtūque corporis excitētur. Iam undique silvae et sōlitūdō ipsumque illud silentium quod vēnātiōnī datur magna cōgitātiōnis incitāmenta sunt. Proinde cum vēnābēre, licēbit, auctōre⁹ mē, ut¹⁰ pānārium¹¹ et lagunculam,¹¹ sīc¹⁰ etiam
10 pugillārēs ferās. Experiēris nōn Diānam magis montibus quam Minervam inerrāre. Valē. (I, 6)

Buying a Home in the Country

Verba Ūtilia: dēlecto, emō, magis, pretium, sollicitō

¹ Suetonius Tranquillus

² for as much as

³ a bad buy

⁴ appetite, desire

⁵ the moderate size of the land

⁶ so cheaply (literally, so healthfully)

Tranquillus,¹ contubernālis meus, vult emere agellum quem vēnditāre amīcus tuus dīcitur. Rogō cūrēs quantū² aequum est emat;¹ ita enim dēlectābit ēmissee. Nam mala ēemptiō³ semper ingrāta, eō maximē, quod exprobrāre stultitiam dominō vidētur. In hōc autem agellō, sī modo adrīserit pretium,
5 Tranquillī meī stomachum⁴ multa sollicitant, vicīnitās urbis, opportūnitās viae, mediocritās villae, modus rūris,⁵ quī āvocet magis quam dstringat. Scholasticīs porrō dominīs, ut hic est, sufficit abundē tantum solī ut relevāre caput, reficere oculos, rēptāre per līmitem ūnamque sēmitam terere omnīsque vīticulās suās nōsse et numerāre arbusculās possint.
10 Haec tibi exposuī quō magis scīrēs quantum esset ille mihi, ego tibi dēbitūrus, sī praediolum istud, quod commendātur hīs dōtibus, tam salūbriter⁶ ēmerit ut paenitentiae locum nōn relinquat. Valē. (I, 24)

¹ ut is omitted



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

Many old Roman temples were changed or converted into churches or basilicas as Christianity spread. In Rome, the old church of Saints Cosmas and Damian was established in 527 in the older Temple of Romulus. The vestibule rises over the round Temple of Romulus and still has the bronze door with the original lock that was used in the temple.

Why Don't You Write?

Verba Ūtilia: eximō, occāsiō, optō, valeō

¹ all right, okay; supply sunt

² uneasiness

³ even

⁴ purposely, specially

⁵ provided that

⁶ person

Rēctēne¹ omnia, quod iam prīdem epistulae tuae cessant? An omnia rēctē, sed occupātus es tū? An tū nōn occupātus, sed occāsiō scrībendī vel rāra vel nūlla? Exime hunc mihi scrūpulum,² cui pār esse nōn possum, exime autem, vel³ datā operā⁴ tabellāriō missō. Ego viāticum, ego etiam
5 praemium dabō,¹ nūntiet mihi modo⁵ quod optō. Ipse valeō, sī valēre est suspēsum et ānxium vīvere, exspectantem in hōrās² timentemque prō capite⁶ amīcissimō quidquid accidere hominī potest. Valē. (III, 17)

¹ Pliny will pay the special delivery fee.

² with in: hourly.

Neglect of a Great Man's Tomb

Verba Ūtilia: caveō, dolor, exiguus, orbis terrārum, quondam, subeō

¹ mother-in-law, the mother of a previous wife

² snug little nest

³ inscription, epitaph

⁴ in the memory (of men)

⁵ tombs

⁶ wrong to whom

Cum vēnissem in socrūs¹ meae villam Alsiēnsem, quae aliquamdiū Rūfī Verginī fuit, ipse mihi locus optimī illius et maximī virī dēsīderium nōn sine dolōre renovāvit. Hunc enim colere sēcessum atque etiam senectūtis suae nīdulum² vocāre cōnsueverat. Quōcumque mē contulissem, illum animus, illum oculī requirēbant. Libuit etiam monumentum eius vidēre, et vidisse paenituit. Est enim adhūc imperfectum, nec difficultās operis in causā,¹ modicī ac potius exigui, sed inertia eius² cui cūra mandāta est. Subit indignātiō cum miserātiōne post decimum mortis annum reliquiās neglēctumque cinerem sine titulō,³ sine nōmine iacēre, cuius³ memoriā⁴ orbem
10 terrārum glōria pervagētur. At ille mandāverat cāveratque ut dīvīnum illud et immortāle factum versibus īnscriberētur:

Hic situs est Rūfus, pulsō quī Vindice quondam
imperium asseruit nōn sibi sed patriae.

Tam rāra in amīcitiīs fidēs, tam parāta obliviō mortuōrum ut ipsī nōbīs
15 dēbeāmus etiam conditōria⁵ exstruere omniaque hērēdum officia praesumere. Nam cui nōn est verendum quod vidēmus accidisse Verginiō? Cuius⁶ iniūriam, ut indigniōrem, sīc etiam nōtiōrem ipsius clāritās facit. Valē. (VI, 10)

¹ We would omit in: the reason.

² Rufus' heir

³ with glōria

I Miss You

Verba Ūtilia: absum, careō, nox, pēs

Incrēdibile est quantō dēsideriō tuī¹ tenear. In causā¹ amor primum, deinde quod nōn cōnsuēvimus abesse. Inde est quod² magnam noctium partem in imāgine³ tuā vigil exigō, inde quod interdiū quibus hōrīs tē vīsere solēbam ad diaetam⁴ tuam ipsī mē, ut vērissimē dīcitur, pedēs dūcunt, quod dēnique aeger et maestus ac similis exclūsō ā vacuō līmine 5 recēdō. Ūnum tempus hīs tormentīs caret, quō in forō et amīcōrum lītibus conteror. Aestimā tū quae vīta mea sit, cui requiēs in labōre, in miseriā cūrīsque sōlācium. Valē. (VII, 5)

¹ for you

² Hence it is that

³ in picturing you

⁴ living room

¹ We would omit in: *the reason*.

Is the Praise of Friends a Fault?

Verba Ūtilia: agnōscō, beātus, crīmen, praedicō

Ais quōsdam apud tē reprehendisse tamquam¹ amīcōs meōs ex omnī occāsiōne ultrā modum laudem. Agnōscō² crīmen, amplexor etiam. Quid enim honestius culpā benignitātis? Quī sunt tamen istī quī amīcōs meōs melius nōrint? Sed, ut³ nōrint, quid invident mihi fēlicissimō errōre?⁴ Ut⁵ enim nōn sint tālēs quālēs ā mē praedicantur, ego tamen beātus quod mihi 5 videntur.

¹ on the ground that

² I admit the charge

³ granted that

⁴ begrudge me the delusion

⁵ sinister, wrongheaded

⁶ nec parum multī = there are not a few

Igitur ad aliōs hanc sinistram⁵ dīligentiam cōferant; nec sunt parum multī⁶ quī carpere amīcōs suōs iūdiciū vocant. Mihi numquam persuādēbunt ut meōs amārī ā mē nimium putem. Valē. (VII, 28)

Congratulations

Verba Ūtilia: ergo, precor, suscipiō

Tua quidem pietās, imperātor sānctissime,¹ optāverat ut quam tardis-
simē succēderēs patrī; sed dī immortalēs festīnāvērunt virtūtēs tuās ad
gubernācula reī pūblicae quam suscēperās admovēre. Precor ergō ut tibi et
per tē generī hūmānō prōspēra omnia, id est digna saeculō¹ tuō, contingant.
5 Fortem tē et hilarem, imperātor optime, et prīvātīm et pūblicē optō. (X, 1)

¹ reign

¹ Trajan, who had just become emperor

Fire Department Needed

Verba Ūtilia: dīversus, meminī, ōtiōsus, praecipīō, ūtor

Cum dīversam partem prōvinciae circumīrem, Nīcomēdiae vāstissimum
incendium multās prīvātōrum domōs et duo pūblica opera, quamquam viā
interiacente, absūmpsit. Est autem lātius sparsum, prīmum violentiā ventī,
deinde inertīā hominum, quōs satis cōnstat ōtiōsōs et immōbilēs tantī malī
5 spectātōrēs perstitisse; et aliōquī nūllus umquam in pūblicō sīphō,¹ nūlla
hama,² nūllum dēnique īnstrūmentum ad incendia compescenda. Et haec
quidem, ut iam praecēpī, parābuntur.

¹ fire engine (nominative)

² bucket

³ company

⁴ only

⁵ for anything else

⁶ following (preposition)

⁷ cities

⁸ for the same (purpose)

⁹ political clubs

Tū, domine, dispice an īnstituendum putēs collēgium³ fabrōrum dum-
taxat⁴ hominum CL. Ego attendam nē quis nisi faber recipiātur nēve iūre
10 concessō in aliud⁵ ūtātur; nec erit difficile custōdīre tam paucōs. (X, 33)

Tibi quidem secundum⁶ exempla complūrium in mentem vēnit posse
collēgium fabrōrum apud Nīcomēdēnsēs cōstituī. Sed meminerīmus
prōvinciam istam et praecipuē eās cīvītātēs⁷ eius modī factiōnibus esse
vexātās. Quodcumque nōmen ex quācumque causā dederimus iīs quī in
15 idem⁸ contrāctī fuerint, hetaeriae⁹ brevī fient. Satius itaque est comparārī
ea quae ad coercendōs ignēs auxiliō esse possint admonērīque dominōs
praediōrum ut et ipsī inhi-beant, ac, sī rēs poposcerit, accursū¹ populī ad
hoc ūtī. (X, 34)

¹ i.e., the spectators, those who rush to the scene

Roman Efficiency: A Water Supply

Verba Ūtilia: assequor, dēsum, modicus

Sinōpēnsēs, domine, aquā dēficiuntur;¹ quae vidētur et bona et cōpiōsa ab sextō decimō mīliārīō² posse perdūcī. Est tamen statim ab capite³ paulō amplius passus mīlle³ locus suspectus et mollis, quem ego interim explōrārī modicō impendiō iussī, an recipere et sustinēre opus₁ possit. Pecūnia, cūrantibus nōbīs, contrācta⁴ nōn deerit, sī tū, domine, hoc genus operis et salūbritātī et amoenitātī valdē sitientis colōniae indulseris. (X, 90)

¹ are short of

² milestone

³ for a little more than a mile from the source; **amplius** does not

affect the case of **passus**

⁴ collected by my efforts

⁵ that

⁶ resources

Ut coepistī, Secunde cārissime, explōrā dīlīgenter an locus ille quem suspectum habēs sustinēre opus aquaeductūs possit. Neque enim dubitandum putō quīn⁵ aqua perdūcenda sit in colōniam Sinōpēnsem, sī modo ea vīribus⁶ suīs assequī₂ potest, cum plūrimum ea rēs et salūbritātī et voluptātī 10 eius collātūra sit. (X, 91)

₁ i.e., an aqueduct with its arches

₂ Supply **aquam** as object.

What Shall We Do About the Christians?

Verba Ūtilia: cōsulō, fallō, interim, intersum, negō, nesciō, prōsum, pūniō, saeculum, scelus, speciēs, vetō

Sollemne est mihi, domine, omnia dē quibus dubitō ad tē referre. Quis enim potest melius vel cūctātiōnem meam regere vel ignōrantiam instruere?

Cognitiōnibus dē Chrīstiānīs interfui numquam; ideō nesciō quid et quātenus¹ aut pūnīrī soleat aut quaerī. Nec mediocriter haesitāvī sitne
5 aliquod discrīmen aetātum an quamlibet² tenerī nihil ā rōbustiōribus differant, dētur paenitentiae venia an eī quī omnīnō Chrīstiānus fuit dēsisse nōn prōsit,¹ nōmen³ ipsum sī flāgitiīs careat, an flāgitia cohaerentia nōminī pūniantur.

Interim iīs quī ad mē tamquam Chrīstiānī dēferēbantur hunc sum
10 secūtus modum. Interrogāvī ipsōs an essent Chrīstiānī. Cōfidentēs iterum ac tertiō interrogāvī, supplicium minātus; perseverantēs dūcī² iussī. Neque enim dubitābam, quālecumque esset⁴ quod fatērentur, pertināciam certē et inflexibilem obstinātiōnem dēbere pūnīrī. Fuērunt aliī similis āmentiae quōs, quia cīvēs Rōmānī erant, adnotāvī in urbem remittendōs. Mox ipsō
15 trāctātū,⁵ ut fierī solet, diffundente sē crīmine, plūrēs speciēs incidērunt.⁶

Prōpositus est libellus sine auctōre,³ multōrum nōmina continēns. Quī negābant esse sē Chrīstiānōs aut fuisse, cum, praeunte mē,⁷ deōs appellārent et imāginī tuae, quam propter hoc iusseram cum simulācrīs nūminum afferrī, tūre ac vīnō supplicārent, praetereā maledīcerent⁸
20 Chrīstō, quōrum nihil posse cōgī dīcuntur⁹ quī sunt rē vērā Chrīstiānī, dīmīttendōs⁵ esse putāvī.

Aliī ab indice nōminātī esse sē Chrīstiānōs dīxērunt et mox negāvērunt: fuisse quidem, sed dēsisse, quīdam ante triennium, quīdam ante plūrēs annōs, nōn nēmō¹⁰ etiam ante vīgintī. Hī quoque omnēs et imāginem tuam
25 deōrumque simulācra venerātī sunt et Chrīstō maledīxērunt.

¹ to what extent

² the very young (with tenerī)

³ the name (Christian). Should a man be punished for being a confessed Christian or only for any crimes he might commit in the name of Christianity?

⁴ whatever it was

⁵ by the handling (in the trials). The more Pliny looked into the matter the more complex it became.

⁶ more types turned up

⁷ with me speaking (the words of the oath) first

⁸ reviled

⁹ none of which things, it is said, they can be compelled (to do) (literally, they are said not to be able to be, etc.)

¹⁰ not none = some

¹ The subject is dēsisse (from dēsīnō).

² i.e., to prison and death

³ i.e., anonymous

⁴ What was patriotism to the Romans was idolatry to the Christians.

⁵ modifies the antecedent (not expressed) of quī

Affirmābant autem hanc fuisse summam vel culpaē suae vel errōris, quod essent solitī statō diē⁵, ante lūcem convenīre carmenque Chrīstō quasi deō dīcere sēcum in vicem,¹¹ sēque sacrāmētō nōn in scelus aliquod obstringere, sed nē fūrta, nē latrōcinia, nē adulteria committerent,⁶ nē fidem fallerent, nē dēpositum appellātī¹² abnegārent; quibus perāctīs, mōrem sibi 30 discēdendī fuisse, rūsusque coeundī ad capiendum cibum,⁷ prōmiscuum tamen et innoxium;¹³ quod ipsum facere dēsisse post ēdictum meum, quō secundum mandāta tua hetaeriās¹⁴ esse vetueram. Quō magis necessārium crēdidī ex duābus ancillīs quae ministrae⁸ dīcēbantur, quid esset vērī et¹⁵ per tormenta quaerere. Nihil aliud invēnī quam superstitiōnem prāvam, 35 immodicam.

Ideō, dilātā cognitiōne, ad cōsulendum tē dēcurrī. Vīsa est enim mihi rēs digna cōsultātiōne, maximē propter perīclitantium numerum. Multī enim omnis aetātis, omnis ōrdinis, utrīusque sexūs etiam, vocantur in perīculum et vocābuntur. Neque cīvitatēs tantum sed vīcōs etiam atque 40 agrōs superstitiōnis istīus contāgiō pervagāta est; quae vidētur sistī et corrigī posse. Certē satis cōstat prope iam dēsōlāta templa coepisse celebrārī et sacra sollemnia diū intermissa repetī pāstumque vērīre¹⁶ victimārum, cuius adhūc rārissimus ēmptor inveniēbātur. Ex quō facile est opīnārī quae turba hominum ēmendārī possit, sī sit paenitentiae locus. (X, 96) 45

Actum quem dēbuistī, mī Secunde, in excutiendīs causīs eōrum quī Chrīstiānī ad tē dēlātī fuerant secūtus es. Neque enim in ūniversum¹⁷ aliquid quod quasi certam fōrmam habeat cōstituī potest. Conquīrendī nōn sunt; sī dēferantur et arguantur, pūniendī sunt, ita tamen ut quī negāverit sē Chrīstiānum esse idque rē ipsā manifēstum fēcerit, id est supplicandō dīs 50 nostrīs, quamvis suspectus in praeteritum,¹⁸ veniam ex paenitentiā impetret. Sine auctōre vērō prōpositī libellī in nūllō crīmīne locum habēre dēbent. Nam et pessimī exemplī¹⁹ nec nostrī saeculī est. (X, 97)

¹¹ *responsively*

¹² *when requested*

¹³ *ordinary and harmless* (not the flesh of human beings, as was charged, probably through misunderstanding of Communion)

¹⁴ *political clubs*

¹⁵ *even*

¹⁶ *is being sold* (from *vēneo*)

¹⁷ *in general*

¹⁸ *in the past*

¹⁹ *both (a matter) of bad precedent and not*

⁵ Sunday

⁶ The clause is object of *obstringere*.

⁷ the "love feast" of the early Christians

⁸ Pliny so translates the Greek word (*diakonissai*), from which comes our word "deaconess." The language of Bithynia was Greek.



Unit II

Short Selections from Aulus Gellius



This Flemish tapestry depicts two great generals and their armies, Scīpiō Āfricanus and Hannibal Barca. The Romans and Carthaginians fought three long wars that spanned over 120 years. The second Punic War was the most important and one of the most decisive wars in history. Hannibal, who at the age of 9 was taken to Spain where he was forced to swear lifelong hostility against Rome, crossed the Alps with a train of elephants. Harassed and frustrated by the delaying tactics of the general Fabius Maximus, he was finally broken down. Meanwhile, the Roman general Scīpiō entered Spain and succeeded in driving out the remaining Carthaginian forces. Scīpiō then continued into Africa where he finally defeated Hannibal at Zama in 201 B.C.

Aulus Gellius

Aulus Gellius, a Roman writer of the second century (born about A.D. 130), has preserved in his only extant work, *Attic Nights* (*Noctēs Atticae*), an extremely miscellaneous but often valuable and interesting collection of literary material from earlier times.

Written during winter nights in Attica, this huge scrapbook (twenty books) contains anecdotes, bits of history and poetry, and essays on various phases of philosophy, geometry, and grammar. Of particular interest are quotations from Greek and Latin authors whose works are now wholly or in great part lost.

A Filibuster in the Senate

¹ at times . . . at other times

² = eīs

³ it seemed (best)

⁴ (the rule) was kept

⁵ than

⁶ was under deliberation

⁷ to the best interests of

⁸ prolonging

⁹ messenger, though more like a sergeant-at-arms

¹⁰ let go

Ante lēgem quae nunc dē senātū habendō observātur, ōrdō rogandī sentiā varius fuit. Aliās¹ prīmus rogābātur quī prīnceps ā cēnsōribus in senātum lēctus fuerat, aliās¹ quī dēsignātī cōsulēs erant; quīdam ā cōsulibus studiō aut necessitudīne aliquā adductī, quem īs² vīsum³ erat, honōris grātiā extrā ōrdinem sententiam prīmum rogābant. Observātum⁴ tamen est, cum extrā ōrdinem fieret, nē quis quemquam ex aliō quam⁵ ex cōsulārī locō sententiam prīmum rogāret. C. Caesar in cōsulātū quem cum M. Bibulō gessit, quattuor sōlōs extrā ōrdinem rogāsse sententiam dīcitur. Ex hīs quattuor prīncipem rogābat M. Crassum; sed postquam filiam Cn. Pompeiō dēsponderat, prīmum coeperat Pompeium rogāre.

Eius rei ratiōnem reddidisse eum₁ senātuī Tīrō Tullius, M. Cicerōnis libertus, refert itaque sē ex patrōnō suō audisse scrībit. Id ipsum Capitō Ateius in librō quem dē officiō senātōriō composuit scrīptum reliquit.

In eōdem librō Capitōnis id quoque scrīptum est: "C. Caesar cōsul M. Catōnem sententiam₂ rogāvit. Catō rem quae cōsulēbatur,⁶ quoniam nōn ē⁷ rē publicā vidēbātur, perficī nōlēbat. Eius rei dūcendae⁸ grātiā longā ōratiōne ūtēbātur eximēbatque dīcendō diem. Erat enim iūs senātōrī, ut sententiam rogātus dīceret ante quicquid vellet aliae₃ rei et quoad vellet. Caesar cōsul viātōrem⁹ vocāvit eumque, cum finem nōn faceret, prēndī loquentem et in carcerem dūcī iussit. Senātus cōsurrēxit et prōsequēbātur Catōnem in carcerem. Hāc invidiā factā, Caesar dēstitit et mittī¹⁰ Catōnem iussit." (IV, 10)

₁ Caesar

₂ Two accusatives are used with verbs of asking.

₃ for the more usual *alterius*; *alius* was avoided.

QUESTIONS

1. Who was Caesar's colleague as consul?
2. What was the relationship of Caesar and Pompey?
3. What was the reaction of the senate to Caesar's arrest of Cato?
4. What was the order of calling upon senators for their opinions?

Grammar

The Subjunctive by Attraction

When a verb is in a clause that is dependent on a verb in the subjunctive or infinitive, the dependent clause verb is frequently "attracted" to the subjunctive. This most often happens in a dependent clause within an indirect statement (infinitive) or indirect command or question (subjunctive).

**Plīnius dicit Traiānum, quī
imperātor sit, mēnsōrem
mittere debēre.**

*Pliny says that Trajan, who is
emperor, ought to send an
architect.*

**Caesar petīvit ut copiae
quās sociī pollicitī essent
missae sint.**

*Caesar demanded that the
troops that the allies had
promised be sent.*

TRANSLATION

1. It did not seem best to Caesar to ask Crassus.
2. He did not think that Cato should talk so much.
3. Cato was present for the sake of giving his opinion.
4. He was not ready, however, to give his opinion immediately.

Vocabulary

cōsul

lēx

prīnceps

senātus

studium

dēspondeō

nōlō

observō

rogō

quoad

Scīpiō, a Man Beyond Reproach

¹ the Elder; subject of **praestiterit** and **fuert**

² highminded

³ recall (with **memoriā**)

⁴ glorious

⁵ we should not be

⁶ toward (preposition)

⁷ rascal, i.e., Naevius

⁸ to congratulate

Scīpiō Āfricānus antīquior¹ quantā virtūtum glōriā praestiterit et quam fuerit altus animī² atque magnificus, plūrimīs rēbus quae dīxit quaeque fēcīt dēclārātum est. Ex quibus sunt haec duo exempla eius fīdūciae atque exsuperantiae ingentis:

- 5 Cum M. Naevius, tribūnus plēbis, accūsāret eum ad populum diceretque accēpisse ā rēge Antiochō pecūniam ut condiciōnibus grātiōsīs et mollibus pāx cum eō populī Rōmānī nōmine fieret, et quaedam item alia crīmīnī₁ daret indigna tālī virō, tum Scīpiō pauca praefātus quae dignitās vītae suae atque glōria postulābat: “memoriā,” inquit, “Quirītēs, repetō³ diem esse hodiernum quō Hannibalem Poenum imperiō vestrō inimīcissimum magnō proeliō vīcī in terrā Āfricā pācemque et victōriam vōbīs peperī₂ īnspectābilem.⁴ Nōn igitur sīmus⁵ adversum⁶ deōs ingrātī et, cēseō, relinquāmus nebulōnem⁷ hunc, eāmus hinc prōtinus Iovī optimo maximō grātulātum.”⁸ Id cum dīxisset, āvertit et īre ad Capitōlium coepit. Tum cōntiō ūniversa, 15 quae ad sententiam dē Scīpiōne ferendam convēnerat, relīctō tribūnō, Scīpiōnem in Capitōlium comitāta atque inde ad aedēs eius cum laetitiā et grātulātiōne solemnī prōsecūta est. (IV, 18)

QUESTIONS

1. What did Naevius, the tribune, accuse Scīpiō of?
2. Whom did Scīpiō conquer?
3. What did Scīpiō do after he spoke?
4. How did the assembly (cōntiō) react to Scīpiō's statement?

Grammar

Review the hortatory and jussive subjunctives. Remember that they are essentially a command (or suggestion) in the first or third person and are generally translated using *Let*. For the negative, use **nē**.



TRANSLATION



1. Everybody asked what Scīpiō had done.
2. Let us not believe that Scīpiō ever did such things.
3. When Scīpiō heard the charges, he decided to go away.
4. Do you believe that the charges were worthy of so great a man?

¹ dative of purpose

² from **pariō**

Vocabulary

condiciō	hodiernus	āvertō
contiō	sollemnis	cēseō
crīmen	ūniversus	pariō
dignitās		postulō
fīdūcia		prōsequor
laetitia		relinquō

Word Studies

Explain *exemption, fiduciary, incarcerate, incriminate, indignity, ingrate, mollify, preface.*

Explain the force of the prefix in *āvertō, exsuperantia, indignus, inimicus, praestō, repetō.*

A Promise Must Be Kept

Iūs iurandum apud Rōmānōs inviolatē sānctēque habitum servātumque est. Id et mōribus lēgibusque multīs ostenditur, et hoc quod dicēmus eī rei nōn tenue argumentum esse potest. Post proelium Cannēse¹ Hannibal, Carthāginiēnsium imperātor, ex captīvīs nostrīs ēlēctōs decem Rōmānīs mīsīt mandāvitque eīs pactusque est, ut, sī populō Rōmānō vidērētur,² permūtātiō³ fieret captīvōrum. Hoc, priusquam proficīscerentur, iūs iurandum⁴ eōs adēgit reditūrōs esse in castra Poenica, sī Rōmānī captīvōs nōn permūtārent.

¹ the battle of Cannae

² it seemed best

³ did not please (deponent)

⁴ by an oath

⁵ = essent

⁶ pretended, tricky

Veniunt Rōmānīs decem captīvī. Mandātum Poenī imperātōris in senātū expōnunt. Permūtātiō senātūi nōn placita.⁵ Parentēs, cognātī, affīnēsque captīvōrum amplexī eōs, dicēbant statum eōrum integrum incolumemque¹⁰ esse ac nē ad hostes redīre vellent orābant. Tum octō ex hīs iustum nōn esse respondērunt, quoniam dēiūrīō⁴ vīnctī forent,⁵ statimque, utī iūrātī erant,² ad Hannibalem profectī sunt. Duo reliquī Rōmae mānsērunt solūtōsque esse sē ac liberātōs religiōne³ dicēbant, quoniam, cum ēgressī castra hostium fuissent, commentīciō⁶ cōsiliō regressī eōdem,⁴ tanquam sī ob aliquam¹⁵ fortuitam causam, īssent atque ita, iūre iurandō satisfactō, rūsus iniūrātī abīssent. Haec eōrum fraudulenta calliditās tam esse turpis exīstimāta est ut contemptī vulgō sint, cēnsōrēsque eōs postea et damnīs et ignōminiīs affēcērunt, quoniam quod factūrōs dēierāverant nōn fēcissent. (VI, 18, 1–10)

¹ subject of *adēgit*

² deponent

³ i.e., the oath

⁴ adverb

QUESTIONS

1. What was the Roman attitude toward an oath?
2. What oath did Hannibal compel the prisoners to take?
3. How did the Romans react to the two prisoners who broke their word?

Grammar

Anticipatory Clauses

An anticipatory clause in the subjunctive occurs after **dum** (until), **antequam** (before), and **priusquam** (before) to express an action that is anticipated. To express an actual fact, the indicative is used.

Exspectābat dum cōsul loqueretur.	<i>He waited until the consul spoke.</i>
Priusquam loqueretur, occupātus est.	<i>Before he could speak, he was seized.</i>
Antequam locūtus est, rīsīt.	<i>Before he spoke, he laughed.</i>

Causal Clauses

A causal (*because, since*) clause introduced by **quod**, **propterea quod**, or **quoniam** is in the indicative when it expresses the reason of the writer or speaker and in the subjunctive when the reason is someone else's.

Quod tardē erās, excēdere nōn poteram.	<i>Because you were late, I was unable to leave.</i>
Dixērunt sē irā movēre quod tardē esses.	<i>They said they were angry because you were late.</i>

TRANSLATION

1. We begged them not to return to Carthage.
2. Because we believe you, you will be permitted to go to Rome.
3. Before they could go to Rome, they had to swear that they would return.
4. The enemy said that they would not trust the Romans because they never told the truth.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The Temple of Antoninus and Faustina is one of the best-preserved in the Roman Forum. Faustina was the beloved daughter of Emperor Antoninus Pius. She married Marcus Aurelius, who was the adopted son of Antoninus, and who became emperor upon his father's death. The Antonines were fairly traditional builders, but when Faustina died, the emperor deified her and erected a magnificent temple in her honor. Later the temple was converted into a Christian church which, in turn, was renovated in the 16th century.



affinis
cognātus
ignōminia
iūs iūrandum

incolumis
turpis

amplector
iūrō
ōrō
ostendō
permūtō
vinciō

priusquam
quoniam
sāctē

Word Studies

Note the many words related to *iūs* in the selection above: *iūs iūrandum*, *iūstus*, *dēiūrium*, *iūrō*, *iniūrātus*, *dēierō*.

Cognātus (co-gnātus, *born together*) is a blood relative. *Affinis* (ad-finis, *neighboring to*) is a relative by marriage.

Crow Eats Man

¹ crow

² otherwise, differently

³ sprung from such a family, i.e., that of the Valerii

⁴ during the consulship of L. Furius and Appius Claudius

⁵ taking big steps (literally, walking big)

⁶ brandishing

⁷ hesitating

⁸ they were fighting hand to hand (literally, hands were being joined)

Dē Maximō Valeriō, quī Corvīnus appellātus est ob auxilium prōpugnātiōnemque corvī¹ ālitis, haud quisquam est nōbilium scrīptōrum quī secus² dīxerit. Ea rēs prōrsus mīranda sīc profectō est in librīs annālibus memorāta: Adulēscēns tālī genere ēditus,³ L. Fūriō, Claudiō Appiō cōsulibus,⁴ fit tribūnus mīlītāris. Atque in eō tempore cōpia Gallōrum ingentēs agrum Pomptīnum īnsēderant. Dux intereā Gallōrum vāstā et arduā prōcēritāte armīsque aurō praefulgentibus grandia ingrediēns⁵ et manū tēlum reciprocāns⁶ incēdēbat perque contemptum et superbiam circumspiciēns dēspiciēnsque omnia¹ venīre iubet et congregī, sī quis pugnāre sēcum ex omnī Rōmānō exercitū auderet. Tum Valerius tribūnus, cēterīs inter metum pudōremque ambiguīs,⁷ impetrātō² prius ā cōsulibus ut in Gallum tam arrogantem pugnāre sēsē permitterent, prōgreditur intrepidē modestēque obviam. Et congregiuntur et cōsistunt, et cōnserēbantur iam manūs.⁸ Atque ibi vīs quaedam dīvīna fit: corvus repente imprōvīsus advolat et super galeam tribūnī īnsistit atque inde in adversārī ōs atque oculōs pugnāre incipit; īnsilībat, obturbābat, et unguibus manum laniābat et prōspectum ālīs arcēbat atque, ubi satis saevierat, revolābat in galeam

¹ for omnēs; the neuter is more inclusive and contemptuous.

² The ut clause is the subject of the ablative absolute.

tribūnī. Sīc tribūnus, spectante utrōque exercitū, et suā virtūte nīxus⁹ et operā ālitis prōpugnātus, ducem hostium ferōcissimum vīcit interfēcitque¹⁰ atque ob hanc causam cognōmen habuit “Corvīnus.” Id factum est annīs 20¹¹ 12¹² quadringentīs quīnque post Rōmam conditam.¹⁰

Statuam Corvīnō istī dīvus¹¹ Augustus in forō suō statuendam cūrāvit.¹² In eius statuāe capite corvī simulācrum est, reī pugnaeque quam dīximus monumentum. (IX, 11)

QUESTIONS

1. What does the word “annals” mean?
2. How did Augustus honor Corvinus?
3. How did Valerius get his cognomen, Corvinus?
4. What was the attitude of the leader of the Gauls toward the Romans?

Grammar

Ablative of Origin

The ablative case with or without a preposition (**ab**, **ex**, **dē**) is used to express origin.

Ampliō genere natus est. *He was born of a distinguished family.*

Ablative of Description

The ablative, without a preposition but with an accompanying adjective, is used to describe a person or thing. It is generally used to describe temporary qualities, such as appearance.

Erat equus magnā amplitūdine. *He was a horse of great size.*

TRANSLATION

1. Was there anyone who fought more bravely for freedom?
2. There is no one who has done greater things for his country.
3. Maximus, a young man of no great height, was born of a noble family.
4. A crow that fought so fiercely deserves to be rewarded with a monument.

Vocabulary



adulēscēns

metus

oculus

ōs

pudor

superbia

ferōx

arceō

condō

impetrō

statuō

intereā

obviam

prōfectō

quisquam

Word Studies

Explain *ingress*, *congress*, *progress*; *circumspect*, *despise*, *spectator*.

Give the literal meaning of **imprōvīsus**, **prōpugnātiō**.

Reconciliation, a Sign of Greatness

P. Āfricānus superior et Tiberius Gracchus, Tiberiī et C. Gracchōrum pater, rērum gestārum magnitudīne et honōrum atque vītāe dignitāte illustrēs virī, dissēnsērunt saepe dē rē pūblicā et eā¹ sīve quā aliā rē nōn amīcī fuērunt. Ea simultās cum diū mānsisset et sollemnī diē epulum Iovī libārētur atque ob id sacrificium senātus in Capitōliō epulārētur, fors fuit ut apud eandem mēnsam duo illī iūctim locārentur. Tum quasi diīs immortālibus arbitrīs in convīviō Iovis optimī maximī dextrās eōrum condūcentibus,² repente amīcissimī factī. Neque solum amīcitia incepta, sed affīnitās simul īnstitūta; nam P. Scīpiō fīliam virginem habēns iam virō 5 mātūram³ ibi tunc eōdem in locō dēspōndit eam Tiberiō Gracchō.

Aemilius quoque Lepidus et Fulvius Flaccus nōbilī genere amplissimisque honōribus ac summō locō in cīvitatē praeditī, odiō inter sēsē gravī et simultātē diūtinā cōnflīctātī sunt. Posteā populus eōs simul cēnsōrēs facit. Atque illī, ubi vōce praecōnis renūtiātī sunt, ibīdem in 15 campō statim, nōndum dīmissā cōntiōne, ultrō uterque⁴ et parī voluntāte cōiūctī complexīque sunt, exque eō diē et in ipsā cēnsurā et posteā iūgī⁵ cōncordiā fīdissimē amīcissimēque vīxērunt. (XII, 8)

¹ because of this or some other thing

² joining (ablative absolute with diīs)

³ old enough for a husband

⁴ they, both of them (with illī)

⁵ from iūgis, everlasting

QUESTIONS

1. How were the enemies Africanus and Tiberius Gracchus reconciled?
2. Who was the father of Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus?
3. What office did the enemies Aemilius Lepidus and Fulvius Flaccus hold?
4. After the election, what did these two men do?

Grammar

Two Accusatives

Certain verbs, including verbs of *asking*, *demanding*, and *teaching*, take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing. Verbs of *making*, *naming*, *choosing*, *showing* may take two accusatives of the *same* person or thing.

Magister eōs scientiam docuit.	<i>The teacher taught them</i> <i>science.</i>
Populus Marcum ducem dēlēgit.	<i>The people chose Marcus</i> <i>leader.</i>

TRANSLATION

1. The people made them censors and they became firm friends.
2. When their enmity had lasted a long time, they met at a dinner.
3. Because they disagreed about public affairs they had become enemies.
4. It so happened that Scīpiō had a daughter whom he betrothed to Tiberius Gracchus.

Vocabulary

convīvium	illūstris	postea
fors	praeditus	ultrō
odium		
simultās	coniungō	
	dissentiō	

Word Studies

Explain *arbitrate*, *convivial*, *dexterity*, *dissension*, *voluntary*. What does *ibid.* stand for and what does it mean?

How to Give a Dinner Party

¹ *Menippean*, after the Greek philosopher Menippus

² *parts*

³ diminutive of *homō*, here used affectionately: *nice people*

⁴ *the bench*, i.e., *the courtroom*

⁵ *at that time*

⁶ *of that kind*

⁷ *the host*

⁸ *luxurious*

⁹ *stinginess*

¹⁰ *biōphelē*, *helpful to life*

Lepidissimus liber est M. Varrōnis ex satirīs Menippēis¹ quī inscribitur: “Nescis quid vesper sērus vekat,” in quō disserit dē aptō convīvārū numerō dēque ipsiūs convīviī habitū cultūque. Dīcit autem convīvārū numerum incipere oportēre ā Grātiārū numerō et prōgredī ad Mūsārū,¹ 5 id est, proficīscī ā tribus et cōsistere in novem, ut, cum paucissimī convīvae sunt, nōn pauciōrēs sint quam trēs, cum plūrimī, nōn plūrēs quam novem. “Nam multōs,” inquit, “esse nōn convenit, quod turba plērumque est turbulenta. Ipsum deinde convīvium cōstat ex rēbus quattuor et tum dēnique omnibus suis numerīs² absolūtum est sī bellī² homunculī³ collēctī 10 sunt, sī ēlēctus locus, sī tempus lēctum, sī apparātus nōn neglēctus. Nec loquācēs autem convīvās nec mūtōs legere oportet, quia ēloquentia in forō et apud subsellia,⁴ silentium vērō nōn in convīviō, sed in cubiculō esse dēbet.” Sermōnēs igitur id temporis⁵ habendōs cēnsent nōn super rēbus ānxiīs, sed iūcundōs et cum quādam voluptāte ūtilēs, ex quibus ingenium 15 nostrum venustius fiat et amoenius. “Quod prōfectō,” inquit, “ēveniet, sī dē id genus⁶ rēbus ad commūnem vītāe ūsum pertinentibus cōnfābulēmur, dē quibus in forō atque in negōtiīs agendī nōn est ōtium. Dominum⁷ autem convīviī esse oportet nōn tam lautum⁸ quam sine sordibus.⁹ In convīviō legī nōn omnia dēbent, sed ea potissimum quae simul sint βιωφελῆ¹⁰ et 20 dēlectent.” (XIII, 11, 1–5)

QUESTIONS

1. How many guests should there be at a dinner party?
2. What sort of conversation should there be at dinner?
3. What was the title of Varro's book of satires? What was the title of the particular book here referred to?

Grammar

Review conditions on page 307. Remember that simple conditions are in the indicative, whereas contrary-to-fact and future-less-vivid conditions require the subjunctive.

¹ Supply *numerum*.

² adjective



C. M. Dixon

Located near the Temple of Vesta is the House of the Vestal Virgins. You can still see many statues and inscriptions there, including the names of some of the Vestals. One name has been erased, leaving only the letter C. It is possible that it is a reference to Claudia, who converted to Christianity in the 4th century.

1. I prefer a dinner which is good but not luxurious.
2. If the dinner should not be good, would you tell the host?
3. If there were only four guests, it would be difficult to find places for them.

Vocabulary

ēloquentia	amoenus	cōsistō	dēnique
habitus	aptus	conveniō	potissimum
vesper	lepidus	dēlectō	
	paucus	incipiō	
		īnscrībō	
		neglegō	

Word Studies

Explain *amenities, delectable, loquacious, negligent, sordid, turbulence, vespers*.

What does *biology* deal with?

Which Is Right?

¹ study

² of no slight reputation (with **grammaticōs**)

³ nominative; literally, upright

Dēfessus ego quondam diūtīnā commentātiōne,¹ laxandī levandīque animī grātiā in Agrippae campō deambulābam. Atque ibi duōs forte grammaticōs cōnspicātus nōn parvī in urbe Rōmā nōminis² certātiōnī₁ eōrum ācerrimae adfuī, cum alter in cāsū vocātīvō “vir ēgregī” dīcendum contenderet, alter “vir ēgregie.”

Ratiō autem eius quī “ēgregī” oportēre dīcī cēnsēbat huiusce₂ modī fuit: “Quaecumque,” inquit, “nōmina seu vocābula rēctō³ cāsū numerō singulārī ‘us’ syllabā fīniuntur, in quibus ante ultimam syllabam posita est ‘i’ littera, ea omnia cāsū vocātīvō ‘i’ littera terminantur, ut ‘Caelius Caelī,’ ‘modius modī,’¹ ‘tertius tertī,’ ‘Accius Accī,’ ‘Titius Titī,’ et similia omnia; sic igitur ‘ēgregius,’ quoniam ‘us’ syllabā in cāsū nōminandī fīnītur eamque syllabam praecēdit ‘i’ littera, habēre dēbēbit in cāsū vocandī ‘i’ litteram extrēmam, et idcirco ‘ēgregī,’ nōn ‘ēgregie,’ rēctius dīcētur.”

₁ with adfuī

₂ emphatic form of huius

Hoc ubi ille alter audīvit: “ō,” inquit, “ēgregie grammatice vel, sī id māvīs, ēgregissime, dīc, ōrō tē, ‘īnscius’ et ‘īmpius’ et ‘sōbrius’ et ‘ēbrius’ et ‘proprius’ 15 et ‘propitius’ et ‘ānxius’ et ‘contrārius,’ quae ‘us’ syllabā fīniuntur, in quibus ante ultimam syllabam ‘i’ littera est, quem cāsum vocandī habent? Mē enim pudor et verēcundia tenent⁴ prōnūntiāre ea secundum⁵ tuam dēfīnitiōnem.” Sed cum ille paulisper oppositū⁶ hōrum vocābulōrum commōtus reticuisset et mox tamen sē collēgisset⁷ eandemque illam quam dēfīnierat rēgulam⁸ 20 retinēret et prōpugnāret, eaque inter eōs contentiō longius dūcerētur, nōn arbitrātus ego operae pretium⁹ esse eadem istaec diūtius audīre, clāmantēs compugnantēsque illōs reliquī. (XIV, 5)

⁴ keep me from

⁵ according to (preposition)

⁶ by the opposition

⁷ had collected his wits

⁸ rule

⁹ worthwhile; literally, the price of the effort

QUESTIONS

1. Where was Gellius walking?
2. Why had he gone there?
3. What were the grammarians discussing?
4. What was Gellius' evident opinion of the grammarians' discussion?
5. What were the grammarians doing as Gellius left them?

TRANSLATION

1. Tell me why you prefer to say “ēgregī.”
2. Give me a good reason why you prefer “ēgregie.”
3. First I was wearied by my work, then I was wearied by the grammarians.

Vocabulary

cāsus

fīnis

dēfessus

extrēmus

ultimus

verēcundus

cōnspicor

contendō

levō

forte

Newfangled Education Not Wanted

¹ = cōnsulibus

² as

³ to the best interests of, in
accordance with

⁴ = ire

C. Fanniō Strabōne, M. Valeriō Messālā cōss.,¹ senātūs cōnsultum dē philosophīs et dē rhētoribus Latīnīs factum est: "M. Pompōnius praetor senātum cōnsuluit. Quod verba facta sunt dē philosophīs et dē rhētoribus, dē eā rē ita cēnsuērunt, ut M. Pompōnius praetor animadverteret cūrāretque. 5 utī² eī ē³ rē pūblicā fidēque suā vidērētur, utī Rōmae nē essent."

Aliquot deinde annīs post id senātūs cōnsultum Cn. Domitius Ahēnobarbus et L. Licinius Crassus cēnsōrēs dē coercendīs rhētoribus Latīnīs ita ēdīxērunt: "Renūtiātum est nōbīs esse hominēs quī novum genus disciplīnae īstituērunt, ad quōs iuventūs in lūdum conveniat; eōs sibi nōmen 10 imposuisse Latīnōs rhētoras;₁ ibi hominēs adulēscentulōs diēs tōtōs dēsīdēre. Maiōrēs nostrī quae liberōs suōs discere et quōs in lūdōs itāre⁴ vellent īstituērunt. Haec nova, quae praeter cōnsuētūdinem ac mōrem maiōrum fiunt, neque placent neque rēcta videntur."

Neque illīs solum temporibus nimis rudibus necdum Graecā disciplīnā 15 expolitīs philosophī ex urbe Rōmā pulsī sunt, vērū etiam, Domitiānō imperante, senātūs cōnsultō ēiectī atque urbe et Italiā interdictī sunt. Quā tempestāte Epictētus quoque philosophus propter id senātūs cōnsultum Nīcopolim Rōmā dēcessit. (XV. 11)

QUESTIONS

1. Why did Epictetus withdraw from Rome?
2. What was the decree of the Roman senate against the philosophers?
3. Who in ancient Roman times determined the education of the young?

₁ a Greek form of the masculine accusative

Grammar

1. Review the ablative of separation. Remember that most verbs use a preposition, but that **abstineō**, **careō**, **dēiciō**, **desistō**, **excēdō**, and **liberō** do not; separation from people, however, generally requires a preposition (**ab**, **ex**, **dē**).
2. Review the ablative of *place from which*. Remember that the prepositions **ab**, **ex**, and **dē** are used to express *place from which*, except with **domus** and the names of towns and cities, where the preposition is often omitted.

TRANSLATION

1. They departed from Rome before they could be seized.
2. At Rome in the time of Domitian the philosophers were driven out of Rome.
3. Freed from the dangers of the new ideas (*things*), they were able to learn the right (*things*).

Vocabulary

cēnsor

aliquot

animadvertō

cōnsuētūdō

coerceō

iuventūs

cūrō

praetor

ēiciō

placeō

Word Studies

The abbreviation **cōss.** for **cōnsulēs** indicates that in the word **cōnsul** the *n* was nasalized, as in French, and not fully pronounced. The *ss* shows that in abbreviations the last consonant of the abbreviation was doubled to indicate the plural, as in English *pp.* for *pages*.

Secret Writing

¹ with dative: took care of

² one would think

³ in no order

⁴ = *alterius*

⁵ previously

⁶ = *eīs* (with *placēbat*)

⁷ secret code

⁸ smeared on (from *illinō*)

Librī sunt epistulārum C. Caesaris ad C. Oppium et Balbum Cornēlium, quī rēbus eius absentis cūrābant.¹ In hīs epistulīs quibusdam₁ in locīs inveniuntur litterae singulāriae, quās tū putēs² positās inconditē;³ nam verba ex hīs litterīs cōficī nūlla possunt. Erat autem conventum₂ inter eōs clandestinum de commūtandō sitū littērarum, ut in scrīptō quidem alia aliae⁴ 5 locum et nōmen tenēret, sed in legendō locus cuique suus et potestās restituerētur; quaenam vērō littera prō quā scrīberētur, ante⁵ īs,⁶ sicutī dīxī, placēbat quī hanc scrībendī latebram⁷ parābant. Est adeō Probī grammaticī commentārius satis cūriōsē factus dē occultā litterārum significātiōne in 10 epistulārum C. Caesaris scrīptūrā.

Legēbāmus in vetere historiā rērum Poenicārum virum quempiam illūstrem (sīve ille Hasdrubal sīve quis alius est, nōn retineō) epistulam scrīptam super rēbus arcānīs hōc modō abscondisse: pugillāria nova nōndum etiam cērā illita accēpisse, litterās in lignum incīdisse, postea tabulās, utī solitum est, cērā illēvisse⁸ easque tabulās tamquam nōn scrīptās, 15 cui₃ factūrum id praedīxerat mīsisse; eum deinde cēram dērāsisse litterāsque incolumēs lignō incīsās lēgissee. (XVII, 9, 1–5, 16–17)

QUESTIONS

1. Who wrote a book on Caesar's code?
2. What sort of code did Caesar use?
3. What device did Hasdrubal use for secrecy?
4. Whom did Caesar put in charge of affairs in his absence?

TRANSLATION

1. Caesar used a new method of writing.
2. Not everyone could read what he had written.
3. Do you think that Caesar's method was a good (one)?

₁ with *lōcis*

₂ noun

₃ Supply *ad eum* as the antecedent.

Vocabulary

cēra

epistula

significātiō

tabula

verbum

absēns

incolumis

occultus

cōnficiō

incīdō

Word Studies

Explain *absentia*, *arcanum*, *clandestine*, *curator*, *erasure*, *retentive*.

Saturnalia Dinner Away from Home

Sāturnālia Athēnīs agitābāmus hilarē prōrsum ac modestē. Conveniēbāmus autem ad eandem cēnam complūsculī¹ quī Rōmānī in Graeciam vēnerāmus quīque eāsdem auditiōnēs eōsdemque doctōrēs colēbāmus. Tum quī cēnulam ōrdine² suō cūrābat, praemium solvendae quaestiōnis pōnēbat, librum veteris scriptōris vel Graecum vel Latīnum et corōnam ē laurō³ plexam, totidemque rēs quaerēbat quot hominēs istīc erāmus; cumque eās omnīs exposuerat, rem locumque dīcendī sors dabat.³ Quaestiō igitur solūta corōnā et praemiō dōnābātur; nōn solūta autem trāmittēbātur ad eum quī sortitō successerat. Sī nēmō dissolvēbat, corōna eius quaestiōnis deō cuius id fēstum erat dicābātur.

¹ quite a number (of us)

² in his turn

³ chance decided the subject and order

⁴ false arguments

⁵ following (preposition)

10

Tertiō in locō hoc quaesītum est, in quibus verbīs captiōnum⁴ istārum fraus esset, et quō pactō distinguī resolvīque possent: “quod nōn perdidistī, habēs; cornua nōn perdidistī: habēs igitur cornua;” item altera captiō: “quod ego sum, id tū nōn es; homō ego sum: homō igitur tū nōn es.” Quaesītum ibi est, quae esset huius quoque sophismatis resolūtiō: “cum¹⁵ mentior et mentīrī mē dīcō, mentior an vērum dīcō?” Secundum⁵ ea hoc quaesītum est, verbum “vērant,”¹ quod significat “vēra dīcunt,” quisnam poētārum veterum dīxerit.

¹ a very rare word, which Gellius has to explain for his Roman readers

Haec ubi ōrdine quō dīxī prōposita atque, singulīs sorte ductīs, disputāta
 20 explānātaque sunt, librīs corōnīsque omnēs dōnātī sumus nisi ob ūnam
 quaestiōnem, quae fuit dē verbō “vērant.” Nēmō enim tum commemorat
 dictum esse ā Q. Enniō id verbum in tertiō decimō annālium. Corōna igitur
 huius quaestiōnis deō fēriārum istārum Sāturnō data est. (XVIII, 2, 1–5,
 9–10, 12, 15–16)

QUESTIONS

1. Who used the rare word **vērant**?
2. What was the prize offered at the dinner?
3. How were the guests selected for the problems?
4. What sort of problem was presented to the guests?

TRANSLATION

1. We came to dinner not only to eat but also to win prizes.
2. Many had heard the same teachers and read the same books.
3. The questions were difficult, and we did not know what the correct answers were.

Vocabulary

cornū
 corōna
 nēmō
 pactum
 sors

singulī
 totidem

colō
 mentior
 solvō

NOTA-BENE

*Now that you have
 gained experience
 in translating and
 familiarity with
 the style of Aulus
 Gellius, the next
 ten reading selec-
 tions are presented
 with glosses and
 footnotes as your
 primary support.
 You might find it
 helpful to review
 the Verba Ūtilia
 before you begin
 each piece.*



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The Temple of Vesta was one of the most sacred temples in Rome. According to tradition, the round temple was built by Numa, the second king of Rome, to safeguard the image of Minerva and other sacred objects that were carried from Troy by Aeneas. It was here that the six Vestal Virgins tended the sacred fire and kept it burning.

Take It or Leave It

Verba Ūtilia: deūrō, mercor, nimium, percontor, poscō, prōdō

In antīquis annālibus memoria super librīs Sibyllīnīs haec prōdita est: Anus hospita atque incognita ad Tarquinium Superbum rēgem adiit novem librōs ferēns, quōs esse dīcēbat dīvīna ōrācula; eōs velle vēndere. Tarquinius pretium percontātus est. Mulier nimium atque immēsum poposcit; rēx, 5 quasi anus aetāte dēsiperet, dērīsīt. Tum illa trēs librōs ex novem deūrīt, et ecquid¹ reliquōs sex eōdem pretiō emere vellet rēgem interrogāvit. Sed enim Tarquinius id² multō rīsīt magis dīxitque anum iam procul dubiō dēlīrāre. Mulier ibīdem statim trēs aliōs librōs exussit atque id ipsum dēnuō placidē rogat, ut trēs reliquōs eōdem illō pretiō emat. Tarquinius ōre 10 iam sēriō atque attentiōre animō fit, librōs trēs reliquōs mercātur nihilō minōre pretiō quam quod erat petītum prō omnibus. Librī trēs in sacrārium conditī “Sibyllīnī” appellātī; ad eōs quasi ad ōrāculum adeunt, cum dī immortalēs publicē cōsulendī sunt. (I, 19)

¹ whether

² at this

The Tale of a Snake

Verba Ūtilia: cōnflīctiō, immānitās, invisitātus

Tuberō in historiīs scrīptum reliquit bellō prīmō Poenicō¹ Atīlium Rēgulum cōsulem in Āfricā, castrīs apud Bagradam flūmen positīs, proelium grande atque ācre fēcisse adversus ūnum serpentem in illīs locīs stabulantem¹ invīsītātae immānitātis² eumque magnā tōtīus exercitūs 5 cōnflīctiōne ballistīs atque catapultīs diū oppugnātum, eiusque interfecti corium² longum pedēs centum et vīgintī Rōmam mīsisse. (VII, 3)

¹ living

² hide

¹ 264-241 B.C.

² genitive of description with *serpentem*

The First Public Library in Athens

Verba Ūtilia: asportō, augeō, deinceps, porrō

Librōs Athēnīs disciplinārum liberālium pūblicē ad legendum prae bendōs¹ prīmus posuisse dīcitur Pīsistratus tyrannus. Deinceps studiōsius accūrātiusque ipsī Athēniēnsēs auxērunt;¹ sed omnem illam posteā librōrum cōpiam Xerxēs, Athēnārum² potītus, urbe ipsā praeter arcem incēnsā, abstulit asportāvitque in Persās. Eōs porrō librōs ūniversōs multīs post tempestātibus² Seleucus³ 5 rēx, quī Nīcānor appellātus est, referendōs Athēnās cūrāvit.³

Ingēns posteā numerus librōrum in Aegyptō ab Ptolemaeīs rēgibus vel conquīsītus vel cōfectus⁴ est ad mīlia fermē volūminum septingenta; sed ea omnia bellō priōre Alexandrīnō, dum dīripitur ea cīvītās, nōn sponte neque operā cōsultā,⁵ sed ā militibus forte auxiliārīis incēnsa sunt. (VII, 17) 10

¹ Supply librōs.

² genitive with potior: having gained possession of

¹ to be offered (modifies librōs)

² = annis

³ caused to be taken back

⁴ made, i.e., copied

⁵ deliberately (literally, by deliberate effort)

The Ring Finger

Verba Ūtilia: ait, cor, sic, sinister, vetus

Veterēs Graecōs ānulum¹ habuisse in digitō accēpimus sinistrae manūs quī minimō est proximus. Rōmānōs quoque hominēs aiunt sic plērumque ānulīs ūsitātōs.² Causam esse huius rei Āpiōn in librīs Aegyptiacīs hanc¹ dīcit, quod, īnsectīs apertisque hūmānīs corporibus, ut mōs in Aegyptō fuit, quās Graecī ἀνατομάς³ appellant, repertum est nervum quendam⁵ tenuissimum ab eō ūnō digitō dē quō dīximus ad cor hominis pergere ac pervenīre; propterea nōn īnscītum⁴ vīsum esse eum potissimum digitum tālī honōre² decorandum, quī quasi conexus esse cum prīncipātū cordis vidērētur. (X, 10)

¹ ring

² used

³ anatomas (literally, cutting up)

⁴ with nōn: not stupid, i.e., smart

¹ refers to causam

² i.e., of wearing the ring

Boys, Young Men, and Old Men

Verba Ūtilia: cēnsus, idōneus, senex, suprā

¹ enrolled as

² those (i.e., **discrimina**) of boyhood

Tuberō in historiārum prīmō scrīpsit Servium Tullium, rēgem populī Rōmānī, cum illās quīnque classēs seniōrum et iūniōrum cēnsūs faciendī grātiā institueret, puerōs esse exīstimāsse quī minōrēs essent annīs septem decem, atque inde ab annō septimō decimō, quō₁ idōneōs iam esse reī publicae arbitrārētur, mīlitēs scrīpsisse,¹ eōsque ad annum quadrāgēsimum sextum “iūniōrēs” suprāque eum annum “seniōrēs” appellāsse.

Eam rem propterea notāvī, ut discrimina quae fuerint iūdicīō mōribusque maiōrum pueritiae,² iuventae, senectae, ex istā cēnsiōne Servī Tullī, prūdentissimī rēgis, nōscerentur. (X, 28)

₁ The antecedent is **annō**.

The Etiquette of Swearing

Verba Ūtilia: asseverō, dēiūrō, nusquam, vetus

¹ to Hercules

² to say

³ is it (possible) to find it written

In veteribus scrīptīs neque mulierēs Rōmānae per Herculem dēiūrant neque virī per Castorem. Sed cūr illae nōn iūrāverint Herculem,₁ nōn obscurum est, nam Herculāneō¹ sacrificiō abstinēt. Cūr autem virī Castorem iūrantēs nōn appellāverint, nōn facile dictū² est. Nusquam igitur scrīptum invenīre est³ apud idōneōs quidem scrīptōrēs aut “mehercle” fēminam dīcere aut “mēcator” virum; “edepol” autem, quod iūs iūrandum per Pollūcem est, et virō et fēminae commūne est. Sed M. Varrō assevērāt antīquissimōs virōs neque per Castorem neque per Pollūcem dēiūrāre solitōs, sed id iūs iūrandum fuisse tantum fēminārum; paulātīm tamen
10 īnscitiā antīquitātis virōs dīcere “edepol” coepisse factumque esse ita dīcendī mōrem, sed “mēcator” ā virō dīcī in nūllō vetere scrīptō invenīrī. (XI, 6)

₁ Supply per.

How to Write Plays

Verba Ūtilia: eximiē, gignō, proinde, sapiēns, sapiō

Eximiē hoc atque vērissimē Āfrānius poēta dē gignendā comparandāque Sapiētiā opīnātus est, quod eam filiam esse Ūsūs et Memoriae dīxit. Eō namque argūmentō dēmōnstrat, quī sapiēns rērum₁ esse hūmānārum velit, nōn librīs sōlīs neque disciplīnīs rhētoricīs dialecticīsque opus esse, sed oportēre eum versārī quoque exercērīque in rēbus comminus¹ nōscendīs 5 ¹ at first hand (adverb)
eaque omnia ācta et ēventa firmiter meminisse et proinde sapere atque ² experience
cōnsulere ex hīs quae perīcula² ipsa rērum docuerint, nōn quae librī tantum ³ mime, play
aut magistrī tamquam in mīmō³ aut in somniō dēlīrāverint. Versūs Āfrānī sunt in togātā cui Sellae nōmen est:

Ūsus mē genuit, māter peperit Memoria, 10
Sophiam vocant mē Grāī, vōs Sapientiam.
(XIII, 8)

₁ genitive with sapiēns

Can You Speak Twenty-Five Languages?

Verba Ūtilia: diciō, haud, loquor

Quīntus Ennius tria corda habēre sēsē dīcēbat, quod loquī Graecē et Oscē₁ et Latīnē scīret. Mithridātēs autem, Pontī atque Bithyniae rēx inclutus, quī ā Cn. Pompeiō bellō superātus est, quīnque et vīgintī gentium quās sub diciōne habuit linguās percalluit¹ eārumque omnium gentium virīs haud umquam per interpretem collocūtus est, sed ut² quemque ab eō 5 ¹ knew well
² when
³ need
appellārī ūsus³ fuit, proinde linguā et ōrātiōne ipsīus nōn minus scītē quam ⁴ fellow countryman
sī gentilis⁴ eius esset locūtus est. (XVII, 17)

₁ Oscan, spoken in southern Italy, was related to Latin.

FORTVNA LI FEE





Unit III

Cicero Against Catiline

*Cicero denounced Catiline in a series of speeches to the Roman Senate that left Catiline with no options but to run and try to hide. Frustrated by his inability to secure the consulship in 65 B.C., Catiline and his followers conspired to murder the two consuls who were elected. Unsuccessful, they plotted anew and were caught when Cicero intercepted correspondence between the conspirators and immediately convened a meeting of the Senate. Cicero's role in suppressing the conspiracy earned him the title *pater patriae*.*

Robert E. Bright/Photo Researchers

Cicero's Life

Marcus Tullius Cicero was intimately connected with every movement of history in the fateful period in which he lived. But although a great political figure, he is an incomparably greater literary figure, representing the combination of Greek learning and Latin culture and its practical application in Roman thought and institutions that characterized the whole of Roman literature.

Cicero was born near Arpinum (about sixty miles southeast of Rome) on January 3, 106 B.C. On December 7, 43 B.C., the year following Caesar's assassination, he was put to death. Cicero was of a well-to-do equestrian family, not of the nobility. He was sent to Rome for his education, where he studied literature, rhetoric, oratory, and philosophy under the best teachers available. In his study of law he attended the courts to hear the famous orators. He was also trained in acting to contribute to his stage presence in the making of speeches. In the Social War, Cicero completed his military service, which was a prerequisite to a public career.

Cicero made his first appearance in the courts in 81 B.C. in behalf of Publius Quinctius, who was involved in a suit for debt. The following year, in a courageous speech, he defended an anti-Sullan, Sextus Roscius, on a murder charge. After this, at the age of 26, Cicero traveled in the East (Athens, Rhodes) to pursue his studies further, particularly in philosophy and rhetoric. He returned to Rome after two years abroad and married Terentia, a wealthy woman, by whom he had two children, Tullia and Marcus.

The order of advancement in public offices, known as the "cursus honorum," was fixed by law and by custom. When Cicero had reached the age at which Romans were permitted to enter upon the cursus honorum, he began his official career with his election to the quaestorship (75 B.C.), in which he served with distinction in Sicily. Because of his ability and fairness, the Sicilians retained him as their counsel against their ex-governor, Verres, brought to trial for his shameless record of high-handed tyranny and rapacity. As a result of Cicero's brilliant advocacy of the Sicilian cause, Verres went into exile and Cicero supplanted Hortensius, who had defended Verres, as the leading orator of his day.

Cicero became aedile in 69 B.C. and praetor in 66, the momentous year in which he supported Pompey for an extraordinary command in the East against Mithridates, King of Pontus.

Cicero's election to the consulship in 63 B.C. resulted from a split in the opposition and from Pompey's support. Cicero, although a *novus homō*, that is, the first of his family to hold a curule office, won the election because he was considered politically safe. During his term as consul,

Cicero was confronted with the conspiracy of Catiline, crushed this attempt at revolution, and as a result was called father of his country (**pater patriae**), the first Roman to receive this title.

The five years following Cicero's consulship marked a change in political alignments. The first triumvirate, formed in 60 B.C., consisted of Pompey, Crassus, and Caesar, who was elected consul for the year 59 B.C. This three-man consolidation of political power made various overtures to Cicero, who in his patriotism refused them all; he could not reconcile himself to what he considered the unconstitutional attitude of Caesar. In the year 58 Cicero was forced into exile on the charge, brought by Clodius, whom Cicero had offended, of having put to death Roman citizens—the conspirators associated with Catiline—without a proper trial. Cicero lived in exile from April 58 until August 57, when he was recalled with the consent of Caesar. The exile was a crushing blow to Cicero, but on his return he was enthusiastically welcomed by the people, re-entered political life, and began again to make speeches.

In 53 B.C. Cicero was elected to the College of Augurs, a religious position, and in 51 went to Cilicia in Asia Minor as governor, where he served honestly and well. On his return to Rome in 50, Cicero found Rome on the brink of the Civil War between Pompey and Caesar, which actually began in January 49. Cicero tried to effect a reconciliation between the two opponents, but he was unsuccessful. He finally left the city after Caesar crossed the Rubicon River and occupied Italy proper. Pompey fled from Italy to the Balkans, but Cicero did not follow him out of Italy. Caesar, however, pursued Pompey and defeated him at the battle of Pharsalus in 48 B.C. Subsequently Cicero was reconciled with Caesar and allowed to return to Rome, but he did not engage in political activity for some time.

In the year 46 Cicero divorced his wife Terentia and married a younger woman, Publilia, who had been his ward. In 45 Tullia, his beloved daughter, died, and he was overwhelmed with grief. It was at this time that Cicero devoted himself to writing on philosophic and literary subjects.

Cicero returned to political life after the death of Caesar (44 B.C.) because he thought he saw a chance for the restoration of the commonwealth and envisaged his duty as a fight against Antony, who was trying to seize control of the government. He wrote fourteen speeches against Antony, called the *Philippics*.

When the second triumvirate, consisting of Octavian, Antony, and Lepidus, was formed in 43 B.C., Cicero was proscribed (Octavian had reluctantly agreed) and killed by agents of Antony on December 7 of the same year.

Cicero's prose writings include speeches (over fifty still remain), treatises on political science, rhetoric, and philosophy, and approximately 800 letters. His letters, not written for publication, form one of the most interesting and valuable documents of Roman times. Cicero also wrote poetry which, although not of the highest quality, was always technically competent.

Cicero was the greatest orator of Rome, one of its most important statesmen, and its greatest known prose writer. His influence has been incalculable, justifying Macaulay's statement, "Cicero taught Europe how to write."

Cicero's Style

Greece had long been the home of famous orators, and, in the time of Cicero especially, the Romans studied and imitated the Greek masters. Roman orators generally adopted one of three styles of Greek oratory—the Attic, which was simple, the Asiatic, characterized by ornateness, or the middle style. Cicero, who as Rome's greatest orator is often compared with Demosthenes, adopted a combination of Attic and Asiatic.

In his zeal to become a first-rate orator, Cicero studied rhetoric—the principles and rules for speaking and writing effectively—and related subjects in both Rome and Athens. His fine training, plus a natural talent and firmness of purpose, paid rich literary dividends. For generations, the perfection of Cicero's style has been an object of admiration and imitation.

What do we mean when we speak of a literary style? Style may be defined as those characteristics of a writer that exhibit his or her individuality, and distinguish him or her from other writers. Cicero's style, for example, is characterized by both terse sentences and the resounding period style, which you will study on p. 90. His style is also graceful, flowing, balanced, witty, informal, charming, and many other things, depending on the circumstances under which he was composing.

Another characteristic of Cicero's style is his frequent use of figures of speech, modes of expression that help embellish thoughts. While reading Cicero, you will meet these figures of speech, many of which are still used by writers today. These patterns, as well as other aspects of Cicero's style, will be pointed out and discussed as they occur.

Try to put yourself in the midst of Cicero's style, so that you begin to absorb it, as if by osmosis, and to feel at ease with it. From time to time the text will give you some help in this. Here are a few suggestions to get you started:

As you prepare your lesson, always read a part of the assignment *aloud in Latin*, pausing at the end of *thought groups*, often indicated by punctuation. After you have read (once or more) a paragraph or sentence, see if the notes are of any help in giving the meaning. Then attempt to translate *before* you look up any of the meanings in the vocabulary (the word list should be a last and not a first resort), guessing at some of the meanings. If you should find the first sentence too difficult, go on to the second sentence, which may throw light on the first.

Catiline's Conspiracy

The revolution that resulted in the establishment of the Empire under Augustus had early origins at Rome in inequalities of representation, economic unrest, and lack of harmony among the three orders of citizens (*nōbilēs*, *equitēs*, *plēbs*). It is often said to have begun with the Gracchi brothers' attempt at reform (133–121 B.C.). In the early part of the first century B.C. there was civil war at Rome between forces led by Sulla, an autocratic dictator, and those led by Marius, a dictator supported by the people. Lucius Sergius Catilīna was an active supporter of Sulla, the winner in this civil war.

Catiline was born of an old patrician family in 108 B.C. In the reaction against conservatism following the regime of Sulla (who died in 79), Catiline joined the liberals. He went through the steps of the *cursus honorum* and was governor of Africa for two years. He returned to Rome in 66 B.C. and became a candidate for the consulship but was prevented from running by a charge, brought by the conservatives, of maladministration in Africa.

Catiline formed a conspiracy to murder the consuls of 65, but the plot was exposed and Catiline acquitted. He again ran for consul in 64 but was defeated by Cicero. Once more Catiline formed a plot to seize the government by force. Cicero learned of the secret plans of the conspirators and had enacted by the senate a *senātūs cōsultum ultimum* that gave authority to the consuls to suppress the conspiracy. Catiline made plans to have Cicero killed on the morning of November 8, but Cicero knew about this plot immediately after the meeting at which Catiline's plans were made. On the same day Cicero called a meeting of the senate in the Temple of Jupiter Stator and made the first speech against Catiline, who was present to listen to the charges against him.

First Oration Against Catiline

Catiline's Audacity

Verba Ūtilia: audācia, caedēs, coniūrātiō, furor, iam prīdem, ignōrō, immō
vērō, orbis terrae, patientia, praesidium, praetereō, studeō, timor, vigilia, vultus

- ¹ How long, tell me
² still
³ that madness of yours (iste is contemptuous)
⁴ expressions on the faces
⁵ to death, you, Catiline

I, 1. Quō usque tandem¹ abūtēre,² Catilīna, patientiā² nostrā? Quam diū etiam² furor iste³ tuus nōs ēlūdet? Quem ad finem sēsē effrēnāta iactābit audācia? Nihilne tē³ nocturnum praesidium Palātī, nihil urbis vigiliae, nihil timor populī, nihil concursus bonōrum⁴ omnium, nihil hic mūnītissimus
5 habendī senātūs locus, nihil hōrum ōra vultūsque⁴ mōvērunt? Patēre tua cōnsilia nōn sentīs, cōnstrictam iam hōrum omnium scientiā tenērī coniūrātiōnem tuam nōn vidēs? Quid⁵ proximā,⁶ quid superiōre nocte ēgerīs, ubi fuerīs, quōs convocāverīs, quid cōnsili⁷ cēperīs, quem nostrum⁸ ignōrāre arbitrāris?

10 2. Ō tempora, ō mōrēs!⁹ Senātus haec intellegit, cōnsul videt; hic tamen vīvit. Vīvit? Immō vērō etiam in senātum¹⁰ venit, fit pūblicī cōnsilī particeps, notat et dēsīgnat oculīs ad caedem ūnum quemque nostrum.⁸ Nōs autem, fortēs virī,¹¹ satis facere reī pūblīcae vidēmur, sī istīus furōrem ac tēla vītāmus. Ad mortem⁵ tē, Catilīna, dūcī¹² iussū cōnsulis iam prīdem
15 oportēbat, in tē cōnferrī pestem quam tū in nōs omnīs iam diū māchināris.

¹ future second person singular

² with abūtēre

³ object of mōvērunt

⁴ The "good" people were those who supported the government.

⁵ The indirect questions depend on ignōrāre.

⁶ November 7

⁷ genitive of the whole

⁸ from nōs, not noster

⁹ accusative of exclamation

¹⁰ Cicero does not mean that Catiline had no right to attend a meeting of the senate (he was a member) but that he dared to after his plans were exposed.

¹¹ ironical

¹² The tense is indicated by oportēbat; in English, we show it by the translation of dūcī: you ought to have been led.

3. An vērō vir amplissimus, P. Scīpiō, pontifex maximus, Ti. Gracchum mediocriter labefactantem statum reī pūblicae prīvātus interfēcit: Catilīnam orbem terrae caede atque incendiīs vāstāre cupientem nōs cōsulēs perferēmus? Nam illa nimis antīqua praetereō, quod⁶ C. Servīlius Ahāla Sp. Maelium¹³ ^{6 the fact that (explains illa)} novīs rēbus studentem manū suā occīdit. Fuit, fuit ista quondam in hāc rē ²⁰ pūblicā virtūs ut virī fortēs ācriōribus suppliciīs cīvem perniciosum quam acerbissimum hostem coercērent. Habēmus senātūs cōsultum¹⁴ in tē. Catilīna, vehemēns et grave, nōn deest reī pūblicae cōsiliū neque auctōritās huius ōrdinis: nōs, nōs, dīcō apertē, cōsulēs dēsumus.

Literary Style: Anaphora and Praeteritiō

One of Cicero's favorite figures of speech is anaphora, the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive phrases and clauses without the use of a connective such as **et**. A splendid example occurs at the beginning of the preceding chapter: **nihil** is used six times, and the clauses are divided into three pairs: the guards, the people, the senate.

Cicero is fond of saying that he will not talk about some point and in doing so will reveal the whole thing. This is called **praeteritiō**, from **praetereō**, *I pass over*, the word often used (see line 19) in saying a great deal while pretending to say nothing.

TRANSLATION

1. We know what you did last night.
2. I pass over the fact that Scipio killed Gracchus.
3. Catiline thought that he could kill Cicero and seize the government.
4. He ought (*imperfect*) to have been killed (*present*) before he could destroy the government.

Word Studies

The word *palace* almost tells the story of the city of Rome. It is derived from Palatium, the hill named after Pales, the goddess of the shepherds who used to roam over that hill before Rome was founded. Because it was so convenient to the Forum, it became the most desirable district in Rome for the rich senators and other officials. Cicero owned a house on it, as did Caesar and Augustus. Gradually the emperors covered the entire hill with their buildings, and so it was that Palatium became *palace*.

¹³ Maelius distributed grain to the poor during a famine (439 B.C.).

¹⁴ The senate passed a resolution (called the **senātūs cōsultum ultimum**) on October 21 delegating full powers to the consuls. It was something like a declaration of martial law today.

Why Not Put Catiline to Death?

Verba Ūtilia: audeō, clēmēns, condemnō, cōnfestim, crēscō, crūdēlis, dēcernō, improbus, inclūdō, maiōrēs, moenia, mōlior, nēquitia, patior, perditus

¹ should see to it

² any

³ penalty of death

⁴ in accordance with

⁵ senators

⁶ for inaction

⁷ the mountain passes

⁸ day by day (singulōs is not really needed)

⁹ right now

¹⁰ I suppose I shall have to fear, not that all good citizens may say that this was done too late by me, but rather that some one person may say that it was done too cruelly.

¹¹ specific, definite

¹² no one any longer (with iam)

¹³ though you do not realize it (with tē)

II, 4. Dēcrēvit quondam senātus utī L. Opīmius cōsul vidēret¹ nē quid² rēs pūblica dētrīmentī¹ caperet: nox nūlla intercessit: interfectus est propter quāsdam sēditiōnum suspīciōnēs C. Gracchus,² clārissimō patre, avō, maiōribus, occīsus est cum līberīs M. Fulvius cōsulāris. Similī 5 senātūs cōsultō C. Mariō et L. Valeriō cōsulibus est permissa rēs pūblica: num ūnum diem postea L. Sātūrnīnum tribūnum plēbis et C. Servīlium praetōrem mors³ ac reī pūblīcae poena³ remorāta est? At vērō nōs vīcēsimum³ iam diem patimur hebēscere aciem hōrum auctōritātis. Habēmus enim eius modī senātūs cōsultum, vērū inclūsum in tabulīs, tamquam in vāgīnā 10 reconditum, quō ex⁴ senātūs cōsultō cōnfestim tē interfectum esse,⁴ Catilīna, convēnit.⁴ Vīvis, et vīvis nōn ad dēpōnendam sed ad cōfirmandam audāciam. Cupiō, patrēs cōnscriptī,⁵ mē esse clēmētem, cupiō⁵ in tantīs reī pūblīcae periculīs nōn dissolutum vidērī, sed iam mē ipse inertiae⁶ nēquitiaeque condemnō. 5. Castra sunt in Italiā contrā populum Rōmānum 15 in Etrūriae faucibus⁷ collocāta, crēscit in diēs singulōs⁸ hostium numerus; eōrum autem castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium intrā moenia atque adeō in senātū vidētis intestīnam aliquam cotīdiē perniciem reī pūblīcae mōlientem. Sī tē iam,⁹ Catilīna, comprehendī, sī interficī iusserō, crēdō,⁶ erit verendum mihi nē nōn hoc potius omnēs bonī sērius ā mē 20 quam quisquam crūdēlius factum esse dīcat.¹⁰ Vērū ego hoc quod iam prīdem factum esse oportuit certā¹¹ dē causā nōndum addūcor ut faciam. Tum dēnique interficiēre cum iam nēmō¹² tam improbus, tam perditus, tam tuī similis invenīrī poterit quī id nōn iūre factum esse fateātur.⁷ 6. Quam diū quisquam erit quī tē dēfendere audeat, vīvēs, et vīvēs ita ut nunc vīvis, 25 multīs meīs et firmīs praesidiīs obsessus nē commovēre tē contrā rem pūblīcam possīs. Multōrum tē etiam oculī et aurēs nōn sentientem,¹³ sicut adhūc fēcērunt, speculābuntur atque custōdient.

¹ genitive of the whole with quid

² younger brother of Tiberius

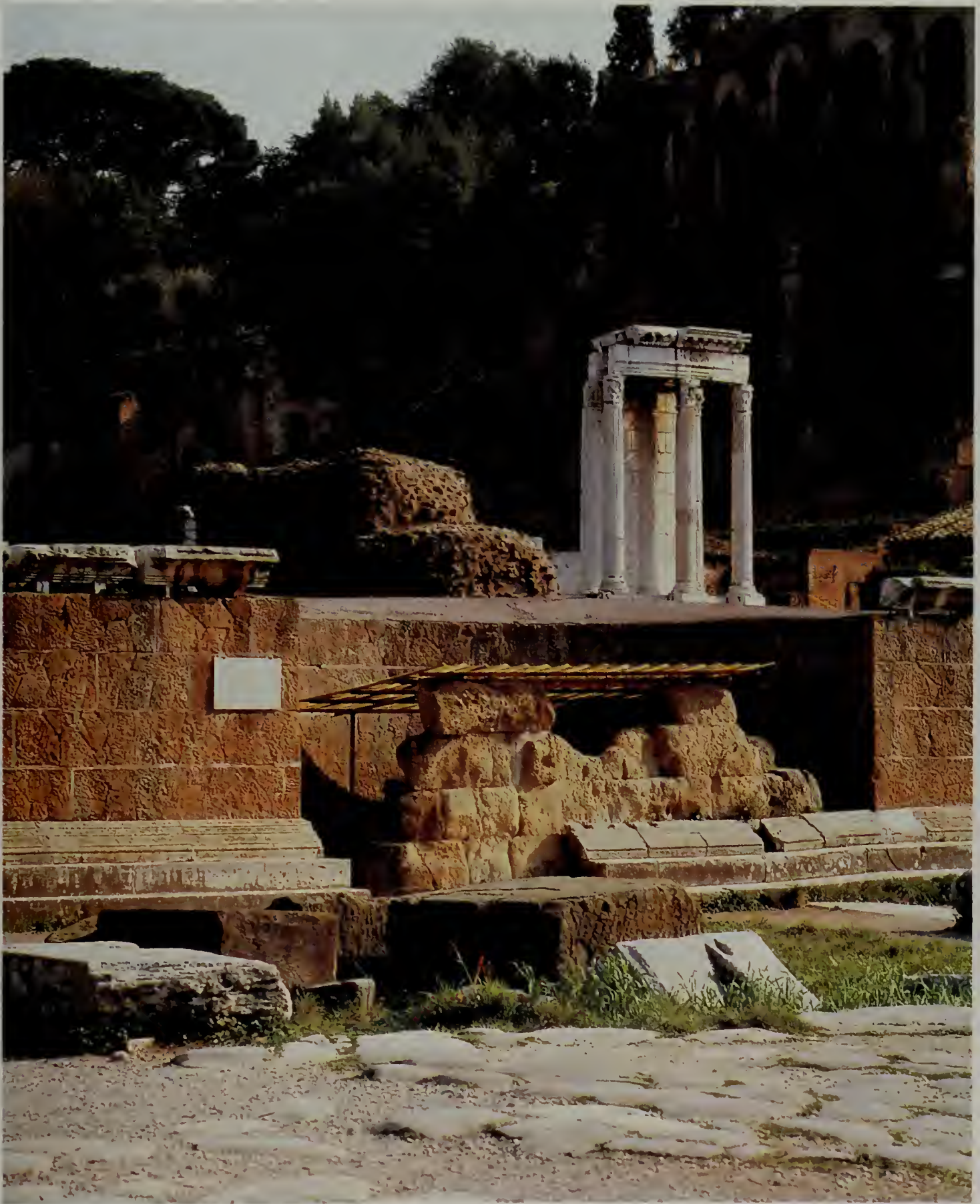
³ a round number; it was actually the eighteenth day

⁴ Both infinitive and main verb are in the perfect for emphasis.

⁵ Emphasis is gained by position and repetition.

⁶ ironical; therefore the meaning is the opposite of what is stated

⁷ result clause



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The Temple of Julius Caesar was begun in 42 B.C. by Octavian to honor his uncle. After Caesar's assassination, his body was brought to this site and honored with a funeral pyre. Built on the spot where he was cremated, the temple and its altar were finally consecrated 13 years later in 29 B.C. You can see the remains of this Temple at the far left on page 9.

Literary Style: Irony and Chiasmus

Irony consists of saying one thing but meaning the opposite. In Cicero it serves to produce a laugh at Catiline's expense. Usually an ironical statement is introduced by *crēdō*, *I suppose*, as in this reading, *scilicet* or *videlicet*, *of course*.

As a rule, series of words are arranged in parallel order, as in lines 6-7 on p. 70: L. Sāturnīnum tribūnum plēbis et C. Servīlium praetōrem. But Cicero at times uses a cross order with striking effect, as in line 16:

castrōrum imperātōrem ducemque hostium. This is called chiasmus, from the Greek letter *chī*, formed like an X, from two crossed lines.

TRANSLATION

1. There will be no one who will dare speak for Catiline.
2. If any harm is done to the state, the fault will be Catiline's.
3. It is our good fortune that few men like Catiline live in Rome.
4. The senate decreed that Catiline should not be allowed to be present.

We Know Your Plans, Catiline

Verba Ūtilia: amplius, atrōx, coetus, cōnfīdō, domus, etenim, īnfītor, lūx, nefārius, nocturnus, oblīvīscor, pariēs, plānē, sentiō, undique

III. Etenim quid est, Catilīna, quod iam amplius expectēs, sī neque nox tenebrīs obscurāre coetūs nefāriōs nec prīvāta domus parietibus continēre vōcēs coniūrātiōnis tuae potest, sī illūstrantur, sī ērumpunt omnia? Mūtā iam istam mentem, mihi crēde, oblīvīscere caedis atque incendiōrum.
5 Tenēris undique: lūce sunt clāriōra nōbīs tua cōnsilia omnia, quae iam mēcum licet recognōscās.¹ 7. Meministīne mē ante diem XII Kalendās Novembrīs¹ dicere² in senātū fore³ in armīs certō diē, quī diēs futūrus esset² ante diem VI Kal. Novembrīs, C. Mānlium, audāciae satellitem atque admin-
istrum tuae?⁴ Num mē fefellit, Catilīna, nōn modo rēs tanta, tam atrōx
10 tamque incrēdibilis, vērūm, id quod multō magis est admīrandum, diēs?
Dīxī ego idem³ in senātū caedem tē optimātium⁴ contulisse in⁵ ante diem V

¹ you may review (literally, it is permitted that you review)

² which was going to be

³ likewise (literally, the same I)

⁴ the optimates, (the conservative party in power)

¹ October 21

² Meministī is a perfect form, though we translate it with a present.

³ =futūrum esse; the subject, Mānlium, follows

⁴ an interesting type of chiasmus; tuae audāciae belongs with both of the nouns

⁵ The entire following phrase is the object of in.

Kalendās Novembrīs, tum cum multī principēs cīvitātis Rōmā nōn tam suī cōnservandī⁵ quam tuōrum cōnsiliōrum reprimendōrum causā profūgērunt. Num īnfitiārī potes tē illō ipsō diē meīs praesidiīs, meā dīligentiā circumclūsum commovēre tē contrā rem pūblicam nōn potuisse, cum tū discessū 15⁶ cēterōrum, nostrā tamen quī remānsissēm⁸us caede contentum tē esse dīcēbās?⁷ 8. Quid?⁷ Cum tē Praeneste Kalendīs ipsīs Novembribus occupātūrum nocturnō impetū esse cōnfīderēs, sēnsistīn⁸ illam colōniam meō iussū meīs praesidiīs, custodiīs, vigiliīs esse mūnītā? Nihil agis, nihil mōliris, nihil cōgitās quod nōn ego nōn modo audiam sed etiam videam plānēque sentiam. 20

⁵ for the sake of saving themselves
(an illogical singular modifying
suī, which actually is plural)

⁶ when on the departure of the
others you said you were satisfied
with the murder of (those of) us
who remained

⁷ Listen!

⁸ = sēnsistīne

Literary Style: Correlatives

All authors make some use of correlatives, that is, of conjunctions and adverbs used in pairs, to form balanced clauses. But Cicero is particularly fond of this stylistic device. Among the correlatives he uses are: **et... et**, **neque (nec)... neque (nec)**, **aut... aut**, **vel... vel**. These should be well known to you from your previous reading. Others are:

cum (etsī)... tamen	although . . . nevertheless
cum(tum)... tum	not only . . . but also
nōn modo (sōlum)... sed (vērum)	not only . . . but also
sīve... sīve	if . . . or if
tam... quam	so . . . as
tot... quot	so many . . . as

Find three examples of correlatives in the preceding passage; also two examples of anaphora.

TRANSLATION

1. Catiline did nothing which Cicero did not know.
2. I shall never forget the murders which you were planning.
3. Not only Catiline but also many others were plotting against the state.
4. Although you plan to kill us all, nevertheless we will be able to defend ourselves.

Word Studies

Explain *atrocit*y, *fallacious*, *illustrious*, *incendiarism*, *mutation*, *parietal*, *satellite*.

Failure of the Plot

Verba Ūtilia: comperiō, distribuō, exitium, interitus, obscūrus, paulum, perniciēs, polliceor, reperiō, salūs, sānctus, taceō, tandem, vigilō, vulnerō

¹ I ask you

² soon (as always with the future)

³ last night

⁴ *Scythemaker's Street* (such street names used to be common:

Barbieri (Barbers), *Falegnami* (Carpenters), etc., in modern Rome)

⁵ Why?

⁶ where in the world

⁷ of all of us

⁸ scarcely, almost before

⁹ to greet (important people had many callers early in the morning)

¹⁰ at that time (adverbial)

IV. Recognōsce mēcum tandem¹ noctem illam superiōrem; iam² intellegēs multō mē vigilāre ācrius ad salūtem quam tē ad perniciem rei pūblīcae. Dīcō tē priōre³ nocte vēnisse inter falcāriōs⁴—nōn agam obscūrē—in M. Laecae domum;¹ convēnisse eōdem² complūrīs eiusdem āmentiae scelerisque sociōs. Num negāre audēs? Quid⁵ tacēs? Convincam, sī negās. Videō enim esse hīc in senātū quōsdam quī tēcum ūnā³ fuērunt. 9. Ō dī immortālēs! Ubinam gentium⁶ sumus? Quam rem pūblicam habēmus? In quā urbe vīvimus? Hīc, hīc sunt in nostrō numerō, patrēs cōnscriptī, in hōc orbis terrae sānctissimō gravissimōque cōnsiliō, quī dē nostrō omnium⁷ interitū, quī dē huius urbis atque adeō dē orbis terrārum exitiō cōgitent. Hōs ego videō cōsul et dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō, et quōs ferrō trucidārī oportēbat, eōs nōndum vōce vulnerō! Fuistī⁴ igitur apud Laecam illā nocte, Catilīna, distribuistī partīs Italiae, statuistī quō quemque proficīscī placēret, dēlēgistī quōs Rōmae relinquerēs,⁵ quōs tēcum ēdūcerēs, dīscrip- 15 sistī urbis partīs ad incendia, cōfirmāstī tē ipsum iam esse exitūrum, dīxistī paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae⁶ quod ego vīverem. Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent⁵ et sē illā ipsā nocte paulō ante lūcem mē in meō lectō interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur. 10. Haec ego omnia, vixdum⁸ etiam coetū vestrō dīmissō, comperi⁷; domum meam 20 maiōribus praesidiīs mūnīvī atque firmāvī, exclusī eōs quōs tū ad mē salūtātum⁹ māne miserās, cum illī ipsī vēnissent quōs⁸ ego iam multīs ac summīs virīs ad mē id temporis¹⁰ ventūrōs esse praedīxeram.

Literary Style: Two's and Three's

Cicero often uses words, phrases, and clauses in groups of two and three. For example, there are three questions in lines 7-8 of the preceding chapter. Next is a series of pairs: **hīc, hīc; in numerō, in cōnsiliō; sānctissimō, gravissimō; quī dē interitū, quī dē exitiō; urbis, orbis**

¹ When *domus* has an adjective or genitive modifier, **in** or **ad** may be used.

² adverb

³ adverb

⁴ Cicero suddenly turns to Catiline, and rapidly fires seven bullets, so to speak, at him: the seven verbs at the beginning of their clauses all end in **-stī**.

⁵ purpose

⁶ with **paulum**

⁷ through Fulvia, who got the information from Curius, one of Catiline's men

⁸ subject of **ventūrōs esse**

terrārum. Then we find three clauses with the verbs **videō**, **rogō**, **vulnerō**. As often occurs, the last clause is longer and more complicated. Finally come the seven verbs mentioned in footnote 4. The first verb is introductory, setting the stage for the other six, that is, giving the meeting place of the conspirators. The others tell what was done. The first two verbs go together; they tell about dividing up Italy and assigning persons to various regions. The next pair of verbs assigns men to Rome and divides up the city for burning. Within this pair of verbs is another kind of pair, the two **quōs** clauses. The last pair indicates that Catiline is leaving Rome but is being delayed by the fact that Cicero is still alive.

TRANSLATION

1. Where in the world were you last night?
2. There are men in this city who are preparing to burn it.
3. Catiline sent men to various parts of Italy to occupy all the cities.
4. We believe that Catiline brings too much danger and Cicero brings little protection.

Get Out of Rome, Catiline

Verba Ūtilia: aliquandō, calamitās, comes, concitō, cōnor, dīligentia, ēgre-
dior, exsilium, īnfestus, mūrus, pergō, sinō, tumultus, ūtilis, versō

V. Quae cum ita sint,¹ Catilīna, perge quō coepistī: ēgredere aliquandō ex urbe; patent portae; proficīscere. Nimum diū tē imperātōrem tua¹ illa Mānliāna castra dēsīderant. Ēdūc tēcum etiam omnīs tuōs, sī minus,² quam plūrimōs; purgā urbem. Magnō mē metū liberāveris, modo³ inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit. Nōbīscum versārī iam diūtius nōn potes; nōn feram, nōn⁴ patiar, nōn sinam.⁵ 11. Magna³ dīs immortalibus habenda est atque⁴ huic ipsī Iovī Statōrī,⁴ antīquissimō custōdī huius urbis, grātia, quod hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque īnfestam reī pūblicae pestem totiēns iam effūgimus. Nōn est saepius⁵ in ūnō homine summa salūs perīclitanda reī pūblicae. Quam diū mihi cōsulī dēsīgnātō, Catilīna, īnsidiātus es, nōn¹⁰ pūblicō mē praesidiō, sed prīvātā dīligentiā dēfendī. Cum proximīs comitiīs⁶ cōsulāribus mē cōsulem in campō⁷ et competītōrēs tuōs interficere

¹ of yours

² not

³ provided that

⁴ and especially

⁵ too often

⁶ at the last consular elections

⁷ Campus Martius

¹ A common form of expression, which can be translated by the one word *therefore*.

² anaphora and a group of three

³ Placing the adjective first and separating it from its noun **grātia** gives unusual emphasis, so that **magna** really means **maxima**.

⁴ Cicero points to a statue of Jupiter *the Stayer*, who stayed the flight of the Romans when Romulus appealed to him.

⁸ even (with **apertē**)

⁹ this power of mine

¹⁰ with reference to

¹¹ the sewage (made up of) your associates

¹² you were trying to do

¹³ whether

voluistī, compressī cōnātūs tuōs nefāriōs amīcōrum praesidiō et cōpiīs, nūllō tumultū pūblicē concitātō; dēnique, quotiēnsūmque mē petistī, per
15 mē tibi obstitī, quamquam vidēbam perniciem meam cum magnā calamitāte
reī pūblīcae esse coniūctam. 12. Nunc iam⁸ apertē rem pūblicam ūniver-
sam petis, templa deōrum immortālium, tēcta urbis, vītā⁵ omnium
cīvium, Italiā tōtam ad exitium et vāstitātem vocās. Quārē, quoniam id⁶
quod est prīmum, et quod huius imperī⁹ disciplīnaeque maiōrum proprium
20 est, facere nōndum audeō, faciam id quod est ad¹⁰ sevērītātem lēnius, ad
commūnem salūtem ūtilius. Nam sī tē interficī iusserō, residēbit in rē pūblicā
reliqua coniūrātōrum manus; sīn tū, quod tē iam dūdum hortor, exieris,
exhauriētur ex urbe tuōrum comitum magna et perniciosā sentīna¹¹ reī
pūblīcae. 13. Quid est, Catilīna? Num dubitās id, mē imperante, facere
25 quod iam tuā sponte faciēbās?¹² Exīre ex urbe iubet cōsul hostem.⁷
Interrogās mē, num¹³ in exsilium? Nōn iubeō, sed, sī mē cōsulis, suādeō.

Literary Style: Alliteration

A familiar device in many languages, and especially in poetry, is alliteration, the repetition of the same letter at the beginning of successive words: line 11, **pūblicō mē praesidiō sed prīvātā**; lines 11-13, **comitiīs cōsulārībus mē cōnsulem in campō et competitōrēs... compressī cōnātūs**.

Find two other examples of alliteration in the preceding reading.

You may recall reading the most striking example in all Latin, used by the poet Ennius: **Ō Tite tūte Tatī, tibi tanta, tyranne, tulistī**. In English there is the familiar: *Peter Piper picked a peck of pickled peppers*. Here is another Latin example: **Sōsia in sōlārīō soleās sarciēbat suās**, *Sosia was sewing his shoes in the solarium*.

How is alliteration like anaphora? Different from anaphora? Find another example of anaphora and a group of three (besides the one in footnote 2).

TRANSLATION

1. Depart at once, Catiline, in order to save your life.
2. I have long been urging you to leave the city, Catiline.
3. If you were to remain in Rome, I would not be able to protect you.
4. If Catiline will not leave Rome, his life will be in the greatest danger.

Word Studies

Explain *conjunction*, *exhaust*, *exhortation*, *insidious*, *intramural*, *nefarious*, *purgatory*, *residue*.

⁵ We say *lives* in English; in Latin the plural means *biographies*.

⁶ object of **facere**

⁷ Calling Catiline a foreign enemy was a deliberate part of Cicero's plan to make it easier to get rid of him. In section 3 he calls him a dangerous citizen, worse than a bitter enemy; in 5, in connection with Manlius' camp at Faesulae he says that the enemy is increasing in number and calls Catiline their commander, as he does again in 10.

Catiline's Criminal Career

Verba Ūtilia: dēdecus, dēvoveō, ēlābor, facinus, ferrum, flāgitium, haereō, necesse, ōdī, omittō, praetermittō, prīdiē, sacer, turpitūdō, vitium

VI. Quid est enim, Catilīna, quod tē iam in hāc urbe dēlectāre possit? In quā nēmō est extrā istam coniūratiōnem perditōrum hominum quī tē nōn metuat, nēmō quī nōn ōderit. Quae nota domesticae turpitūdinis nōn inusta vītae tuae est? Quod prīvātārum rērum dēdecus nōn haeret in fāmā? Quae libīdō ab oculīs, quod facinus ā manibus tuīs, quod flāgitium ā tōtō corpore āfuit? Cui tū adulēscētulō¹ quem corruptēlārū illecebrīs irrētīssēs nōn aut ad audāciam ferrum aut ad libīdinem facem praetulistī? 14. Quid vērō? Nūper cum² morte sperioris uxōris novīs nūptiīs locum vacuēfēcissēs, nōnne etiam aliō incrēdibilī scelere³ hoc scelus cumulāvistī? Quod ego praetermittō et facile patior silērī, nē in hāc cīvitatē tantī facinoris immānitās¹ 10 aut exstīssē aut nōn vindicāta esse videātur. Praetermittō ruīnās fortunārū tuārū quās omnīs proximīs Idibus⁴ tibi impendēre sentiēs. Ad illa veniō quae nōn ad prīvātā ignōminiam vitiōrum tuōrum, nōn ad domesticā tuā difficultātem ac turpitūdinē, sed ad summā rem pūblicā² atque ad omnium nostrū vītā salūtemque pertinent. 15. Potestne tibi haec lūx, 15 Catilīna, aut huius caelī spīritus esse iūcundus, cum sciās esse hōrum nēmīnem quī nesciat tē prīdiē³ Kalendās Iānuāriās, Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus, stetisse in comitiō cum tēlō, manū⁴ cōsulum et prīncipum cīvītātis interficiendōrum causā parāvisse, scelerī⁵ ac furōrī tuō nōn mentem⁵ aliquā aut timōrem tuum sed Fortunā populī Rōmānī obstītisse? Ac iam illa 20 omittō—neque enim sunt aut obscūra aut nōn multa commissā postea—quotiēns tū mē dēsīgnātum, quotiēns vērō cōsulem interficere cōnātus es! Quot ego tuās petitiōnēs⁶ ita coniectās ut vītārī posse nōn vidērentur parvā quādā dēclīnātiōne et, ut aiunt, corpore⁷ effūgī! Nihil agis, nihil assequeris, neque tamen cōnārī ac velle dēsistis. 16. Quotiēns iam tibi⁸ extorta 25 est ista sīca dē manibus, quotiēns excidit cāsū aliquō et ēlāpsa est! Quae⁶ quidem quibus⁹ abs tē initiāta sacrīs ac dēvōta sit nesciō, quod¹⁰ eam necesse putās esse in cōsulis corpore dēfigere.

¹ this savage crime

² the greatest public interests

³ the day before January 1 (the allusion is to Catiline's "first conspiracy," three years earlier)

⁴ a band (handful) (object of parāvisse)

⁵ (change of) mind

⁶ thrusts (he is comparing Catiline to a gladiator)

⁷ with a kind of little twist of the body

⁸ your (with manibus)

⁹ with what rites

¹⁰ (seeing) that

¹ with praetulistī: Before what young man have you not carried the sword for bold deeds or the torch for passion?

² conjunction

³ The supposed murder of his only son, done to please his second wife, as the historian Sallust tells us.

⁴ Debts were payable on the Kalends (first of the month) and Ides (thirteenth or fifteenth of the month). In six days therefore (November 13) Catiline would find himself besieged by creditors.

⁵ with obstītisse

⁶ i.e., sīca

⁷ The dagger was promised to some god if it performed successfully through the god's aid.

Literary Style: Metaphor

A metaphor is an implied comparison; it identifies one person, object, or idea with another. It is the most common figure of speech and one that is used in many different ways. For example, a metaphor is often used in naming things. The words *car*, *machine*, and *wagon*, which existed long before the invention of the automobile, were at first metaphorically applied to this vehicle.

The comparison in the literary metaphor usually appeals to the senses, as Cicero's many metaphors indicate. In line 3 of the preceding reading, **nōta... inusta** implies a comparison with the branding of the letter *F* on the forehead of a runaway slave. But Catiline's branding is figurative, not literal. In lines 6-8 Catiline is compared metaphorically with a slave (footnote 1). Near the end of the preceding chapter is another striking metaphor: Catiline's supporters are *sewage*, which *will be drained out* of Rome.

TRANSLATION

1. Who is it that blocked your plans?
2. I can recall no one who does not hate and fear Catiline.
3. Everybody knows that you prepared a band of men for the purpose of killing the senators.

Word Studies

The calendar is so called because its chief function was to indicate the Kalends, the first of the month. In Latin the spelling with a *K* is used only in this and a few other words before *a*. It goes back to the Etruscans, from whom the Romans borrowed the alphabet.

Your Country Begs You to Leave

Verba Ūtilia: abhorreō, caedēs, careō, cōnspiciō, cōnsulāris, ēvertō, inānis, ineō, opīnor, opprimō, plācō, salūtō, socius, tacitus, vītō

VII. Nunc vērō quae tua est ista vīta? Sīc enim iam tēcum loquar, nōn ut odiō permōtus esse videar, quō¹ dēbeō, sed ut¹ misericordiā, quae tibi nūlla² dēbētur. Vēnistī paulō ante in senātum. Quis tē ex hāc tantā frequentīā, tot ex tuīs amīcīs ac necessāriīs salūtāvit? Sī hoc post hominum memoriā contigit nēminī, vōcis² expectās contumēliā, cum sīs gravissimō iūdicīō³ taciturnitātis oppressus? Quid, quod³ adventū tuō ista⁴ subsellia vacuēfacta sunt, quod omnēs cōnsulārēs quī tibi persaepe ad caedem cōstitutī fuērunt, simul atque⁵ assēdistī, partem istam subselliōrum nūdā atque inānem reliquērunt, quō tandem animō tibi ferendum putās? 17. Servī mehercule meī sī mē istō pactō metuerent ut tē metuunt omnēs cīvēs tuī, domum¹⁰ meam relinquendam putārem; tū tibi urbem³ nōn arbitrāris? Et sī mē meīs cīvibus iniūriā⁶ suspectum tam graviter atque offēnsū vidērem, carēre mē aspectū⁴ cīvium quam⁷ infestīs omnium oculīs cōspici māllem; tū, cum cōnsentiā scelerum tuōrum agnōscās odium omnium iūstum et iam diū tibi dēbitum, dubitās quōrum mentīs sēnsūsque vulnerās, eōrum aspectum¹⁵ praesentiamque vītāre? Sī tē parentēs timērent atque ōdissent tuī neque eōs ratiōne ūllā placāre possēs, ut opīnor, ab eōrum oculīs aliquō⁸ concēderēs. Nunc tē patria, quae commūnis est parēs omnium nostrum, ōdit ac metuit et iam diū nihil tē iūdicat nisi dē parricidiō suō cōgitāre; huius tū neque auctōritātem verēbere nec iūdicium sequēre nec vim pertimēscēs? 18. Quae²⁰ tēcum, Catilīna, sīc agit et quōdam modō tacita⁹ loquitur: “Nūllum iam aliquot annīs facinus exstitit nisi per tē, nūllum flāgitium sine tē; tibi ūnī multōrum cīvium necēs,⁶ tibi vexatiō direptiōque sociōrum⁷ impūnita fuit ac libera; tū nōn solum ad neglegendās lēgēs et quaestiōnēs vērū etiam ad ēvertendās perfingendāsque valuistī. Superiōra illa, quamquam ferenda²⁵ nōn fuērunt, tamen ut¹⁰ potuī, tulī; nunc vērō mē tōtam¹¹ esse in metū propter ūnum tē, quicquid increpuerit,¹² Catilīnam timērī, nūllum vidērī contrā mē cōnsilium inīrī posse quod ā tuō scelere abhorreat¹³ nōn est ferendum.⁸ Quam ob rem discēde atque hunc mihi timōrem ēripe; sī est vērū, nē opprimar, sīn falsus, ut tandem aliquandō timēre dēsīnam.” 30

¹ with which I ought to be

² spoken (literally, of the voice)

³ What (of the fact) that?

⁴ those next to you (Cicero perhaps pointed)

⁵ simul atque, as soon as

⁶ unjustly

⁷ than

⁸ somewhere (adverb)

⁹ though silent

¹⁰ as (best as)

¹¹ all of me (Chiasmus, with strong emphasis, in mē tōtam... ūnum tē)

¹² at the slightest noise (literally, whatever noise is made)

¹³ is inconsistent with

¹ Supply permōtus esse videar.

² more emphatic than nōn

³ Supply relinquendam esse.

⁴ with carēre

⁵ i.e., patria

⁶ Catiline had taken part in the murders of Sulla's day.

⁷ Catiline was charged with graft while propraetor in Africa in 67 B.C.

⁸ Esse, timērī, vidērī are the subjects.

Literary Style: Personification

Personification makes a person out of a thing. In the reading, the long speech of **patria**, “though silent speaking,” is a fine example.

Watch for the groups of two's and three's. In the preceding chapter (line 2) we find two **ut** clauses, each containing a relative clause. Then we come to **ex... frequentiā** and **ex... amīcīs**. Note how the second phrase is expanded into a pair: **amīcīs ac necessariīs**. Next are two **quod** clauses (lines 6-7) and two adjectives, **nūdum** and **inānem**.

Note too the chiasmic arrangement of the verbs (lines 10, 12-13, 15-16): **metuerent ut tē metuunt, carēre... māllem** but **dubitās... vītāre**.

Analyze the speech of **patria** in this way.

TRANSLATION

1. If my citizens had feared me so much, I would have left the city at once.
2. The senators left bare that section of seats in which Catiline was sitting.
3. Cicero talks in this manner to Catiline in order that he may seem to be moved by pity.

Word Studies

Explain *contumely*, *impunity*, *inane*, *parricide*, *placate*, *vulnerable*.

The suffix **-scō** is added to the stems of verbs and adjectives to form *inceptive* verbs, which have in them the idea of *begin to* (from **incipiō**, *begin*): **pertimēscō**, *begin to fear*. **Hebēscō**, *begin to be dull*, occurred earlier.

On Your Way, Catiline

Verba Ūtilia: carcer, ecquis, fuga, honestus, quiēscō, sodālis, vidēlicet, vīlis, vindicō, voluntās

VIII, 19. Haec sī tēcum, ut dīxī, patria loquātur, nōnne impetrāre dēbeat, etiam sī vim adhibēre nōn possit? Quid, quod tū tē in custōdiam₁ dedistī, quod vītandae suspīciōnis causā ad¹ M'.² Lepidum tē habitāre velle dīxistī? Ā quō nōn receptus etiam ad mē venīre ausus es, atque ut domī meae tē
5 asservārem rogāstī. Cum ā mē quoque id respōsum tulissēs, mē nūllō modō posse īsdem parietibus³ tūtō esse tēcum, quia magnō in periculō essem quod īsdem moenibus⁴ continērēmur, ad Q. Metellum praetōrem

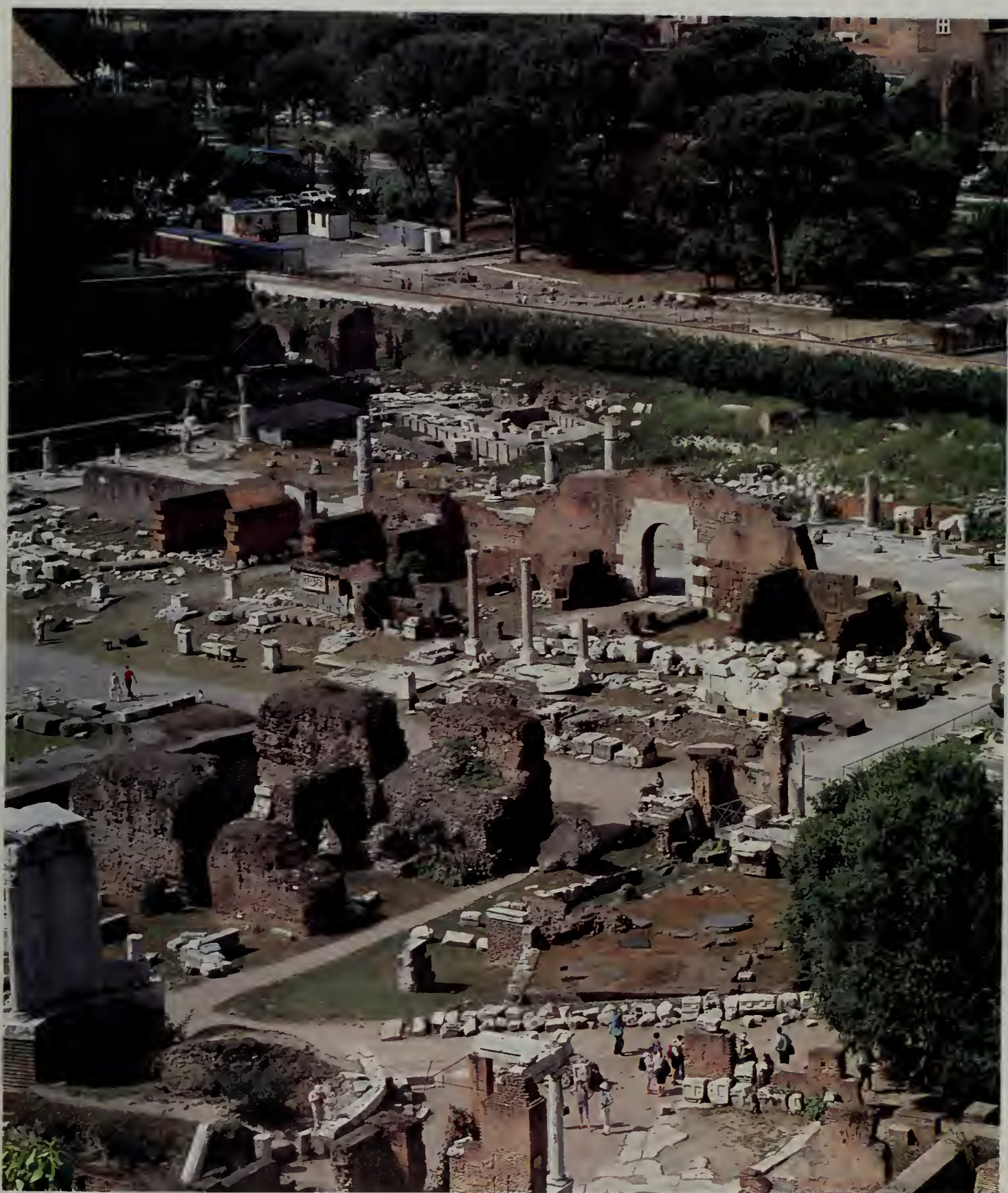
¹ = **apud**

² = **Mānium**

³ *within the same walls*

⁴ *city walls, contrasting with parietibus, house walls*

₁ Catiline asked Lepidus to agree to be responsible for Catiline's appearance in court when and if Catiline was wanted.



PHOTRI/J. A. Cash

One arch and two columns are all that remain of the Basilica Aemilia, which was built by Emilius Lepidus and Fulvius Nobilior in 179 B.C. Overlooking the central square of the Forum and facing the Temple of Julius Caesar, it had at least two stories and was especially beautiful. In front of the building and toward the right in the photo, is a small area marked off with a low iron fence that marks the spot where the *Cloāca Maxima*, the major sewer line that drained the marshy land of Rome, entered the Forum.

⁵ = iūdicāverit

⁶ that it votes (literally, that it is pleasing to it)

⁷ word

⁸ at all

⁹ violent hands

¹⁰ all this (the temple and the Forum)

vēnistī. Ā quō repudiātus ad sodālem tuum, virum optimum,² M. Metellum dēmigrāstī, quem tū vidēlicet et ad custōdiendum tē dīligentissimum et ad
10 suspicandum sagācissimum et ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putāstī. Sed quam longē vidētur ā carcere atque ā vinculis abesse dēbēre quī sē ipse iam dignum custōdiā iūdicārit?⁵ 20. Quae cum ita sint, Catilīna, dubitās, sī ēmorī aequō animō nōn potes, abīre in aliquās terrās et vītā istam multīs suppliciīs iūstīs dēbitisque ēreptam fugae sōlitudinīque mandāre?
15 “Refer.” inquis, “ad senātum;”³ id enim postulās et, sī hic ōrdō⁴ placēre⁶ sibi dēcrēverit tē īre in exsilium, obtemperātūrum tē esse dīcis. Nōn referam, id quod abhorret ā meīs mōribus, et tamen faciam ut intellegās quid hī dē tē sentiant. Ēgredere ex urbe, Catilīna; liberā rem pūblicam metū; in exsilium, sī hanc vōcem⁷ exspectās, proficīscere.⁵ Quid est? Ecquid⁸
20 attendis, ecquid animadvertis hōrum silentium? Patiuntur, tacent. Quid exspectās auctōritātem loquentium, quōrum voluntātem tacitōrum perspicis? 21. At sī hoc idem huic adulēscentī optimō P. Sēstiō, sī fortissimō virō M. Mārcellō dīxissem, iam mihi cōsulī hōc ipsō in templō senātus iūre optimō vim⁹ et manūs intulisset. Dē tē autem, Catilīna, cum quiēscunt,
25 probant, cum patiuntur, dēcernunt, cum tacent, clāmant,⁶ neque hī solum quōrum tibi auctōritās est vidēlicet cāra, vīta vīlissima, sed etiam illī equitēs Rōmānī, honestissimī atque optimī virī, cēterīque fortissimī cīvēs quī circumstant senātum, quōrum tū et frequentiam vidēre et studia perspicere et vōcēs paulō ante⁷ exaudīre potuistī. Quōrum⁸ ego vix abs tē iam diū manūs
30 ac tēla contineō, eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē haec¹⁰ quae vāstāre iam prīdem studēs relinquentem usque ad portās prōsequantur.

Literary Style: Antithesis

Cicero often “sets” words and phrases “against” each other (that is what the Greek word antithesis means). In lines 24–25 **quiēscunt** and **probant** are antithetical, as are **patiuntur** and **dēcernunt**, **tacent** and **clāmant**. The last pair of verbs illustrates oxymoron, a figure of speech that is nothing more than an antithesis in which the words contradict each other.

Find other antitheses in the preceding reading. Find an instance of alliteration.

² Vidēlicet shows that this and the following adjectives are ironical.

³ Presumably Catiline interrupted with this demand.

⁴ i.e., the senate

⁵ Cicero evidently paused a moment here. The senate could not exile Catiline, but Cicero cleverly maintains that it voted for exile by silence.

⁶ another striking oxymoron

⁷ Catiline was presumably booed when he entered the senate.

⁸ The antecedent, eōsdem, follows.

1. If you should flee from Rome the whole world would rejoice.
2. He said that he could not stay in the same city because he was afraid.
3. A man who thinks he can fight against the senate should be sent into exile.
4. Do you believe that Catiline is worthy of the honor of coming into the senate?

Word Studies

Explain *abhorrent, incarcerate, quiescent, sagacious, vile, vindicate*.

Viz. is an abbreviation of *vidēlicet*. The *z* is not really the letter *z* but a sign of abbreviation.

Catiline Wants Civil War

Verba Ūtilia: corrigō, dexter, invidia, iussū, meditor, mōlēs, nex, per-
timēscō, poena, quamquam, sēcernō, serviō, sīn, tametsī, utinam

IX, 22. Quamquam¹ quid loquor? Tē ut² ūlla rēs frangat, tū ut umquam
tē corrigās, tū ut ūllam fugam meditēre, tū ut ūllum exsilium cōgitēs?
Utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortalēs duint!¹ Tametsī³ videō, sī meā
vōce perterritus ire in exsilium animum indūxeris,⁴ quanta tempestās
invidiae nōbīs, sī minus⁵ in⁶ praesēns tempus recentī memoriā scelerum
tuōrum, at⁷ in posteritātem impendeat. Sed est tantī,⁸ dum modo tua ista sit
prīvāta calamitās et ā reī pūblīcae periculīs sēiungātur. Sed tū ut vitiīs tuīs
commoveāre, ut lēgum poenās pertimēscās, ut temporibus⁹ reī pūblīcae
cēdās nōn est postulandum. Neque enim is₂ es, Catilīna, ut tē aut pudor ā
turpitūdine aut metus ā periculō aut ratiō ā furōre revocārit. **23.** Quam ob¹⁰
rem, ut saepe iam dixī, proficīscere ac, sī mihi, inimicō, ut praedicās, tuō,
cōnflāre vīs invidiam, rēctā perge in exsilium; vix feram sermōnēs
hominum, sī id fēcēris, vix mōlem istius invidiae, sī in exsilium iussū
cōnsulis īveris, sustinēbō. Sīn autem servīre meae laudī₃ et glōriae māvīs,
ēgredere₄ cum importūnā scelerātōrum manū, cōnfer tē ad Mānlium,¹⁵
concitā perditōs cīvīs, sēcerne tē ā bonīs, infer patriae bellum, exsultā
impiō latrōciniō, ut ā mē nōn ēiectus ad aliēnōs, sed invītātus ad tuōs īsse

¹ And yet

² How could anything crush you?

³ And yet

⁴ bring yourself (literally, bring your mind)

⁵ if not

⁶ for

⁷ at any rate

⁸ it is worth it

⁹ critical needs

¹ an early form for *dent*

² = *tālis*, followed by a result clause

³ dative with *servīre*

⁴ six imperatives, arranged in three pairs according to the thought

¹⁰ why should I ask you

¹¹ that famous

videāris. 24. Quamquam quid ego tē invitem,¹⁰ ā quō⁵ iam sciam esse praemissōs quī⁶ tibi ad Forum Aurēlium praestōlārentur armātī, cui sciam
20 pactam et cōstitutam cum Mānliō diem,⁷ ā quō etiam aquilam illam¹¹ argenteam, quam tibi ac tuīs omnibus cōnfidō perniciosam ac fūnestam
futuram, cui domī tuae sacrārium scelerum cōstitutum fuit, sciam esse
praemissam? Tū ut illā carēre diūtius possīs quam venerārī ad caedem
25 proficiscēns solēbās, ā cuius altāribus saepe istam impiam dexteram ad
necem cīvium trānstulistī?

Literary Style: Asyndeton

Asyndeton (a Greek word meaning “not bound together”) is the omission of coordinate conjunctions in a series of words or phrases. This omission of the connective gives a staccato (“detached”) or sharp effect. The six unconnected imperatives in lines 15–16 are an example of asyndeton.

Find a metaphor in the preceding reading.



TRANSLATION



1. Oh that the gods would cause Catiline to fear!
2. Do they prefer to stay in Rome or to go to Faesulae?
3. Why should we ask you to stay in this town in which there is so much danger?

Word Studies

Explain *aquiline*, *argentiferous*, *exultation*, *fracture*, *meditation*, *molecule*.

Explain the force of the prefix *sē-* in *sēcernō* and *sēiungō*, of *per-* in *pertimēscō*, and of *prae-* in *praemittō*.

⁵ The antecedent is *tē*; causal relative clause.

⁶ Supply the antecedent (*virōs*).

⁷ October 27

⁸ So called because it once had belonged to Marius; the fact that this emblem of a Roman legion had already been sent from Rome shows that Catiline would soon follow.

Catiline, The Hardened Criminal

Verba Ūtilia: āmentia, cōsulātus, cupiditās, exerceō, exultō, famēs, frīgus, iam prīdem, inopia, marītus, obeō, praeclārus, rapiō, somnus, spēs

X, 25. Ībis tandem aliquandō quō tē iam prīdem tua ista cupiditās effrēnāta ac furiōsa rapiēbat; neque enim tibi haec rēs₁ affert dolōrem sed quandam incrēdibilem voluptātem. Ad hanc tē āmentiam nātūra peperit, voluntās exercuit, fortūna servāvit. Numquam tū nōn modo¹ ōtium sed nē bellum quidem nisi nefārium concupīstī. Nactus es ex perditīs atque₂ ab omnī nōn modo Fortūnā₃ vērūm etiam spē dērelictīs cōnflātam₄ improbōrum manum. 26. Hīc² tū quā laetitiā perfruēre, quibus gaudiīs exsultābis, quantā in voluptāte bacchābere, cum in tantō numerō tuōrum neque audiēs virum bonum quemquam neque vidēbis! Ad huius vītae studium meditātī³ illī sunt quī feruntur⁴ labōrēs tuī, iacēre₅ humī nōn solum ad obsidendum stuprum⁵ vērūm etiam ad facinus obeundum, vigilāre nōn solum īnsidiantem somnō marītōrum vērūm etiam bonīs ōtiōsōrum. Habēs ubi⁶ ostentēs tuam illam praeclāram patientiam famis, frīgoris, inopiae rērū omnium quibus tē brevī tempore cōnfectum esse sentiēs. 27. Tantum prōfēcī, cum tē ā cōsulātū reppulī,⁶ ut exsul potius temptāre quam cōsul vexāre rem pūblicam possēs, atque ut id quod esset ā tē scelerātē susceptum latrōcinium potius quam bellum nōminārētur.

¹ not only have you never

² Here (i.e., with such followers)

³ those hardships were practiced

⁴ which are told about

⁵ to practice debauchery

⁶ (an opportunity) where

Literary Style: Climax and Word Play

Occasionally Cicero uses climax, a figure of speech in which ideas are arranged in the order of ascending intensity. A good example is in lines 7-8: **perfruēre**, *experience*, **exsultābis**, *exult in*, **bacchābere**, *revel in*. **Bacchābere** is a very strong word, meaning to act like a crazed follower of Bacchus, the god of wine.

Word play to us usually means punning for humorous effect. But Cicero often uses it seriously, even in the most solemn passages. In lines 15-17 the play on **exsul** and **cōsul** is used very effectively, for Cicero had prevented Catiline from being elected **cōsul** and now was forcing him to become an **exsul**.

₁ i.e., starting a civil war

₂ connects **perditīs** and **dērelictīs**

₃ That **Fortūna** is personified is shown by the use of **ab**.

₄ **ex... dērelictīs** depends on **cōnflātam**: *composed of*

₅ in apposition with and explaining **labōrēs**

₆ Catiline had been a candidate for consul against Cicero.

1. Will you enjoy your exile, Catiline?
2. By preparing a camp in Italy you have produced woe for yourself.
3. In order that Catiline might realize what he had done, Cicero told him very plainly.

Word Studies

Distinguish **parō**, **pāreō**, **pariō**, and **parcō** by giving their principal parts and meanings.

Explain *adjacent*, *derelict*, *humus*, *somnolence*.

Why Don't You Act, Cicero?

Verba Ūtilia: ārdeō, cārus, cūnctus, dēficiō, dēprecor, gradus, inertia, iūs, penitus, quaesō

¹ turn aside by entreaty and prayer
² should say

XI. Nunc, ut ā mē, patrēs cōnscrīptī, quandam prope iūstam patriae querimōniam dētester ac dēprecer,¹ percipite, quaesō, diligenter quae dīcam,¹ et ea penitus animīs vestrīs mentibusque mandāte. Etenim sī mēcum patria, quae mihi vītā meā multō est cārior, sī cūncta Italia, sī omnis rēs pūblica
5 loquātur:² “M. Tullī, quid agis? Tūne³ eum quem esse hostem comperistī, quem ducem bellī futurūm vidēs, quem exspectārī imperātōrem in castrīs hostium sentīs, auctōrem sceleris, prīncipem coniūrātiōnis, ēvocātōrem servōrum⁴ et cīvium perditōrum, exīre patiēre, ut abs tē nōn ēmissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videātur? Nōne hunc in vincula dūcī,
10 nōn ad mortem rapī, nōn summō suppliciō mactārī imperābis?⁵ Quid tandem tē impedit? Mōsne maiōrum? 28. At⁶ persaepe etiam prīvātī in hāc rē pūblicā perniciōsōs cīvīs morte multārunt. An lēgēs quae dē cīvium Rōmānōrum suppliciō rogātae sunt? At numquam in hāc urbe quī ā rē pūblicā dēfēcērunt cīvium iūra tenuērunt.⁷ An invidiam posteritātis timēs?

¹ future

² The long quotation caused Cicero to forget the conclusion of the condition.

³ very emphatic, not only because it comes first but because it is so far removed from its verb (*patiēre*)

⁴ Catiline was urged to recruit slaves but apparently did not do so. He was clever enough to realize that all Romans were opposed to this.

⁵ An *ut* clause is usual with *imperō* but the infinitive may be used in its passive forms.

⁶ *At* is often used like quotation marks to indicate a change of speaker.

⁷ Here Cicero's strategy becomes clear: Catiline is no longer a citizen but a *hostis*; whether the *senātus cōsultum ultimum* gave Cicero this right is still unsettled.

Praeclāram⁸ vērō populō Rōmānō refers grātiam, quī tē, hominem per tē¹⁵ cognitum, nūllā commendātiōne maiōrum⁹ tam mātūrē ad summum imperium¹⁰ per omnīs honōrum gradūs extulit, sī propter invidiam aut alicuius periculī metum salūtem cīvium tuōrum negligis. 29. Sed sī quis est invidiae metus, nōn est vehementius sevērītātis³ ac fortitūdinis invidia³ quam inertiae ac nequitiae pertimēscenda. An, cum bellō vāstābitur Italia, 20³ resulting from severity (with invidia); similarly inertiae vexābuntur urbēs, tēcta ārdēbunt, tum tē nōn exīstimās invidiae incendiō cōnflagrātūrum?"

Literary Style: Rhythm

Cicero's prose has a definite rhythm, not so pronounced as that of verse but still easily recognizable, especially at the end of sentences. Two of the favorite endings are ---|~ and ----|~. An example of the latter rhythm is **esse videātur**, a phrase which occurs very frequently; of the former, **cōnflagrātūrum** at the end of the chapter.

Find six examples of a series of three in the preceding reading.

Note the word play in **ēmissus** and **immissus** (lines 8-9).

Find one metaphor in the preceding reading.

TRANSLATION

1. The country asked Cicero what he was doing.
2. Cicero says that his country is dearer to him than life.
3. If your country should say such things to you, how would you reply?
4. Do you not think you should seize a man who is making plans for destroying the city?

Word Studies

Explain *defector*, *deprecate*, *emissary*, *gradation*, *mult*.

⁸ emphatic and ironical

⁹ Cicero was a **novus homō** in politics, for no ancestor of his had held a curule office. He became consul at the minimum age of 43.

¹⁰ the consulship

Watchful Waiting

Verba Ūtilia: alō, dēleō, dissimulō, exstinguō, fateor, immineō, impendeō, intendō, iūdicō, paulisper, pestis, sanguis, sēmen, stultus, vōx

¹ (unexpressed) thoughts

² of many men of earlier times

³ I did not have to fear

⁴ any unpopularity (with *invidiae*)

⁵ wrecks, bums

⁶ root and seed

XII. Hīs ego sānctissimīs reī pūblicae vōcibus et eōrum hominum quī hoc idem sentiunt mentibus¹ pauca respondēbō. Ego, sī hoc optimum factū iūdicārem, patrēs cōnscrīptī, Catilīnam morte multārī, ūnīus ūsūram hōrae gladiātōrī¹ istī ad vīvendum nōn dedissem. Etenim sī summī virī et clāris-
5 simī cīvēs Sātūrnīnī et Gracchōrum et Flaccī et superiōrum complūrium² sanguine nōn modo sē nōn contāminārunt sed etiam honestārunt, certē verendum mihi nōn erat³ nē quid,⁴ hōc parricidā² cīvium interfectō, *invidiae* mihi in posteritātem redundāret. Quod sī ea³ mihi maximē impendēret, tamen hōc animō fuī semper ut *invidiam* virtūte partam⁴ glōriam, nōn
10 *invidiam* putārem.

30. Quamquam nōn nullī sunt in hōc ōrdine quī aut ea quae imminēt nōn videant aut ea quae vident dissimulent; quī spem Catilīnae mollibus sententiīs aluērunt coniūrātiōnemque nāscētem nōn crēdendō corrōborāvērunt; quōrum auctōritāte multī nōn solum improbī vērū etiam imperītī,
15 sī in hunc animadvertissem, crūdēliter et rēgiē⁵ factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellegō, sī iste, quō intendit, in Mānliāna castra pervēnerit,⁶ nēmīnem tam stultum fore quī nōn videat coniūrātiōnem esse factam, nēmīnem tam improbum quī nōn fateātur. Hōc autem ūnō interfectō,⁷ intellegō hanc reī pūblicae pestem paulisper reprimī, nōn in perpetuum comprimī posse.
20 Quod sī sēsē ēiecerit sēcūmque suōs ēdūxerit et eōdem cēterōs undique collēctōs naufragōs⁵ aggregārit, exstinguētur atque dēlēbitur nōn modo haec tam adulta reī pūblicae pestis vērū etiam stirps ac sēmen⁶ malōrum omnium.

¹ We might say *prizefighter* or *bruiser*; Cicero practically called Catiline a gladiator once before.

² The ablative absolute has conditional force.

³ i.e., *invidia*

⁴ from *pariō*; two objects with *putō*, as with verbs of calling

⁵ To call a man a king among the Romans was something like calling an American a derogatory name.

⁶ Subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, but *intendit* is not subjunctive because the clause is parenthetical.

⁷ conditional



PHOTRI/AISA

The Cūria was the meeting place of the Senate, the most powerful group in Rome for several hundred years. The number of senators varied at times in history, but there were generally about 600 members, chosen from the patrician class. They decided governmental policies and how money should be spent. During the time of the kings, the senators were mainly an advisory group, but during the Republic, they were the main governing body. The Cūria was rebuilt a number of times, but still retained its original shape. Constantine in the early 4th century was the last emperor to refurbish it.

Literary Style: Cicero's Periodic Sentences

Contemporary writers of English, and their readers, generally prefer short sentences. In older English and in Ciceronian oratory, long, complex sentences, with phrases and clauses in groups of two and three, with anaphora, with asyndeton and other rhetorical devices, with the main thought not revealed until the end, were in great favor. The sentence just finished is an example of a period. We have read many such sentences in Cicero, e.g., page 77, line 15, **Potestne**; page 79, line 11, **Et sī mē**; page 86, line 5, **M. Tullī**. In the preceding reading we find **Etenim sī summī**.

Find an example of word play in the preceding reading.

TRANSLATION

1. I fear that he will kill all the citizens.
2. There were men in the senate who did not believe Cicero.
3. I do not know why you wish me to do what I do not want to do.
4. If Cicero had thought it worthwhile, he would have compelled Catiline to flee.

Word Studies

Give the derivation of **corrōborō**, **redundō**, **naufragus**.

Explain *imminent*, *impend*, *nascent*, *sanctify*, *sanguinary*, *seminal*.

Out with Them All!



Verba Ūtilia: auspiciū, bibō, brevis, cūria, dēsino, ērumpō, fax, foedus (*noun*), fortasse, frōns (–tis), latrō, morbus, ōmen, patefaciō, societās

XIII, 31. Etenim iam diū, patrēs cōscriptī, in hīs periculīs coniūratiōnis insidiisque versāmur, sed nesciō quō pactō¹ omnium scelerum ac veteris furōris et audaciae mātūritās in nostrī cōsulātūs tempus ērūpit. Nunc sī ex tantō latrōciniō² iste ūnus tollētur, vidēbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cūrā et metū esse relevātī, periculum autem residēbit et erit inclūsum penitus in vēnīs atque in vīsceribus reī pūblicae. Ut saepe hominēs aegrī morbō gravī, cum₁ aestū febrīque³ iactantur, sī aquam gelidam bibērunt, prīmō relevārī videntur, deinde multō gravius vehementiusque afflīctantur, sīc hic morbus quī est in rē pūblicā relevātus₂ istius poenā

¹ somehow (literally, *I do not know how*)

² (band of) robbers

³ heat of fever

₁ conjunction

₂ conditional, as is the ablative absolute that follows

vehementius, reliquīs vīvīs, ingravēscet. 32. Quārē sēcēdant improbi,³ sēcē- 10
nant sē ā bonīs, ūnum in locum congregentur, mūrō dēnique, quod⁴ saepe
iam dīxī, sēcernantur ā nōbīs; dēsīnant īnsidiārī domī suae cōnsulī,⁴ cir-
cumstāre tribūnal praetōris urbānī, obsidēre cum gladiīs cūriam, malleolōs
et facēs⁵ ad īnflammandam urbem comparāre; sit dēnique īnscrīptum in
fronte⁵ ūnīus cuiusque quid dē rē pūblicā sentiat. Polliceor hoc vōbīs, 15
patrēs cōnscrīptī, tantam in nōbīs cōnsulibus fore dīligentiam, tantam in
vōbīs auctōritātem, tantam in equitibus Rōmānīs virtūtem, tantam in
omnibus bonīs cōnsēnsiōnem ut Catilīnae profectiōne omnia patefacta,
illūstrāta, oppressa, vindicāta esse videātis.⁶

⁴ as (literally, [a thing] which)

⁵ forehead

⁶ whose (worship) was established
under the same auspices as this city

33. Hīsce⁷ ōminibus, Catilīna, cum⁸ summā reī pūblīcae salūte, cum tuā 20
peste ac pernīciē cumque eōrum exitiō quī sē tēcūm omnī scelere parrīcī-
diōque iūnxērunt, proficīscere ad impium bellum ac nefārium. Tū,⁹
Iuppiter, quī īsdem quibus haec urbs auspiciīs ā Rōmulō es cōnstitūtus,⁶
quem Statōrem¹⁰ huius urbis atque imperī vērē nōmināmus, hunc et huius
sociōs ā tuīs cēterīsque templīs, ā tēctīs urbis ac moenibus, ā vītā fortūnīsque 25
cīvium omnium arcēbis et hominēs bonōrum inimīcōs, hostīs patriae,
latrōnēs Italiae scelerum foedere inter sē ac nefāriā societāte coniūctōs
aeternīs suppliciīs vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.

Cicero's Style

Cicero ends his speech in a blaze of rhetorical fireworks. In line 19 we find anaphora, asyndeton, climax, and a periodic sentence ending in the favored rhythmic phrase **esse videātis**. The four clauses are arranged in two pairs: consuls and senators, knights and the rest. So are the four participles: revelation and light, crushing and punishing.

In the long periodic prayer at the end we note a series of pairs: **quī** and **quem** clauses, **urbis** and **imperī**, **hunc** and **sociōs**. Then comes a group of three phrases introduced by **ā**, each phrase containing a pair: **tuīs cēterīsque**, **tēctīs ac moenibus**, **vītā fortūnīsque**. These are followed by another group of three: **hominēs**, **hostīs**, **latrōnēs**, at the end of which is the pair **foedere** and **societāte**, each with an adjective. Last comes another pair, **vīvōs mortuōsque**. The speech ends with one of the favorite rhythms, **-ōsque mactābis** (---|~).

³ It becomes clear here that **improbi**, by its contrast with **bonīs**, has a political meaning: *radicals*.

⁴ dative with **īnsidiārī**

⁵ from **fax**

⁶ Because there is no future subjunctive, the present serves in its place.

⁷ a stronger form of **Hīs**

⁸ We would say *to* rather than *with*.

⁹ addressed to the statue of Jupiter in the temple where the senate was meeting

¹⁰ Cicero uses the word here in the sense of *Protector* rather than *Stayer*.

Word Studies

How does the suffix *-scō* affect the meaning of *ingravēscō*?

Explain *bibulous*, *congregation*, *febrile*, *gelid*, *secession*, *viscera*.

QUESTIONS

1. Where and when was the senate meeting held?
2. Why did Cicero make this speech?
3. Why did he not have Catiline executed?
4. Why did not the senate vote his execution?
5. What part does the word **hostis** play in Cicero's argument?
6. Who killed Tiberius Gracchus?
7. Who killed Gaius Gracchus?
8. How did Cicero learn of Catiline's plans?
9. Where was Manlius?
10. What happened on November 7?
11. What did Catiline plan for October 28?
12. Did Catiline have any supporters in the senate?

The Government of Rome

Rome developed from a small city-state, founded in the eighth century B.C., into a world empire. At the same time its constitution gradually evolved. Although the Roman constitution was never written down, a body of written legislation grew up, beginning with the Twelve Tables in the fifth century B.C.

Roman citizens came to be divided into three groups: (1) the **nōbilēs**, those who held, or had held, one of the curule offices (namely, consuls, dictators, praetors, and curule aediles) and their descendants; (2) the **equitēs**, the middle class, who were essentially an aristocracy of wealth dominating commerce and banking (the term **equitēs**, *cavalry*, recalls the early times when only the man who could afford a horse had the right of admission to this class); and (3) the **plēbs**, the lowest order of citizens. Slaves were considered property and had no rights.

In the early days of Rome the government was controlled largely by the noble oligarchy. With expansion, the **equitēs** increased their power and often aligned themselves with the aristocracy for effective control of governmental procedures. Meanwhile, there was a continuing struggle on the part of the **plēbs** for greater representation and a more equitable distribution of the functions of state, resulting ultimately (with, of course, other contributing causes) in the Civil War between Pompey and Caesar and the establishment of monarchy (though not so called) under Augustus.

The governing body of the upper classes was the senate, composed of 600 senators, all formally trained in governmental offices. All members were either former magistrates or descendants of nobles. They were called **patrēs cōnscriptī** (*conscript fathers*), standing for **patrēs et cōnscriptī**, a term that referred to the time when the first plebeians were admitted to the senate as “enrolled” or “added” members in distinction to the patrician members, the **patrēs**.

The popular assemblies were (1) the **comitia centūriāta**, so called because all the citizens were divided into groups of centuries, or hundreds, which elected the higher magistrates, and (2) the **comitia tribūta**, a grouping by tribes (there were thirty-five) with one vote each. In the **comitia tribūta** the **plēbs** were more influential than the other two orders.

Every Roman official of the senatorial class was well educated and had undergone military and political training. The magistrates were elected annually (and could not immediately succeed themselves) in the *cursus honorum*. Each official had at least one colleague and thus was prevented from monopolizing power. The officials were not salaried.

The officers in the senatorial **cursus honōrum**, all elected annually were:

OFFICIAL	MINIMUM AGE
1. <i>Quaestor</i> Twenty in number. Served in the treasury. Two in Rome, eighteen in the provinces and the army.	31
2. <i>Aedile</i> Four in number. City officials, in charge of public entertainment and public works.	37
3. <i>Praetor</i> Eight in number. Judges in civil and criminal courts.	40
4. <i>Consul</i> Two, with equal powers. Presided over the senate; were the chief executives of the state; brought bills before the assemblies; had charge of elections.	43

There were also the censors (two), usually ex-consuls, elected every five years for an eighteen months' term, who were in charge of moral standards and the eligibility of senators. During the remaining three and one-half years the consuls performed the censors' functions. One office, that of the tribune, was in the hands of the **plēbs**. The tribunes of the plebs were ten in number, had the right of veto, and were personally sacrosanct; anyone who attacked a tribune could be put to death without trial. The veto made them very powerful.

After an official served as praetor or consul, he was usually appointed to a post as governor in a province, with the title of proconsul or propraeor.

The dictatorship at Rome was a constitutional office, resorted to in times of emergency. The dictator was appointed by the consuls at the request of the senate for a period of six months at most. Usually he retired as soon as the emergency had been handled.

The Ciceronian Sentence

You have read about Cicero's periodic style. Here are a few other strategies to help you through one of his sentences.

You probably have realized that anaphora, groups of two and three, and other devices actually make it easier to find your way through one of Cicero's formidable periods. You will find it useful to read a sentence aloud, breaking it up into its natural parts. Often these parts are of about equal length. Take the last sentence in the first speech against Catiline:

Tū, Iuppiter, || quī īsdem quibus haec urbs auspiciīs || ā Rōmulō es cōstitūtus, || quem Statōrem huius urbis atque imperī vērē nōmināmus, || hunc et huius sociōs || ā tuīs cēterisque templīs, || ā tēctīs urbis ac moenibus, || ā vītā fortūnisque cīvium omnium arcēbis || et hominēs bonōrum s inimicōs, || hostīs patriae, latrōnēs Italiae || scelerum foedere inter sē ac nefāriā societāte coniūctōs || aeternīs suppliciīs || vīvōs mortuōsque mactābis.

In translating such a sentence as this, break it up into several short sentences.

Not only does Cicero weld his ideas into a nicely rounded period but, by various devices, he also connects the periods with one another in thought and word. The connecting relative is one such device. But besides the ordinary conjunctions such as **sed** and **et**, there are many other words and phrases used for transitions:

age nunc, *come now*
age vērō, *well then*
at vērō, *but*
autem (never first word),
however, moreover
dēnique, *in short, in a word*
enim (never first word), *for*
etenim, *for really*
hīc (adv.), *in view of this, under*
these circumstances
iam tum, *even then*
iam vērō, *moreover*
igitur, *then, as I was just saying*
itaque, *accordingly*
nam, *for*
nē longum sit, *to be brief*
nunc, *as it is*
nunc vērō, *but as it is*
postrēmō, *finally, at last*
quae cum ita sint, *and since*
this is so, therefore
quam ob rem, *and for this*
reason, and therefore

quamquam, *and yet,*
however
quārē, *and for that reason,*
therefore
quid, *tell me, again* (calling
attention to a question to
follow)
quid est, *listen*
quid igitur, *what then*
quid quod, *what of the*
fact that
quid vērō, *look here*
quod sī, *but if; occasionally,*
if then
sīn autem, *but if on the*
other hand
tamen (usually not first
word), *nevertheless*
tametsī, *and yet*
vērō (never first word), *in*
fact, but

Second Oration Against Catiline

The first speech was made before the senate on November 8, the second before the people on the next day. Catiline left Rome to join Manlius after the senate meeting. In the senate Cicero had a generally sympathetic audience; not so before the people, many of whom sided with Catiline. We can imagine that Cicero had rather a mixed reception. The one new thing in this speech is the detailed description of the six classes of conspirators, most valuable in explaining the background of the plot and therefore the most important part in all four speeches.

Catiline Has Left!

I, 1. Tandem aliquandō, Quirītēs, L. Catilinam, furem audaciā, scelus anhelantem,¹ pestem patriae nefariē molientem, vobis₁ atque huic urbī ferrō flammāque minitantem ex urbe vel eiecimus vel emisimus² vel ipsum egredientem verbis³ prōsecuti sumus. Abiit, excessit, evāsit, erūpit.₃

¹ *breathing crime*, as we say,
breathing fire

² *let go*, (the original meaning of the word)

³ *with (nice) words*. ironical

₁ with *minitantem*

₂ *vel*, as distinguished from *aut*, means *or*, if you prefer

₃ Note the rhetorical flavor of this first paragraph. Four participles are arranged in two pairs; in the first pair we have chiasmus. In *pestem patriae* and in *ferrō flammāque* there is alliteration. With the last participle there are two pairs of nouns. Then come the three verbs. The last sentence consists only of four verbs, in two pairs, reaching a climax.

Conspirators: Class I

Verba Ūtilia: aes aliēnum, argentum, certō (–āre), errō, flamma (in reading above), furō (in reading above), locuplēs, sālō, ulcīscor, voveō

VIII, 17. Sed cūr tam diū dē ūnō hoste loquimur, et dē eō hoste quī iam fatētur sē esse hostem,₁ et quem, quia, quod₂ semper voluī, mūrus interest, nōn timeō; dē hīs quī dissimulant, quī Rōmae remanent, quī nōbīscum sunt, nihil dīcimus? Quōs quidem ego, sī ūllō modō fierī possit, nōn tam₅ ulcīscī studeō quam sālāre sibi ipsōs, plācāre reī pūblicae¹ neque id quārē fierī nōn possit, sī iam mē audīre volent, intellegō. Expōnam enim vobīs, Quirītēs, ex quibus generibus hominum istae cōpiae comparentur; deinde singulīs medicīnam cōsiliī atque ōrātiōnis₃ meae, sī quam² poterō, afferam.

18. Ūnum genus est eōrum quī magnō in aere aliēnō³ maiōrēs etiam₁₀ possessiōnēs habent, quārum amōre, adductī dissolvī⁴ nūllō modō possunt. Hōrum hominum speciēs est honestissima, sunt enim locuplētēs; voluntās vērō et causa impudentissima. Tū₄ agrīs, tū aedificiīs, tū argentō, tū familiā, tū rēbus omnibus ōrnatūs et cōpiōsus sīs, et dubitēs dē possessiōne dētrahere, acquirere ad fidem?⁵ Quid enim exspectās? Bellum? Quid ergo?

₁ Note the emphatic repetition of *hostis*.

₂ An excellent example of a common Latin usage that cannot be reproduced in English. The introductory words of three clauses come first, the verbs of each follow in the opposite order: *vōluī* goes with *quod*, *interest* with *quia*, *timeō* with *quem*.

₃ hendiadys; the two genitives explain *medicīnam*

₄ He addresses an imaginary member of this class.

¹ *for (the good of) the state*

² *any (medicīnam)*

³ *(although) in great debt*

⁴ *clear themselves (of debt)*

⁵ *credit*

In vāstātiōne omnium tuās possessiōnēs sacrōsānctās futūrās putās? An 15
 tabulās novās?⁶ Errant quī istās ā Catilinā exspectant; meō beneficiō tabulae
 novae prōferuntur, vērum auctiōnāriae;⁵ neque enim istī quī possessiōnēs
 habent aliā ratiōne ūllā salvī esse possunt. Quod⁷ sī mātūrius facere voluis-
 sent neque, id quod stultissimum est, certāre cum ūsūrīs fructibus
 praediōrum,⁶ et locuplētīōribus hīs et meliōribus cīvibus ūteriēmur.⁸ Sed 20
 hōsce hominēs minimē putō pertimēscendōs, quod aut dēdūcī dē sentiētiā
 possunt aut, sī permanēbunt, magis mihi videntur vōta factūrī contrā rem
 pūblicam quam arma lātūrī.

⁶ new accounts means cancellation
 of debt, promised by Catiline
⁷ and this (connecting relative)
⁸ we should find them (to be)

TRANSLATION

1. You hesitate to give up your fine houses?
2. I see no one who can compel Catiline to surrender.
3. Although Catiline threatened us, we let him go from Rome.
4. The men who have remained in Rome are to be feared the most.

⁵ Cicero plans to have mortgaged property sold at auction to pay off the mortgage.

⁶ Farm income was insufficient to pay off mortgage interest.

Classes II and III

Verba Ūtilia: adipīscor, agrestis, colōnus, concordia, furor, iactō, inferī,
 potior, sūmptus, tenuis

IX, 19. Alterum genus est eōrum quī, quamquam premuntur aere
 aliēnō, dominātiōnem tamen exspectant, rērum¹ potīrī volunt, honōrēs²
 quōs, quiētā rē pūblicā, dēspērānt, perturbātā,¹ sē cōnsequī posse arbitran-
 tur. Quibus hoc praeciendum vidētur, ūnum scīlicet et idem quod reliquīs
 omnibus,² ut dēspērent id quod cōnantur sē cōnsequī posse: prīmum 5
 omnium mē ipsum vigilāre,³ adesse, prōvidēre reī pūblīcae; deinde magnōs
 animōs esse in bonīs virīs, magnam concordiam ōrdinum, maximam mul-
 titūdinem, magnās praetereā mīlitum cōpiās; deōs dēnique immortālīs huic
 invictō populō, clārissimō imperiō, pulcherrimae urbī contrā tantam vim
 sceleris praesentīs³ auxilium esse lātūrōs. Quod sī iam sint id quod summō 10
 furōre cupiunt adeptī,⁴ num illī in cinere urbis et in sanguine cīvium, quae⁵
 mente cōnscelerātā ac nefāriā concupivērunt, cōsulēs sē aut dictātōrēs aut
 etiam rēgēs spērānt futūrōs? Nōn vident id sē cupere quod, sī adeptī sint,
 fugitīvō alicui aut gladiātōrī concēdī sit necesse?

¹ to acquire political control

² public offices

³ in person (with deōs)

⁴ but supposing they have obtained

⁵ (things) which (the two preceding nouns are the antecedent)

¹ i.e., rē pūblicā

² Supply praeciendum vidētur.

³ The infinitives are in apposition with hoc.

⁶ on the whole

⁷ made a display of themselves

⁸ rich (or blessed)

⁹ not only not . . . but not even

15 20. Tertium genus est aetate iam affectum, sed tamen exercitatio-
robustum; quod ex genere iste est Manlius cui nunc Catilina succedit. Hi
sunt homines ex eis coloniis quas Sulla constituit;⁴ quas ego universas⁶
civium esse optimorum et fortissimorum virorum sentio, sed tamen ei sunt
coloni qui se in insperatis ac repentinis pecuniis sumptuosius insolent-
20 tiusque iactarunt.⁷ Hi dum aedificant tamquam beati,⁸ dum praediis lectis,
fami- liis magnis, conviviis apparatis delectantur, in tantum aes alienum
incidunt ut, si salvi esse velint, Sulla sit eis ab inferis excitandus. Qui
etiam non nullos agrestis homines tenuis atque egentis in eandem illam
spem rapinarum veterum impulerunt. Quos ego utrosque in eodem genere
25 praedatorum direptorumque pono, sed eos hoc, moneo, desinant furere ac
proscriptiones et dictaturas cogitare. Tantus enim illorum temporum⁶ dolor
inustus est civitati ut iam ista non modo homines sed ne⁹ pecudes quidem
mihi passurae esse videantur.



TRANSLATION



1. This is what I urge, that you leave Rome at once.
2. Let them not remain at Rome; let them go to Manlius' camp.
3. They want to get possession of the city and all its wealth.
4. They have fallen into debt because they want to live like rich people.

⁴ Sulla had confiscated much land in Italy in order to reward 120,000 of his veterans.

⁵ desinant (with ut omitted) explains hoc

⁶ the time of Sulla

Classes IV, V, and VI

Verba Utilia: dilectus, grex, idcirco, industria, parricida, pereō, proprius, quam primum, sane, venenum

X. 21. Quartum genus est sane varium et mixtum et turbulentum; qui
iam pridem premuntur, qui numquam emergunt,¹ qui partim inertia, partim
male gerendo negotio, partim etiam sumptibus in vetere aere alieno vacil-
lant, qui vadimoniis, iudiciis, proscriptione² bonorum defatigati permulti
5 et ex urbe et ex agris se in illa castra conferre dicuntur. Hosce ego non tam
milites acris quam infitiatores³ lentos esse arbitror. Qui homines quam pri-
mum, si stare non possunt, corruant, sed ita ut non modo civitas sed ne
vicini quidem proximam sentiant. Nam illud non intellego quam ob rem, si
vivere honeste non possunt, perire turpiter velint, aut cum minore dolore
10 perituros se cum multis quam si soli pereant arbitrentur.

¹ never get their heads above water

² summons (to court), judgment, forced sale

³ slow payers



Vanni/Art Resource, NY

The Arch of Septimius Severus was built in honor of Septimius, who ruled from 193-211, and his sons, Caracalla and Geta. With its three arched passageways, it is much more elaborate than the Arch of Titus, seen through the main entrance of the arch. Severus was a brilliant general who fought a successful campaign against the Parthians to expand the empire. After a foray into Scotland, he died at Eboracum (modern York, England).

22. Quīntum genus est parricīdārum, sicāriōrum, dēnique omnium facinorōsōrum. Quōs ego ā Catilīnā nōn revocō: nam neque ab eō dīvellī possunt et pereant sānē in latrōciniō, quoniam sunt ita multī ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit.

⁴ is (last)

⁵ Catiline's own

⁶ sails (because they contained so much cloth)

⁷ herds, gangs

⁸ and not only

15 Postrēmum autem genus est⁴ nōn solum numerō vērū etiam genere ipsō atque vītā, quod propriū⁵ Catilīnae est, dē eius dīlētū, immō vērō dē complexū eius ac sinū; quōs pexō capillō, nitidōs, aut imberbīs₁ aut bene barbātōs vidētis, manicātis et tālāribus tunicis,₂ vēlīs⁶ amictōs, nōn togīs; quōrum omnis industria vītāe et vigilandī labor in antelūcānīs₃ cēnīs
20 exprōmitur. 23. In hīs gregibus⁷ omnēs āleātōrēs, omnēs adulterī, omnēs impūrī impudīcīque versantur. Hī puerī tam lepidī ac dēlicātī nōn solum amāre et amārī neque⁸ saltāre et cantāre₄ sed etiam sicās vibrāre et spargere venēna₅ didicērunt. Quī nisi exeunt, nisi pereunt, etiam sī Catilīna perierit, scītōte₆ hoc in rē públicā sēminārium Catilīnārum futūrum.
25 Vērū tamen quid sibi istī miserī volunt? Num suās sēcūm mulierculās sunt in castra ductūrī? Quem ad modum autem illīs carēre poterunt, hīs praesertim iam noctibus? Quō autem pactō illī Appennīnum atque illās pruīnās ac nivīs₇ perferent? Nisi idcirco sē facilius hiemem tolerātūrōs putant, quod nūdī in convīviīs saltāre didicērunt.

TRANSLATION

1. By managing business badly they fell into debt.
2. Let them die in the snows of the highest mountains.
3. I do not understand why they want to die in disgrace.
4. I cannot tell whether they are wearing togas or sails.

₁ i.e., teenagers

₂ a sign of effeminacy, for most men wore sleeveless tunics, reaching to the knees

₃ i.e., they don't go home until morning from their all-night banquets

₄ Singing and dancing were not considered proper for "gentlemen."

₅ in wine, presumably

₆ future imperative plural, translated like a present: *I assure you* (literally, *know*)

₇ in contrast to Rome, where it does not snow very often

Third Oration Against Catiline

The third speech against Catiline was made before the people on December 3, more than three weeks after the second speech, as a result of the discovery of sensational and conclusive evidence against Catiline. Before that Cicero had no real proof, and many people no doubt thought that he was just making political speeches, ones not based on fact.

What happened was that, after Catiline left Rome, his representatives began to deal with members of a Gallic tribe, the Allobroges, who were in Rome on an official mission. The Allobroges had complained to the senate about the dishonesty of Romans doing business in their country. The senate paid no attention to their complaints, and naturally the Allobroges were disgruntled. Catiline's men got the idea, clever at first sight, of taking advantage of this indignation. The conspirators proposed that the Allobroges send soldiers to help Catiline fight against his own country. The Allobroges, like other foreign peoples, had a Roman patron, that is, an adviser on legal matters. They consulted him about the conspirators' request, and he reported it to Cicero, who advised the Allobroges to get the request put in writing. This Catiline's representatives were stupid enough to do. Not only that—one of Catiline's men, named Lentulus, wrote Catiline, suggesting that slaves be enrolled as soldiers. His letter was sent by a messenger accompanying the Allobroges, who promised to stop and confer with Catiline at Faesulae.

Cicero arranged to have a force of soldiers intercept the group on the night of December 2. They met them at the Mulvian bridge, now within the city limits, at that time two miles north. The written request for Allobrogian assistance and Lentulus' letter to Catiline were seized and brought to Cicero. The leaders of the conspiracy were arrested and taken to the senate, where they confessed. Later in the day Cicero delivered this third oration in the Forum to tell the people what had happened.

The plan of calling on foreigners for help, of urging the use of slaves—and putting this in writing—appeared incredibly stupid to the Romans. They praised Cicero and, recalling the dangerous slave revolt a few years earlier, rejoiced at being saved by him.

Rome Is Saved

Verba Ūtilia: benevolentia, condō, coniūnx, dēlūbrum, domicilium, ergā, fātum, hodiernus, ignōrō, illūstris, manifēstus, posterus, prīncipium, sēnsus, tollō

I, 1. Rem pūblicam,¹ Quirītēs, vītamque² omnium vestrum, bona, fortunās, coniugēs liberōsque vestrōs atque hoc domicilium clārissimī imperī, fortunātissimam pulcherrimamque urbem, hodiernō diē deōrum immortalīum summō ergā vōs amōre, labōribus, cōnsiliīs, periculīs meīs ē flammā atque
5 ferrō ac paene ex faucibus fātī ēreptam et vōbīs cōservātam ac restitūtam vidētis. 2. Et sī nōn minus nōbīs iūcundī atque illūstrēs sunt eī diēs quibus cōservāmur quam illī quibus nāscimur, quod salūtis certa laetitia est, nāscendī incerta condiciō,¹ et quod sine sēnsū nāscimur, cum voluptāte servāmur, profectō, quoniam illum quī hanc urbem condidit ad deōs
10 immortalīs benevolentīā fāmāque sustulimus,² esse apud vōs posterōsque vestrōs in honōre dēbēbit³ is quī eandem hanc urbem conditam amplificātamque servāvit. Nam tōtī urbī,³ templīs, dēlūbrīs, tēctīs ac moenibus subiectōs prope iam ignīs circumdatōsque restīnximus, idemque⁴ gladiōs in rem pūblicam dēstrictōs rettudimus mūcrōnēsque eōrum ā iugulīs
15 vestrīs dēiēcimus.

3. Quae quoniam in senātū illūstrāta, patefacta, comperta sunt per mē, vōbīs iam expōnam breviter ut et quanta et quam manifēsta et quā ratiōne invēstīgāta et comprehēnsa sint vōs quī et ignōrātis et exspectātis scīre possītis. Prīncipiō, ut⁵ Catilīna paucīs ante diēbus⁴ ērūpit ex urbe, cum
20 sceleris suī sociōs huiusce nefāriī bellī acerrimōs ducēs⁶ Rōmae reliquisset, semper vigilāvī et prōvidī. Quirītēs, quem ad modum in tantīs et tam absconditīs insidiīs salvī esse possēmus.

Prepositional Phrases

Unlike English, Latin has few prepositional phrases depending on nouns. For example, the English phrase *a bird in the hand* would be in Latin *avis quae in manū est*. But in Latin a noun expressing feeling or attitude may have a phrase introduced by *ergā* or *in* dependent on it: *ergā vōs amōre* (line 4).

¹ This periodic sentence is really very simple. Its essential part is **rem pūblicam cōservātam ac restitūtam vidētis**; the rest is elaboration. **Vītam** goes with **coniugēs liberōsque**, **bona** and **fortunās** belong together; **domicilium** and **urbem**, modified by two superlatives, form a pair. **Deōrum amōre** balances in chiasmic order **labōribus, cōnsiliīs, periculīs meīs**.

² The plural is used in English.

³ with **subiectōs**

⁴ Time is relative: it was really over three weeks.

¹ our status at birth

² we have raised to the gods with our affection and praise

³ he will deserve (is means Cicero)

⁴ (we) too (literally, the same we)

⁵ ever since (literally, when)

⁶ (as) leaders

1. Don't you see that the city has been saved?
2. Fires were to be applied to the entire city.
3. Cicero explained how he found out what they were planning.

Word Studies

Coniūnx is derived from **con-** and the stem of **iungō**: *joined together*.

Hodiernus diēs is tautological: literally, *today's day*. We have tautologies also in the expressions *long-distance telephone* (for *telephone* means *far speaking*), *symphony concert* ("togetherness" is indicated by both Latin *con-* and its Greek synonym *syn-*), and *head of cabbage* (from **caput**).

Evidence of Treason

Verba Ūtilia: assiduus, comitātus, complūrēs, facultās, hesternus, lēgātus, pōns, restō, sollicitō, vīgilia

II. Nam tum cum ex urbe Catilinam ēiciēbam¹ (nōn enim iam vereor huius verbī¹ invidiam, cum illa² magis sit timenda, quod vīvus exierit), sed tum cum illum exterminārī² volēbam, aut reliquam coniūrātōrum manum simul exitūram aut eōs quī restitissent³ infirmōs sine illō ac dēbilīs fore putābam. 4. Atque ego, ut³ vīdī, quōs maximō furōre et scelere esse inflam-mātōs sciēbam, eōs nōbīscum esse et Rōmae remānsisse, in eō⁴ omnīs diēs noctēsque cōsūmpsī, ut quid agerent, quid mōlīrentur sentīrem ac vidērem, ut, quoniam auribus vestrīs propter incrēdibilem magnitudinem sceleris minōrem fidem faceret⁵ ōrātiō mea, rem ita comprehenderem ut tum dēmum animīs salūtī vestrae prōvidērētis cum oculīs malefīcium ipsum 10 vidērētis. Itaque ut comperī lēgātōs Allobrogum bellī Trānsalpīnī et tumultūs Gallicī excitandī causā ā P. Lentulō esse sollicitātōs, eōsque in Galliam ad suōs cīvīs eōdemque itinere cum litterīs mandātisque⁴ ad Catilinam esse missōs, comitemque eīs adiūctum esse T. Volturcium, atque huic esse ad Catilinam datās litterās, facultātem mihi oblātā putāvī ut (quod⁶ erat 15 difficillimum quodque ego semper optābam ab dīs immortālibus) tōta rēs nōn solum ā mē sed etiam ā senātū et ā vōbīs manifēstō dēprēnderetur.

¹ I was trying to drive out

² exiled (from **terminus**, boundary)

³ would remain

⁴ in this (task) (explained by the following **ut** clause)

⁵ produced too little belief in you (literally, in your ears)

⁶ (a thing) which, referring to the **ut** clause

¹ refers to ēiciēbam

² invidia

³ Watch out for **ut** in this sentence: it occurs four times, all in different uses.

⁴ litterae were written, mandata were oral

⁷ since they had all the fine and excellent feelings about the state, (i.e., they were anti-Catiline)

⁸ both

5. Itaque hesternō diē L. Flaccum et C. Pomptinum praetōrēs, fortissimōs
atque amantissimōs reī pūblicae virōs, ad mē vocāvī, rem exposuī, quid
20 fierī placēret ostendī. Illī autem, quī omnia dē rē pūblicā praeclāra atque
ēgregia sentīrent,⁷ sine recūsātiōne ac sine ūllā morā negōtium suscepērunt
et, cum advesperāsceret, occultē ad pontem Mulvium pervēnērunt atque
ibi in proximīs villīs ita bipertītō fuērunt ut Tiberis inter eōs et pōns inter-
esset. Eōdem autem et⁸ ipsī sine cuiusquam suspīciōne multōs fortīs virōs
25 ēdūxerant, et ego ex praefectūrā Reātinā complūrīs dēlēctōs adulēscentīs
quōrum operā ūtor assiduē in reī pūblicae praesidiō cum gladiīs mīseram.
6. Interim tertiā ferē vigiliā exāctā,⁵ cum iam pontem Mulvium magnō
comitātū lēgātī Allobrogēs ingredī inciperent ūnāque Volturcius, fit in eōs
impetus; dūcuntur et ab illīs gladiī et ā nostrīs. Rēs praetōribus erat nōta
30 sōlīs, ignōrābātur ā cēterīs.

TRANSLATION

1. They proceeded toward the river with many soldiers.
2. In order to see what was happening, he went to the bridge.
3. They were sent with a letter to tell Catiline what he ought to do.
4. They said that they would not fight because they did not believe Cicero.

⁵ The night was divided into four watches; therefore it was about 3 A.M.

The Conspirators Under Arrest

Verba Ūtilia: aedēs, arcessō, dīlūcēscō, integer, māne, scelus, sēdō

III. Tum interventū Pomptinī atque Flaccī pugna quae erat commissā
sēdātur. Litterae quaecumque erant in eō comitātū, integrīs signīs, praetōribus
trāduntur; ipsī¹ comprehēnsī ad mē, cum iam dīlūcēsceret, dēdūcuntur.
Atque hōrum omnium scelerum improbissimum māchinātōrem, Cimbrum
5 Gabīnium, statim ad mē nihildum suspicantem vocāvī; deinde item arcessītus
est L. Statilius et post eum Cethēgus; tardissimē autem Lentulus vēnit,
crēdō quod in litterīs dandīs² praeter cōnsuētūdinem proximā nocte
vigilārat. 7. Cum¹ summīs et clārissimīs huius cīvitātis virīs,³ quī, audītā

¹ although

¹ the conspirators

² ironical, of course: in writing letters

³ with placēret

rē, frequentēs ad mē māne convēnerant, litterās ā mē prius aperīrī quam ad senātum dēferri⁴ placēret, nē, sī nihil esset inventum, temere ā mē tantus 10 tumultus iniectus cīvitātī vidērētur, negāvī² mē esse factūrum ut dē periculō publicō nōn ad cōsiliū publicum rem integram dēferrem. Etenim, Quirītēs, sī ea quae erant ad mē dēlāta reperta nōn essent, tamen ego nōn arbitrābar in tantīs reī publicae periculīs esse mihi nimiam dīligentiam pertimēs-
cendam. Senātum frequentem³ celeriter, ut vīdistis, coēgī. 8. Atque intereā 15 statim admonitū Allobrogum C. Sulpiciū praetōrem, fortem virum, mīsī quī ex aedibus Cethēgī sī quid⁴ tēlōrum esset efferret; ex quibus ille maximum sīcārum numerum et gladiōrum extulit.

² I said I would not so act as not to

³ well attended

⁴ whatever (with sī)

TRANSLATION

1. Before he could destroy the letter it was seized.
2. If the letter were not found, what would Cicero do?
3. He sent a brave man to bring back any weapons he found.
4. He said he would not open the letter before the senate saw it.

Word Studies

What two inceptive verbs are in the preceding reading?

Give English derivatives of **gladius**, **interventus**, **negō**, **sēdō**, **suspīcor**.

⁴ The subjunctive would be more natural, introduced by **prius quam**, but the contrast with **aperīrī** affects the construction.

Testimony in the Senate

Verba Ūtilia: fugiō, incendō, indicō, praescribō, praesidium, praestō, timor, ūtor, virgō, vix

IV. Intrōdūxī Volturcium sine Gallīs; fidem publicam¹ iussū senātūs dedī; hortātus sum ut ea quae scīret sine timōre indicāret. Tum ille dīxit, cum vix sē ex magnō timōre recreāsset, ā P. Lentulō sē habēre ad Catilīnam mandāta et litterās² ut servōrum praesidiō ūterētur, ut ad urbem quam prī-
mum cum exercitū accēderet; id₁ autem eō cōsiliō ut, cum urbem ex 5

¹ official promise of immunity from prosecution

² a letter

₁ refers to the preceding ut clause

omnibus partibus quem ad modum dīscriptum distribūtumque erat incendis-
 sent caedemque īfīnītā cīvium fēcissent, praestō esset ille₂ quī et fugien-
 tīs exciperet₃ et sē cum hīs urbānīs ducibus coniungeret. 9. Intrōductī
 autem Gallī iūs iūrāndum sibi et litterās ā P. Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō ad
 10 suam gentem datās esse dīxērunt, atque ita sibi ab hīs et ā L. Cassiō esse
 praescriptum³ ut equitātum in Italiam quam prīmum mitterent; pedestrīs
 sibi cōpiās nōn dēfutūrās.⁴ Lentulum autem sibi cōfirmāsse ex fātīs
 Sibyllīnīs haruspicumque respōnsīs sē esse tertium illum Cornēlium₅ ad
 quem rēgnū₆ huius urbis atque imperium pervenīre esset necesse:
 15 Cinnam ante sē et Sullam₇ fuisse. Eundemque dīxisse fātālem⁴ hunc annum
 esse ad interitum huius urbis atque imperī, quī esset annus decimus post
 virginum₈ absolūtiōnem, post Capitōlī autem incēnsiōnem vīcēsimus. 10.
 Hanc autem Cethēgō⁵ cum cēterīs contrōversiam fuisse dīxērunt quod
 Lentulō et aliīs Sātūrnālibus₉ caedem fierī atque urbem incendi placēret,
 20 Cethēgō nimium id longum vidērētur.

³ they had been directed
 (impersonal)

⁴ fated

⁵ Cethegus had had (with fuisse)



TRANSLATION



1. Did Lentulus warn Catiline not to use slaves?
2. Lentulus asked Catiline to come to Rome in order to burn the city.
3. This day was chosen for the deed since it was the first one after the holiday.

₂ Catiline

₃ purpose

₄ Supply *he stated that*.

₅ His whole name was P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura.

₆ Remember how hateful this word was to the Romans, as it was to Americans at the time of the Revolution.

₇ L. Cornelius Cinna and L. Cornelius Sulla

₈ We do not know what the charges against the Vestal Virgins were, but one may guess that they were blamed because the sacred fire went out.

₉ The general license and confusion of the Sātūrnālia (beginning December 17) made it a good time for the conspirators to strike.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

A view of the Forum Rōmānum, looking across to the Capitoline Hill and the Tabulārium, which was erected in 78 B.C. The Arch of Septimius Severus is on the right and the Rōstra, or speaker's platform, is just to the left of the arch. The Tabulārium, or Record Office, is in the background and shows the foundations and original three arches of the ancient building. The top of the structure is a medieval addition that served as a palace. To the right and behind the Tabulārium is part of the Capitoline square, designed by Michelangelo.

Confession

Verba Ūtilia: argūmentum, cōnfiteor, dēbilitō, dēmēns, imāgō, intueor, recitō, superō, tabella, vultus

¹ not to be longwinded

² he acknowledged (the genuineness of) the seal

³ had promised (literally, had taken upon themselves)

⁴ at his house

⁵ interested in fine weapons (meaning that he collected them)

⁶ with about the same meaning

⁷ ought to have recalled

⁸ of the same nature

⁹ what he had to do with them

¹⁰ on account of which

¹¹ well-known

V. Ac nē longum sit,¹ Quirītēs, tabellās prōferrī iussimus quae ā quōque dīcēbantur datae.¹ Prīmō ostendimus Cēthēgō; signum cognōvit.² Nōs līnum incīdimus; lēgimus. Erat scrīptum ipsīus manū Allobrogum senātuī et populō sēsē quae eōrum lēgātīs cōnfirmāssēt factūrum esse; ōrāre ut
5 item illī facerent quae sibi eōrum lēgātī recēpissent.³ Tum Cethēgus, quī paulō ante aliquid tamen dē gladiīs ac sīcīs quae apud ipsum⁴ erant dēprehēnsa respondisset dīxissetque sē semper bonōrum ferrāmentōrum studiōsum⁵ fuisse, recitātīs litterīs, dēbilitātus atque abiectus cōnsentiā repente conticuit. Intrōductus Statilius cognōvit et signum et manum suam. Recitātae
10 sunt tabellae in eandem ferē sententiam;⁶ cōfessus est. Tum ostendī tabellās Lentulō et quaesīvī cognōsceretne² signum. Annuit. “Est vērō,” inquam, “nōtum quidem signum, imāgō avī³ tuī, clārissimī virī, quī amāvit ūnicē patriam et cīvīs suōs; quae quidem tē ā tantō scelere etiam mūta revocāre dēbuit.”⁷ 11. Leguntur eādem ratiōne⁸ ad senātum Allobrogum
15 populumque litterae. Sī quid dē hīs rēbus dīcere vellet,⁵ fēcī potestātem. Atque ille prīmō quidem negāvit; post autem aliquantō, tōtō iam indicīō expositō atque ēditō, surrēxit, quaesīvit ā Gallīs quid sibi esset cum eīs⁹ quam ob rem¹⁰ domum suam vēnissent, itemque ā Volturciō. Quī cum illī breviter cōstanterque respondissent per quem ad eum quotiēnsque vēnis-
20 sent, quaesīssentque ab eō nihilne² sēcum esset dē fātīs Sibyllīnīs locūtus, tum ille subitō scelere dēmēns quanta cōnscientiae vīs esset ostendit. Nam, cum id posset īfitiārī, repente praeter opīniōnem omnium cōfessus est. Ita eum⁶ nōn modo ingenium illud¹¹ et dīcendī exercitātiō quā semper valuit sed etiam propter vim scleris manifestī atque dēprehēnsī impuden-
25 tia quā superābat omnīs improbitāsque dēfēcit.⁷ 12. Volturcius vērō subitō litterās prōferrī atque aperīrī iubet quās sibi ā Lentulō ad Catilīnam datās esse dīcēbat. Atque ibi vehementissimē perturbātus Lentulus tamen et

¹ Supply esse.

² -ne introduces an indirect question: *whether*

³ P. Cornelius Lentulus had been a consul.

⁴ not the oxymoron in *mūta* and *revocāre*

⁵ Indirect discourse is implied and so the subordinate clause is in the subjunctive.

⁶ object of *dēfēcit*

⁷ singular to agree with the nearer subject *improbitās*

signum et manum suam cognōvit. Erant autem sine nōmine,⁸ sed ita: "Quis
 sim sciēs ex eō quem ad tē mīsī. Cūrā⁹ ut vir sīs et cōgitā quem in locum¹²
 sīs prōgressus. Vidē ecquid¹³ tibi iam sit necesse et cūrā ut omnium tibi³⁰
 auxilia adiungās, etiam infīmōrum." ¹⁰ Gabīnius deinde intrōductus, cum
 prīmō impudenter respondēre coepisset, ad extrēmum nihil ex eīs quae
 Gallī insimulābant negāvit. 13. Ac mihi quidem, Quirītēs, cum¹⁴ illa certis-
 sima vīsa sunt argūmenta atque indicia sceleris, tabellae, signa, manūs,
 dēnique ūnūs cuiusque cōfessiō, tum multō certiōra illa, color, oculī,³⁵
 vultūs, taciturnitās. Sīc enim obstupuerant, sīc terram intuēbantur, sīc
 fūrtim nōn numquam inter sēsē aspiciēbant ut nōn iam ab aliīs indicārī sed
 indicāre sē ipsī vidērentur.

TRANSLATION

1. He begged them to do what they had promised.
2. He asked the Gauls why they had come to his house.
3. Cicero asked Lentulus whether he acknowledged the seal.
4. The seal of Lentulus' grandfather ought to have made him fear.

⁸ i.e., unsigned

⁹ verb

¹⁰ i.e., slaves

The Senate Takes Action

Verba Ūtilia: cōnferō, coniūratiō, custōdia, domesticus, fidēlis, interest,
 meritum, particeps, praetūra, togātus

VI. Indiciīs expositīs atque ēditīs, Quirītēs, senātum cōnsulū dē summā
 rē publicā¹ quid fierī placēret. Dictae sunt ā principibus ācerrimae ac for-
 tissimae sententiae,¹ quās senātus sine ūllā varietāte² est secūtus. Et quoniam
 nōndum est perscriptum senātūs cōnsultum, ex memoriā vōbīs, Quirītēs,
 quid senātus cēnsuerit expōnam. 14. Prīmum mihi grātiae verbīs amplis-
 simīs aguntur, quod virtūte, cōnsiliō, prōvidentiā meā rēs publica maximīs
 periculīs sit liberāta.² Deinde L. Flaccus et C. Pomptīnus praetōrēs, quod
 eōrum operā fortī fidēlique ūsus essem,³ meritō ac iūre laudantur. Atque
 etiam virō fortī, collēgae³ meō, laus impertitur, quod eōs quī huius

¹ the highest (welfare of the) state

² i.e., unanimously

³ I had benefited by their services

¹ Cicero, the presiding consul, called on the senators in a fixed order.

² quoted reason

³ Antonius, Cicero's fellow consul

10 coniūrātiōnis participēs fuissent ā suīs et ā reī publicae cōsiliīs remōvis-
set. Atque ita cēnsuērunt ut P. Lentulus, cum sē praetūrā abdicāsset, in
custōdiam trāderētur; itemque utī C. Cethēgus, L. Statilius, P. Gabīnius,
quī omnēs praesentēs⁴ erant, in custōdiam trāderentur; atque idem hoc
dēcrētum est in L. Cassium, quī sibi prōcūrātiōnem incendendae urbis
15 dēpoposcerat, in M. Cēpārium, cui ad sollicitandōs pāstōrēs Āpūliam
attribūtā esse erat indicātum, in P. Fūrium, quī est ex eīs colōnīs quōs
Faesulās L. Sulla dēdūxit, in Q. Annium Chīlōnem, quī ūnā cum hōc Fūriō
semper erat in hāc Allobrogum sollicitātiōne versātus, in P. Umbrēnum,
libertīnum hominem, ā quō primum Gallōs ad Gabīnium perductōs esse
20 cōnstābat. Atque eā⁴ lēnitāte senātus est ūsus, Quirītēs, ut ex tantā
coniūrātiōne tantāque hāc multitudīne domesticōrum hostium, novem⁵
hominum perditissimōrum poenā rē publicā cōservātā, reliquōrum mentīs
sānārī posse arbitrārētur. 15. Atque etiam supplicātiō dīs immortalibus prō
singulārī eōrum meritō meō nōmine dēcrēta est, quod mihi primum post
25 hanc urbem conditam togātō contigit,⁵ et hīs dēcrēta verbīs est: “quod
urbem incendiīs, caede cīvīs, Italiā bellō liberāssem.” Quae supplicātiō sī
cum cēterīs supplicātiōnibus cōferātur,⁶ hoc interest, quod cēterae, bene
gestā, haec ūna, cōservātā rē publicā, cōstitutā est. Atque illud quod
faciendum primum fuit factum atque trānsāctum est. Nam P. Lentulus,
30 quamquam patefactīs indiciīs, cōfessiōnibus suīs, iūdiciō senātūs nōn
modo praetōris iūs vērū etiam cīvīs amiserat, tamen magistrātū sē
abdicāvit, ut quae⁷ religiō C. Mariō,⁶ clārissimō virō, nōn fuerat quō
minus⁷ C. Glauciam, dē quō nihil nōminātīm erat dēcrētum, praetōrem
occideret, eā nōs religiōne⁸ in prīvātō⁹ P. Lentulō pūniendō liberārēmur.

⁴ such

⁵ (a thing) which for the first time
since this city was founded
happened to a civilian (togātō)
(such as) me

⁶ the scruple which Marius did not
have

⁷ (to keep him) from

⁸ from that scruple

⁹ private (citizen), in contrast with
praetōrem

TRANSLATION

1. Nothing can prevent them from leaving the city.
2. If the senate should expel them, where would they go?
3. The task of burning the city had been assigned to Cassius.
4. I say that they should be sent into exile because they are wicked.

Word Studies

What is the meaning of the phrase *particeps criminis*, used in English?
What abbreviation used in English is derived from the Latin word *cōferō*?
A *pastor* is the “shepherd” of his *congregation* (*con-* and *grex*, *flock*).

⁴ This word shows that the men mentioned next were not present. Only Ceparius was caught.

⁵ but four escaped

⁶ The condition is “mixed,” i.e., the condition itself is less vivid, the conclusion is one of fact.

⁷ The antecedent is *religiōne* below.

If Catiline Had Been in Rome

Verba Ūtilia: callidus, cervīx, dēnūntiō, dum, exīstimō, fūrtum, latrōcinium, palam, temeritās, testis

VII, 16. Nunc quoniam, Quirītēs, cōnscelerātissimī periculōsissimīque bellī nefāriōs ducēs captōs iam et comprehēnsōs tenētis, exīstimāre dēbētis omnīs Catilīnae cōpiās, omnīs spēs atque opēs, hīs dēpulsīs urbis periculīs, concidisse. Quem quidem ego cum ex urbe pellēbam,¹ hoc prōvidēbam animō, Quirītēs, remōtō Catilīnā, nōn mihi esse P. Lentulī somnum nec L. Cassī adipēs nec C. Cethēgī furiōsam temeritātem pertimēscendam. Ille₁ erat ūnus timendus ex istis² omnibus, sed tam diū dum urbis moenibus continēbātur. Omnia nōrat, omnium aditūs tenēbat;³ appellāre,⁴ temptāre, sollicitāre poterat, audēbat. Erat eī cōnsilium⁵ ad facinus aptum, cōnsiliō autem neque lingua neque manus deerat. Iam ad certās rēs cōficiendās certōs⁶ hominēs dēlēctōs ac dēscriptōs habēbat. Neque vērō, cum aliquid mandārat, cōfectum putābat: nihil erat quod nōn ipse obīret, occurreret, vigilāret, labōrāret;³ frīgus, sitim, famem ferre poterat. **17.** Hunc ego hominem tam ācrem, tam audācem, tam parātum, tam callidum, tam in scelere vigilantem, tam₄ in perditīs rēbus dīligentem nisi ex domesticīs īnsidiīs in castrēse latrōcinium compulsem—dīcam id quod sentiō, Quirītēs—nōn facile hanc tantam mōlem malī ā cervīcibus vestrīs dēpulissem. Nōn ille nōbīs Sātūrnālia cōstituisset,⁵ neque tantō ante⁷ exitī ac fātī diem reī pūblicae dēnūntiāvisset neque commīsisset ut signum, ut litterae suae testēs manifestī sceleris dēprehenderentur. Quae nunc, illō absente, sīc gesta sunt ut nūllum in²⁰ prīvātā domō fūrtum umquam sit tam palam inventum quam haec in tōtā rē pūblicā coniūrātiō manifestō comprehēnsa est. Quod sī Catilīna in urbe ad hanc diem remānsisset, quamquam, quoad fuit, omnibus eius cōnsiliīs occurrī atque obstitī, tamen, ut levissimē dīcam,⁸ dīmīcandum nōbīs cum illō fuisset, neque nōs umquam, cum ille in urbe hostis esset, tantīs²⁵ periculīs rem pūblicam tantā pāce, tantō ōtiō, tantō silentiō liberāssēmus.

¹ trying to drive

² of all those fellows (contemptuous)

³ he had (avenues of) approach to everybody

⁴ call by name

⁵ judgment

⁶ particular men for particular things

⁷ so long beforehand

⁸ to say the least, we should have had to fight

TRANSLATION

1. We do not have to fear Catiline any longer.
2. I was trying to force Catiline to leave Rome.
3. But it so happened that we freed the city peacefully.
4. If Catiline had not left Rome, we should have had to fight.

¹ Catiline

² He knew everybody and knew also which of a man's three names he should use.

³ The four verbs are in two pairs; then follow three nouns with alliteration and asyndeton.

⁴ anaphora with six examples of **tam** arranged in pairs

⁵ i.e., so late. That was the fault of Lentulus, objected to by Cethegus.

The Will of the Gods

Verba Ūtilia: caelum, certē, cīvīlis, excelsus, flectō, forum, hūmānus, lūdus, nūmen, nūtus

VIII, 18. Quamquam haec omnia, Quirītēs, ita sunt ā mē administrāta ut deōrum immortalīum nūtū atque cōnsiliō et gesta et prōvīsa esse videantur. Idque cum¹ coniectūrā cōsequī possumus, quod vix vidētur hūmānī cōnsilī² tantārum rērum gubernātiō esse potuisse, tum vērō ita praesentēs
5 hīs temporibus opem et auxilium nōbīs tulērunt ut eōs paene oculīs vidēre possīmus. Nam ut illa³ omittam, vīsās nocturnō tempore ab occidente facēs⁴ ārdōremque caelī, ut fulminum iactūs, ut terrae mōtūs relinquam, ut omittam cētera quae tam multa, nōbīs cōsulibus, facta sunt ut haec quae nunc fiunt canere⁵ dī immortalēs vidērentur, hoc certē, Quirītēs, quod sum
10 dictūrus neque praetermittendum neque relinquendum est. **19.** Nam profectō memoriā tenētis, Cottā et Torquātō cōsulibus,² complūrīs in Capitoliō rēs dē caelō³ esse percussās, cum et simulācra deōrum dēpulsā sunt et statuae veterum hominum dēiectae et lēgum aera⁶ liquefacta et tāctus etiam ille quī hanc urbem condidit Rōmulus, quem inaurātum in Capitoliō, parvum atque
15 lactantem, ūberibus lupīnīs inhiantem⁷ fuisse meministis. Quō quidem tempore cum haruspicēs ex tōta Etrūriā⁴ convēnissent, caedīs atque incendia et lēgum interitum et bellum cīvīle ac domesticum et totīus urbis atque imperī occāsū appropinquāre dīxērunt, nisi dī immortalēs omnī ratiōne plācātī suō nūmine prope fāta ipsa flexissent.⁸ **20.** Itaque illōrum respōnsīs tum
20 et⁹ lūdī⁶ per decem diēs factī sunt neque rēs ūlla quae ad plācandōs deōs pertinēret praetermissa est. Idemque iussērunt simulācrum Iovis facere maius et in excelsō collocāre et contrā atque¹⁰ antea fuerat ad orientem convertere; ac sē spērāre dīxērunt, sī illud signum quod vidētis⁷ sōlis ortum et forum cūriamque cōspiceret, fore ut¹¹ ea cōnsilia quae clam essent
25 inīta contrā salūtem urbis atque imperī illūstrārentur ut ā senātū populōque Rōmānō⁹ perspicī possent. Atque illud signum collocandum cōsulēs illī locāvērunt;¹² sed tanta fuit operis tarditās ut neque superiōribus cōsulibus neque nōbīs ante hodiernum diem collocārētur.

¹ a fine example of praeteritiō

² 65 B.C.

³ i.e., they were struck by lightning

⁴ examination of entrails and other forms of divination originated in Etruria

⁵ **Prope** is used because not even the gods could change fate, according to the ancient view.

⁶ Chariot races in the Circus Maximus. Supposedly given to appease the gods, they took the minds of the people from the omens. Holy day became holiday.

⁷ He points to the statue on the Capitoline Hill, visible from the Forum.

⁸ a common substitute for the rare future passive infinitive, **illūstrātum irī**

⁹ The power and glory of Rome is represented by this phrase, usually abbreviated S.P.Q.R. It is still used.

1. I am going to say what I think.
2. They said that they would burn the city.
3. The statue of Jupiter could be seen from the Forum.
4. Everything was so carefully carried out that it seemed a miracle to all.

Jupiter Is Our Savior

Verba Ūtilia: negō, nūtus, odium, pācō, patefaciō, praeceps, praesēns, restō

IX, 21. Hīc¹ quis potest esse tam āversus ā vērō, tam praeceps, tam mente captus² quī neget³ haec omnia quae vidēmus praecipuēque hanc urbem deōrum immortalium nūtū ac potestāte administrārī? Etenim cum esset ita respōnsum, caedīs, incendia, interitum reī pūblīcae comparārī, et ea³ per cīvīs, quae tum propter magnitudinem scelerum nōn nullīs incrēdibilia vidēbantur, ea nōn modo cōgitāta ā nefāriīs cīvibus vērum etiam suscepta esse sēnsistis. Illud² vērō nōnne ita praesēns est ut nūtū Iovis Optimī Maximī factum esse videātur, ut, cum hodiernō diē māne per forum meō iussū et coniūrātī et eōrum indicēs in aedem Concordiae dūcerentur, eō ipsō tempore signum statuerētur? ³ Quō collocātō atque ad vōs senātumque conversō, omnia et senātus et vōs quae erant ¹⁰ contrā salūtem omnium cōgitāta, illūstrāta, et patefacta vīdistis. **22.** Quō⁴ etiam maiōre sunt istī odiō suppliciōque dignī quī nōn sōlum vestrīs domiciliīs atque tēctīs sed etiam deōrum templīs atque dēlūbrīs sunt fūnestōs ac nefāriōs ignīs inferre cōnātī. Quibus ego sī mē restitisse dīcam, nimium mihi sūmam et nōn sim ferendus: ille,⁴ ille Iuppiter restitit; ille Capitōlium, ille ¹⁵ haec templa, ille cūctam urbem, ille vōs omnīs salvōs esse voluit. Dīs ego immortalibus ducibus, hanc mentem voluntātemque suscēpī atque ad haec tanta indicia pervēnī. Iam vērō illa Allobrogum sollicitātiō,⁵ iam ab Lentulō cēterīsque domesticīs hostibus tam dēmenter tantae rēs crēditae et ignōtīs et barbarīs commissaeque litterae numquam essent profectō, nisi ab dīs ²⁰ immortalibus huic tantae audāciae⁵ cōnsilium esset ēreptum. Quid vērō? Ut hominēs Gallī ex cīvitate male⁶ pācātā, quae gēns ūna restat quae bellum populō Rōmānō facere posse et nōn nōlle videātur, spem imperī ac rērum maximārum ultrō sibi ā patriciīs hominibus oblātam neglegerent vestramque salūtem suīs opibus antepōnerent, id⁶ nōn dīvinitus esse factum putātis, prae- ²⁵ sertim quī⁷ nōs nōn pugnandō sed tacendō superāre potuērunt?

¹ in view of this (adverb)

² insane (literally, seized in mind)

³ and those (things) by citizens (at that), (things) which

⁴ Therefore

⁵ unless good sense had been

⁵ removed from such bold (men)

⁶ imperfectly

⁷ particularly since they

¹ result clause

² explained by the **ut** clause

³ Perhaps Cicero planned it that way.

⁴ We can almost see Cicero's gestures as he points to the statue, then to the Capitoline temple, the Forum temples, the city, the people in front of him.

⁵ Supply **numquam facta esset** from the following.

⁶ in apposition with the preceding **ut** clause

1. Who is so wicked that he would not thank Jupiter?
2. They are deserving of punishment who commit such crimes.
3. If they were present it would be difficult to resist them.
4. If I should say that I did this, I would not be telling the truth.

The Greatest of Bloodless Victories

Verba Ūtilia: celebrō, custōs, interimō, lūctus, lūmen, partim, pertineō, quam ob rem, recordor, salvus

¹ due

X, 23. Quam ob rem, Quirītēs, quoniam ad omnia pulvīnāria supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte¹ illōs diēs cum coniugibus ac liberīs vestrīs. Nam multī saepe honōrēs dīs immortalibus iūstī habitī sunt ac dēbitī,¹ sed pro-
fectō iūstiōrēs numquam. Ēreptī enim estis ex crūdēlissimō ac miserrimō
5 interitū, ēreptī sine caede, sine sanguine, sine exercitū, sine dīmīcātiōne;
togātī, mē ūnō togātō duce et imperātōre, vīcistis.² 24. Etenim recordāminī,
Quirītēs, omnīs cīvīlīs dissēsiōnēs, nōn solum eās quās audīstis sed eās
quās vōsmet ipsī meministis atque vīdistis. L. Sulla P. Sulpiciū³ oppres-
sit: C. Mariū⁴ custōdem huius urbis, multōsque fortīs virōs partim ēiēcit
10 ex cīvitate, partim interēmit. Cn. Octāviū cōsul armīs expulit ex urbe
collēgam;⁵ omnis hic locus acervīs corporum et cīvium sanguine redundāvit.⁶
Superāvit postea Cinna cum Mariō: tum vērō, clārissimīs virīs interfectīs,
lūmina cīvītātis exstīncta sunt. Ultus est huius victōriae crūdēlītatem
postea Sulla: nē dīcī quidem opus est quantā dēminūtiōne cīvium et quantā
15 calamitāte reī pūblicaē. Dissēnsit M. Lepidus ā clārissimō et fortissimō
virō Q. Catulō: attulit nōn tam ipsīus interitus reī pūblicaē lūctum quam
cēterōrum.

¹ future imperative, used chiefly in legal and religious language

² anaphora with **ēreptī**, then with **sine**. The four nouns are grouped in two pairs; **togātō** (the man of peace) joined with **imperātōre** constitutes an oxymoron

³ He had proposed a bill to take away from Sulla the command of the army against Mithridates and to give it to Marius.

⁴ He had saved the city from the Cimbri and Teutons.

⁵ Cinna, one of Marius' men.

⁶ Note the zeugma, a figure of speech we do not ordinarily tolerate in English. We would not say *overflowed with heaps of bodies and blood*.

25. Atque illae tamen omnēs dissēsiōnēs erant eius modī quae nōn ad dēlendā sed ad commūtandā rem pūblicā pertinērent. Nōn illī nūllam esse rem pūblicā sed in eā quae esset sē esse prīncipēs, neque hanc 20 urbem cōnflagrāre sed sē in hāc urbe flōrēre voluērunt. Atque illae tamen omnēs dissēsiōnēs, quārum nūlla exitium reī pūblīcae quaesīvit, eius modī fuērunt ut nōn reconciliātiōne concordiae sed interneciōne cīvium diiūdicātae sint. In hōc autem ūnō post hominum memoriā maximō² crūdēlissimōque bellō, quāle³ bellum nūlla umquam barbaria cum suā 25 gente gessit, quō in bellō lēx⁴ haec fuit ā Lentulō, Catilinā, Cethēgō, Cassiō cōstitutā, ut omnēs quī, salvā urbe, salvī⁵ esse possent in hostium numerō dūcerentur, ita mē gessī, Quirītēs, ut salvī omnēs cōservārēminī, et, cum hostēs vestrī tantum cīvium⁶ superfutūrum putāssent quantum īnfīnitae caedī restitisset, tantum autem urbis quantum flamma obīre nōn 30 potuisset, et urbem et cīvīs integrōs incolumīsque servāvī.

² the greatest of all (with ūnō)

³ such a war as

⁴ principle (explained by the ut clause)

⁵ here (financially) safe, solvent

⁶ (only) so many of the citizens

TRANSLATION

1. If they had won, you would all be dead.
2. We have won in a war in which no one died.
3. They wanted a state in which they would be the leaders.
4. Go to the games without danger with your wives and children.

Word Studies

Supplicium and **supplicātiō** both are derived from **sub-** and **plicō**, *fold under*, i.e., bend the knee, the former to receive punishment, the latter for prayer.

Explain *extinct*, *luminary*, *sanguinary*.

All I Ask Is Gratitude

Verba Ūtilia: assequor, dēlectō, insignis, inveterāscō, postulō

XI, 26. Quibus prō¹ tantīs rēbus, Quirītēs, nūllum ego ā vōbīs praemium virtūtis, nūllum īnsigne honōris, nūllum monumentum laudis postulābō praeterquam huius diēī memoriā sempiternā. In animīs ego vestrīs omnīs triumphōs meōs, omnia ōrnāmenta honōris, monumenta glōriae, laudis īnsignia condī et collocārī volō. Nihil mē mūtūm₁ potest dēlectāre, 5 nihil tacitum, nihil dēnique eius modī quod etiam minus dignī assequī

¹ in return for these great accomplishments

₁ such as a statue

² my achievements will be kept alive
³ literary records
⁴ time

possint. Memoriā vestrā, Quirītēs, nostrae rēs alentur,² sermōnibus crēscant, litterārum monumentīs³ inveterāscant et corrōborābuntur; eandemque diem⁴ intellegō, quam spērō aeternam fore, propagātam esse et ad salūtem
10 urbis et ad memoriam cōsulātūs mei, ūnōque tempore in hāc rē publicā duōs² cīvīs exstitisse, quōrum alter finīs vestri imperi nōn terrae sed caeli regiōnibus termināret, alter huius imperi domicilium sēdisque servāret.

TRANSLATION

1. I know that you will give what I want.
2. I want none of the things which others can achieve.
3. I realize that the memory of my deeds will remain as long as Rome remains.

² Pompey, who had conquered Sertorius in the west (Spain) and Mithridates in the east, and Cicero

I Need Your Protection

Verba Ūtilia: externus, lacescō, laedō, noceō, ōrnō, prōvideō, rēctē, subigō, violō, vīvō

- ¹ the same as (with eadem)
² it is your (responsibility)
³ if their deeds are beneficial to others (and rightly so)
⁴ at some time
⁵ intentions
⁶ I, at any rate, can no longer be injured by them
⁷ quam = et hanc: and those who disregard this
⁸ = mihi

XII, 27. Sed quoniam eārum rērum quās ego gessī nōn eadem est fortūna atque condiciō quae¹ illōrum quī externa bella gesserunt, quod mihi cum eīs vīvendum est quōs vīcī ac subēgī, illī hostīs aut interfectōs aut oppressōs reliquērunt, vestrum est.² Quirītēs, sī cēterīs facta sua rēctē
5 prōsunt,³ mihi mea nē quandō⁴ obsint prōvidēre. Mentēs⁵ enim hominum audācissimōrum scelerātae ac nefāriae nē vōbīs nocēre possent ego prōvidī, nē mihi noceant vestrum est prōvidēre. Quamquam, Quirītēs, mihi quidem ipsī nihil ab istīs iam nocērī⁶ potest. Magnum enim est in bonīs praesidium quod mihi in perpetuum comparātum est, magna in rē publicā
10 dignitās quae mē semper tacita dēfendit, magna vīs conscientiae quam⁷ quī neglegunt, cum mē violāre volent, sē indicābunt.₁ **28.** Est enim nōbīs⁸ is animus, Quirītēs, ut nōn modo nulliūs audāciae cēdāmus sed etiam omnīs improbōs ultrō semper lacesāmus. Quod sī omnis impetus domesticōrum hostium₂ dēpulsus ā vōbīs sē in mē ūnum converterit, vōbīs erit videndum.

₁ But only five years later Cicero was banished, partly as a result of the Catiline affair. It almost seems as if Cicero here foresees this possibility.

₂ As **hostis** means *foreign enemy*, **domesticōrum** is a contradiction (oxymoron); but remember that Cicero justified his action against the conspirators on the grounds that they were traitors.



C. M. Dixon

The Capitoline Hill was the lowest and least inhabited of the seven hills of Rome, but for good reason. It was the center of state religion and was actually a fortified citadel and religious sanctuary. Legend has it that the sacred geese of Juno that were kept in a temple on the hill awakened and alerted the Romans to a sneak attack by the Gauls in 390 B.C., saving the city. The equestrian statue of the emperor Marcus Aurelius dates from the 4th century and was selected from the pope's antiquarian holdings by Michelangelo to be the focal point of the Capitoline square on the top of the hill.

⁹ in what situation

¹⁰ in the office bestowed by you

¹¹ (acquired by) good character

¹² and even make more splendid

¹³ may redound to my glory

¹⁴ just as (with *aequē*)

¹⁵ on that previous night

15 Quirītēs, quā condiōne⁹ posthāc eōs esse velitis quī sē prō salūte vestrā
obtulerint invidiae periculisque omnibus: mihi quidem ipsī quid est quod
iam ad vītae fructum possit acquīrī, cum praesertim neque in honōre
vestrō ¹⁰ neque in glōriā virtūtis¹¹ quicquam videam altius quō mihi libeat
ascendere? 29. Illud₃ perficiam profectō, Quirītēs, ut ea quae gessī in
20 cōsulātū prīvātus tuear atque ōrnem,¹² ut, sī qua est invidia in cōser-
vandā rē pūblicā suscepta, laedat invidōs, mihi valeat¹³ ad glōriam.
Dēnique ita mē in rē pūblicā trāctābō ut meminerim semper quae gesserim,
cūremque ut ea virtūte, nōn cāsū, gesta esse videantur. Vōs, Quirītēs, quo-
niam iam est nox, venerātī lovem illum, custōdem huius urbis ac vestrum,
25 in vestra tēcta discēdite et ea, quamquam iam est periculum dēpulsum,
tamen aequē ac¹⁴ priōre¹⁵ nocte custōdiīs vigiliisque dēfendite. Id nē vōbīs
diūtius faciendum sit atque ut in perpetuā pāce esse possītis prōvidēbō,
Quirītēs.



TRANSLATION



1. Do you believe that Catiline will injure me?
2. He saw to it that they would not destroy the state.
3. I have to remain with the men who were defeated by me.
4. If you should not defend yourselves, you would suffer a great disaster.

QUESTIONS

1. Who were the Allobroges? What were they doing in Rome?
2. What did Lentulus suggest to Catiline? How did Cicero find out about this suggestion?
3. What written evidence did Cicero have against the conspirators?
4. How many conspirators were arrested in or near Rome?
5. How many escaped?
6. Where was the evidence seized?
7. Where was Catiline?
8. Where was this speech made?
9. Before whom was it made?
10. What happened earlier in the day?
11. What did seals have to do with the evidence against the conspirators?
12. What did the conspirators plan to do to Rome?
13. How did the people react to Cicero's speech?

₃ explained by the *ut* clause

₄ after the second oration, in which he said to his listeners: *vestra tēcta vigiliīs custōdiīsque dēfendite*

Fourth Oration Against Catiline

The third oration reported to the people the evidence against the conspirators which had been presented to the senate, sitting as a court of justice. The fourth oration takes us back to the senate two days later (December 5) for the debate to determine the punishment for the five men who were under arrest. The meeting was held in the Temple of Concord, at one end of the Forum, and Cicero again presided. According to regular procedure, the consul-elect, Silanus, was called upon. In his speech he voted for the death penalty. Then Caesar got up and suggested life imprisonment and confiscation of property. After further discussion Cicero summed up the two views in the present speech. In spite of an attempt to take a judicial position, not preferring one view to the other, Cicero made it clear that he favored the death penalty.

Caesar's speech, moderate in tone, had made a strong impression and it looked as if his motion would be carried. Cato then made a stirring speech in favor of the death penalty. As a result, the death penalty was voted by a large majority. Cicero promptly had the men executed in the underground prison called the Tullianum, which is still in existence. It is near one end of the Forum, at the foot of the Capitoline Hill, not far from the Temple of Concord, where the senate met.

Some weeks later Catiline was killed in battle in Etruria.

Don't Worry About Me, Senators

Verba Ūtilia: acerbus, cruciātus, dēlūbrum, exitus, foedus (*adj.*), fortiter, gēns, perfugium sēdēs vacuus

I, 1. Videō, patrēs cōscrip̄tī, in mē omnium vestrum ōra atque oculōs esse conversōs,₁ videō vōs nōn solum dē vestrō ac reī pūblicae, vērū etiam, sī id dēpulsum sit, dē meō periculō esse sollicitōs. Est mihi iūcunda in malīs et grāta in dolōre vestra ergā mē voluntās, sed eam, per deōs immortālēs, dēpōnite atque oblītī salūtis meae, dē vōbīs ac dē vestrīs līberīs cōgitāte. 5

₁ Silanus and Caesar had made their speeches and the discussion seems to have died down. So the senators naturally turned to Cicero.

¹ if the consulship were given me
under these conditions

² with a certain (amount of) pain for
me and fear for you

Mihi sī haec condiciō cōsulātūs¹ data est ut omnīs acerbitatēs, omnīs
dolōrēs cruciātūsque perferrem, feram² nōn solum fortiter vērū etiam
libenter, dum modo meīs labōribus vōbīs populōque Rōmānō dignitās
salūsque pariātur. 2. Ego sum ille cōsul, patrēs cōscrip̄tī, cui nōn forum,
10 in quō omnis aequitās continētur,³ nōn campus⁴ cōsulāribus auspiciīs
cōsecrātus, nōn cūria, summum auxilium omnium gentium, nōn domus,
commūne perfugium, nōn lectus ad quiētem datus, nōn dēnique haec sēdēs
honōris⁵, umquam vacua mortis periculō atque insidiīs fuit. Ego multa
tacuī, multa pertulī, multa concessī, multa meō quōdam dolōre in vestrō
15 timōre² sānāvī. Nunc sī hunc exitum cōsulātūs meī dī immortalēs esse
voluērunt, ut vōs populumque Rōmānum ex caede miserrimā, coniugēs
liberōsque vestrōs virginēsque Vestālēs ex acerbissimā vexātiōne, templa
atque dēlūbra, hanc pulcherrimam patriam omnium nostrum ex foedissimā
flammā, tōtam Ītaliā ex bellō et vāstitāte ēriperem, quaecumque mihi ūnī
20 prōpōnētur fortūna subeātur.

TRANSLATION

1. You will be free from danger as long as I am consul.
2. This he greatly desired, that the safety of the state be preserved.
3. Provided that no harm is done to you, senators, I will endure everything.

² Note the strong emphasis produced by the chiasmus. When a verb is repeated, as here, the simple form (**feram**) is often used, as the force of the prefix **per-** seems to carry over.

³ because the law courts were there

⁴ The campus Martius, where the elections were held. The auspices were taken to see if the omens were favorable for the election.

⁵ The curule chair (**sella curūlis**), which was a symbol of his office.

The Senate Must Decide

Verba Ūtilia: cēseō, concitō, coniūratiō, dubitātiō, facinus, poena, praetūra, prīdem, reus

¹ in unusual language

III, 5. Haec omnia indicēs dētulērunt, reī¹ cōfessī sunt, vōs multīs iam
iūdicīīs iūdicāvistis, prīmum quod mihi grātiās ēgistis singulāribus verbīs¹
et meā virtūte atque dīligentiā perditōrum hominum coniūrātiōnem pate-
factam esse dēcrēvistis, deinde quod P. Lentulum sē abdicāre praetūrā
5 coēgistis; tum quod eum et cēterōs dē quibus iūdicāstis in custōdiam dandōs

¹ from reus

cēnsuistis, maximēque quod meō nōmine supplicātiōnem dēcrēvistis, quī honōs₂ togātō habitus ante mē est nēmīnī;² postrēmō hesternō diē praemia lēgātīs Allobrogum Titōque Volturciō dedistis amplissima. Quae sunt omnia eius modī, ut eī quī in custōdiam nōminātim datī sunt sine ūllā dubitātiōne ā vōbīs damnātī esse videantur.

² to no one at all

³ I have begun by referring to you as if (it were) untouched

⁴ both

⁵ (the function) of the consul

⁶ revolution

⁷ are being stirred up

⁸ more widely than you think

⁹ by putting up with it and putting it off

6. Sed ego institui referre ad vōs, patrēs cōscriptī, tamquam integrum,³ et⁴ dē factō quid iūdicētis et dē poenā quid cēseātis. Illa praedicam quae sunt cōsulis.⁵ Ego magnum in rē pūblicā versārī furōrem et nova⁶ quaedam miscērī⁷ et concitārī mala iam prīdem vidēbam, sed hanc tantam, tam exitiōsam habērī coniūrātiōnem ā cīvibus numquam putāvī. Nunc¹⁵ quicquid est, quōcumque vestrae mentēs inclīnant atque sententiae, statuendum vōbīs ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vōs dēlātum sit, vidētis. Huic sī paucōs putātis affīnēs esse, vehementer errātis. Lātius opīniōne⁸ dissēminātum est hoc malum; mānāvit nōn solum per Italiam vērū etiam trāscendit Alpēs et obscurē serpēns₃ multās iam prōvinciās²⁰ occupāvit. Id opprimī sustentandō et prōlātandō⁹ nūllō pactō potest; quācumque ratiōne placet, celeriter vōbīs vindicandum est.

TRANSLATION

1. You must punish these wicked men as soon as possible.
2. He did not want to tell the senators what they should decide.
3. It is (the duty) of the senate to decide what should be done.

² an older form of honor

³ participle from serpō

Death or Imprisonment?

Verba Ūtilia: adhūc, adimō, formīdō, fruor, inīquitās, mūnicipium, prīvō, recūsō, spīritus, vinculum

IV, 7. Videō duās adhūc esse sentiētias, ūnam D. Silānī, quī cēnsēt eōs quī haec¹ dēlēre cōnātī sunt morte esse multandōs, alteram C. Caesaris, quī mortis poenam removet,² cēterōrum suppliciōrum omnīs acerbitātēs amplectitur.³ Uterque et prō suā dignitāte et prō rērum magnitūdine in summā sevērītate versātur.⁴ Alter⁵ eōs quī nōs omnīs, quī populum Rōmānum vītā prīvāre cōnātī sunt, quī dēlēre imperium, quī populī Rōmānī nōmen exstinguere, pūctum temporis⁶ fruī vītā et hōc commūnī spīritū nōn putat oportēre atque hoc genus poenae saepe in improbōs cīvīs in hāc rē pūblicā esse ūsūrpātum recordātur. Alter⁷ intellegit mortem ā dīs

¹ all this

² rejects

³ includes

⁴ is most stern (literally, is engaged in the greatest severity)

⁵ the one (Silanus, subject of putat)

⁶ for a moment of time

⁷ the other (Caesar)

⁸ from troubles

⁹ for life at that (literally, and those perpetual)

¹⁰ involve

¹¹ (those) who

¹² (in accordance with) their position

¹³ be held up to

¹⁴ men in the old days

¹⁵ wanted (us to believe)

¹⁶ what is to my interest

¹⁷ perhaps (literally, I do not know whether)

¹⁸ more trouble

¹⁹ consideration

²⁰ ancestors

²¹ guarantee (literally, hostage)

10 immortalibus nōn esse supplicī causā cōstitutā, sed aut necessitātem
nātūrae aut labōrum⁸ ac miseriārum quiētem. Itaque eam sapientēs
numquam invītī, fortēs saepe etiam libenter oppetivērunt. Vincula vērō, et
ea sempiterna,⁹ certē ad singulārem poenam nefārii sceleris inventa sunt.
Municipiis dispertiri¹ iubet. Habere¹⁰₂ videtur ista rēs inīquitātem, si
15 imperāre velis, difficultātem, si rogāre. Dēcernatur tamen, si placet. 8. Ego
enim suscipiam et, ut spērō, reperiam qui¹¹ id quod salūtis omnium causā
statueritis nōn putent esse suae dignitātis¹² recūsāre. Adiungit₃ gravem
poenam municipiis, si quis eōrum₄ vincula rūperit; horribilis custodiās cir-
cumdat et dignās scelere hominum perditōrum; sancit nē quis eōrum poe-
20 nam quōs condemnat aut per senātum aut per populum levāre possit; ēripit
etiam spem, quae sōla hominem in miseriis cōsōlārī solet. Bona praeterea
pūblicārī iubet, vītā sōlam relinquit nefāriis hominibus; quam si ēripuisset,
multās ūnō dolōre animi atque corporis miseriās et omnīs scelerum poenās
adēmisset. Itaque ut aliqua in vītā formidō improbīs esset prōposita,¹³ apud
25 īferōs eius modī quaedam illi antīquī¹⁴ supplicia impiis cōstitutā esse
voluērunt,¹⁵ quod videlicet intellegēbant, hīs remōtis, nōn esse mortem
ipsam pertimēscendam.

V, 9. Nunc, patrēs cōscripti, ego meā videō quid intersit.¹⁶ Si eritis
secūtī sententiam C. Caesaris, quoniam hanc is in rē pūblicā viam quae
30 populāris₅ habetur secūtus est, fortasse minus erunt, hōc auctōre et cog-
nitōre huiusce sententiae, mihi populārēs impetūs pertimēscendī; sī illam
alteram, nesciō an¹⁷ amplius mihi negōtī¹⁸ contrahātur. Sed tamen meōrum
periculōrum ratiōnēs¹⁹ utilitās rei pūblīcae vincat. Habemus enim ā Caesare,
sicut ipsius dignitās et maiōrum²⁰ eius amplitūdō postulābat, sententiam
35 tamquam obsidem²¹₆ perpetuae in rem pūblicā voluntātis. Intellēctum est,₇
quid interesset inter levitātem cōtiōnātōrum et animum vērē populārem
salūtī populī cōnsulentem.

TRANSLATION

1. A man's love of his country is shown by his actions.
2. If you approve Caesar's opinion I shall not have to fear attack.
3. The one speaker favored the death penalty; the other, prison.
4. Let it be decided thus if that is the action which the senate will decide upon.

¹ Supply eōs as subject.

² If the senate insisted on the towns being responsible, there would be unfairness if some towns were exempted; if a mere request were made, there would be many refusals.

³ i.e., Caesar

⁴ with vincula

⁵ Caesar was the leader of the popular, or democratic, group, and was said to have been supporting Catiline.

⁶ Cicero thus intimates that Caesar had no connection with Catiline's plot.

⁷ i.e., when Caesar was speaking

What Might Have Happened

Verba Ūtilia: caedēs, cernō, concidō, dēleō, idcircō, perhorrēscō, praebeō, sicut, trucidō, vexātiō

VI, 11. Videor enim mihi vidēre hanc urbem, lūcem orbis terrārum atque arcem¹ omnium gentium, subitō ūnō incendiō concidentem. Cernō animō sepultā² in patriā miserōs atque īsepultōs acervōs cīvium, versatur mihi ante oculōs aspectus Cethēgī et furor in vestrā caede bacchantis. **12.** Cum vērō mihi prōposuī rēgnantem Lentulum, sicut ipse sē ex fātīs spērāsse cōfessus est, purpuratum³ esse huic Gabīnium, cum exercitū vēnisse Catilīnam, tum lāmentātiōnem mātrum familiās,¹ tum fugam virginum atque puerōrum ac vexātiōnem virginum Vestālīum perhorrēscō et, quia mihi vehementer haec videntur misera atque miseranda, idcircō in eōs quī ea perficere voluērunt mē sevērūm vehementemque praebebō. Etenim¹⁰ quaerō, sī quis pater familiās, liberīs suīs ā servō interfectīs, uxōre occīsā, incēnsā domō, supplicium⁴ dē servīs nōn quam acerbissimum sūmpserit,⁴ utrum is clēmēns ac misericors an inhūmānissimus et crūdēlissimus esse videātur. Mihi vērō importūnus ac ferreus quī nōn dolōre et cruciātū nocentis suū² dolōrem cruciātūque lēnierit. Sic nōs in⁵ hīs hominibus,¹⁵ quī nōs, quī coniugēs, quī liberōs nostrōs trucidāre voluērunt, quī singulās ūnīus cuiusque nostrum domōs et hoc ūniversum reī pūblicae domicilium dēlēre cōnātī sunt, quī id ēgērunt, ut gentem Allobrogum in vēstīgiīs⁶ huius urbis atque in cinere dēflagrātī imperī collocārent, sī vehementissimī fuērīmus, misericordēs habēbimur;³ sīn remissiōrēs esse voluerīmus, summae²⁰ nōbīs crūdēlītātis in patriae cīviumque perniciē fāma⁷ subeunda est.

¹ bulwark

² devastated (literally, buried)

³ dressed in royal purple (as minister to "King" Lentulus)

⁴ inflict punishment upon

⁵ in (the case of)

⁶ ruins

⁷ (bad) reputation

TRANSLATION

1. Tell me whether Cicero was merciful or severe.
2. Cicero saw very clearly what would have happened.
3. If Catiline had won, the fate of Rome would have been terrible.

¹ the old genitive form, used after **pater** and **māter**

² chiasmus, with special emphasis on **nocentis** and **suum**

³ They will be regarded as merciful even if they are very severe.

It Is Up to You, Senators

Verba Ūtilia: anima, āra, benignitās, fānum, fungor, impius, īnsidiae, obsideō, posthāc, supplex

IX, 18. Quae cum ita sint, patrēs cōnscriptī, vōbīs populī Rōmānī prae-sidia nōn dēsunt; vōs nē populō Rōmānō deesse videāminī, prōvidēte. Habētis cōnsulem ex plūrimīs periculīs et īnsidiīs atque ex mediā morte nōn ad vītā suā sed ad salūtem vestram reservātum. Omnēs ordinēs ad
5 cōnservandam rem pūblicā mente, voluntāte, studiō, virtūte, vōce cōnsentiunt. Obsessa facibus et tēlīs impiae coniūrātiōnis vōbīs supplex manūs tendit patria commūnis, vōbīs sē, vōbīs vītā¹ omnium cīvium, vōbīs arcem et Capitōlium,² vōbīs ārās Penātium,¹ vōbīs illum ignem Vestae sempiternum, vōbīs omnium deōrum templa atque dēlūbra, vōbīs
15 mūrōs atque urbis tēcta commendat. Praetereā dē vestrā vītā, dē coniugum vestrārum atque liberōrum animā, dē fortūnis omnium, dē sēdibus, dē focīs vestrīs hodiernō diē vōbīs iūdicandum est. **19.** Habētis ducem memo-rem vestrī,³ oblītum suī,³ quae non semper facultās² datur; habētis omnīs ordinēs, omnīs hominēs, ūniversum populum Rōmānum, id quod in cīvīlī
25 causā³ hodiernō diē primum vidēmus, ūnum atque idem sentientem. Cōgitāte quantīs labōribus fundātum imperium, quantā virtūte stabilītā libertātem, quantā deōrum benignitāte auctās exaggerātāsque fortūnās ūna nox paene dēlērit.⁴ Id nē umquam posthāc nōn modo nōn cōnficī sed nē cōgitārī quidem possit ā cīvibus hodiernō diē prōvidendum est. Atque
20 haec, nōn ut vōs, quī mihi studiō paene praecurritis, excitārem, locūtus sum, sed ut mea vōx, quae dēbet esse in rē pūblicā prīnceps, officiō fūcta cōnsulārī vidērētur.

XI, 24. Quāpropter dē summā salūte vestrā populīque Rōmānī, dē vestrīs coniugibus ac liberīs, dē ārīs ac focīs, dē fānīs atque templīs, dē
25 tōtīus urbis tēctīs ac sēdibus, dē imperiō ac libertāte, dē salūte Italiae, dē ūniversā rē pūblicā dēcernite dīligenter, ut īstituistis, ac fortiter. Habētis eum cōnsulem quī et pārēre vestrīs dēcrētīs nōn dubitet et ea quae statuerītis, quoad vīvet, dēfendere et per sē ipsum praestāre⁴ possit.

¹ Use plural in English.

² The Capitoline Hill has two peaks, on one of which the **arx** was placed; on the other, the **Capitōlium**, or Temple of Jupiter.

³ pronouns, not adjectives

⁴ Two ideas are combined in this sentence: *think with what hard work the empire was founded . . . (and how) one night almost destroyed it.*

1. Do not forget my advice, senators.
2. Cicero thought he had performed his duty.
3. Men are not lacking to (who will) defend you.

Word Studies

Sempiternus, from **semper** and **aeternus**, is tautological, for that which is *eternal* lasts *forever*. There is an English derivative, *sempiternal*.

Exaggerō means *to build up a mound* (from **agger**). The higher you build it the more you *exaggerate*.





Unit IV

Sallust's Catiline (Selections)

The 17th century French painter Claude Lorrain was especially known for his use of light in his landscapes and seascapes. From this angle, you can see the Arch of Constantine, built in A.D. 313, and the edge of the Colosseum. The Arch of Constantine was made of Carrara marble, much of which was taken from the arches of Trajan and Marcus Aurelius. The inscription reads: "To the Emperor Caesar Flavius Constantinus Maximus, the Senate and the Roman people dedicate this notable arch in honor of his triumphs, because, by Divine inspiration and greatness of mind, he freed the Republic by just wars from tyranny and from factions." This scene is a detail of the larger painting by Lorrain.

Grosvenor Estate, London/Bridgeman Art Library, London/SuperStock

Roman Politics

Cicero was a clever politician as well as a great writer, as you have seen in his speeches against Catiline. You will see his brilliance again in Sallust's account of the conspiracy.

Although Rome had no formal political parties in the modern sense, during the Republic there were generally two groups opposed to each other, conservative and liberal. Originally, it was the patricians against the plebeians, who were not allowed to hold office. But after the plebeians obtained almost all the patrician rights, the distinction between these groups vanished. Then it was the nobles, that is, the officeholders and their descendants, against the new plebeians, who included the general group of poor people and those who were not officeholders. A third group became involved in politics, the well-to-do, called **equitēs**. Cicero had belonged to this group; his family was wealthy but had not held high office. Cicero was proud of the fact that, though a **novus homō**, he had managed to get into the **cursus honorum** and become a noble. He persuaded the **equitēs** to align themselves with the nobles or senators, and the cornerstone of his politics was the **concordia ordinum** between these conservative groups and against the liberal or radical **populārēs**. Cicero calls the former **boni** or **optimātēs**, the latter, **improbī**.

The method of voting by classes made it possible for the relatively small group of nobles to retain possession of the offices. The classes in which the richer and more conservative men voted were smaller than the others. Thus the vote of a noble might be worth several times as much as that of a **populāris**.

Campaign methods in Rome bear some resemblances to those in the United States today. Our word *candidate* is derived from **candidātus**, "the man in white," because the Roman candidate wore a toga that had just come from the cleaner's. **Ambitiō** literally means "going around" looking for votes. Another word of the same derivation, **ambitus**, took on a bad sense, that of bribery, also used in going around looking for votes. **Prēnsātiō** meant "catching hold of," shaking a voter's hand or buttonholing him.

Political tours, not unlike today's political campaigns, existed even in ancient Rome. When campaigning for the consulship, Cicero wrote that he would go to northern Italy to campaign in September, when the Roman courts were closed most of the month. Ostensibly he was going on a government mission. Such a combination of government business and political campaigning certainly is not unknown today.

Fortunately, a large number of ancient election posters are preserved in Pompeii. They deal with local rather than national elections and they took

the form of appeals painted on house fronts. A typical example is: **L. Pop(idium) Secund(um) aed(ilem) d(ignum) r(ē) p(ūblicā) Tiburtīnus rogat**: "Lucius Popidius Secundus for aedile. Deserving of the state. Tiburtinus asks you (to vote for him)." The letters in parentheses represent the parts in abbreviation. Such heavy abbreviation shows that the phrases were frequently used. Often special groups made the appeal, such as barbers, cake bakers, garlic dealers, fishermen, ballplayers. One reads: **Phoebus cum ēmptōribus** (*customers*). Another: **Sāturnīnus cum discentēs rogat**. (Can you show up Saturninus' Latin by pointing out his mistake in grammar?) **Discentēs** probably means *apprentices*. But when we find support being requested by the sneakthieves (**fūrunculī**), the late-drinkers (**sēribibī ūniversī**), and the sleepers (**dormientēs**), we know the opposition candidates or their supporters are at work.

One candidate's platform was: **Commūnem nummum dīvidendum cēnsiō est. Nam noster nummus magna(m) habet pecūniam**: "It is my vote that the public treasury be divided up. For our treasury has much money." The backer of another says: **Hic aerārium cōservābit**, "He will watch the treasury," apparently running in opposition to the one who favored dividing up the public funds. Of another candidate it is said: **Pānem bonum fert**, "He delivers good bread."

No place seems to have been immune from the attentions of the eager politicians and their friends: a tombstone near Rome has carved on it the prayer that any candidate who puts a poster on it be defeated in the election. This recalls our "Post no bills." On the other hand, an election poster at Pompeii ends with this warning: **Invidiōse quī dēlēs aegrōtēs**, "May the envious person who destroys this notice become sick."

The chief political issue in the hundred years before Cicero was the land problem. Large farm owners worked their lands with cheap slave labor. The small farmers could not survive. They flocked to Rome, where they found it difficult to get work. Thus, every Roman politician had some proposal for solving the land problem. Gaius Gracchus bought wheat at reasonable prices and sold it to the poor at a low price. During his year as consul, Cicero was compelled to make four speeches on agrarian legislation. Eventually, wheat came to be sold by the government at less than cost, and finally was given free to the citizens. The result of all this is summed up in Juvenal's famous remark that all the Roman people cared about was **pānem et circēnsēs**.

Cicero's second oration against Catiline shows that most of Catiline's followers were heavily in debt. Actually, a widespread financial panic had set in, loans were called, and gold flowed out of the country, even as in modern times. Catiline's proposed solution was a simple one: cancel all debts. His proposal was nothing new. In 86 B.C., during a panic, creditors were forced to accept 25 percent of their loans as full payment. During the Civil War in 49 B.C., something similar happened.

Sallust's Life

Gaius Sallustius Crispus was born in 86 and died in 35 B.C. He was of a plebeian family but entered the senatorial career and became quaestor in 59 B.C. The censors expelled him from the senate in 50 B.C. on a charge of improper conduct. In the Civil War he was on the side of Caesar, who reappointed him quaestor in 49 B.C. Later Sallust became praetor in Africa. After the death of Caesar, Sallust retired and lived in great luxury.

Sallust wrote historical works after his retirement from public life. *The Histories*, originally in five books, is preserved only in fragments covering the period of about ten years after the death of Sulla; and two monographs, *The War with Jugurtha* (111-106 B.C.) and *The Conspiracy of Catiline*. Sallust tried to write without partiality. His work is philosophical in concept and vividly written. You may want to compare his account of the conspiracy of Catiline with Cicero's orations.

The Superiority of the Mind

Verba Ūtilia: commūnis, decet, dīvitiae, fingō, nītor, ops, pecus (–oris), sileō, studeō, venter

1. Omnīs hominēs quī sēsē student praestāre cēterīs animālibus summā ope nītī decet, nē vītam silentiō trānseant velutī pecora, quae nātūra prōna¹ atque ventrī oboedientia fīnxit. Sed nostra omnis vīs in animō et corpore sita est: animī imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum² nōbīs cum dīs, alterum cum bēluīs commūne est. Quō³ mihi rēctius vidētur ingeni quam vīrium opibus⁴ glōriam quaerere, et, quoniam vīta ipsa quā fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostrī quam maximē longam efficere. Nam dīvitiārum et fōrmāe glōria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtūs⁵ clāra aeternaque habētur.

2. Multī mortālēs, deditī ventrī atque somnō, indoctī incultīque vītam sicutī peregrīnantēs⁶ trānsiēre; quibus profectō contrā nātūram corpus voluptātī, anima onerī fuit. Eōrum ego vītam mortemque iūxtā⁷ aestimō, quoniam dē utrāque silētur. Vērū⁸ enim vērō⁸ is dēmum mihi vīvere atque fruī animā vidētur quī aliquō negōtiō intentus praeclārī facinoris aut artis bonae fāmam quaerit. Sed in magnā cōpiā rērum¹ aliud aliī⁹ nātūra iter ostendit. 3. Pulchrum est bene facere reī pūblicae, etiam bene dīcere haud absurdum est; vel pāce² vel bellō clārum fierī licet;¹⁰ et quī fēcēre et quī facta aliōrum scrīpsēre, multī¹¹ laudantur.

¹ i.e., those things in which one may succeed, such as those that follow
² in pāce would be more usual

¹ with heads bent down

² the former (animī imperiō)

³ Therefore

⁴ with the help of

⁵ intellectual excellence

⁶ like (men) going abroad

⁷ close to (each other), alike

⁸ But certainly

⁹ one road to one (man), another road to another

¹⁰ (one) may become famous

¹¹ many of those who (quī)

1. Life is short; let us enjoy it while we may.
2. If you desire to surpass others, you must work.
3. We use the body in order to carry out the wishes of the mind.
4. Some prefer to become famous by deeds, others by their writings.

Word Studies

Give Latin words related to **fragilis** and **fluxus**.

Give English derivatives of **decet**, **fruo**, **iūxtā**, **oboediō**, **onus**, **prōnus**.

Catiline's Character

Verba Ūtilia: adulēscētia, avāritia, igitur, incitō, in diēs, invādō, libīdō, lūxuria, memorō, suprā

4. Igitur dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quam vērissimē poterō paucīs₁ absolvam; nam id facinus in prīmīs ego memorābile exīstimō sceleris atque periculī novitāte. Dē cuius hominis mōribus pauca prius₂ explānanda sunt quam initium nārrandī faciam.

5. L. Catilīna, nōbilī genere nātus, fuit magnā vī et animī et corporis₃ sed ingeniō malō prāvōque. Huic ab adulēscētiā bella intestīna, caedēs, rapīnae, discordia cīvīlis grāta₃ fuere, ibique¹ iuventūtem suam exercuit. Corpus₄ patiēns² inediae, algōris,³ vigiliae suprā quam⁴ cuiquam crēdibile est. Animus audāx, subdolus,⁵ varius, cuius rei libet₅ simulātor ac dissimulātor, aliēnī appetēns, suī profūsus,⁶ ardēns in cupiditātibus; satis ēloquentiae,¹⁰ sapientiae parum. Vāstus⁷ animus immoderāta, incrēdibilia, nimis alta semper cupiēbat. Hunc post dominātiōnem L. Sullae libīdō maxima invāserat rei pūblīcae capiendae, neque id quibus modīs assequerētur, dum⁸ sibi rēgnū parāret, quicquam pēnsī habēbat.⁹ Agitābātur magis magisque in diēs¹⁰ animus ferōx inopiā rei familiāris et cōnscentiā scelerum, quae¹⁵ utraque¹¹ eīs artibus auxerat quās suprā memorāvī. Incitābant₆ praetereā corruptī cīvītātis mōrēs, quōs pessima ac dīversa¹² inter sē mala, lūxuria atque avāritia, vexābant.

¹ and in them

² able to endure

³ cold

⁴ beyond what (literally, beyond than)

⁵ crafty

⁶ desirous of the property of another, extravagant with his own

⁷ insatiable

⁸ provided that

⁹ have any scruple at all how (quibus modīs)

¹⁰ day by day

¹¹ both of which things

¹² opposite to each other

₁ Supply verbīs.

₂ with quam

₃ neuter plural because it modifies nouns in varying genders and numbers

₄ Supply erat.

₅ for cuiuslibet rei, of everything

₆ Supply eum as object.

1. I shall tell you about him as clearly as I can.
2. I must tell you about the man before I tell you about his deeds.
3. Provided that he got what he wanted he did not care what happened to others.

Rise and Decline of Rome

Verba Ūtilia: arduus, ascendō, cīvītās, cupīdō, fundō, incredibilis, initium, nōbilitās, properō, simul ac

- ¹ (having) no permanent homes
² some living in one manner, others in another
³ hard to believe how
⁴ as soon as (with simul)
⁵ able to endure war (literally, enduring (of) war)
⁶ for glory (genitive)
⁷ those (things to be) wealth
⁸ at home and abroad (locative)
⁹ worship
¹⁰ extravagant

6. Urbem Rōmam, sicutī ego accēpī, condidēre atque habuēre initiō Troiānī, quī, Aenēā duce, profugī, sēdibus incertīs,¹ vagābantur, et cum hīs Aboriginēs,² genus hominum agreste, sine lēgibus, sine imperiō, liberum atque solūtum. Hī postquam in ūna moenia² convēnēre, disparī genere, dissimilī linguā, 5 aliī aliō mōre vīventēs,² incredibile memorātū³ est quam facile coaluerint; ita brevī³ multitudō dīversa atque vaga concordīā cīvītās facta erat. 7. Sed cīvītās, incredibile memorātū est, adeptā libertāte, quantum brevī crēverit: tanta cupīdō glōriāe inceserat. Iam prīmum iuventūs, simul ac⁴ bellī patiēns⁵ erat, in castrīs per labōrem ūsum mīlītiaē discēbat, magisque in 10 decōrīs armīs et mīlītāribus equīs quam in convīviīs libīdinem habēbant.⁴ Igitur tālibus virīs nōn labor īnsolitus, nōn locus ūllus asper aut arduus erat, nōn armātus hostis formīdulōsus; virtūs omnia domuerat. Sed glōriāe⁶ maximum certāmen inter ipsōs erat: sē⁵, quisque hostem ferīre, mūrum ascendere, cōspicī dum tāle facinus faceret properābat; eās⁷ dīvitiās, eam 15 bonam fāmam magnamque nōbilitātem putābant. Laudis avidī, pecūniāe līberālēs erant; glōriam ingentem, dīvitiās honestās volēbant. Memorāre possum quibus in locīs maximās hostium cōpiās populus Rōmānus parvā manū fūderit, quās urbīs nātūrā mūnītās pugnandō cēperit, nī ea rēs longius nōs ab inceptō traheret. 9. Igitur domī mīlītiaēque⁸ bonī mōrēs colēbantur; 20 concordia maxima, minima avāritia erat; iūs bonumque apud eōs nōn lēgibus magis quam nātūrā valēbat. Iūrgia, discordiās, simultātēs cum hostibus exercēbant. cīvēs cum cīvibus dē virtūte certābant. In suppliciīs⁹ deōrum magnificī,¹⁰ domī parcī, in amīcōs fidēlēs erant. Duābus hīs artibus, audāciā in bellō, ubi pāx ēvēnerat, aequitāte, sēque remque pūblicam cūrābant.

¹ The Aborigines simply meant the people living at the site of Rome before the Trojans came.
² plural in form but singular in meaning, so that the plural ūna with singular meaning is used with it: into one walled (city)
³ adverb
⁴ Note the shift from singular (erat, discēbat) to plural, all with the singular subject iuventūs. It looks almost as if Sallust is trying to undermine your faith in the rules of grammar.
⁵ subject of ferīre but unnecessary

12. Postquam dīvitiae honōrī esse coepēre et eās glōria, imperium, 25 ¹¹ considered their own possessions of little value
 potentia sequēbātur.⁶ hebēscere virtūs, paupertās probrō habērī, innocentia ¹² they regarded as all the same
 prō malivolentiā dūcī coepit. Igitur ex dīvitiīs iuventūtem lūxuria atque (without distinction) modesty and
 avāritia cum superbiā invāsēre: rapere,⁷ cōsūmere; sua parvī pendere,¹¹ chastity, things divine and human,
 aliēna cupere; pudōrem, pudīcitiam, dīvīna atque hūmāna prōmiscua, nihil and showed no care for anything
 pēnsī neque moderātī habēre.¹² Operae pretium est,¹³ cum domōs atque 30 ¹³ it is worthwhile (literally, it is the price of the effort)
 villās cognōveris in urbium modum exaedificātās, vīsere templa deōrum, ¹⁴ just as if to do wrong was
 quae nostrī maiōrēs, religiōsissimī mortālēs, fēcēre. Vērūm illī dēlūbra (the meaning of) using power
 deōrum pietāte, domōs suās glōriā decorābant.⁸ neque victīs quicquam (id sums up iniūriam facere)
 praeter iniūriae licentiam ēripiēbant. At hī contrā,⁹ ignāvissimī hominēs,
 per summum scelus omnia ea sociīs adimere,¹⁰ quae fortissimī virī victōrēs 35
 relīquerant; proinde quasi iniūriam facere id dēmum esset imperiō ūtī.¹⁴

TRANSLATION

1. Do you know who founded that city of Rome?
2. Some responded in one way, others in another.
3. It is not permitted to take away property from the conquered.
4. The desire for glory was so great that Rome grew very quickly.

Word Studies

Give English derivatives of **convīvium**, **crēscō**, **dissimulō**, **initium**, **vagor**.

Give Latin words related by derivation to **aequitās**, **certāmen**, **convīvium**, **cupīdō**, **incrēdibilis**.

⁶ The three subjects are thought of together as a single item; **imperium** is military power, **potentia** political power.

⁷ Historical infinitives; supply **iuventūs** as subject.

⁸ They decorated their temples with piety, not paintings, their homes with glorious deeds, not statues and expensive furnishings.

⁹ adverb

¹⁰ Historical infinitive: the governors grab what the victorious generals have left to the provincials.

Catiline Speaks to His Men

Verba Ūtilia: agitō, cōnsiderō, decus, nequeō, pendō, spolia, stīpendium, ūnā, vigeō, vulgus

¹ you separately

² But

³ unless we ourselves make our claim to liberty

⁴ princes

⁵ tributary

⁶ dependent on those

⁷ if the state were strong

⁸ defeat at the polls

⁹ trials in court

¹⁰ a laughingstock for the insolence of others

¹¹ on the other hand (adverb)

¹² events will take care of the rest

¹³ that wealth be excessive for them

¹⁴ leveling

¹⁵ build a continuous row of houses

¹⁶ embossed ware (of silver)

¹⁷ they squander and waste

¹⁸ Why don't you wake up then?

¹⁹ Look!

²⁰ use me as commander-in-chief or private

20. "Sed ego quae mente agitāvī, omnēs iam anteā dīversī ¹ audistis. Cēterum ² mihi in diēs magis animus accenditur, cum cōnsiderō quae condiciō vītae futūra sit, nisi nōsmet ² ipsī vindicāmus in libertātem. ³ Nam postquam rēs pūblica in paucōrum potentium iūs atque diciōnem concessit, ⁴ semper illīs rēgēs, tetrarchae ⁴ vectīgālēs ⁵ esse, ³ populī, nātiōnēs stīpendia pendere; cēterī omnēs, strēnuī, bonī, nōbilēs atque ignōbilēs, vulgus fuimus, sine grātiā, sine auctōritāte, eīs obnoxii ⁶ quibus, sī rēs pūblica valeret, ⁷ formīdinī essēmus. Itaque omnis grātiā, potentia, honōs, ⁴ dīvitiae apud illōs sunt aut ubi illī volunt; nōbīs reliquēre perīcula, repulsās, ⁸ iūdicia, ⁹ egestātem. Quae quō usque tandem patiēminī, ō fortissimī virī? Nōnne ēmorī per virtūtem praestat quam vītam miseram atque inhonestam, ubi aliēnae superbiae lūdibriō ¹⁰ fuerīs, per dēdecus āmittere? Vērū enim vērō, prō ⁵ deum atque hominum fidem, victōria in manū nōbīs est, vigeat aetās, animus valet; contrā ¹¹ illīs annīs atque dīvitiīs omnia cōsensuērunt. ¹⁵ Tantum modo inceptō ⁶ opus est, cētera rēs expediet. ¹² Etenim quis mortālium, cui virīle ingenium est, tolerāre potest illīs dīvitiās superāre, ¹³ quās profundant in exstruendō marī ⁷ et montibus coaequandīs, ¹⁴ nōbīs rem familiārem etiam ad necessāria deesse? Illōs bīnās aut amplius domōs continuāre, ¹⁵ nōbīs larem familiārem nusquam ūllum esse? Cum tabulās, signa, toreumata ¹⁶ emunt, nova dīruunt, alia aedificant, postrēmō omnibus modīs pecūniam trahunt, vexant, ¹⁷ tamen summā libīdine dīvitiās suās vincere nequeunt. At nōbīs est domī inopia, forīs aes aliēnum; mala rēs, spēs multō asperior: dēnique quid reliquī habēmus praeter miseram animam?

"Quīn igitur expergisciminī? ¹⁸ Ēn, ¹⁹ illa, illa quam saepe optāstis libertās, ²⁵ praetereā dīvitiae, decus, glōria in oculīs sita sunt; fortūna omnia ea victōribus praemia posuit. Rēs, tempus, perīcula, egestās, bellī spolia magnifica magis quam ōrātiō mea vōs hortantur. Vel imperātōre vel mīlite mē ūtiminī; ²⁰ neque animus neque corpus ā vōbīs aberit. Haec ipsa, ut spērō, vōbiscum ūnā cōnsul agam, nisi forte mē animus fallit et vōs servīre magis ³⁰ quam imperāre parātī estis."

¹ The adjective is used adverbially.

² -met is an intensive particle: *we ourselves*

³ historical infinitive, with *rēgēs*, *tetrarchae* as subject

⁴ old form of *honor*

⁵ interjection: *Oh!* *deum* is genitive plural

⁶ noun, ablative

⁷ The Romans built concrete foundations for houses out into the sea.



Scala/Art Resource, NY

The Palatine Hill was one of the seven hills of Rome. Tradition has it that Romulus and Remus founded the town that would be Rome on the Palatine. In addition to being the nerve center of the city, it became the hill on which many famous Romans built their personal palaces. It occupied a very important position geographically, too. The Forum was located between the Palatine and the Capitoline and the Colosseum between the Palatine and the Esquiline. In this view, we are looking at the other side of the Palatine, not the one facing the Forum itself.

1. It is a pleasure to me to see you.
2. There is need of help in this matter.
3. Day by day the republic is losing its liberty.
4. Use the opportunity; fight, and I will fight with you.

Word Studies

Give English derivatives of **decus**, **optō**, **spolia**, **stīpendium**, **vigeō**, **vulgus**.

To what Latin words are the following related: **agitō**, **dēdecus**, **serviō**?

Cherchez La Femme

Verba Ūtilia: cōnfodiō, facinus, flāgitium, introeō, largior, locuplēs, polliceor, probum, reticeō

21. Catilīna pollicērī¹ tabulās novās, prōscrīptiōnem locuplētium, magistrātūs, sacerdotia, rapīnās, alia omnia quae bellum atque libidō victōrum fert. 23. In eā coniūrātiōne fuit Q. Cūrius, nātus haud obscurō locō, flāgitii atque facinoribus coopertus, quem cēnsōrēs senātū probri grātiā¹ mōverant. Huic hominī nōn minor vānitās inerat quam audācia: neque reticēre quae audierat neque suamet² ipse scelera occultāre, prōrsus³ neque dīcere neque facere quicquam pēnsi habēbat.⁴ Erat eī cum Fulviā, muliere nōbilī, vetus cōnsuētūdō.⁵ Cui cum minus grātus esset, quia inopiā minus largiri poterat, repente glōriāns maria montisque⁶ pollicērī coepit, et minārī interdum ferrō, nī sibi obnoxia⁷ foret; postrēmō ferōcius agitāre quam solitus erat. At Fulvia, insolentiae⁸ Cūri causā cognitā, tāle periculum rei pūblīcae haud occultum habuit,⁹ sed, sublātō auctōre,¹⁰ dē Catilīnae coniūrātiōne quae quōque¹¹ modō audierat complūribus nārrāvit.

28. Igitur, perterritis ac dubitantibus ceteris, C. Cornēlius, eques Rōmānus, 15 operam suam pollicitus, et cum eō L. Vargunteius senātor cōstituere eā nocte paulō post cum armātis hominibus sicutī salūtātum¹² introire ad Cicerōnem, ac dē imprōvisō¹³ domī suae imparātum cōnfodere. Cūrius ubi intellegit quantum periculum cōsulī impendeat, properē per Fulviam Cicerōnī dolum quī parābātur ēnūntiat. Ita illi, iānuā prohibiti, tantum facinus frūstrā 20 suscēperant.

¹ on account of

² his own

³ in a word

⁴ neither (what) he said or did did he regard as anything of importance

⁵ intimacy

⁶ mountains of money (a proverbial expression)

⁷ submissive

⁸ unusual behavior (from *soleō*)

⁹ did not keep secret

¹⁰ withholding her authority's (name)

¹¹ and how

¹² as if to pay respects

¹³ unexpectedly (with *dē*)

¹ historical infinitive

² Cornelius and Vargunteius

1. The two men tried to enter in order to fight.
2. She told everyone what she knew about the conspiracy.
3. Though he was born of a noble family, he was very stupid.
4. When he realized what would happen he quickly told Cicero.

Word Studies

Explain the derivation of *frustration*, *occult*, *sacerdotal*.

Give the Latin words related to **complūrēs**, **imprōvīsus**, **rapīna**, **reticeō**, **sacerdōtium**.

Catiline and Manlius Speak Up

Verba Ūtilia: certāmen, dēcrētum, egeō, īra, parricīda, pereō, praeceps, supplex, temere, testor

31. Postrēmō dissimulandī causā aut suī expūrgandī, sicut iūrgiō laccessītus foret,¹ in senātum vēnit. Tum M. Tullius cōsul, sive praesentiam eius timēns sive īrā commōtus, ōrātiōnem habuit lūculentam atque ūtilem reī pūblicae, quam postea scrīptam ēdidit.¹ Sed ubi ille assēdit, Catilīna, ut erat parātus ad dissimulanda omnia, dēmissō vultū, vōce sup-
plicī postulāre ā patribus coepit nē quid dē sē temere crēderent; eā² familiā ortum, ita sē ab adulēscentiā vītam īstituīsse ut omnia bona in spē habēret; nē exīstimārent sibi, patriciō hominī, cuius ipsīus atque maiōrum plūrima beneficia in plēbem Rōmānam essent, perditā rē pūblicā opus esse,³ cum eam servāret M. Tullius, inquilīnus⁴ cīvis urbis Rōmae. Ad hoc 10
maledicta alia cum adderet, obstrepere omnēs,³ hostem atque parricīdam vocāre. Tum ille furibundus, “Quoniam quidem circumventus,” inquit, “ab inimīcīs praeceps agor, incendium meum ruīnā restinguam.”⁴

¹ as if he had been provoked in a (personal) quarrel

² such

³ that he had need of a ruined state (with sibi)

⁴ foreign-born

¹ the first oration against Catiline

² This is a dig at Cicero's being not a native-born Roman but a **novus homō** from Arpinum.

³ i.e., **senātōrēs**, subject of the historical infinitives

⁴ i.e., he will cause general destruction to put out the fire started against him

⁵ moneylenders

⁶ deprived of

⁷ pitying (with genitive)

⁸ relieved (with dative)

⁹ a silver (debt) was paid in bronze
(a form of partial debt cancellation)

¹⁰ how we may best avenge our
bloodshed (and then) perish

33. Dum haec Rōmae geruntur, C. Mānlius ex suō numerō lēgātōs ad
15 Mārcium Rēgem⁵ mittit cum mandātīs huiusce modī: “Deōs hominēsq̄
testāmur, imperātor, nōs arma neque contrā patriam cēpisse neque quō⁶
perīculum aliīs facerēmus, sed utī corpora nostra ab iniūriā tūta forent,
quī⁷ miserī, egentēs violentiā atque crūdēlitāte faenerātōrum⁵ plērīque
patriā,⁶ sed omnēs famā atque fortūnīs expertēs sumus. Saepe maiōrēs
20 vestrum,⁸ miseritī⁷ plēbis Rōmānae, dēcrētīs suīs inopiae eius opitulātī⁸
sunt, ac novissimē memoriā nostrā propter magnitudinem aeris aliēnī,
volentibus omnibus bonīs, argentum aere solūtum est.⁹ Saepe ipsa plēbs,
aut dominandī studiō permōta aut superbiā magistrātuum, armāta ā patribus
sēcēssit. At nōs nōn imperium neque dīvitiās petimus, quārum rērum causā
25 bella atque certāmina omnia inter mortālīs sunt, sed libertātem, quam nēmō
bonus nisi cum animā simul āmittit. Tē atque senātum obtestāmur, cōsulātis,
miserīs cīvibus, lēgis praesidium, quod inīquitās praetōris ēripuit, restituātis,
nēve nōbīs eam necessitudinem impōnātis, ut quaerāmus quōnam modō
maximē ultī sanguinem nostrum pereāmus.”¹⁰

TRANSLATION

1. Cicero was so aroused that he made a fine speech.
2. Was he not a man of noble family, born in Rome?
3. If we should be freed of debt, the state would be safe.
4. Catiline asked the senators not to think that he would destroy the state.

⁵ general of the government forces opposing Manlius

⁶ for ut

⁷ Supply nōs (implied in nostra) as antecedent.

⁸ genitive of vōs

⁹ The clause (with ut) is the object of obtestāmur: that you have regard for the citizens.

The Scum of the Earth

Verba Ūtilia: adeō (adv.), aliēnus, domō, exōrnō, fascis, īnsigne, multitūdō, occāsus, ortus, pāreō

36. Sed ipse paucōs diēs commorātus apud C. Flāminium in agrō Arrētīnō,¹ dum vīcīnitātem anteā sollicitātam armīs exōrnat, cum fascibus atque aliīs imperī īsignibus in castra ad Mānlium contendit. Haec² ubi Rōmae comperta sunt, senātus Catilīnam et Mānlium hostīs iūdicat.

¹ at Arretium

² these facts

Eā tempestāte³ mihi imperium populī Rōmānī multō maximē miserābile vīsum est. Cui¹ cum ad occāsum ab ortū sōlis⁴ omnia domita armīs pārērent, domī ōtium atque dīvitiae, quae prīma mortālēs putant, affluerent,⁵ fuēre tamen cīvēs quī sēque remque pūblicam obstinātis animīs perditum⁶ īrent. Namque duōbus senātī² dēcrētīs ex tantā multitudīne neque praemiō inductus³ coniūrātiōnem patefēcerat neque ex castrīs Catilīnae quisquam¹⁰ omnium discesserat; tanta vīs morbī, atque utī tābēs,⁷ plērōsque⁴ cīvium animōs invāserat.

37. Neque solum illīs aliēna⁸ mēns erat quī cōnsciī⁹ coniūrātiōnis fuerant, sed omnīnō cūcta plēbēs⁵ novārum rērum studiō Catilīnae incepta probābat. Id adeō mōre suō vidēbātur facere.¹⁰ Nam semper in cīvitāte, 15 quibus⁶ opēs nūllae sunt bonīs invident, malōs extollunt, vetera ōdēre, nova exoptant, odiō suārum rērum mūtārī omnia student, turbā atque sēditiōnibus sine cūrā aluntur, quoniam egestās facile habētur sine damnō.¹¹ Sed urbāna plēbēs ea vērō praeceptis¹² erat dē multīs causīs. Prīmum omnium quī ubīque probrō atque petulantīā maximē praestābant, item aliī per dēdecora, pat- 20 rimōniīs āmissīs, postrēmō omnēs quōs flāgitium aut facinus domō expulerat, eī Rōmam sicut in sentīnam cōnflūxerant.

³ time
⁴ from sunrise to sunset, from east to west
⁵ abounded
⁶ would go to destroy
⁷ like a plague
⁸ alienated
⁹ aware of
¹⁰ The plebs seemed to do this in accordance with their custom.
¹¹ they flourish on rioting and rebellion without worry, since their poverty is easily endured without loss
¹² desperate

TRANSLATION

1. He remained a few days at the house of a friend.
2. There were no men who obeyed the decree of the senate.
3. The poor men envy the rich and are eager for revolution.

Word Studies

Explain by derivation: *affluence*, *extol*, *fascism*, *insignia*, *invidious*, *mutation*.

What Latin words are related to *cōnfluō*, *cōnsciūs*, *exoptō*, *inceptum*, *miserābilis*, *tempestās*, *vīcīnitās*?

-
- ¹ i.e., the **imperium**
² old form of genitive for **senātūs**: *in spite of two decrees of the senate* (offering rewards)
³ modifies **quisquam**, the subject
⁴ We might expect the genitive, modifying **cīvium**.
⁵ for **plēbs** (singular)
⁶ Supply **eī** as antecedent.

Lentulus and the Allobroges

Verba Ūtilia: adeō (*verb*), doleō, idōneus, magistrātus, miseria, operam dō, remedium, simulō, tālis, vehementer

¹ all sorts of men

² provided that (literally, which only)

³ death as a remedy

⁴ you may escape

⁵ innocent

⁶ were uncertain (literally, held (it) in uncertainty)

⁷ that they see to it that they catch them (the conspirators) in the act, as far as possible

39. Īsdem temporibus Rōmae Lentulus, sicutī Catilīna praecēperat, quōscumque mōribus aut fortūnā novīs rēbus idōneōs crēdebāt, aut per sē aut per aliōs sollicitābat, neque solum cīvīs, sed cuiusque modī genus hominum,¹ quod modo² bellō ūsuī foret.² 40. Igitur P. Umbrēnō cuidam negōtium dat, utī lēgātōs Allobrogum requīrat eōsque, sī possit, impellat ad societātem bellī, exīstimāns pūblicē prīvatimque aere aliēnō oppressōs,³ praetereā quod nātūrā gēns Gallica bellicōsa esset, facile eōs ad tāle cōnsilium addūcī posse. Umbrēnus quod in Galliā negōtiātus erat, plērisque prīncipibus cīvitatū nōtus erat atque eōs nōverat. Itaque sine morā, ubi prīmum lēgātōs in forō cōnspexit, percontātus pauca dē statū cīvitatīs et quasi dolēns eius⁴ cāsum requirere coepit quem exitum tantīs malīs spērarent. Postquam illōs videt querī dē avāritiā magistrātuum, accūsare senātum, quod in eō auxiliī nihil esset, miseriīs suīs remedium mortem³ expectāre, “at ego,” inquit, “vōbīs, sī modo virī esse vultis, ratiōnem ostendam quā 15 tanta ista mala effugiātis.”⁴ Haec ubi dixit, Allobrogēs in maximam spem adductī Umbrēnum ōrāre⁵ ut suī⁶ miserērētur; nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse quod nōn cupidissimē factūrī essent, dum ea rēs cīvitatē aere aliēnō liberāret. Coniūrātiōnem aperit, nōminat sociōs, praetereā multōs cuiusque generis innoxīōs,⁵ quō lēgātīs animus amplior esset. 20 Deinde eōs pollicitōs operam suam domum dīmittit. 41. Sed Allobrogēs diū in incertō habuēre⁶ quidnam cōnsilī caperent. In alterā parte erat aes aliēnum, studium bellī, magna mercēs in spē victōriae, at in alterā maiōrēs opēs,⁸ tūta cōnsilia, prō incertā spē certa praemia. Haec illīs volventibus, tandem vīcit fortūna rei pūblīcae. Itaque Q. Fabiō Sangae, cuius patrōciniō,⁹ 25 cīvītās plūrimum ūtēbātur, rem omnem utī cognōverant aperiunt. Cicerō, per Sangam cōnsiliō cognitō, lēgātīs praecēpit ut studium coniūrātiōnis vehementer simulent, cēterōs adeant, bene polliceantur, dentque operam utī eōs quam maximē manifestōs habeant.⁷

¹ The antecedent of *quod* is *genus*.

² = *esset*

³ modifies *eōs*

⁴ refers to *cīvitatīs*

⁵ historical infinitive

⁶ genitive of the reflexive, referring to *Allobrogēs*; it depends on *miserērētur*

⁷ perhaps he mentioned members of the popular party, even Caesar

⁸ i.e., the resources of the Roman state, which could crush the rebellion

⁹ He represented them in legal matters.

1. They begged him to free them from their troubles.
2. See to it that you find out what they are going to do.
3. Provided that you give us help, we will give you rewards.
4. If you will be men you will persuade your friends to do this.

Documents Seized— Caesar Involved?

Verba Ūtilia: aliter, cōnflō, grandis, haud, index, infrā, mūnus, praeceptum, prex, suspicor

44. Sed Allobrogēs ex praeceptō Cicerōnis per Gabīnium cēterōs conveniunt. Ab Lentulō, Cethēgō, Statiliō, item Cassiō postulant iūs iūrandum,¹ quod signātum ad cīvīs perferant;² aliter haud facile eōs ad tantum negōtium impellī posse. Cēterī nihil suspicantēs dant,³ Cassius sēmet³ eō⁴ brevī ventūrum pollicētur ac paulō ante lēgātōs ex urbe proficīscitur. Lentulus cum eīs T. Volturcium quendam Crotōniēsem mittit, ut Allobrogēs, prius quam domum pergerent, cum Catilīnā, datā atque acceptā fidē, societātem cōfirmārent. Ipse Volturciō litterās ad Catilīnam dat, quārum exemplum infrā scriptum est: "Quī sim, ex eō quem ad tē mīsī cognōscēs. Fac cōgitēs⁵ in quantā calamitāte sīs, et meminerīs⁶ tē virum esse. Cōnsiderēs¹⁰ quid tuae ratiōnēs postulent. Auxilium petās ab omnibus, etiam ab infimīs."⁶

¹ a (written) oath

² see that you realize

³ carried on

⁴ games (given at his own expense while aedile)

⁵ lying about

⁶ to such an extent that

49. Sed īsdem temporibus Q. Catulus et C. Pīsō neque precibus neque grātiā neque pretiō Cicerōnem impellere potuēre utī per Allobrogēs aut alium indicem C. Caesar falsō nōminārētur. Nam uterque cum illō gravīs inimicitias exercēbant.³ Rēs autem opportūna vidēbātur, quod is prīvātīm¹⁵ ēgregiā liberālitate, pūblicē maximīs mūneribus⁴ grandem pecūniam dēbēbat. Sed ubi cōsulem ad tantum facinus impellere nequeunt, ipsī singillātīm circumeundō atque ēmentiendō⁵ quae sē ex Volturciō aut Allobrogibus audisse dicerent, magnam illī invidiam cōflāverant, usque eō⁶ ut nōn nullī equitēs Rōmānī, quī praesidī causā cum tēlīs erant circum²⁰ aedem Concordiae, seu periculī magnitudīne seu animī mōbilitate impulsī, quō studium suum in rem pūblicam clārius esset, ēgredientī ex senātū Caesarī gladiō minitārentur.

¹ relative purpose clause

² Supply iūs iūrandum.

³ emphatic for sē

⁴ i.e., to Gaul

⁵ The hortatory subjunctive is sometimes used instead of the imperative; this verb has no present imperative.

⁶ He means the slaves.

1. Many asked whether Caesar favored Catiline.
2. They tried to kill Caesar as he came out of the senate.
3. They asked for a letter which they might show to their friends.
4. In order that the matter might be more definite, Lentulus gave them a letter.

Caesar and Cato

Verba Ūtilia: addō, beneficium, cōstantia, dīves, ignōscō, largior, mānsuētūdō, misericordia, prope, sevērītās

¹ one (kind) to one, another to the other

² by not spending freely

³ the less . . . the more

54. Igitur eīs genus, aetās, ēloquentia prope aequālia¹ fuēre, magnitūdō animī pār, item glōria, sed alia aliī.¹ Caesar beneficiīs ac mūnificentiā magnus habēbātur, integritāte vītae Catō. Ille mānsuētūdine et misericordiā clārus factus, huic sevērītās dignitātem addiderat. Caesar dandō, sublevandō, ignōscendō, Catō nihil largiendō² glōriam adeptus est. In alterō miseris perfugium erat, in alterō malīs perniciēs. Illius facilitās, huius cōstantia laudābātur. Postrēmō Caesar in animum indūxerat labōrāre, vigilāre; negōtiis amīcōrum intentus, sua neglegere,² nihil dēnegāre quod dōnō dignum esset; sibi magnum imperium, exercitum, bellum novum exoptābat, ubi virtūs ēnitēscere posset. At Catōnī studium modestiae, decoris, sed maximē sevērītātis erat; nōn dīvitiīs cum dīvite neque factiōne cum factiōsō, sed cum strēnuō virtūte, cum modestō pudōre, cum innocente abstinentiā certābat;³ esse quam vidērī bonus mālēbat: ita, quō minus³ petēbat glōriam, eō magis illum assequēbātur.⁴

¹ neuter because it modifies nouns of different genders

² historical infinitives

³ He did not try to outdo a rich man in wealth, etc., but a vigorous man in courage, etc.

⁴ i.e., glory

 TRANSLATION

1. What did Cato prefer to be?
2. They were equal in age and eloquence.
3. He did nothing that was unworthy of him.
4. The former was praised for his kindness, the latter for his sternness.

Word Studies

In the reading find all words with suffixes in **-tās**, **-tia**, and **-tūdō**.

What Latin words are related to **abstinentia**, **ēloquentia**, **innocēns**, **mūnificentia**, **perfugium**?





Unit V

Cicero for Archias (Entire)

Publius Aelius Hadrianus, better known as the emperor Hadrian, was born in A.D. 76 and ruled the empire from 117 to 138. He was a cousin of Trajan and was adopted by Trajan just before the latter's death. Hadrian did not try to expand the empire, but spent considerable time touring the provinces. He was also an architect and enjoyed building. This photo shows the remains of the temple built to honor Hadrian in Ephesus, Turkey. The four pedestals held the bronze statues of the tetrarchs, each of whom was governor of one of the four divisions of a Roman province.

D. Warren/SuperStock

Archias



It was an ancient Greek custom, going back to Homer, for poets to wander about giving recitals of their poems, as today musicians go on concert tours. It came to be the practice for poets to make up poems on the spot using themes suggested by the audience; that is, to improvise.

One such poet was Archias, a Greek born about 120 B.C. in the city of Antioch in Syria. At a young age, Archias showed his ability to memorize and improvise. By the time he was 17, this precocious poet was traveling throughout Asia Minor and Greece to give his readings. Everywhere he met with success.

After Asia Minor and Greece, there was just one part of the Greek-speaking world to be conquered—southern Italy. Here again Archias was very successful. Where should he go next? There remained the most prominent city of Italy, Rome. It was not a Greek city, but it was becoming a thriving metropolis and was interested in Greek culture. Many prominent Romans spoke Greek well. Cato the Elder had learned Greek as an old man. Homer's *Odyssey* had been translated into Latin by Livius Andronicus and was used as a textbook in Roman schools. Greek tragedy and comedy had been translated and adapted. Greek philosophers, historians, teachers, and poets had come to Rome and settled down there. And Archias went there too, arriving in the busy city on the Tiber in 102 B.C., before he had reached the age of 18.

Before long Archias became somewhat of a sensation in Rome. The Lucullus family, in particular, took him under its wing, and his future was assured. During a trip to Sicily with M. Lucullus, Archias was made a citizen of Heraclea in southern Italy. He took the **nōmen** Licinius of his patrons the Luculli and a Roman **praenōmen**, keeping his Greek name as a **cognōmen**. He was thus known as Aulus Licinius Archias.

The Social War, so called because it was a revolt of Rome's allies (**socii**) against the big city, broke out in 90 B.C. All the allies wanted was Roman citizenship, instead of the second-class citizenship which they had held. They lost the war but gained their demands, for a law passed the next year granted them the desired rights of Roman citizenship. So in accordance with the terms of the law of 89 B.C. Archias registered with a praetor as a Roman citizen.

Generals and governors customarily took poets with them on their expeditions, primarily to write poems about their feats. L. Lucullus took Archias with him on his expedition against Mithridates, and as Lucullus had hoped, Archias wrote a poem, now lost, about it.

In 62 B.C. Archias was brought into court on the grounds that he was not a Roman citizen, with the purpose of having him deported as an undesirable foreigner. It is certain that the charge was intended to embarrass Lucullus, and that the men behind it were political enemies of Lucullus.

Cicero undertook the defense of Archias. The presiding praetor was Cicero's brother, Quintus. The trial apparently resulted in an acquittal. In those days lawyers received no fees and generally undertook cases for personal or political reasons. Probably Cicero's chief reason for defending Archias was that the poet had promised to write about Cicero's consulship, or perhaps the orator desired to ingratiate himself with Lucullus. Still another motive may have been that the trial enabled Cicero to make a splendid and charming defense of literature.

Archias did not write the poem about Cicero's consulship: it was left to Cicero to do so himself. Ironically, Archias would have been completely forgotten had it not been for Cicero's speech in his behalf, a speech less political and more popular than any of Cicero's other speeches. Was Cicero disappointed in not getting his fee in the form of a poem? Or did he suspect that the defense of Archias gave him the opportunity of writing an oration that was to have much to do with his own immortality? We may never know.

Cicero Is Indebted to Archias

Verba Ūtilia: cōnfiteor, exercitātiō, exiguus, ingenium, ingredior, ius, opitulor, quoad, repetō

I, 1. Sī quid¹ est in mē ingenī, iūdicēs,² quod¹ sentiō quam³ sit exiguum, aut sī qua exercitātiō dīcendī, in quā mē nōn īnfītor mediocriter esse versātum, aut sī huiusce reī ratiō⁴ aliqua ab optimārum artium studiīs ac disciplinā profecta, ā quā² ego nūllum cōnfiteor aetātis meae tempus abhorruisse, eārum rērum omnium vel in prīmīs hic A. Licinius frūctum ā mē repetere prope suō iūre dēbet. Nam quoad longissimē⁵ potest mēns mea respicere spatium praeteritī temporis et pueritiae memoriam recordārī ultimam, inde⁶ usque repetēns,⁶ hunc videō mihi prīncipem et ad suscipiendam et ad ingrediendam ratiōnem hōrum studiōrum exstitisse. Quod⁷ sī haec vōx⁸ huius hortātū praeceptisque⁹ cōnfōrmāta nōn nūllīs aliquandō salūtī fuit, ā¹⁰ quō³ id accēpimus⁴ quō cēterīs opitulārī et aliōs servāre possēmus, huic profectō ipsī, quantum est situm in nōbīs, et opem et salūtem ferre dēbēmus.

¹ if any ability, i.e., whatever ability

² jurors

³ how

⁴ theoretical basis

⁵ as far back as (with **quoad**)

⁶ going back even to that time

⁷ Now

⁸ this voice (of mine)

⁹ teaching (in a general sense)

¹ = **et hoc** (connecting relative, subject of sit)

² The antecedent is **ratiō**.

³ The antecedent is **huic**; therefore in translation ā **quō**... **possēmus** comes after **huic**.

⁴ the plural of "modesty," referring to himself

- ¹⁰ different
¹¹ and not
¹² this (of mine)
¹³ culture

2. Ac nē quis ā nōbīs hoc ita dīcī forte mīrētur,⁵ quod alia¹⁰ quaedam in hōc⁶ facultās sit ingenī neque¹¹ haec¹² dīcendī ratiō aut disciplīna, nē nōs 15 quidem huic ūnī studiō penitus umquam dēditī fuimus. Etenim omnēs artēs quae ad hūmānitātem¹³ pertinent habent quoddam commūne vinculum et quasi cognātiōne quādam inter sē continentur.

⁵ Supply *let me say this* before the main verb.

⁶ i.e., Archias

A New Style of Speaking

Verba Ūtilia: concursus, ērudītus, molestus, ōtium, quaestiō, reus, sevērus, trāctō, tribuō, venia

¹ a legal investigation and a state trial

² the case is being tried

³ with so large an assembly

⁴ in a character of this sort (i.e., Archias)

⁵ the perils of the courts

II, 3. Sed nē cui vestrum₁ mīrum esse videātur mē₂ in quaestiōne¹ lēgitimā et in iūdicīō pūblicō,¹ cum rēs agātur² apud praetōrem populī Rōmānī, lēctissimum virum, et apud sevērissimōs iūdicēs, tantō conventū³ hominum ac frequentīā hōc ūtī genere dīcendī quod nōn modo ā cōnsuētūdine 5 iūdicīōrum vērū etiam ā forēnsī sermōne abhorreat, quaesō ā vōbīs ut in hāc causā mihi dētis hanc veniam accommodātam huic reō,³ vōbīs, quem ad modum₄ spērō, nōn molestam, ut mē₅ prō summō poētā atque ērudītissimō homine dīcentem hōc concursū³ hominum litterātissimōrum, hāc vestrā hūmānitāte, hōc dēnique praetōre exercente iūdicium, patiāminī dē 10 studiīs hūmānitātis ac litterārum paulō loquī liberius et in eius modī persōnā,⁴ quae propter ōtium ac studium minimē in iūdicīīs periculīsque⁵ trāctāta est, ūtī prope novō quōdam et inūsītātō genere dīcendī. **4.** Quod₆ sī mihi ā vōbīs tribuī concēdīque sentiam, perficiam profectō ut hunc A. Licinium nōn modo nōn sēgregandum,⁷ cum sit cīvis, ā numerō cīvium, vērū etiam, 15 sī nōn esset, putētis asciscendum fuisse.

₁ genitive of vōs

₂ subject of ūtī (line 4)

₃ from reus

₄ The phrase is synonymous with *ut, as*, avoided here because *ut* is used in a different sense just before and just after.

₅ subject of loquī

₆ connecting relative

₇ Supply *fuisse* and note the tense.

Word Studies

Explain by derivation: *erudition*, *forensic*, *sentient*, *tributary*, *venial*.

What Latin words are related to **concursum**, **eruditus**, **inūsitātus**, **lēgitimus**, **quaestiō**, **sēgregō**?

Persōna is derived from the Greek word *πρόσωπον*, *mask* (literally, "face"), worn by actors in plays. The changes in spelling are explained by the fact that the word was first borrowed by the Etruscans, from whom the Romans got it. The masks differed and represented the different *types* or *characters*. Finally **persōna** took on the meaning *individual*, as in English *person*.

Archias Comes to Rome

Verba Ūtilia: adhibeō, antecellō, ars, celeber, cognitiō, hīc, hospitium, nancīscor, plēnus, senectūs

III. Nam, ut primum ex pueris¹ excessit Archiās atque ab eīs artibus quibus aetās puerilis ad hūmānitatem infōrmārī solet, sē ad scribendī studium contulit, primum Antiochiāe (nam ibi nātus est loc² nōbilī), celebrī³ quondam urbe¹, et cōpiōsā atque ērudītissimīs hominibus liberālissimīsque studiīs affluentī, celeriter antecellere omnibus ingenī glōriā coepit. Post² in cēterīs Asiae partibus cūctāque Graeciā sic eius adventūs⁴ celebrābantur ut fāmam ingenī expectātiō hominis, expectātiōnem ipsius adventus admīrātiōque superāret. 5. Erat Italia tum plēna Graecārum artium ac disciplīnārum,⁵ studiaque haec et in Latīō⁶ vehementius tum colēbantur quam nunc īsdem in oppidīs et hīc Rōmae propter tranquillitatem reī pūblīcae nōn neglegēbantur. 10 Itaque hunc et Tarentīnī et Locrēnsēs et Rēgīnī et Neāpolitānī⁷ cīvitate³ cēterisque praemiīs dōnārunt, et omnēs quī aliquid dē ingenīs poterant iūdicāre cognitiōne atque hospitio dignum⁴ exīstimārunt. Hāc tantā celebritāte fāmae cum esset iam absentibus⁸ nōtus, Rōmam vēnit, Mariō cōsule et Catulō. Nactus est primum cōsulēs eōs quōrum alter rēs ad scribendum maximās, 15 alter cum⁹ rēs gestās, tum⁹ etiam studium atque aurēs¹⁰ adhibēre posset.

¹ boyhood

² rank

³ populous

⁴ arrival (at various places)

⁵ sciences

⁶ Latium

⁷ the people of Tarentum, Locri, Regium, and Naples

⁸ to those (living) far away

⁹ not only . . . but also

¹⁰ attention (literally, ears)

¹ a noun in apposition with a locative (*Antiochiāe*) is in the ablative

² adverb

³ i.e., honorary citizenship, as is sometimes done today

⁴ Supply *eum*.

¹¹ (an indication of his) ability

¹² a favorite of (literally, agreeable to)

¹³ was a guest of

¹⁴ bound by (ties of) intimacy

Statim Lūcullī,⁵ cum praetextātus⁶ etiam tum Archiās esset, eum domum suam recēpērunt. Est iam hoc nōn solum ingeni¹¹ ac litterarum vērū etiam nātūrae atque virtūtis, ut domus quae huius adulēscētiaē prīma fāvit eadem esset
20 familiārissima senectūtī. 6. Erat temporibus illīs iūcundus¹² Q. Metellō illī Numidicō et eius Piō filiō, audiēbātur ā M. Aemiliō, vīvēbat¹³ cum Q. Catulō et patre et filiō, ā L. Crassō colēbātur, Lūcullōs vērō et Drūsum et Octāviōs et Catōnem et tōtam Hortēnsiōrum domum dēvinctam cōnsuētūdine¹⁴ cum tenēret, afficiēbatur summō honōre, quod eum nōn solum colēbant quī aliquid
25 percipere atque audire studēbant vērū etiam sī quī forte simulābant.

⁵ There are two brothers, Lucius and Marcus.

⁶ Literally this means *wearing the praetexta*, applied to Roman boys before they put on the *toga cīvilis* and became citizens.

Archias Enrolled as a Roman Citizen

Verba Ūtilia: corrumpō, dēsiderō, flāgitō, immō, immō vērō, intereō, profiteor, repudiō, satis, testimoniū

¹ after a rather long interval

² with very favorable treaty rights (with Rome)

³ although

⁴ in addition

⁵ Whoever

⁶ enroll

⁷ scrupulous honesty

⁸ acted (in the matter)

IV. Interim satis longō intervāllō,¹ cum esset cum M. Lūcullō in Siciliam profectus et cum ex eā prōvinciā cum eōdem Lūcullō dēcēderet, vēnit Hēraclēam. Quae cum esset cīvitās aequisimō iūre ac foedere,² ascribī sē in eam cīvitātem voluit, idque, cum³ ipse per sē dignus putārētur, tum⁴
5 auctōritāte et grātiā Lūcullī ab Hēraclēnsibus impetrāvit. 7. Data est cīvitās² Silvānī lēge et Carbōnis: *Sī quī⁵ foederātīs cīvitātibus ascriptī fuissent, sī tum cum lēx ferēbātur in Italiā domicilium habuissent et sī sexāgintā diēbus apud praetōrem essent professī.*⁶ 3 Cum hic domicilium Rōmae multōs iam annōs habēret, professus est apud praetōrem Q. Metellum,
10 familiārissimum suum. 8. Sī nihil aliud nisi dē cīvitāte ac lēge dīcimus, nihil dīcō amplius; causa dicta est. Quid enim hōrum⁴ infirmārī, Grattī,⁵ potest? Hēraclēaene esse tum ascriptum negābis? Adest vir summā auctōritāte et religiōne⁷ et fidē, M. Lūcullus; quī sē nōn opīnārī sed scīre, nōn audīvisse sed vīdisse, nōn interfuisse sed ēgissee⁸ dīcit. Adsunt Hēraclēnsēs lēgātī,

¹ i.e., Archias

² i.e., Roman

³ Supply *they would become citizens*.

⁴ with **quid**; the three conditions mentioned in the law

⁵ Grattius, of whom we know nothing, brought the charges against Archias.

nōbilissimī hominēs, huius iūdicī causā cum mandātis et cum pūblicō tes- 15
timōniō vēnerunt; quī hunc ascriptum Hēraclēae esse dīcunt. Hīc tū tabulās
dēsīderās Hēraclēensium pūblicās, quās Italicō bellō,⁶ incēnsō tabulāriō,⁹
interīsse scīmus omnēs? Est rīdiculum ad ea quae habēmus nihil dīcere,
quaerere quae habēre nōn possumus, et dē hominum memoriā tacēre, lit-
terārum memoriā⁷ flāgitāre et, cum habeās amplissimī virī religiōnem,²⁰
integerrimī⁸ mūnicipī iūs iūrandum fidemque, ea quae dēprāvārī nūllō modō
possunt repudiāre, tabulās quās īdem¹⁰ dīcis solēre corrumpī⁹ dēsīderāre.
9. An¹⁰ domicilium Rōmae nōn habuit is quī tot annīs¹¹ ante cīvitātem
datam sēdem omnium rērum ac fortūnārum suārum Rōmae collocāvit? An
nōn est professus? Immō vērō eīs tabulīs¹¹ professus quae sōlae ex illā profes- 25
siōne collēgiōque praetōrum¹² obtinent pūblicārum tabulārum auctōritātem.

⁹ record office

¹⁰ you yourself [literally, the same (you)]

¹¹ by means of the records

¹² of the registration books of the board of praetors

Word Studies

From what Latin words are the following derived: *amplification*,
corruption, *desire*, *federation*, *incendiary*, *tabulation*?

What Latin words are related to the following: **ascribō**, **corrumpō**,
domicilium, **familiāris**, **intereō**?

⁶ the Social War

⁷ The *memory* of documents (**litterārum**) means that documents enable us to remember.

⁸ Heraclea had a better reputation than some other towns.

⁹ Grattius charges that the Roman registration records have been tampered with.

¹⁰ This and the next sentence take up the second and third qualifications required by the law.

¹¹ thirteen years (102–89 B.C.)

The Census Records

Verba Ūtilia: ascribō, asservō, dubitō, impertiō, irrēpō, litūra, negligēns,
scaenicus

V. Nam cum Appī tabulae negligentius asservātae dīcerentur, Gabīnī,¹
quam diū incolumis¹ fuit, levitās, post damnātiōnem calamitās² omnem
tabulārum fidem resignāset,³ Metellus, homō sāntissimus modestissimusque
omnium, tantā dīligentiā fuit ut ad L. Lentulum praetōrem et ad iūdicēs
vēnerit² et ūnīus nōminis litūrā sē commōtum esse dīxerit. Hīs igitur in 5

¹ before conviction (literally, unharmed)

² misfortune

³ destroyed (literally, unsealed)

¹ with *levitās* and *calamitās*; the contrast between **Appī** and **Gabīnī** made unnecessary an *et* before the latter

² Metellus, in dealing with another case, said that there was only one erasure in the records, clearly then not that of Archias' name.

⁴ why is it that

⁵ the people of Regium, Locri,
Naples, Tarentum

⁶ I suppose (*crēdō* is often used
ironically)

⁷ takes advantage of

⁸ our (Roman) census records

⁹ Of course (pointing to the irony in
obscūrum) it is not known

¹⁰ in the last censorship

¹¹ at that time quaestor (in
apposition with *eōdem*)

¹² had conducted himself as a citizen
at that time (i.e., of the census)

¹³ both

¹⁴ shared in

¹⁵ rewards (for special services)

tabulīs nūllam litūram in nōmine A. Licinī vidētis. 10. Quae cum ita sint,
quid est quod⁴ dē eius cīvitatē dubitētis, praesertim cum aliīs quoque in
cīvitatibus fuerit ascriptus? Etenim cum mediocribus³ multīs et aut nūllā
aut humilī aliquā arte praeditīs grātuītō cīvitatē in Graeciā⁴ hominēs
10 impertiēbant, Rēgīnōs⁵ crēdō⁶ aut Locrēnsēs aut Neāpolitānōs aut Tarentīnōs,
quod⁵ scaenicīs⁶ artificibus largīrī solēbant, id huic summā ingenī praeditō
glōriā nōluisse! Quid? Cum cēterī nōn modo post cīvitatē datam sed
etiam post lēgem Pāpīam⁷ aliquō modō in eōrum mūnicipiōrum tabulās
irrēpsērunt, hic, quī nē ūtitur⁷ quidem illīs⁸ in quibus est scriptus, quod
15 semper sē Hēraclīēnsē esse voluit, reiciētur? 11. Cēnsūs⁸ nostrōs
requīris. Scīlicet,⁹ est enim obscūrum proximīs cēnsōribus¹⁰ hunc cum
clārissimō imperātōre, L. Lūcullō, apud⁹ exercitum fuisse, superiōribus
cum eōdem quaestōre¹¹ fuisse in Asiā, prīmīs, Iūliō et Crassō, nūllam pop-
ulī partē esse cēnsam. Sed quoniam cēnsus non iūs cīvitatīs cōnfirmat ac
20 tantum modo indicat eum quī sit cēnsus ita sē iam tum gessisse prō cīve eīs
temporibus,¹² is quem tū¹⁰ crīmīnāris nē ipsiūs¹¹ quidem iūdicīō in cīvium
Rōmānōrum iūre esse versātum, et¹³ testāmentum saepe fēcīt nostrīs
lēgibus et adiit¹⁴ hērēditātēs cīvium Rōmānōrum et in beneficiīs¹⁵ ad
aerārium dēlātus est ā L. Lūcullō prō cōnsule.

³ dative, with *impertiēbant*

⁴ He means Magna Graecia, a name for southern Italy.

⁵ The antecedent is *id* below, referring to citizenship.

⁶ At this time acting was not highly regarded by the Romans.

⁷ This law called for the expulsion of all aliens, i.e., those who did not have legal resi-
dence. It was under this law that the charges were brought against Archias.

⁸ Supply *tabulīs*, i.e., those of the Greek cities other than Heraclea that had granted him
citizenship.

⁹ He was *at* the army, not *in* it.

¹⁰ Grattius, the plaintiff

¹¹ Grattius argues that Archias himself (*ipsiūs*) did not consider himself a citizen because
he did nothing to get himself listed.

The Value of Literature

Verba Ūtilia: cotīdiē, doctrīna, fōns, magnō opere, pudet, reprehendō,
streptus, tantō opere, tenebrae, vetustās

VI. Quaere argūmenta, sī quae potes; numquam enim hic neque suō
neque amīcōrum iūdicīō revincētur.¹ 12. Quaerēs ā nōbīs, Grattī, cūr tantō
opere hōc homine dēlectēmur.¹ Quia suppeditat nōbīs ubi² et animus ex hōc

¹ He will never be convicted either
by his own judgment or that of his
friends.

² (a place) where

¹ Obviously Grattius will ask no such thing; Cicero is simply looking for an excuse to talk
about the importance of literature.



Ronald Sheridan/Ancient Art & Architecture Collection

The Forum of Julius Caesar was erected in 48 B.C. It is located behind the Forum Romanum and contained both temples and commercial interests. In the background is the monument to Victor Emmanuel II, begun in 1885 and inaugurated in 1911. It houses the Tomb of the Unknown Soldier and honors Italian war dead. The King was highly criticized for building such a Roman "imitation" so near the ancient monuments. Native Romans still call it the "Wedding Cake."

- ³ that what we talk about every day
could be supplied to us
⁴ let others be ashamed
⁵ in literature (ablative)
⁶ either . . . or
⁷ bringing nothing to the light (of
day), i.e., they publish nothing
⁸ why should I be ashamed
⁹ from the critical need or
advantage of any (client)
¹⁰ can criticize
¹¹ some (in contrast with ceteris,
all others)
¹² early
¹³ gambling board
¹⁴ ability in speaking
¹⁵ the following (beliefs)
¹⁶ much (reading of) literature
¹⁷ are to be considered of little value
(not with exili)
¹⁸ the sayings of philosophers
¹⁹ if the light of literature did not
shine upon them
²⁰ clear-cut portraits (with imaginēs)

forēnsī strepitū reficiātur et aurēs convīciō dēfessae conquiēscant. An tū
5 exīstimās aut suppetere nōbīs posse³ quod cotīdiē dīcāmus in tantā varietāte
rērum, nisi animōs nostrōs doctrīnā excolāmus, aut ferre animōs tantam
posse contentiōnem, nisi eōs doctrīnā eādem relaxēmus? Ego vērō fateor
mē hīs studiīs esse dēditum. Cēterōs pudeat,⁴ sī quī ita sē litterīs⁵ abdidērunt
ut nihil possint ex eīs neque⁶ ad commūnem afferre fructum neque in
10 aspectum lūcemque prōferre;⁷ mē autem quid pudeat⁸ quī tot annōs ita vīvō,
iūdicēs, ut ā nūllius umquam mē tempore aut commodō⁹ aut ōtium meum
abstrāxerit aut voluptās āvocārit aut dēnique somnus retardārit? 13. Quārē
quis tandem mē reprehendat,¹⁰ aut quis mihi iūre suscēnseat, sī,² quantum
cēterīs³ ad suās rēs obeundās, quantum ad fēstōs diēs lūdōrum celebrandōs,
15 quantum ad aliās voluptātēs et ad ipsam requiem animī et corporis concēditur
temporum, quantum aliī¹¹ tribuunt tempestīvīs¹² convīviīs, quantum dēnique
alveolō,¹³ quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda
sūmpserō? Atque hoc ideō mihi concēdendum est magis, quod ex hīs
studiīs haec quoque crēscit ōrātiō et facultās,¹⁴ quae quantacumque est in
20 mē, numquam amīcōrum periculīs dēfuit. Quae⁴ sī cui levior vidētur, illa¹⁵
quidem certē quae summa sunt ex quō fonte hauriam sentiō. 14. Nam nisi
multōrum praeceptīs multisque litterīs¹⁶ mihi ab adulēscientiā suāsissem
nihil esse in vītā magnō opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestātem,
in eā autem persequendā omnēs cruciātūs corporis, omnia perīcula mortis
25 atque exilī parvī¹⁷ esse dūcenda, numquam mē prō salūte vestrā in tot ac
tantās dīmiciātōnēs atque in hōs prōfligātōrum hominum cotīdiānōs
impetūs obiēcissem. Sed plēnī omnēs sunt librī, plēnae sapientium vōcēs,¹⁸
plēna exemplōrum vetustās; quae iacērent in tenebrīs omnia, nisi litterārū
lūmen accēderet.¹⁹ Quam multās nōbīs imaginēs nōn solum ad intuendum
30 vērū etiam ad imitandum fortissimōrum virōrum expressās²⁰ scrīptōrēs
et Graecī et Latīnī reliquērunt! Quās ego mihi semper in administrandā rē
pūblicā prōpōnēns animum et mentem meam ipsā cōgitātiōne hominum
excellētium cōnfōrmābam.

Word Studies

Explain by derivation: *crescent*, *festivity*, *font*, *impudent*, *luminosity*,
reprehensible.

Give Latin words related to *abdō*, *abstrahō*, *doctrīna*, *retardō*,
tempestīvus.

² introduces the last word, sūmpserō; quantum is subject of concēditur

³ dative with concēditur

⁴ i.e., facultās

Natural Ability and Training

Verba Ūtilia: adversus (*adj.*), efferō, ērudīō, excellēns, eximius, gustō, prōdō, quispiam, secundus, senex

VII, 15. Quaeret quispiam: "Quid? Illi ipsi summī viri quōrum virtūtēs litteris prōditae sunt, istāne doctrīnā quam tū effers laudibus ēruditi fuērunt?" Difficile est hoc dē omnibus cōfirmāre, sed tamen est certum quid respondeam.¹ Ego multōs hominēs excellenti animō ac virtūte fuisse sine doctrīnā et nātūrae ipsius habitū² prope dīvinō per sē ipsōs et moderātōs et gravēs exstitisse³ fateor; etiam illud adiungō, saepius ad laudem atque virtutem nātūram sine doctrīnā quam sine nātūrā valuisse⁴ doctrīnam. Atque idem ego hoc contendō, cum ad nātūram eximiam et illūstrem accesserit ratiō quaedam cōfōrmātiōque doctrīnae,⁵ tum illud nesciō quid praeclārum ac singulāre⁶ solēre exsistere. **16.** Ex hōc esse hunc numerō quem patrēs nostrī vidērunt, dīvinum hominem, Āfricānum,¹ ex hōc C. Laelium, L. Fūrium, moderātissimōs hominēs et continentissimōs, ex hōc fortissimum virum et illis temporibus doctissimum, M. Catōnem illum senem; quī profectō sī nihil ad percipiendam colendamque virtutem litteris adiuvārentur, numquā sē ad eārum studium contulissent. Quod sī⁷ nōn hic tantus fructus ostenderētur, et sī ex hīs studiis dēlectātiō sōla peterētur, tamen, ut opīnor, hanc animi remissiōnem hūmānissimam ac liberālissimam iūdicārētis. Nam cēterae² neque temporum⁸ sunt neque aetātum omnium neque locōrum: at haec studia adulēscēntiam acuunt, senectutem oblectant, secundās⁹ rēs ōrnant, adversis perfugium ac sōlācium praebent, dēlectant domi, nōn impediunt foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur. **17.** Quodsi ipsi haec¹⁰ neque attingere neque sēnsū nostrō gustāre possēmus, tamen ea mirārī dēbērēmus, etiam cum in aliis vidērēmus.

¹ what I should say

² by the quality of their nature

³ stood out as self-controlled and worthy men

⁴ has succeeded in producing (literally, has had power (with regard) to (with ad)

⁵ a kind of (quaedam) systematic training (resulting from) study

⁶ something ("I don't know what") outstanding and unique

⁷ But if

⁸ are not (suitable) for

⁹ prosperity

¹⁰ can neither attain to nor enjoy with our senses these (studies)

¹ Scipio the Younger (185–129 B.C.), who with Laelius and Furius encouraged the development of Greek culture in Rome. Cato (234–149 B.C.), on the other hand, opposed Greek culture and was more of a self-made man.

² i.e., remissiōnēs

Poets Are Sacred

Verba Ūtilia: admīror, conciliō, dīligō, immānis, īnflō, mōtus, saxum, sōlitūdō, venustās, versus

VIII. Quis nostrum tam animō agrestī ac dūrō fuit ut Rōscī morte nūper nōn commovērētur? Quī cum esset senex mortuus, tamen propter excellentem artem ac venustātem vidēbatur¹ omnīnō morī nōn dēbuisse. Ergō ille corporis mōtū tantum amōrem sibi conciliārat ā nōbīs omnibus; nōs animōrum 5 incrēdibilēs mōtūs celeritātemque ingeniōrum¹ neglegēmus? 18. Quotiēns ego hunc Archiam vīdī, iūdicēs (ūtar enim vestrā benignitāte,² quoniam mē in hōc novō genere dīcendī tam dīligenter attenditis), quotiēns ego hunc vīdī, cum litteram scrīpsisset nūllam,³ magnum numerum optimōrum ver- suum dē eīs ipsīs rēbus quae tum agerentur, dīcere ex tempore, quotiēns, 10 revocātum eandem rem dīcere, commūtātīs verbīs atque sentiētiīs! Quae vērō accūrātē cōgitātēque scrīpsisset, ea sīc vīdī probārī ut ad veterum scrīptōrum laudem pervenīret. Hunc ego nōn dīligam, nōn admīrer, nōn omnī ratiōne dēfendendum putem? Atque sīc ā summīs hominibus ērudītis- simīsque accēpimus, cēterārum rērum studia ex doctrīnā et praeceptīs et 15 arte cōnstāre.⁴ poētā nātūrā ipsā valēre et mentis vīribus excitārī et quasi dīvīnō quōdam spīritū inflārī. Quārē suō iūre noster ille Ennius⁵ “sānctōs” appellat poētās, quod quasi deōrum aliquō dōnō atque mūnere commendātī nōbīs esse videantur. 19. Sit igitur, iūdicēs, sānctum apud vōs, hūmānis- simōs hominēs, hoc poētae nōmen, quod nūlla umquam barbaria violāvit. 20 Saxa atque sōlitūdīnēs vōcī respondent, bēstiae saepe immānēs cantū flectuntur atque cōsistunt; nōs institūtī rēbus optimīs nōn poētārum vōce moveāmur.⁶ Homērum Colophōniī⁷ cīvem esse dīcunt suum, Chiī suum vindicant, Salamīniī repetunt, Smyrnaei vērō suum esse cōfirmant itaque etiam dēlūbrum eius in oppidō dēdicāvērunt, permultī aliī praetereā pug- 25 nant inter sē atque contendunt.

¹ activity of mind (in contrast with corporis) and inborn (ingeniōrum) alertness

² I avail myself of your indulgence, I beg your pardon.

³ though he had not written down a single letter

⁴ are based on

⁵ that famous poet of ours

⁶ should we not be moved

⁷ the people of Colophon, Chios, Salamis, and Smyrna

Word Studies

Explain *extempore*.

Give English derivatives of **benignitās**, **bēstia**, **celeritās**, **conciliō**.

Name Latin words related to **admīror**, **cōgitātē**, **incrēdibilis**, **mōtus**, **sōlitūdō**.

¹ The subject is **quī** but in translating it is better to make the verb impersonal: *who, it seemed*.

² three other places claimed him: Argos, Athens, and Rhodes

No Fame Without Poets

Verba Ūtilia: aeternus, aiō, attendō, dīmicō, faucēs, impetus, monumētum, ōlim, triumphus, vīvus

IX. Ergō illī aliēnum,¹ quia poēta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt; nōs hunc vīvum, quī et voluntāte et lēgibus noster est, repudiābimus, praesertim cum omne ōlim studium atque omne ingenium contulerit Archiās ad populī Rōmānī glōriam laudemque celebrandam? Nam et Cimbricās rēs² adulēscēns attigit et ipsī illī C. Mariō, quī dūrior¹ ad haec studia vidēbātur, ⁵ iūcundus fuit. 20. Neque enim quisquam est tam āversus ā Mūsīs² quī nōn mandārī versibus aeternum suōrum labōrum praecōnium facile patiātur. Themistoclem illum,³ summum Athēnīs virum, dīxisse aiunt, cum ex eō quaererētur quod acroāma⁴ aut cuius vōcem libentissimē audīret: eius ā quō sua⁴ virtūs optimē praedicārētur. Itaque ille Marius item eximiē L. Plōtium ¹⁰ dīlēxit, cuius ingeniō putābat ea quae gesserat posse celebrārī. 21. Mithridāticum vērō bellum, magnum atque difficile et in multā varietātē⁵ terrā marīque versātum, tōtum ab hōc⁵ expressum est; quī librī nōn modo L. Lūcullum, fortissimum et clārissimum virum, vērū etiam populī Rōmānī nōmen illūstrant. Populus enim Rōmānus aperuit, Lūcullō imperante, Pontum et ¹⁵ rēgiīs quondam opibus et ipsā nātūrā et regiōne⁶ vāllātum; populī Rōmānī exercitus, eōdem duce, nōn maximā manū innumerābilis Armeniōrum cōpiās fūdit; populī Rōmānī laus est urbem amīcissimam Cȳzicēnōrum⁷ eiusdem cōnsiliō ex omnī impetū rēgiō atque tōtius bellī ōre ac faucibus ēreptam esse atque servātā; nostra⁶ semper ferētur⁸ et praedicābitur, L. ²⁰ Lūcullō dīmicante, cum, interfectīs ducibus, dēpressa hostium classis est. incrēdibilis apud Tenedum pugna illa nāvālis; nostra sunt tropaea, nostra monumenta, nostrī triumphī. Quae⁹ quōrum ingeniīs efferuntur, ab eīs populī Rōmānī fāma celebrātur. 22. Cārus fuit Āfricānō superiōrī⁷ noster Ennius, itaque etiam in sepulcrō Scīpiōnum putātur is esse cōstitūtus ex mar- ²⁵ more;⁸ at eīs laudibus⁹ certē nōn solum ipse quī laudātur sed etiam populī Rōmānī nōmen ōrnātur. In caelum huius¹⁰ proavus Catō tollitur; magnus honōs populī Rōmānī rēbus adiungitur. Omnēs dēnique illī¹⁰ Maximī, Mārcellī, Fulviī nōn sine commūnī omnium nostrum laude decorantur.

¹ rather rough for

² so unfriendly to literature

³ the famous Themistocles

⁴ entertainment

⁵ with many changes of fortune

⁶ by the nature of the region

⁷ the people of Cyzicus

⁸ will be spoken of

⁹ the fame of the Roman people is made known by those by whose talents these deeds (quae) are praised

¹⁰ famous men such as Maximus, etc.

¹ He would be a *foreigner* to at least six of the seven cities that claimed him.

² Marius' defeat of the Cimbri in 101 B.C.

³ Greek neuter accusative singular, modified by the interrogative adjective **quod**

⁴ i.e., of Themistocles

⁵ Archias

⁶ predicate adjective in agreement with **pugna**: as *ours*

⁷ Scipio the Elder

⁸ i.e., a bust of marble

⁹ The praise was in the *Annales*, a poem by Ennius, of which only fragments have survived.

¹⁰ the present Cato, often called Uticensis because he committed suicide at Utica, Africa.

His great-grandfather was known as the Censor.

Word Studies

Give English derivatives of *aeternus*, *attendō*, *celebrō*, *impetus*, *praedicō*.

What Latin words are related to the following: *ēripiō*, *libenter*, *impetus*, *nāvālis*, *vīvus*?

Poets Give Immortality

Verba Ūtilia: *expetō*, *fīnis*, *propterea*, *quārē*, *regiō*, *rūsticus*, *sānē*, *sonō*, *tumulus*, *vēndō*

¹ who composed these (poems)

² of *Rudiae*

³ to the same place . . . where

⁴ not only . . . but also

⁵ these poems were full of honor for the nations

⁶ for life

⁷ since you

⁸ Our (Pompey) the Great

⁹ Theōph'anēs of Mytilē'ne

¹⁰ though

X. Ergō illum quī haec fēcerat,¹ Rudīnum² hominem, maiōrēs nostrī in cīvitatē recēpērunt; nōs hunc Hēraclīensem multīs cīvitatibus expetītum, in hāc³ autem lēgibus cōstitutum dē nostrā cīvitatē ēiciēmus? 23. Nam sī quis minōrem glōriae fructum putat ex Graecīs versibus percipī quam ex 5 Latīnīs, vehementer errat, propterea quod Graeca² leguntur in omnibus ferē gentibus, Latīna suīs fīnibus exiguis sānē continentur. Quārē sī rēs eae quās gessimus orbis terrae regiōnibus dēfīniuntur, cupere dēbēmus quo³ manuum nostrārum tēla pervēnerint, eōdem³ glōriam fāmamque penetrāre, quod cum⁴ ipsīs populīs⁵ dē quōrum rēbus scribitur haec ampla sunt,⁵ tum⁴ 10 eīs certē quī dē⁶ vitā glōriae causā dīmīcant, hoc maximum et periculōrum incitāmentum est et labōrum. 24. Quam multōs scriptōrēs rērum suārum magnus ille Alexander sēcum habuisse dīcitur! Atque is tamen, cum in Sīgēō³ ad Achillis tumulum astitisset: “Ō fortunāte,” inquit, “adulēscēns, quī⁷ tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēnerīs!” Et vērē. Nam nisi Īlias 15 illa exstitisset, idem tumulus quī corpus eius contēxerat nōmen etiam obruisset. Quid? Noster hic Magnus⁸ quī cum virtūte fortunam adaequāvit, nōne Theophanem Mytilēnaeum,⁹ scriptōrem rērum suārum, in cōtiōne mīlitum cīvitatē dōnāvit, et nostrī illī fortēs virī, sed¹⁰ rūsticī ac mīlitēs, dulcēdine quādam glōriae commōtī quasi participēs eiusdem laudis magnō 20 illud clāmōre approbāverunt? 25. Itaque, crēdō,⁴ sī cīvis Rōmānus Archiās lēgibus nōn esset, ut⁵ ab aliquō imperātōre cīvitatē dōnārētur perficere nōn

¹ i.e., Heraclea

² used as a neuter plural noun: *Greek*

³ *Sigeum* (Sijē'um), a promontory near Troy

⁴ ironical

⁵ The clause is object of *perficere*.

potuit. Sulla cum Hispānōs et Gallōs dōnāret,⁶ crēdō, hunc petentem repu-
diāset; quem⁷ nōs in cōtiōne vīdimus, cum eī libellum malus poēta dē
populō¹¹ subiēcisset,¹² quod epigramma⁹ in eum fēcisset, tantum modo
alternīs versibus longiusculīs,¹³ statim ex eīs rēbus quās tum vēndēbat²⁵
iubēre eī praemium tribuī, sed eā condiciōne, nē quid postea scrīberet.
Quī¹⁴ sēdilitātem malī poētae dūxerit aliquō tamen praemiō dignam, huius
ingenium et virtūtem in scrībendō et cōpiam nōn expetisset? 26. Quid? Ā
Q. Metellō Piō, familiārissimō suō, quī cīvitate multōs dōnāvit, neque per
sē neque per Lūcullōs impetrāvisset? Quī praesertim usque eō¹⁵ dē suīs 30
rēbus scrībī cuperet ut etiam Cordubae¹⁶ nātīs poētīs pingue quiddam
sonantibus¹⁷ atque peregrīnum tamen aurēs suās dēderet.

¹¹ from among the common people

¹² had thrust up

¹³ every other line being a little bit longer

¹⁴ since he (i.e., Sulla)

¹⁵ to such an extent

¹⁶ Cordova

¹⁷ having a sort of dull, foreign sound

⁶ Supply cīvitate.

⁷ Sulla

⁸ to Sulla, who was sitting on a platform in the Forum while presiding at an auction sale of confiscated property

⁹ Greek neuter accusative: *an epigram which*; in apposition with *libellum*

The Statesman's Reward Is Immortal Fame

Verba Ūtilia: aditus, attingō, bellō, dēspiciō, inchōo, libellus, merx, praeter, stimulus, totiēns

XI. Neque est hoc dissimulandum, quod obscurārī nōn potest sed prae nōbīs ferendum:¹ trahimur omnēs studiō laudis, et optimus quisque² maximē glōriā dūcitur. Ipsī illī philosophī etiam in eīs libellis quōs dē contemnendā glōriā scrībunt nōmen suum inscribunt; in eō ipsō³ in quō praedicātiōnem nōbilitātemque dēspiciunt praedicārī dē sē ac nōminārī¹ volunt.

¹ must be frankly admitted (literally, must be carried in front of us)

² all the best men

³ in the very action

⁴ spoils of war (**Mārtis**)

⁵ almost (still) in uniform (i.e., just after returning from war)

27. Decimus quidem Brūtus, summus vir et imperātor, Accī, amīcissimī suī, carminibus templōrum ac monumentōrum aditūs exōrnāvit suōrum. Iam vērō ille quī cum Aetōlīs, Enniō comite, bellāvit Fulvius nōn dubitāvit Mārtis manubiās⁴ Mūsīs cōsecrāre. Quārē in quā urbe imperātōrēs prope armātī⁵ poētārum nōmen et Mūsārum dēlūbra coluērunt, in eā nōn dēbent 10 togātī iūdicēs ā Mūsārum honōre et ā poētārum salūte abhorrēre.

¹ impersonal; we would make sē the subject of the infinitives

28. Atque ut id₂ libentius faciātis, iam mē vōbīs, iūdicēs, indicābō, et
dē meō quōdam amōre glōriae, nimis ācrī fortasse, vērū tamen honestō,
vōbīs cōnfitebor. Nam quās rēs nōs₃ in cōsulātū nostrō vōbīscum simul
15 prō salūte huius urbis atque imperī et prō vītā cīvium prōque ūniversā rē
pūblicā gessimus, attigit hic₄ versibus atque inchoāvit.₅ Quibus audītis,
quod mihi magna rēs et iūcunda vīsa est, hunc ad perficiendum adōrnāvī.₆
Nūllam enim virtūs aliam mercēdem labōrum periculōrumque dēsiderat
praeter hanc laudis et glōriae; quā quidem dētrāctā, iūdicēs, quid est quod₇
20 in hōc tam exiguō vītāe curriculō et tam brevī tantīs nōs₈ in labōribus
exerceāmus? 29. Certē, sī nihil animus praesentiret₇ in posterum, et sī
quibus regiōnibus₈ vītāe spatium circumscriptum est, eīdem omnēs
cōgitātiōnēs termināret suās, nec tantīs sē labōribus frangeret neque tot
cūrīs vigiliisque angerētur nec totiēns dē ipsā vītā dīmīcāret. Nunc₉ insidet
25 quaedam in optimō quōque virtūs,₁₀ quae noctēs ac diēs animum glōriae
stimulīs concitat atque admonet, nōn cum₈ vītāe tempore esse dīmīttendam
commemorātiōnem nōminis nostrī sed cum omnī posteritāte adaequandam.

⁶ I furnished him (with the facts)

⁷ for which

⁸ boundaries

⁹ as it is (i.e., according to, not
contrary to, fact)

¹⁰ good quality

₂ i.e., see to the welfare of poets

₃ plural of modesty, for ego

₄ Archias

₅ The relative clause is the object.

₆ object of verb

₇ animus is subject of all the verbs

₈ preposition

Be Kind to the Poet

Verba Ūtilia: auctōritās, cōgitātiō, effigiēs, exprimō, orbis terrae, poliō,
simpliciter, spatium, statua, tranquillū

¹ of such limited outlook (literally,
so smallminded)

² are we to seem?

XII, 30. An vērō tam parvī animī¹ videāmur² esse omnēs quī in rē pūblicā
atque in hīs vītāe periculīs labōribusque versāmur ut, cum usque ad extrēmum
spatium₁ nūllum tranquillū atque ōtiōsum spīritum dūxerīmus, nōbīscum
simul moritūra omnia arbitrēmur? An₂ statuās et imāginēs, nōn animōrum
5 simulācra sed corporum, studiōsē multī summī hominēs relīquērunt;

₁ Supply vītāe.

₂ introduces a question, but best translated by if or when

cōnsiliōrum relinquere ac virtūtum nostrārum effigiem nōne multō malle
dēbēmus summīs ingeniīs³ expressam et polītā? Ego vērō omnia quae
gerēbam iam tum in gerendō⁴ spargere³ mē ac dissēmināre arbitrābar in orbis
terrae memoriā sempiternā. Haec⁴ vērō sive ā meō sēnsū post mortem
āfutūra est sive, ut sapientissimī hominēs putāvērunt, ad aliquam animī meī¹⁰
partem pertinēbit,⁵ nunc quidem certē cōgitātiōne quādam spēque dēlector.

31. Quārē cōservāte, iūdicēs, hominem pudōre eō quem amīcōrum⁶
vidētis comprobārī cum dignitāte, tum etiam vetustāte, ingeniō⁷ autem
tantō quantum id convenit exīstimārī, quod summōrum hominum ingeniīs
expetītum esse videātis, causā⁸ vērō eius modī quae beneficiō lēgis,⁵ 15
auctōritāte mūnicipī, testimoniō Lūcullī, tabulīs Metellī comprobētur.
Quae cum ita sint, petimus ā vōbīs, iūdicēs, sī qua nōn modo hūmāna vērū
etiam dīvīna in tantīs ingeniīs commendātiō dēbet esse, ut eum⁶ quī vōs,
quī vestrōs imperātōrēs, quī populī Rōmānī rēs gestās semper ōrnāvit, quī
etiam hīs recentibus nostrīs vestrīsque domesticīs periculīs⁷ aeternum sē 20
testimoniū laudis datūrum esse profitētur estque ex eō numerō quī sem-
per apud omnēs sāctī sunt habitī itaque⁹ dictī, sīc in vestram accipiātis
fidem ut hūmānitāte vestrā levātus potius quam acerbitāte violātus esse
videātur.

Quae dē causā prō meā cōsuētūdine breviter simpliciterque dīxī,²⁵
iūdicēs, ea cōfīdō probāta esse omnibus: quae ā forēnsī aliēna iūdicīālīque
cōsuētūdine et dē hominis ingeniō et commūniter dē ipsō studiō locūtus
sum, ea, iūdicēs, ā vōbīs spērō esse in bonam partem accepta; ab eō quī
iūdicium exercet certō sciō.

³ by the greatest geniuses, or by
(men of) the greatest genius

⁴ even in doing (them)

⁵ shall belong to, i.e., shall be
known to

⁶ proved not only by the high
position of but also by the long
acquaintance with his friends
(with **dignitāte** and **vetustāte**)

⁷ a man of so much genius as it is
fitting to be judged (to be) such as
you see has been sought out by
men of the greatest genius

⁸ (a man) with a case

⁹ = et ita

Word Studies

What Latin words are related to **dissēminō**, **domesticus**, **forēnsis**,
mūnicipium, **ōtiōsus**, **profiteor**?

In this reading, find five words with the suffix **-tās** and two with the
suffix **-tiō**.

³ The next infinitive explains the metaphor.

⁴ i.e., **memoria**

⁵ the law of 89 B.C.

⁶ object of **accipiātis**, which is an indirect command (without **ut**), object of **petimus**

⁷ the conspiracy of Catiline, about which Archias had promised to write





Unit VI

Cicero Against Verres and Antony

In Segesta, Sicily are the remains of a Roman theater. Located in northwest Sicily, ancient Segesta was traditionally a Trojan colony. It became a Carthaginian dependency sometime after 400 B.C. but thrived under later Roman domination. This exceptionally well-preserved theater is well-known for its excellent acoustics. It dates from the 3rd century B.C. and was built on the summit of a hill. From this view, you can see the semi-circular auditorium (cavea) around the smaller semi-circular orchestra in front of the stage, typical of many Roman theaters.

PHOTRI/IGDA

Verres and Antony

Cicero's first great success as an orator was achieved with his speeches against Verres; his last success with the speeches against Antony.

In 75 B.C., Cicero was elected quaestor and served in Sicily. His fair treatment of the Sicilians won their respect and friendship, and they asked him to serve as their attorney in the prosecution of their former praetor, Verres, whose plundering of Sicilian towns seems to have broken all records. At the trial of Verres, Cicero made such a devastating attack that Verres went into voluntary exile, thus admitting his guilt. But Cicero had still more evidence against Verres, which he wrote up in five other speeches that were published but not delivered. These speeches against Verres established Cicero's fame, and he became the chief lawyer and orator in Rome.

Toward the end of his life, Cicero had outlived his great triumphs—his consulship and his defeat of Catiline. The murder of Caesar in 44 B.C. temporarily raised Cicero's hopes for a return to the senatorial form of government, but these hopes were dashed by the activities of Antony. Cicero attacked Antony in fourteen speeches, written in 44–43 B.C. These speeches were named *Philippics* because they recalled Demosthenes' well-known speeches against King Philip of Macedon. The most famous *Philippic* (Juvenal called it "divine"), the second, was not delivered but was circulated as a political document. Cicero's reward for these speeches was death—at the hands of agents of Antony.

The Second Action Against Verres

The Importance of Sicily

Verba Ūtilia: antequam, benevolentia, classis, externus, laetor, parcō, ratiō, semel, subsidium, ūtilitās

II, 2. Atque antequam dē incommodīs Siciliae dīcō, pauca mihi videntur esse dē prōvinciae dignitatē, vetustatē, ūtilitatē dīcenda. Nam cum omnium sociōrum prōvinciārumque ratiōnem dīligenter habēre dēbētis.

tum praecipuē Siciliae, iudicēs, plurimīs iustissimisque dē causīs, primum quod omnium nātiōnum exterarum princeps Sicilia sē ad amicitiam 5 fidemque populī Rōmānī applicāvit. Prīma omnium, id quod¹ ōrnāmentum imperī est, prōvincia est appellāta; prīma docuit maiōrēs nostrōs quam praeclārū esset exterīs gentibus imperāre; sōla fuit eā fidē benevolentiaque ergā populum Rōmānum ut cīvitatēs eius īnsulae, quae semel² in amicitiam nostram vēnissent, numquam postea dēficerent, plēraeque autem et 10 maximē illūstrēs in amicitia perpetuō manērent. 3. Itaque maiōribus nostrīs in Āfricā ex hāc prōvincia gradus³ imperī factus est; neque enim tam facile opēs Carthāginis tantae concidissent nisi illud et reī frūmentariae subsidium et receptāculum classibus nostrīs patēret. Quārē P. Āfricānus, Carthāgine dēlētā,⁴ Siculōrum urbīs signīs monumentisque pulcherrimīs 15 exōrnāvit, ut, quōs⁵ victōriā populī Rōmānī maximē laetārī arbitrābatur, apud eōs monumenta victōriae plurima collocāret. 4. Dēnique ille ipse M. Mārcellus, cuius in Siciliā virtūtem hostēs, misericordiam victī, fidem cēterī Siculī perspexerunt, nōn solum sociīs in eō bellō cōsultuit,⁶ vērū etiam superātis hostibus temperāvit.⁷ Urbem pulcherrimam Syracūsas 20 (quae cum manū⁸ mūnītissima esset, tum locī nātūrā terrā ac marī clauderetur), cum vī cōsiliōque cēpisset, nōn solum incolumem passus est esse, sed ita reliquit ōrnātā ut esset idem⁹ monumentum victōriae, mānsuetūdinis, continentiae, cum hominēs vidērent et quid expugnāset et quibus pepercisset et quae reliquisset: tantum ille honōrem habendum Siciliae putāvit ut 25 nē hostium quidem urbem ex sociōrum īnsulā tollendam¹⁰ arbitrārētur. 5. Itaque ad omnīs rēs sic illā prōvincia semper ūsī sumus ut, quicquid¹¹ ex sēsē posset efferre, id nōn apud nōs nāscī, sed domī nostrae conditum iam putārēmus.⁹ Quandō illa frūmentum quod dēbēret nōn ad diem¹⁰ dedit? Quandō id quod opus esse putāret nōn ultrō pollicita est? Quandō id quod imperārētur 30 recūsāvit? Itaque ille M. Catō Sapiēs³ cellam penāriam¹¹ reī pūblīcae nostrae, nūtrīcem plēbis Rōmānae Siciliam nōminābat.

¹ a thing which

² once they had (literally, which once)

³ the step to empire

⁴ looked out for (with dative)

⁵ spared, (with dative)

⁶ by the hand (of man)

⁷ at the same time (literally, the same memorial)

⁸ destroyed (literally, removed)

⁹ whatever she was able to produce from her own (soil) we have come to consider as not grown at home but stored there

¹⁰ on the day (due)

¹¹ storehouse

¹ 146 B.C.

² The antecedent is eōs, the Sicilians.

³ Cato the Elder

Verres' "Interest" in Art

¹ interest

² judge the matter by its own importance, not that of a name

³ with so many towns

⁴ pearl

⁵ woven (cloth)

⁶ that he did not

⁷ i.e., the straight truth (in the old Roman fashion)

⁸ Your (pets) the people of Messina

⁹ to have plundered in a most wicked manner

IV, 1. Veniō nunc ad istius,¹ quem ad modum ipse appellat, studium,¹ ut amīcī eius, morbum et īnsāniam, ut Siculī, latrōcinium; ego quō nōmine appellem nesciō; rem vōbīs prōpōnam, vōs eam suō, nōn nōminis, pondere penditōte.² Genus ipsum prius cognōscite, iūdicēs; deinde fortasse nōn 5 magnō opere quaerētis quō id nōmine appellandum putētis. Negō in Siciliā tōtā, tam locuplētī, tam vetere prōvinciā, tot oppidīs,³ tot familiīs tam cōpiōsīs, ūllum argenteum vās, ūllum Corinthium² aut Dēliacum fuisse, ūllam gemmam aut margaritam,⁴ quicquam ex aurō aut ebore factum, signum ūllum aēneum, marmoreum, eburneum, negō ūllam pictūrā neque 10 in tabulā neque in textilī⁵ quīn⁶ conquīsierit, īspexerit, quod placitum sit abstulerit. 2. Magnum videor dīcere: attendite etiam quem ad modum dīcam. Nōn enim verbī neque crīminis augendī causā complector omnia: cum dīcō nihil istum eius modī rērum in tōtā prōvinciā relīquisse. Latīnē⁷ mē scītōte, nōn accūsātōriē loquī. Etiam plānius: nihil in aedibus cuiusquam, 15 nē in hospitīs, quidem, nihil in locīs commūnibus, nē in fānīs quidem, nihil apud Siculum, nihil apud cīvem Rōmānum, dēnique nihil istum, quod ad oculōs animumque acciderit, neque prīvātī neque pūblicī neque profānī neque sacrī tōtā in Siciliā relīquisse.

3. Unde igitur potius incipiam quam ab eā cīvitāte quae tibi ūna in amōre 20 atque in dēliciīs fuit, aut ex quō potius numerō quam ex ipsīs laudātōribus tuīs? Facilius enim perspiciētur quālis apud eōs fuerīs quī tē ōdērunt, quī accūsant, quī persequuntur, cum apud tuōs Māmertīnōs⁸ inveniāre improbissimā ratiōne esse praedātus.⁹

¹ Verres

² Corinthian was an alloy similar to bronze, the secret of whose manufacture had been lost; hence its value; Delian ware was also famous.

³ Supply aedibus.

The House of Heius

Verba Ūtilia: aedēs, aes, artifex, fānum, nūdus, pondus, portus, significō, trādō, vīsō

IV, 3. C. Heius est Māmertīnus (omnēs hoc mihi quī Messānam accessērunt facile concēdunt) omnibus rēbus illā in cīvitate ōrnātissimus. Huius domus est vel¹ optima Messānae, nōtissima quidem certē et nostrīs¹ hominibus apertissima maximēque hospitālis. Ea domus ante istius adventum ōrnāta sic fuit ut urbī quoque esset ōrnāmentō; nam ipsa Messāna, quae sitū, moenibus, portūque ōrnāta sit, ab hīs rēbus² quibus iste dēlectātur sānē vacua atque nūda est. 4. Erat apud Heium sacrārium magnā cum dignitate in aedibus ā maiōribus trāditum perantīquum, in quō signa pulcherrima quattuor summō artificiō, summā nōbilitate, quae nōn modo istum³ hominem ingeniōsum et intellegendem, vērum etiam quemvīs nostrum,⁴ quōs iste idiōtās² appellat, dēlectāre possent, ūnum Cupīdinis marmoreum Praxitelī; nīmīrum didicī etiam, dum in istum inquīrō, artificum nōmina.⁵ 5. Vērum ut ad illud sacrārium redeam, signum erat hoc quod dīcō Cupīdinis ē marmore, ex alterā parte Herculēs ēgregiē factus ex aere. Is dīcēbātur esse Myrōnis, ut opīnor, et certē.⁶ Item ante hōs deōs erant ārulae, quae cuivīs religiōnem³ sacrārī significāre possent. Erant aēnea duo praetereā signa, nōn maxima vērum eximiā venustate, virginālī habitū⁴ atque vestītū, quae, manibus sublātīs, sacra quaedam mōre Athēniēnsium virginum reposita in capitibus sustinēbant; Canēphoroe⁷ ipsae vocābantur; sed eārum artificem—quem? Quemnam? Rēctē admonēs—Polyclītum esse dīcēbant. Messānam ut quisque nostrum vēnerat, haec vīsere solēbat; omnibus haec ad vīsendum patēbant cotīdiē; domus erat nōn dominō magis ōrnāmentō quam cīvitatī. 7. Haec omnia quae dīxī signa, iūdicēs, ab Heiō ē sacrārīō Verrēs abstulit; nūllum, inquam, hōrum relīquit neque aliud ūllum tamen praeter ūnum per-vetus ligneum, Bonam Fortūnam, ut opīnor; eam iste habēre domī suae nōluit.

¹ even, quite

² ignoramus

³ sacred nature

⁴ pose

⁵ when

¹ i.e., Romans

² i.e., works of art

³ Verres

⁴ genitive of nōs

⁵ Cicero was somewhat of a connoisseur of art and certainly was familiar with the names of the great Greek artists. Here he pretends not to have known anything about them in order to ingratiate himself with the jurors: he wants to make it appear that he is just a rough uncultured Roman like them.

⁶ Cicero corrects himself: yes, it certainly was; (see footnote 5)

⁷ The Greek word means basket-bearers.

⁶ without
⁷ previous (officials)

Prō⁸ deum hominumque fidem! Quid hoc est? Quae haec causa est, quae ista impudentia? Quae dīcō signa, antequam abs tē sublāta sunt, Messānam cum imperiō⁹ nēmō vēnit quī⁶ vīserit. Tot praetōrēs, tot cōsulēs in Siciliā cum in pāce tum etiam in bellō fuērunt, tot hominēs cuiusque modī
30 (nōn loquor dē integrīs, innocentibus, religiōsīs) tot cupidī, tot improbī, tot audācēs, quōrum nēmō sibi tam vehemēns, tam potēns, tam nōbilis vīsus est quī ex illō sacrāriō quicquam poscere aut tollere aut attingere auderet; Verrēs quod ubīque erit pulcherrimum auferet? Nihil habēre cuiquam praetereā licēbit? Tot domūs locuplētissimās istīus domus ūna capiet?
35 Idcirco nēmō superiōrum⁷ attigit ut hic tolleret?

⁸ O! followed by the accusative of exclamation

⁹ Only praetors and consuls had **imperium**, the highest power.

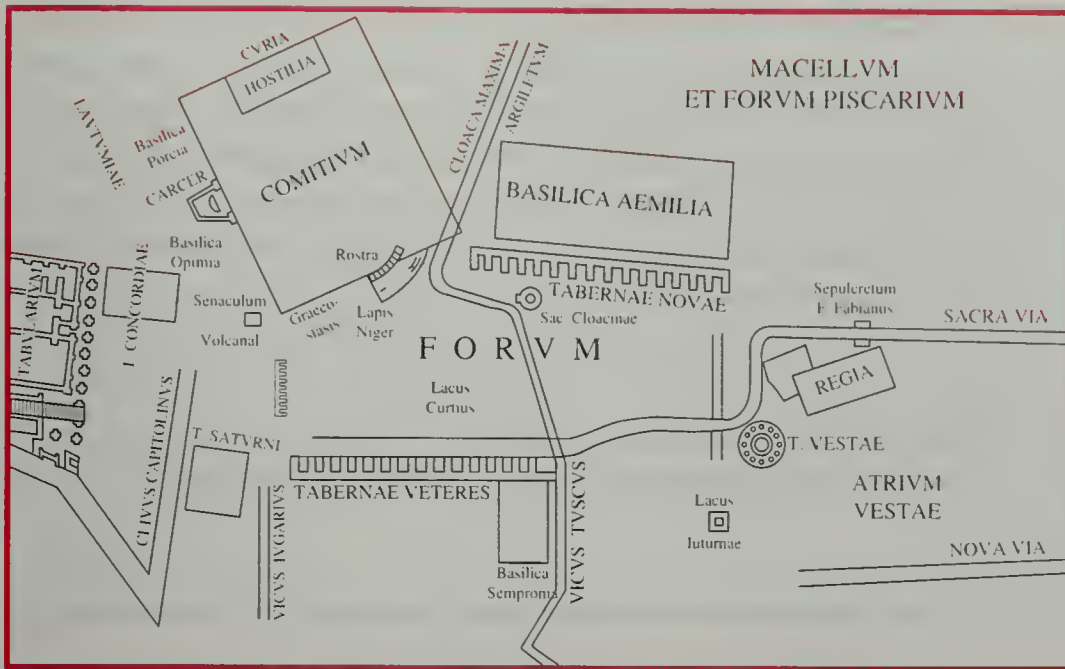
The Temple of Hercules

Verba Ūtilia: attrītus, cōnor, fānum, intempestus, lapidatio, mulcō, ōsculor, percrebrēscō, rictus

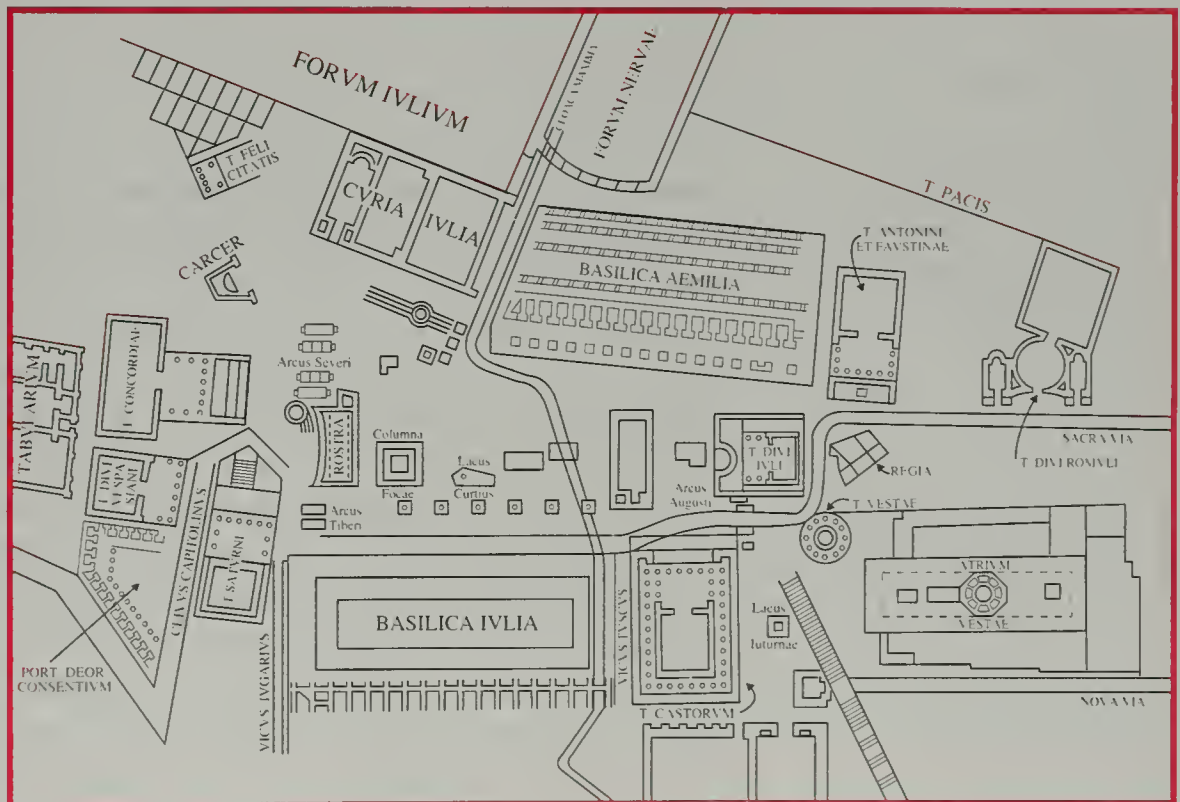
IV, 94. Herculis templum est apud Agrigentīnōs nōn longē ā forō, sānē sānctum apud illōs et religiōsum. Ibi est ex aere simulācrum ipsīus Herculis, quō nōn facile dīxerim quicquam mē vīdisse pulchrius (tametsī nōn tam multum in istīs rēbus intellegō quam multa vīdī) usque eō, iūdicēs, ut rictum eius ac mentum paulō sit attrītus, quod in precibus et grātulātiōnibus
5 nōn solum id venerārī vērū etiam ōsculārī solent.¹ Ad hoc templum, cum esset iste² Agrigentī, repente nocte intempestā servōrum armātōrum fit concursus atque impetus. Clāmor ā vigilibus fānīque custōdibus tollitur; quī prīmō cum obsistere ac dēfendere cōnārentur, male mulcātī clāvīs ac
10 fūstibus repelluntur. Intereā ex clāmōre fāma tōtā urbe percrebruit expugnārī deōs patriōs, nōn hostium adventū necopīnātō neque repentinō praedōnum impetū, sed ex domō atque ex cohorte praetōriā manum fugitīvōrum īnstructam armātamque vēnisse. **95.** Nēmō Agrigentī neque aetāte tam affectā neque vīribus tam īfirmīs fuit quī nōn illā nocte eō nūntiō excitātus
15 surrēxerit, tēlumque quod cuique fors offerēbat arripuerit. Itaque brevī

¹ like the foot of the statue of St. Peter in St. Peter's, Rome

² Verres



The Forum during the Republic was much simpler than during the Empire, when overcrowding became a problem. The *Tabulārium* is on the far left and from there, you would be looking toward the Palatine Hill and over the Forum itself. The *tabernae* were shops selling everything from food to cloth to lamps. Obviously, the *tabernae novae* were built after the *tabernae veterēs*.



By the time of the Empire, the *tabernae veteres* had been taken down and replaced with the Basilica Julia. The *Rōstra*, or speaker's stand, was also moved to a more central location, near the Temple of Saturn, to give the speaker a more commanding position. The *Rēgia*, near the Vestal Temple, was the house of Numa, the second king of Rome, according to tradition. The *Lapis Niger*, near the *Comitium*, is supposed to mark the place where Romulus was buried.

- ¹ people run (impersonal)
² plunderer of sacred places
³ that not, to keep them from

tempore ad fānum ex urbe tōtā concurrirur.¹ Ac repente Agrigentīnī concurrunt; fit magna lapidātiō; dant sēsē in fugam istīus praeclārī imperātōris nocturnī mīlitēs. Duo tamen sigilla perparvula tollunt, nē omnīnō inānēs ad istum praedōnem religiōnum² revertantur. Numquam tam male est
20 Siculīs quīn³ aliquid facētē et commodē dīcant, velut in hāc rē aiēbant in labōrēs Herculis nōn minus hunc immānissimum verrem³ quam illum aprum Erymanthium⁴ referri oportēre.

³ a pun on Verres' name: **verrēs** means a *boar*

⁴ The killing of the Erymanthian boar was one of the twelve labors of Hercules.

Ceres and Proserpina



Verba Ūtilia: altitūdō, celeber, currus, laetus, lūcus, opīniō, perennis, subitō, vertex, vēstīgium

IV, 106. Vetus est haec opīniō, iūdicēs, quae cōstat ex antīquissimīs Graecōrum litterīs ac monumentīs, īnsulam Siciliam tōtam esse Cererī et Līberae cōsecrātā. Nam et nātās esse hās in iīs locīs deās et frūgēs¹ in eā terrā prīmum repertās esse arbitrantur, et raptam esse Līberam, quam
5 eandem Prōserpinam vocant, ex Hennēnsium nemore,² quī locus, quod in mediā est īnsulā situs, umbilīcus³ Siciliae nōminātur. Quam₁ cum invēstīgāre et conquīrere Cerēs vellet, dīcitur īnflammāsse taedās⁴ iīs ignibus quī ex Aetnae vertice ērumpunt; quās sibi cum ipsa praeferret,⁵ orbem omnem peragrāsse terrārum. **107.** Henna autem, ubi ea quae dīcō gesta esse memo-
10 rantur, est locō perexcelsō atque ēditō, quō in summō est aequāta agrī plānitīēs et aquae perennēs, tōta vērō ab omnī aditū circumcīsa atque dīrēcta est;⁶ quam circā lacūs lūcīque sunt plūrimī atque laetissimī flōrēs omnī tempore annī, locus ut ipse⁷ raptum⁸ illum virginis quem iam ā puerīs accēpimus dēclārāre videātur. Etenim prope est spēlunca quaedam con-
15 versa ad aquilōnem īnfīnitā altitūdine, quā Dītem⁹ patrem ferunt repente cum currū exstitisse abreptamque ex eō locō virginem sēcum asportāsse et subitō nōn longē ā Syrācūsīs penetrāsse sub terrās, lacumque in eō locō repente exstitisse, ubi usque ad hoc tempus Syrācūsānī fēstōs diēs anniversāriōs agunt celeberrimō virōrum mulierumque conventū. Propter
20 huius opīniōnis vetustātem, quod hōrum₂ in hīs locīs vēstīgia ac prope

- ¹ grain crops
² the forest of Henna
³ navel
⁴ torches
⁵ carrying which before her
(literally, when she carried which before her)
⁶ steep and straight down
⁷ so that the location itself
⁸ carrying off (noun)
⁹ Pluto

₁ Proserpina
₂ with deōrum

incūnābula reperiuntur deōrum, mīra quaedam tōtā Siciliā prīvātīm ac pūblicē religiō est Cereris Hennēnsis. 109. Hoc dīcō, hanc ipsam Cererem antiq̄uissimam, religiōsissimam, prīncipem omnium sacrōrum quae apud omnīs gentīs nātiōnēsque fiunt, ā C. Verre ex suīs templīs ac sēdibus esse sublātam. 111. Hic dolor erat tantus ut Verrēs alter Orcus vēnisse Hennam 25 et nōn Prōserpinam asportāsse sed ipsam abripiuisse Cererem vidērētur. Etenim urbs illa nōn urbs vidētur, sed fānum Cereris esse; habitāre apud sēsē Cererem Hennēnsēs arbitrantur, ut mihi nōn cīvēs illīus cīvītātis, sed omnēs sacerdotēs, omnēs accolae atque antistiēs Cereris esse videantur. 112. Hennā¹⁰ tū simulācrum Cereris tollere audēbās, Hennā tū dē manū 30¹⁰ *from Henna* Cereris Victōriam ēripere et deam deae¹¹ dētrahere cōnātus es? ¹¹ *the goddess (Victory) from the goddess (Ceres)*

Word Studies

The ancient grammarians felt that there must be a relationship between *lūcus* and *lūx*—but how did a grove of trees have anything to do with light? They decided that the relationship was by opposites: *lūcus ā nōn lūcendō*, *a grove of trees (is so called) from not giving light*. The idea was so far-fetched that the phrase has become the name of a type of absurd reasoning.

Give the Latin word from which the following are derived: *celebrated*, *excelsior*, *perennial*, *rapacious*, *vestige*.

A Roman Citizen Is Crucified

Verba Ūtilia: anteā, assequor, barbarus, gemitus, ignōtus, impūnē, plēbs, supplicium, ūsūrpō, verber

V, 162. Caedēbātur virgīs¹ in mediō forō Messānae cīvis Rōmānus, iūdicēs, cum intereā nūllus gemitus, nūlla vōx alia illīus miserī inter dolōrem crepitumque plāgārum audiēbātur nisi haec, “Cīvis Rōmānus sum!” Hāc sē commemorātiōne cīvītātis omnia verbera dēpulsūrum, cruciātumque ā corpore dēiectūrum arbitrābātur. Is nōn modo hoc nōn perfēcit, ut virgārum 5 vim dēprecārētur; sed cum implōrāret saepius ūsūrpāretque nōmen cīvītātis, crux –crux, inquam–īnfēlicī² et aerumnōsō, quī numquam istam pestem₁ vīderat, comparābātur.

¹ *was beaten with rods*

² *for the unfortunate fellow (with comparābātur)*

₁ i.e., the cross—or does he mean Verres?

163. Ō nōmen dulce libertātis! Ō iūs eximium nostrae cīvitātis! Ō lēx
 10 Porcia, lēgēsque Semprōniae! Ō graviter dēsīderāta, et aliquandō reddita,
 plēbī Rōmānae tribūnicia potestās! Hūcine³ tandem haec omnia recidērunt,
 ut cīvis Rōmānus in prōvinciā populī Rōmānī, in oppidō foederātōrum, ab
 eō quī beneficiō populī Rōmānī fascīs et secūrīs habēret dēligātus in forō
 virgīs caederētur? Quid? Cum ignēs ārdentēsque lāminae³ cēterīque cru-
 15 ciātūs admovēbantur, sī tē⁴ illius acerba implōrātiō et vōx miserābilis nōn
 inhibēbat, nē cīvium quidem Rōmānōrum quī tum aderant flētū et gemitū
 maximō commovēbāre? In crucem tū agere ausus es quemquam quī sē
 cīvem Rōmānum esse dīceret?

166. Sī tū apud Persās aut in extrēmā Indiā dēprehēnsus, Verrēs, ad
 supplicium dūcerēre, quid aliud clāmitārēs nisi tē cīvem esse Rōmānum?
 Et sī tibi ignōtō apud ignōtōs, apud barbarōs, apud hominēs in extrēmīs
 atque ultimīs gentibus positōs, nōbile et illūstre apud omnīs nōmen cīvitātis
 tuae prōfuisset, ille,⁵ quisquis erat, quem tū in crucem rapiēbās, quī tibi
 esset ignōtus, cum cīvem sē Rōmānum esse dīceret, apud tē praetōrem, sī
 25 nōn effugium, nē moram⁴ quidem mortis mentiōne atque ūsūrpātiōne cīvitātis
 assequī potuit?

167. Hominēs tenuēs, obscurō locō⁵ nātī, nāvīgant, adeunt ad ea loca
 quae numquam antea vīdērunt, ubi neque nōtī esse eīs quō vērēbunt, neque
 semper cum cognitōribus⁶ esse possunt. Hāc ūnā tamen fīdūciā cīvitātis nōn
 30 modo apud nostrōs magistrātūs, quī et lēgum et exīstimātiōnis⁷ perīculō
 continentur, neque apud cīvīs solum Rōmānōs, quī et sermōnis⁸ et iūris et
 multārum rērum societāte iūctī sunt, fore sē tūtōs arbitrantur, sed, quōcumque
 vērērint, hanc sibi rem praesidiō spērānt futūram. Tolle hanc spem, tolle
 hoc praesidium cīvibus Rōmānīs, cōstitue nihil esse opis in hāc vōce,
 35 “Cīvis Rōmānus sum,” posse⁹ impūne praetōrem aut alium quempiam sup-
 plicium quod velit in eum cōstituere quī sē cīvem Rōmānum esse dīcat,
 quod¹⁰ quī sit ignōret: iam omnīs prōvinciās, iam omnia rēgna, iam omnīs
 līberās cīvitātēs, iam omnem orbem terrārum, quī semper nostrīs hominibus
 maximē patuit, cīvibus Rōmānīs istā dēfēnsiōne praeclūseris.

Word Studies

Define *attenuate*, *fascicle*, *impunity*, *nascent*, *pestiferous*.

To what Latin words are the following related: *assequor*, *cruciātus*,
fīdūcia, *reddō*, *societās*?

² with *potestās*: Sulla had reduced the tribune's power to protect a citizen, but that power had just been restored

³ = *hūcne*; the original form was *hūcene*, just as *hic* was *hice*, etc.: *have things come to this point?*

⁴ Verres

⁵ the man who was beaten in Messina

³ hot plates (of metal)

⁴ delay (to insure trial before the people)

⁵ position

⁶ witnesses (who could identify them as Roman citizens)

⁷ public opinion

⁸ language

⁹ decide that a praetor can

(depends, like *esse*, on *cōstituere*)

¹⁰ on the ground that he does not know who (the man) is

The Struggles of a Novus Homō

Verba Ūtilia: alliciō, crīmen, dēferō, dēiciō, dīiungō, licet, occultus

V, 180. Quaeret aliquis fortasse, "Tantumne igitur labōrem, tantās inimīci-
tiās tot hominum susceptūrus es?" Nōn studiō¹ quidem hercule² ūllō neque
voluntāte; sed nōn idem licet mihi quod iīs quī nōbilī genere nātī sunt,
quibus omnia populī Rōmānī beneficia dormientibus³ dēferuntur; longē
aliā mihi lēge in hāc cīvitatē et condiciōne vīvendum est. 181. Vidēmus
quantā sit in invidiā quantōque in odiō apud quōsdam nōbilīs hominēs
novōrum hominum virtūs et industria; sī tantulum⁴ oculōs dēiēcērīmus,
praestō⁵ esse īnsidiās; sī ūllum locum aperuerīmus suspīciōnī aut crīminī,
accipiendum statim vulnus esse; semper nōbīs vigilandum, semper labōran-
dum vidēmus. 182. Inimīcitiae sunt,⁶ subeantur; labor, suscipiātur; etenim
tacitae magis et occultae inimīcitiae timendae sunt quam indictae atque
apertae. Hominum nōbilium nōn ferē quisquam nostrae industriae favet;
nūllīs nostrīs officiīs benevolentiam illōrum allicere possumus; quasi nātūrā
et genere diiūctī sint, ita dissident ā nōbīs animō ac voluntāte. Quārē quid
habent eōrum inimīcitiae perīculī quōrum animōs iam ante habuerīs inimīcōs
et invidōs quam ūllās inimīciās suscēperīs?

¹ on purpose

² by Hercules

³ while they are asleep (i.e., with no effort on their part)

⁴ just a little bit

⁵ at hand, being used

⁶ if there are enmities, let them be endured

¹ similarly **labor**, *trouble*, with **est** understood

The Second Speech Against Antony

Cicero, Caesar, and Pompey

Verba Ūtilia: augeō, dīiungō, ēnītor, ops, opus, praetermittō, sērō

23. Quod vērō dicere ausus es idque multīs verbīs. operā meā Pompeium ā Caesaris amīcitiā esse dīiunctum ob eamque₁ causam culpā meā bellum cīvile esse nātum. in eō nōn tū quidem tōtā rē sed, quod maximum est, temporibus errāstī. Ego, M. Bibulō, praestantissimō cīve, cōnsule, nihil¹

¹ I have tried everything, as far as I could, to separate Pompey from Caesar (literally, I have omitted nothing (to prevent me) from, etc.)

² why should I have tried?

³ it was (characteristic) of a foolish person

⁴ I should like you to find fault

⁵ that consideration be given to his absence

⁶ (a matter of) consistency

5 praetermīsī, quantum facere ēnītīque potuī, quīn¹ Pompeium ā Caesaris coniūctiōne āvocārem. In quō Caesar fēlicior fuit. Ipse enim Pompeium ā meā familiāritāte dīiūnxī. Postea vērō quam sē tōtum Pompeius Caesarī trādīdit, quid ego illum₂ ab eō distrahere cōnārer?² Stultī erat³ spērāre, suādēre impudentis. 24. Duo tamen tempora incidērunt quibus aliquid contrā Caesarem Pompeiō suāserim. Ea velim⁴ reprehendās, sī potes: ūnum nē quīnquennī₃ imperium Caesarī prōrogāret, alterum nē paterētur ferrī ut absentis eius ratiō habērētur.⁵ Quōrum sī utrumvīs persuāsissem, in hās miseriās numquam incidissēmus. Atque idem ego, cum iam opēs omnīs et suās et populī Rōmānī Pompeius ad Caesarem dētulisset, sērōque ea sen- 15 tīre coepisset quae multō ante prōvīderam, inferrīque patriae bellum vidērem nefārium, pācis, concordiae, compositiōnis auctor esse non dēstitī, meaque illa vōx est nōta multīs: "Utinam, Cn. Pompeī, cum C. Caesare societātem aut numquam coīssēs aut numquam dirēmissēs! Fuit alterum gravitātis,⁶ alterum prūdentiae tuae." Haec mea, M. Antōnī, semper et dē Pompeiō et 20 dē rē pūblicā cōnsilia fuērunt. Quae sī valuissent, rēs pūblica stāret, tū tuīs flāgitiīs, egestāte, infamiā concidissēs.

¹ The conjunction **-que** is not usually attached to a monosyllabic preposition.

² Pompey

³ the five-year prolongation of Caesar's command in Gaul to 49 B.C.

I Am Not Afraid of You, Antony

116. Fuit in illo₁ ingenium, ratiō, memoria, litterae, cūra, cōgitātiō, diligētia; rēs bellō gesserat, quamvis reī pūblīcae calamitōsās, at tamen magnās; multōs annōs rēgnāre meditātus, magnō labōre, magnīs periculīs quod cōgitārat effēcerat; mūneribus,¹ monumentīs, congiariīs,² epulīs multitudinem imperitā dēlēnierat; suōs praemiīs, adversariōs clēmentiae 5 speciē dēvīn_xerat. Quid multa? Attulerat iam libērae civitātī partim metū, partim patientiā cōsuētūdinem serviendī. Cum illō ego tē dominandī cupiditāte cōferre possum, cēterīs vērō rēbus nullō modō comparandus es. 117. Sed ex plūrimīs malīs quae ab illō reī pūblīcae sunt inusta hoc tamen bonī est,³ quod didicit iam populus Rōmānus quantum cuique 10 crēderet,⁴ quibus sē committeret, ā quibus cavēret. Haec nōn cōgitās, neque intellegis satis esse virīs fortibus didicisse quam sit rē pulchrum,⁵ beneficiō grātum, fāmā glōriōsum tyrannum occidere? An, cum illum₃ hominēs nōn tulerint, tē ferent? 118. Certātīm posthāc, mihi crēde, ad hoc opus₄ currētur neque occāsionis tarditās expectābitur.⁶ 15

Respice, quaesō, aliquandō rem pūblīcam, M. Antōnī, quibus₅ ortus sīs, nōn quibuscum vīvās cōnsiderā; mēcum, ut volēs;₆ redī cum rē pūblīcā in grātiam. Sed dē tē tū vīderis;⁷ ego dē mē ipse profitēbor. Dēfendī rem pūblīcam adulēscēns, nōn dēseram senex; contempsī Catilīnae gladiōs, nōn pertimēscam tuōs. Quīn etiam corpus libenter obtulerim,⁸ sī repraesentārī⁹ 20 morte meā libētās civitātis potest. 119. Etenim sī abhinc annōs prope vīgintī hōc ipsō in templō negāvī posse mortem immātūrā esse cōsulārī, quantō vērīus nunc negābō senī!⁷ Mihi vērō, patrēs cōscriptī, iam etiam optanda mors est, perfūctō₈ rēbus eīs quās adeptus sum quāsque gessī. Duo modo haec optō, ūnum ut moriēns populum Rōmānum libērum relin- 25 quam (hōc mihi maius ab dīs immortālibus darī nihil potest), alterum ut ita cuique ēveniat ut¹⁰ dē rē pūblīcā quisque mereātur.

¹ shows (of gladiators)

² gifts

³ there is this much good

⁴ trust every man

⁵ how fine it is in fact, how gratifying it is because of its good deed

⁶ the slowness of the occasion will not be awaited (i.e., it will happen soon)

⁷ you will see to yourself

⁸ I would offer

⁹ brought about at once

¹⁰ as

¹ Caesar

² The subject of sit is occidere.

³ Caesar

⁴ killing a tyrant

⁵ he was of noble ancestry; his present associates belong to the riffraff

⁶ from the following supply redī in grātiam: Return to friendship with me (or not): (at any rate)

⁷ Supply mortem immātūrā esse.

⁸ modifies mihi and governs rēbus





Unit VII

Cicero's Letters

The Capitoline She-Wolf is the symbol of Rome even today. Though the wolf itself dates from Etruscan times, probably during the early 5th century B.C., the bronzes of Romulus and Remus as babies were added later by Simone del Pollainolo (1457-1508). The Etruscans used bronze extensively for household furnishings and military accessories. Freestanding bronze sculpture, like this one, was an Etruscan specialty.

Scala/Art Resource, NY

Introducing Cicero's Letters

A number of collections of Cicero's letters were published after his death. About half of the collections have survived, notably the 16 books addressed to his best friend Atticus, who published these letters, and the 16 books published by Tiro, Cicero's secretary. In modern times, the collection published by Tiro has been given the title *Epistulae ad familiārēs*, "Letters to Friends," an inaccurate title because some of the letters are to people who are not, strictly speaking, Cicero's friends and because some of the letters are *to* Cicero, not *from* him.

Remember that Cicero's letters were not intended for publication; many of them were confidential. They are extremely interesting for the light they throw on politics, private life, language, and Cicero's character. Some put Cicero in an unfavorable light, especially some of the confidential letters to Atticus, who did his great friend no service in publishing them. Not many prominent men of the last 2000 years could afford to have *all* their personal letters published.

Nearly 900 of Cicero's letters are extant.

The Campaign for the Consulship

¹ seeking (for office), candidacy

² as far as

³ is canvassing (literally, is grasping hands)

⁴ He is being turned down in the good old-fashioned way without pretense (literally, without pain and pretense)

⁵ servant

Petitiōnis¹ nostrae, quam tibi summae cūrae esse sciō, huius modī ratiō est, quod² adhūc coniectūrā prōvidērī possit. Prēnsat³ ūnus P. Galba; sine fūcō ac fallāciis mōre maiōrum negātur.⁴ Ut opīniō est hominum, nōn aliēna ratiōnī nostrae fuit illiūs haec praepropera prēnsātiō; nam illī ita negant vulgō ut mihi sē dēbēre dīcant. Ita quiddam spērō nōbīs prōficī, cum hoc percrebrēscit, plūrimōs nostrōs amīcōs invenīrī. Nōs autem initium prēnsandī facere cōgitārāmus eō ipsō tempore quō tuum puerum⁵ cum hīs litterīs proficīscī Cīncius dīcēbat, in campō₁ comitiīs tribūnīciīs a. d. XVI Kal. Sextilēs.₂ Competītōrēs quī certī esse videantur Galba et Antōnius et Q. Cornificius.
10 Catilīna, sī iūdicātum erit merīdiē nōn lūcēre, certus erit competītōr; dē Aufidiō et dē Palicānō nōn putō tē expectāre dum scribam. Dē iīs quī

₁ the Campus Martius

₂ for ante diem XVI Kalendās Sextilēs, the sixteenth day before the Kalends of August, i.e., July 17 (not July 16, for the Romans counted both ends)

nunc³ petunt, Caesar⁴ certus putātur; Thermus cum Silānō contendere exīstimātur, quī sīc inopēs et ab⁶ amīcīs et exīstimātiōne sunt ut mihi videātur nōn esse ἀδύνατον⁵ Cūrium obducere,⁷ sed hoc praeter mē nēminī vidētur. Nostrīs ratiōnibus maximē conducere vidētur Thermum fierī cum Caesare.¹⁵ Nēmō est enim ex iīs quī nunc petunt quī, sī in nostrum annum reciderit, firmior candidātus fore videātur, propterea quod cūrātor est viae Flāminiae, quae tum erit absolūta sānē facile; eum libenter nunc Caesarī cōsulem accūderim.⁸ Petītōrum haec est infōrmāta adhūc cōgitātiō. Nōs⁶ in omnī mūnere candidātōriō fungendō summam adhibēbimus diligentiam et fort-20 asse, quoniam vidētur in suffrāgiīs multum posse⁹ Gallia, cum Rōmae ā iūdicīis forum refrīxerit.¹⁰ excurrēmus mēse Septembrī lēgātī¹¹ ad Pīsōnem, ut Iānuariō revertāmur. Cum perspexerō voluntātēs nōbīlium, scribam ad tē. (A. I, 1, 1–2)

⁶ from (the standpoint of)
⁷ to run Curius (for the consulship)
⁸ I would gladly add him to Caesar as consul
⁹ has much influence
¹⁰ has cooled off in regard to trials
¹¹ as a commissioner

³ i.e., for the consulship of 64

⁴ L. (not C.) Caesar

⁵ *adynaton*, impossible. Cicero uses many Greek words in writing to Atticus, who for many years had been living in Athens.

⁶ the plural of modesty, for *ego*

⁷ The *lūdī Rōmānī* kept the courts closed during much of September, and there were other interruptions until after the Saturnalia in December.

It's a Boy!

L. Iūliō Caesare, C. Mārciō Figulō cōsulibus, filiolo mē auctum¹ scītō,² salvā Terentiā. Abs tē tam diū nihil litterārum! Ego dē meīs ad tē ratiōnibus scripsī anteā diligenter. Hōc tempore Catilinam, competītōrem nostrum, dēfendere cōgitāmus.¹ Iūdicēs habēmus quōs voluimus, summā accūsātōris voluntāte. Spērō, sī absolūtus erit, coniūctiōrem illum nōbīs 5 fore in ratiōne petitiōnis; sīn aliter acciderit, hūmāniter ferēmus.

¹ blessed
² I should like you to know
³ my election

Tuō adventū nōbīs opus est mātūrō: nam prōrsus summa hominum est opīniō tuōs familiārēs, nōbilēs hominēs, adversāriōs honōrī³ nostrō fore. Ad eōrum voluntātem mihi conciliandam maximō tē mihi ūsuī fore videō. Quārē Iānuariō mēse, ut cōstituistī, cūrā ut Rōmae sīs.² (A. I, 2) 10

¹ We say, "Politics makes strange bedfellows," and here we have an example. Nothing came of the plan.

² From the fact that Cicero's next letter to Atticus is not until 61 B.C., we may infer that Atticus came to Rome and presumably worked hard and well in his friend's behalf.

The Trial of Clodius,

Quaeris ex mē quid acciderit dē iūdicīō, quod tam praeter opīniōnem omnium factum sit, et simul vīs scīre quō modō ego minus quam soleam proeliātus sim. Respondēbō tibi ὕστερον πρότερον Ὀμηρικῶς² Ego enim, quam diū senātūs auctōritās mihi dēfendenda fuit, sic ācriter et vehementer
5 proeliātus sum ut clāmor concursusque maximā cum meā laude fierent. Quod sī tibi umquam sum vīsus in rē pūblicā fortis, certē mē in illā causā admīrātus essēs. Cum enim ille ad cōtiōnēs¹ cōnfūgisset, in iīsque meō nōmine ad invidiam ūterētur, dī immortalēs, quās ego pugnās et quantās strāgēs ēdidī, quōs impetūs in Pīsōnem, in Cūrīōnem,³ in tōtam illam manum
10 fēcī! Quō modō sum īsectātus levitātem senum, libīdinem iuventūtis!

Itaque, sī causam quaeris absolūtiōnis, ut iam πρὸς τὸ πρότερον⁴ revertar, egestās iūdicum fuit et turpitūdō. Summō discessū² bonōrum, plēnō forō servōrum,⁵ XXV iūdicēs ita fortēs tamen fuērunt ut, summō prōpositō periculō, vel³ perīre māluerint quam perdere omnia;⁶ XXXI fuērunt quōs
15 famēs magis quam fāma commōverit;⁷ quōrum Catulus cum vīdisset quendam, “Quid vōs?” inquit, “praesidium ā nōbīs postulābātis?”⁸ An nē nummī vōbīs ēriperentur timēbātis?” Habēs, ut⁴ brevissimē potuī, genus iūdicī et causam absolūtiōnis.

Ut Idibus Maiīs in senātum convēnimus, rogātus ego sententiam multa dīxī
20 dē summā rē pūblicā. “Quō usque,” inquit,⁹ “hunc rēgem ferēmus?” “Rēgem appellās,” inquam, “cum Rēx tuī mentiōnem nūllam fēcerit?”¹⁰ Ille autem

¹ To Atticus. July. 61 B.C. Cicero had appeared as a witness against Clodius, on trial for sacrilege. Bribery enabled Clodius to go free, but he never forgave Cicero, later bringing about his exile.

² *hysteron proteron Homērikōs, in the Homeric fashion*

³ supporters of Clodius

⁴ *pros to proteron, to the first (point)*

⁵ Clodius' thugs, whose function it was to overawe decent citizens

⁶ They voted for conviction.

⁷ They accepted bribes to vote for acquittal, more aware of their empty stomachs than their reputations; majority vote decided cases.

⁸ They had asked for police protection, ostensibly against Clodius' slaves (mentioned in footnote 5).

⁹ Clodius. The trial is over and Cicero is making a speech. Clodius tries to defend himself.

¹⁰ Clodius had been disappointed in not being left a legacy by a man named Rex (“Mr. King”). This gives Cicero another opportunity to make a pun.

¹ mass meetings

² in spite of the withdrawal

³ even

⁴ as briefly as

Rēgis hērēditātem spē dēvorārat.— “Domum,”¹¹ inquit, “ēmistī.” “Putēs,”⁵ inquam, “dīcere: iūdicēs ēmistī.”—“Iūrantī,” inquit, “tibi nōn crēdidērunt.” “Mihi vērō,” inquam, “xxv iūdicēs crēdidērunt, xxxi, quoniam nummōs⁷ ante accēpērunt, tibi nihil crēdidērunt.”¹² Magnīs clāmōribus afflīctus con-²⁵ tuit et concidit.

Nunc est exspectātiō comitiōrum, in quae, omnibus invītīs, trūdit noster Magnus¹³ Aulī filium,⁶ atque in eō neque auctōritāte neque grātiā pugnat, sed quibus⁷ Philippus omnia castella expugnārī posse dīcēbat in quae modo⁸ asellus onustus aurō posset ascendere. (A. I, 16, 1–2, 5, 9–10, 12) 30

¹¹ Cicero had bought a very expensive house on the Palatine Hill; Clodius implies,

“Where did you get the money?”

¹² a pun on the two meanings of *crēdō*

¹³ Pompey

Clodius' Threats

Noster Pūblius¹ mihi minitātur, inimīcus est; impendet negōtium,¹ ad quod tū scīlicet advolābis. Videor mihi nostrum illum cōsulārem exercitum² bonōrum omnium, etiam satis bonōrum² habēre firmissimum. Pompeius significat studium ergā mē nōn mediocre. Īdem affirmat verbum dē mē illum³ nōn esse factūrum, in quō nōn mē ille fallit, sed ipse fallitur. Caesar mē sibi vult esse lēgātum. Honestior³ haec dēclīnātiō perīculī; sed ego hoc nōn repudiō. Quid ergō est? Pugnāre mālō. Nihil tamen certī. Iterum dīcō: utinam adessēs! Sed tamen, sī erit necesse, arcessēmus. Quid aliud? Quid? Hoc opīnor: certī sumus perīsse omnia. Sed haec scrīpsī properāns et mehercule⁴ timidē. Posthāc ad tē aut, sī perfidēlem habēbō cui dem,⁵ 10 scrībam plānē omnia, aut, sī obscurē scrībam, tū tamen intellegēs. In iīs epistulīs mē Laelium, tē Fūrium faciam; cētera erunt ἐν αἰνιγμοῖς.⁴ Hīc Caecilium colimus et observāmus dīligenter. Ēdicta Bibulī⁵ audiō ad tē missa. Iīs⁶ ārdet dolōre et īrā noster Pompeius. (A. II, 19, 4–5)

¹ trouble

² somewhat conservative

³ more honorable

⁴ by Hercules

⁵ to whom I can give (a letter for delivery)

⁵ ⁶ on account of them

¹ Clodius

² not to be taken literally; he means his conservative supporters

³ Clodius

⁴ *en ainigmois*, in enigmas, i.e., obscure to everyone but Atticus should the letters go to the wrong person

⁵ Caesar's colleague in the consulship. Ignored by Caesar, he responded by protesting his colleague's actions.

On the Way to Exile

Utinam illum diem videam cum tibi agam grātiās quod mē vīvere
coēgistī!¹ Adhūc quidem valdē mē paenitet.² Sed tē ōrō ut ad mē Vibōnem
statim veniās, quō ego multīs dē causīs convertī iter meum. Sed eō sī
vēneris, dē tōtō itinere ac fugā¹ meā cōnsilium capere poterō; sī id nōn fēceris,
5 mīrābor, sed cōnfīdō tē esse factūrum. (A. III, 3)

¹ exile

¹ Cicero had planned to commit suicide but was dissuaded by Atticus.

² He regrets that he did not commit suicide.

Nothing to Write

Nōlī putāre mē ad quemquam longiōrēs epistulās scrībere, nisi sī¹ quis
ad mē plūra scrīpsit cui putō rescrībī¹ oportēre; nec enim habeō quid
scrībam, nec hōc tempore quicquam difficilius faciō. Ad tē vērō et ad nos-
tram Tulliōlam² nōn queō sine plūrimīs lacrimīs scrībere; vōs enim videō
5 esse miserrimās, quās ego beātissimās semper esse voluī idque praestāre
dēbuī et, nisi tam timidī³ fuissēmus, praestitissem. (F. XIV, 2, 1)

¹ an answer should be sent

¹ unnecessary; omit in translation

² diminutive of affection ("my dear little Tullia")

³ by going into exile instead of resisting Clodius in Rome

The Shows Were Poor

Omnīnō, sī quaeris, lūdī apparātissimī, sed nōn tuī stomachī;¹ coniectūram enim faciō dē meō. Nam primum honōris causā in scaenam redierant iī quōs ego honōris causā₁ dē scaenā dēcesse₂ arbitrābar; dēliciae² vērō tuae, noster Aesōpus, eius modī fuit ut eī dēsinere per³ omnīs hominēs liceret. Is iūrāre cum coepisset, vōx eum dēfēcit in illō locō: “Sī sciēs fallō.”³ Quid 5 tibi ego alia nārrem? Nōstī enim reliquōs lūdōs, quī nē id quidem lepōris habuērunt quod solent mediocrēs lūdī. Apparātūs enim spectātiō tollēbat omnem hilaritātem, quō quidem apparātū₄ nōn dubitō quīn animō aequissimō carueris. Quid enim dēlectātiōnis habent sescentī₅ mīlī in Clytaemestrā,₆ aut in Equō Trōiānō₆ crēterrārū⁴ tria mīlia, aut armātūra varia peditātūs 10 et equitātūs in aliquā pugnā? Quae populārem admīrātiōnem habuērunt, dēlectātiōnem tibi nūllam attulissent.

Reliquae sunt vēnātiōnēs⁵ bīnae per diēs quīnque, magnificae—nēmō negat—sed quae potest hominī esse politō dēlectātiō, cum aut homō imbēcillus ā valentissimā bēstiā laniātur aut praeclāra bēstia vēnābulō trānsver- 15 berātur? Quae tamen, sī videnda sunt, saepe vīdistī; neque nōs quī haec spectāmus quicquam novī vīdimus. Extrēmus elephantōrum diēs fuit. In quō admīrātiō magna vulgī atque turbae, dēlectātiō nūlla exstitit; quīn etiam misericordia quaedam cōsecūta est atque opīniō eius modī, esse quandam illī bēluae cum genere hūmānō societātem. (F. VII, 1, 2–3) 20

¹ to your taste

² favorite

³ by

⁴ (gold) bowls (seized as loot in the Trojan War)

⁵ hunts

¹ a pun on two different meanings of the phrase: *for the sake of honoring (the occasion), for the sake of their honor*

² = dēcessisse

³ In the play he takes an oath, saying: “If knowingly I fail,”—and just then his voice failed him.

⁴ with carueris

⁵ often used for an indefinitely large number

⁶ These are the names of tragedies; we say *Clytaemnestra*.

A Tragedy About Britain?

¹ perhaps (literally, I do not know whether)

² **hypothesin**, story, outline (for a tragedy)

³ owl to Athens (a proverbial expression)

⁴ to be kept in the dark

⁵ the first (parts) (of the first book)

⁶ **rhathumotera**, rather easy-going, rather careless

⁷ **charaktēr**, style

⁸ not a bit (literally, not by even a hair)

⁹ **philalēthōs**, truthfully

Veniō nunc ad id quod nesciō an¹ primum esse debuerit. Ō iucundās mihi tuās dē Britannia litterās! Timēbam Ōceanum, timēbam litus insulae. Reliqua nōn equidem contemnō, sed plūs habent tamen speī quam timōris, magisque sum sollicitus exspectātiōne eā quam metū. Tē vērō ὑπόθεσιν² 5 scribendī ēgregiam habēre videō. Quōs tū sitūs, quās nātūrās rerum et locōrum, quōs mōrēs, quās gentēs, quās pugnās, quem vērō ipsum imperātōrem habēs! Ego tē libenter, ut rogās,¹ quibus rēbus vīs adiuvābō et tibi versūs quōs rogās, hoc est “Athēnās noctuam,”³ mittam. Sed heus tu, cēlārī⁴ videor ā tē. Quōmodōnam, mi frāter, dē nostrīs versibus² Caesar? Nam primum librum 10 sē lēgisse scripsit ad mē ante, et prīma⁵ sīc ut neget sē nē Graeca quidem meliōra lēgisse; reliqua ad quendam locum ῥαθυμότερα⁶—hōc enim ūtimur verbō.³ Dīc mihi vērum: num aut rēs eum aut χαρακτήρ⁷ nōn dēlectat? Nihil est quod vereāre; ego enim nē pilō⁸ quidem minus mē amābō. Hāc dē rē φιλαλληθώς⁹ et, ut solēs scribere, fraternē. (Q. Fr. II, 16, 4–5)

¹ Quintus evidently asked his brother to send some verses.

² the poem on Cicero's consulship

³ Cicero means that this is his word, not Caesar's who was not apt to introduce Greek words.

The Best Lawyer In— Samarobriva

¹ whether

² let me know for sure

³ well-heeled, with lots of coin

⁴ there is (something for) which

Quid agātis et ecquid¹ in Ītaliā ventūrī sītis hāc hieme fac plānē sciam.² Balbus mihi cōfirmāvit tē dīvitem futūrum. Id utrum Rōmānō mōre¹ locutūs sīt, bene nummātum³ tē futūrum, an quō modō Stoicī dīcunt, omnēs esse dīvītēs quī caelō et terrā fruī possint, postea vidēbō. Quī istinc 5 veniunt superbiam tuam accūsant, quod negent tē percontantibus respondēre.² Sed tamen est quod⁴ gaudeās; cōstat enim inter omnīs nēmīnem tē ūnō Samarobrīvae³ iūris perītīōrem esse. (F. VII, 16, 3)

¹ i.e., literally, not figuratively

² a pun: in the literal and in the legal sense, to give legal advice

³ a small town, now Amiens in northern France

Trebatius Is No Channel Swimmer



¹ *an expert in the law*

² *where you appear to know something*

³ = **mehercule**, by *Hercules*

⁴ *chariot fighters*

⁵ *blindfolded gladiator (with dēfraudāre)*

Lēgī tuās litterās, ex quibus intellēxī tē Caesarī nostrō valdē iūre cōnsultum¹ vidērī. Est quod gaudeās tē in ista loca vēnisse ubi aliquid sapere vidērēre.² Quod sī in Britanniam quoque profectus essēs,¹ profectō nēmō in illā tantā īnsulā perītior tē fuisset. Vērū tamen (rīdeāmus licet; 5 sum enim ā tē invītātus) subinvideō² tibi, ultrō etiam accersītum ab eō ad quem cēterī nōn propter superbiam eius sed propter occupātiōnem aspīrāre nōn possunt. Sed tū in istā epistulā nihil mihi scrīpsistī dē tuīs rēbus, quae mercule³ mihi nōn minōrī cūrae sunt quam meae. Valdē metuō nē frīgeās in hībernīs. Quamquam vōs nunc istīc satis calēre³ audiō; quō quidem nūntiō 10 valdē mercule dē tē timueram. Sed tū in rē mīlitārī multō es cautior quam in advocātiōnibus, quī neque in Ōceanō natāre voluerīs, studiōsissimus homō natandī, neque spectāre essedāriōs,⁴ quem anteā nē andābatā⁵ quidem dēfraudāre poterāmus. Sed iam satis iocātī sumus. Ego dē tē ad Caesarem quam diligenter scrīpserim, tūte scīs, quam saepe, ego; sed mer- 15 cule iam intermīseram, nē vidērer līberālissimī hominis meīque amantis-simī voluntātī ergā mē diffīdere.⁴ (F. VII, 10, 1–3)

¹ The contrary-to-fact condition shows that Trebatius had refused Caesar's invitation to go to Britain.

² The prefix means *just a little bit*.

³ The Gauls are making it "hot" for the Romans.

⁴ with dative

The Panthers Protest



Dē pantherīs, per eōs quī vēnārī solent agitur mandātū meō diligenter; sed mīra paucitās est, et eās quae sunt valdē aiunt querī quod nihil cuiquam īnsidiārum in meā prōvinciā nisi sibi fiat; itaque cōstituisse dīcuntur in Cāriam ex nostrā prōvinciā dēcēdere. Sed tamen sēdulō fit. Quicquid erit, 5 tibi erit, sed quid esset plānē nesciēbāmus. Mihi mercule magnae cūrae est aedilitās tua; ipse diēs mē admonēbat, scrīpsī enim haec ipsīs Megalēnsibus.¹ Tū velim ad mē dē omnī rei pūblicae statū quam diligentissimē perscrībās; ea enim certissima putābō quae ex tē cognōrō. (F. II, 11, 2)

¹ The festival of the goddess Cybele, or Magna Mater, at which time important games were held.

Get Well!

¹ plan (of writing)

² to whom I could give (a letter)

³ that, because

⁴ Patrae

⁵ there is no (reason) that

Tertiam ad tē hanc epistulam scrīpsī eōdem diē, magis īnstitūtī¹ meī tenendī causā, quia nactus eram cui darem,² quam quō³ habērem quid scrīberem. Igitur illa: quantum mē dīligis, tantum adhibē in tē dīligentiae; ad tua innumerābilia in mē officia adde hoc, quod mihi erit grātissimum omnium. Cum valētūdinis ratiōnem, ut spērō, habueris, habētō etiam nāvigātiōnis. 5 In Ītaliā euntibus omnibus ad mē litterās dabis, ut ego euntem Patrās⁴ nēminem praetermittō. Cūrā, cūrā tē, mī Tīrō. Quoniam nōn contigit ut simul nāvigārēs, nihil est⁵ quod festīnēs, nec quicquam cūrēs nisi ut valeās. Etiam atque etiam valē. VII Īdūs Nov.₁ Actiō vesperī. (F. XVI, 6)

₁ November 7

Peace or War

Lippitūdinis¹ meae signum tibi sit librārī manus² et eadem causa brevitatīs, etsī nunc quidem quod scrīberem nihil erat. Omnis expectātiō nostra erat in nūntiīs Brundisīnīs.³ Sī nactus hic⁴ esset Gnaeum nostrum, spēs dubia pācis; sīn ille⁵ ante trāmīssisset, exitiōsī bellī metus. Sed vidēsne in quem hominem⁶ inciderit rēs pūblica, quam acūtum, quam vigilantem, 5 quam parātum? Sī mehercule nēminem occīderit nec cuiquam⁷₁ quicquam adēmerit, ab iīs quī eum maximē timuerant maximē dīligētur. Multum mēcum mūnicipālēs hominēs loquuntur, multum rūsticānī. Nihil prōrsus aliud cūrant nisi agrōs, nisi villulās, nisi nummulōs₂ suōs. Et vidē quam conversa rēs est: illum quō antea cōnfidēbant metuunt, hunc amant quem 10 timēbant. Id quantīs nostrīs peccātīs vitiīsque ēvēnerit nōn possum sine molestiā cōgitāre. Quae autem impendēre putārem, scrīpseram ad tē et iam tuās litterās expectābam. (A. VIII, 13)

¹ sore eyes

² handwriting (subject)

³ reports from Brundisium

⁴ Caesar

⁵ Pompey

⁶ Caesar

^{5 7} from anyone

₁ Caesar's **clēmēntia**, known from the war in Gaul, was being continued and was having an effect.

₂ The diminutives show contempt: *their precious farm houses and their filthy money.*

Come Back to Rome,

¹ without

Cum Furnium nostrum tantum vīdissem, neque loquī neque audīre meō commodō potuissem, properārem² atque essem in itinere, praemissīs iam legiōnibus, praeterīre tamen nōn potuī quīn¹ et scriberem ad tē et illum mitterem grātiāsque agerem, etsī hoc et fēcī saepe et saepius mihi factūrus videor: ita dē mē merēris. In primīs ā tē petō, quoniam cōnfidō mē celeriter ad urbem ventūrum, ut tē ibi videam, ut tuō cōnsiliō, grātiā, dignitāte, ope omnium rērum ūtī possim. Ad prōpositum revertar: festīnātiōnī meae brevitatīque litterārum ignōscēs;³ reliqua ex Furniō cognōscēs. (A. IX, 6A)

¹ a very friendly letter from Caesar to Cicero, March, 49 B.C.

² still with cum

³ with dative

Cicero the Peacemaker

Ut lēgī tuās litterās, quās ā Furniō nostrō accēperam, quibus mēcum agēbās ut ad urbem essem, tē velle ūtī cōnsiliō et dignitāte meā minus sum admīrātus: dē grātiā et dē ope quid significārēs, mēcum ipse quaerēbam, spē tamen dēducēbar ad eam cōgitātiōnem, ut tē pro tuā admīrābilī ac singulārī sapientiā dē ōtiō, dē pāce, dē concordīā cīvium agī velle arbitrārer, et ad eam ratiōnem exīstimābam satis aptam esse et nātūram et persōnam meam. Quod sī ita est et sī qua¹ dē Pompeiō nostrō tuendō et tibi ac reī pūblicae reconciliandō cūra tē attingit, magis idōneum quam ego sum ad eam causam profectō reperiēs nēmīnem, quī et illī semper et senātuī, cum primum potuī, pācis auctor fuī, nec, sūmptīs armīs, bellī² ūllam partem attigī, iūdicāvīque eō bellō tē violārī, contrā cuius honōrem populī Rōmānī beneficiō³ concessum inimicī atque invīdī nīterentur. Sed, ut eō tempore nōn modo ipse fautor dignitātis tuae fuī, vērū etiam cēterīs auctor ad tē adiuvandum, sīc mē nunc Pompei dignitās vehementer movet: aliquot enim sunt annī cum vōs duo dēlēgī quōs praecipuē colerem et quibus essem, sīcut sum, amīcīssimus. Quam ob rem ā tē petō vel potius omnibus tē precibus ōrō et obtestor ut in tuīs maximīs cūrīs aliquid impertiās temporis huic quoque cōgitātiōnī, ut tuō beneficiō⁴ bonus⁵ vir, grātus, pius¹ dēnique esse in maximī beneficiī memoriā possim. (A. IX, 11A)

¹ loyal (to Pompey)

¹ with cūra

² Cicero had not yet joined Pompey.

³ A law had been passed permitting Caesar to run for the consulship while still in Gaul.

⁴ by not forcing Cicero to choose sides between Caesar and Pompey

⁵ a conservative politically, siding with the senate

Tullia's Illness

In maximīs meīs dolōribus excruciat¹ mē valētūdō Tulliae nostrae, dē quā nihil est quod ad tē plūra scribam; tibi enim aequē magnae cūrae esse certō sciō. Quod² mē propius vultis accēdere, videō ita esse faciendum; etiam ante fēcissem, sed mē multa impedivērunt, quae nē nunc quidem expedita sunt. Sed ā Pompōniō₁ expectō litterās, quās ad mē quam primum perferendās cūrēs velim. Dā operam ut valeās. (F. XIV, 19)

¹ tortures

² as to the fact that

₁ Atticus, who would send his letters to Cicero at Rome, where Terentia was

Tullia Has Arrived

S. v. b. E. v.₁ Tullia nostra vēnit ad mē pr.¹ Idūs Iūn. Cuius summā virtūte et singulārī hūmānitāte graviōre etiam sum dolōre affectus nostrā factum esse neglegentiā, ut longē aliā² in fortūnā esset atque² eius pietās³ ac dignitās postulābat. Nōbīs erat in animō Cicerōnem₂ ad Caesarem mittere, et cum eō Cn. Sallustium.₃ Sī profectus erit, faciam tē certiōrem. 5 Valētūdinem tuam cūrā diligenter. Valē. XVII Kal. Quīntilīs. (F. XIV, 11)

¹ = prīdiē

² different than

³ devotion (to her family)

₁ Sī valēs benest (for bene est). Ego valeō. A very formal old-fashioned formula, which confirms that he and Terentia were not getting along well. They were divorced soon after.

₂ Cicero's son

₃ not the historian Sallust

Have Everything Ready

In Tusculānum¹ nōs ventūrōs putāmus aut Nōnīs aut postrīdiē. Ibi ut₁ sint omnia parāta. Plūrēs enim fortasse nōbīscum erunt et, ut arbitror, diūtius ibi commorābimur.₂ Lābrum² sī in balineō nōn est, ut₁ sit; item cētera quae sunt ad vīctum et ad valētūdinem necessariā. Valē. Kal. Oct. dē Venusinō.³ 5 (F. XIV, 20).

¹ country home at Tusculum (not far from Rome)

² tub

³ country home at Venusia

₁ The *ut* clause depends on a verb such as cūrā to be supplied.

₂ This is rather casual, perhaps intended to infuriate Terentia: How many guests? How long will they stay? When will they arrive?

My Day

Haec igitur est nunc vīta nostra: māne salūtāmus¹ domī et bonōs² virōs multōs, sed trīstīs, et hōs laetōs victōrēs, quī mē quidem perofficiōsē et peramanter observant. Ubi salūtātiō dēflūxit,^{1,3} litterīs mē involvō: aut scrībō aut legō. Veniunt etiam quī mē audiunt quasi doctum hominem, quia 5 paulō sum quam ipsī doctior. Inde corporī omne tempus datur. Patriam ēlūxī² iam et gravius et diūtius quam ūlla māter ūnicum filium. Sed cūrā, sī mē amās, ut valeās, nē ego, tē iacente,³ bona tua comedim;⁴ statuī enim tibi nē aegrōtō quidem parcere. (F. IX, 20, 3)

¹ is ended

² I have mourned for (from ēlūgeō)

³ while you lie ill

¹ at the morning salūtātiō (reception)

² in the usual sense of *conservatives*

³ The metaphor is a good one, for the visitors seem to *flow* away.

⁴ an old form for *comedam*: *eat up*

Only Solitude Brings Comfort

Tē, tuīs negōtiīs relīctīs, nōlō ad mē venīre. Ego potius accēdam, sī diūtius impediēre; etsī nē discessissem quidem ē cōspectū tuō, nisi mē plānē nihil ūlla rēs adiuvāret. Quod sī esset aliquod levāmen, id esset in tē ūnō, et cum primum ab aliquō poterit esse, ā tē erit. Nunc tamen ipsum¹ 5 sine tē esse nōn possum. Sed nec tuae domī probābātur² nec meae poteram,¹ nec, sī propius essem uspiam, tēcum tamen essem: idem enim tē impediret quō minus mēcum essēs quod nunc etiam impedit. Mihi adhūc nihil prius³ fuit hāc sōlitūdine, quam vereor nē Philippus² tollat; herī enim vesperī vēnerat.³ Mē scrīptiō⁴ et litterae⁴ nōn lēniunt, sed obturbant. (A. XII, 16)

¹ at this very time (literally, now itself)

² I did not like it (literally, it was not approved [by me])

³ preferable, better

⁴ literary writing

¹ Supply esse.

² a neighbor

³ i.e., he arrived at his own villa from Rome

Mother-in-Law Trouble and a Boy in College

Haec ad tē meā manū.¹ Vidē. quaesō, quid agendum sit. Pūblilia ad mē scripsit mātrem suam—ut cum Pūbliō loquerer²—ad mē cum illō ventūram et sē ūnā,¹ sī ego paterer. Ōrat multīs et supplicibus verbīs ut liceat et ut sibi rescribam. Rēs quam molesta sit vidēs. Rescripsī mihi etiam gravius esse quam tum cum illī dīxissem mē solum esse velle: quārē nōlle mē hōc tempore eam ad mē venīre. Putābam, sī nihil rescripsissem, illam cum mātrem ventūram, nunc nōn putō; appārēbat enim illās litterās nōn illius esse.³ Illud autem quod fore videō ipsum volō vītāre, nē illae ad mē veniant. Et ūna est vītatiō, ut aliō:² nōllem,³ sed necesse est. Tē hoc nunc rogō ut explorēs ad quam diem hīc ita possim esse ut nē opprimar. Agēs, ut 10 scribis, temperāte.

Cicerōnī⁴ velim hoc prōpōnās, ita⁴ tamen sī⁴ tibi nōn inīquum vidēbitur, ut sūmptūs⁵ huius peregrīnātiōnis, quibus⁶ sī Rōmae esset domumque condūceret, quod facere cōgitābat, facile contentus futūrus erat, accom-
modet ad mercēdēs Argilētī et Aventīnī et, cum eī prōposueris, ipse velim 15 reliqua moderēre, quemadmodum ex iīs mercēdibus suppedītēmus eī quod opus sit. Praestābō nec Bibulum nec Acidīnum nec Messallam,⁷ quōs Athēnīs futūrōs audiō, maiōrēs sūmptūs factūrōs quam quod ex iīs mercēdibus recipiētur. Itaque velim videās, prīmum, conductōrēs⁵ quī sint et quantī,⁶ deinde, ut sint quī ad diem⁷ solvant, et quid viāticī, quid instrūmentī satis 20 sit. Iūmentō⁸ certē Athēnīs nihil opus erit; quibus autem in viā ūtātur, domī sunt plūra quam opus erit, quod etiam tū animadvertis. (A. XII, 32)

¹ along (with them)

² that I go elsewhere (Supply discēdam.)

³ I could wish not

⁴ only if

⁵ renters (of Cicero's apartments)

⁶ at what price

⁷ on the day (due)

⁸ horses (for carrying baggage)

¹ This implies that many of his letters were dictated to a secretary. This one was confidential.

² Cicero is so excited that he is incoherent; he should have said that the mother and brother were coming.

³ i.e., the letter was written by the mother in Publilia's name

⁴ young Cicero

⁵ object of accomodet

⁶ The antecedent is mercēdēs.

⁷ rich fellow students, of the best families in Rome

What a Father Likes to Hear,

¹ and with the highest reputation for proper behavior

² how highly I value you

³ on account of

⁴ such a blessing (as having such a son)

⁵ that I am flattering you (literally, (just) giving this to your ears)

⁶ in fact

⁷ to those

⁸ brought into the conversation (i.e., hinted)

⁹ perform your function (as a father)

¹⁰ on vacation from (with *illum*)

¹¹ at a run (literally, with full step)

¹² = ut

Athēnās vēnī a. d. XI Kal. Iūn. atque ibi, quod maximē optābam, vīdī filium tuum dēditum optimīs studiīs summāque modestiae fāmā.¹ Quā ex rē quantam voluptātem cēperim scīre poteris, etiam mē tacente; nōn enim nescīs quantū² tē faciam et quam prō³ nostrō veterrimō vērissimōque amōre omnibus tuīs etiam minimīs commodīs, nōn modo tantō bonō⁴ gaudeam. Nōlī putāre, mī Cicerō, mē hoc auribus tuīs dare;⁵ nihil adulēscen-² tuō atque adeō⁶ nostrō (nihil enim mihi ā tē potest esse sēiūnctum) aut amābil-⁷ ius omnibus iīs quī Athēnīs sunt est aut studiōsius eārum artium quās tū maximē amās, hoc est optimārum. Itaque tibi, quod vērē facere possum, 10 libenter quoque grātulor nec minus etiam nōbīs, quod eum, quem necesse erat dīligere quālis-⁸ cumque esset, tālem habēmus ut libenter quoque dīligāmus.

Quī cum mihi in sermōne iniēcisset⁸ sē velle Asiā vīsere, nōn modo invitātus, sed etiam rogātus est ā mē ut id, potissimum nōbīs obtinentibus prōvinciam,³ faceret; cui nōs et cārītate et amōre tuum officium praestātūrōs⁹ 15 nōn dēbēs dubitāre. Illud quoque erit nōbīs cūrae, ut Cratippus⁴ ūnā cum eō sit, nē putēs in Asiā fēriātum¹⁰ illum ab iīs studiīs in quae tuā cohortātiōne incitātur futurum; nam illum parātum, ut videō, et ingressum plēnō gradū¹¹ cohortārī nōn intermittēmus, quō¹² in diēs longius discendō exercendōque sē prōcēdat. (F. XII, 16, 1–2)

¹ written by Trebonius to Cicero, May, 55 B.C.

² with *amābilis*

³ Trebonius stopped in Athens on his way to his province in Asia Minor.

⁴ The young man's philosophy teacher. Of course it was the young Cicero's suggestion that Cratippus come along.

Young Cicero Puts on the Charm,

Verba Ūtilia: amplexor, cōspectus, cotīdiānus, cumulus, dulcis, ēnītor, in diēs, praedium, rūmor, suspīciō

Cum vehementer tabellāriōs exspectārem cotīdiē, aliquandō vēnērunt post diem quadrāgēsimum et sextum quam² ā vōbīs discesserant. Quōrum mihi fuit adventus exoptātissimus; nam cum maximam cēpissēm laetitiam ex hūmānissimī et cārissimī patris epistulā, tum vērō iūcundissimae tuae 5 litterae cumulum mihi gaudī attulērunt.

¹ young Cicero to Tiro, July-October, 44 B.C.

² with post

Grātōs tibi optātōsque esse quī dē mē rūmōrēs afferuntur nōn dubitō, mī
 dulcissime Tīrō, praestābōque et ēnītar ut in diēs magis magisque haec
 nāscēns dē mē duplicētur opīniō. Quārē, quod pollicēris tē būcinātōrem¹
 fore exīstimātiōnis meae, firmō id cōstantīque animō faciās licet; tantum
 enim mihi dolōrem cruciātumque attulērunt errāta aetātis meae ut nōn solum
 animus ā factīs, sed aurēs quoque ā commemorātiōne abhorreant. Quoniam
 igitur tum ex mē doliustī, nunc ut duplicētur tuum ex mē gaudium praestābō.
 Cratippō mē scītō² nōn ut discipulum sed ut fīlium esse coniūctissimum;
 nam cum audiō illum libenter, tum etiam propriam eius suāvitātem vehe-
 menter amplector. Sum tōtōs diēs cum eō noctisque saepenumērō³ partem; 15
 exōrō enim ut mēcum quam saepissimē cēnet. Hāc intrōductā cōnsuētū-
 dine, saepe īnscentibus nōbīs et cēnantibus obrēpit, sublātāque sevērītate
 philosophiae, hūmānissimē nōbīscum iocātur. Quārē dā operam ut hunc
 tālem, tam iūcundum, tam excellentem virum videās quam prīmum. Nam
 quid ego dē Brutiō dīcam? Huic ego locum in proximō⁴ condūxī et, ut pos- 20
 sum, ex meīs angustiīs⁵ illius sustentō tenuitātem. Praetereā dēclāmitāre
 Graecē apud Cassium īstituī; Latīnē autem apud Bruttium exercērī volō.

Dē Gorgiā autem quod mihi scrībīs, erat quidem ille in cotīdiānā dēclāmā-
 tiōne ūtilis, sed omnia postposuī dum modo praeceptīs patris pārērem;³
 διαρρήδην⁶ enim scrīpserat ut eum dīmitterem statim. Tergiversārī⁷ nōluī. 25
 nē mea nimia σπουδή⁸ suspīciōnem eī⁴ aliquam importāret; deinde illud
 etiam mihi succurrēbat, grave esse mē dē iūdiciō patris iūdicāre. Tuum
 tamen studium et cōnsilium grātum acceptumque est mihi. Excūsātiōnem
 angustiarū⁹ tuī temporis accipiō; sciō enim quam soleās esse occupātus.

Ēmissee tē praedium vehementer gaudeō, fēliciterque tibi rem istam 30
 ēvenīre cupiō. Rūsticus Rōmānus factus es. Quō modō ego mihi nunc ante
 oculōs tuum iūcundissimum cōnspectum prōpōnō? Videor enim vidēre
 ementem tē rūsticās rēs, cum vīlicō loquentem, in laciniā¹⁰ servantem ex
 mēnsā secundā¹¹ sēmīna.

De mandātīs, quod tibi cūrae fuit, est mihi grātum; sed petō ā tē ut quam 35
 celerrimē mihi librārius¹² mittātur, maximē quidem Graecus; multum mihi
 enim ēripitur operae in exscrībendīs hypomnēmatīs.¹³ (F. XVI, 21, 1–4, 6–8)

¹ *trumpeter* (Tiro will blow Cicero's horn for him.)

² *know; I assure you*

³ = *saepe*

⁴ *nearby*

⁵ *slender means* (anything but true)

⁶ *diarrhēden, definitely*

⁷ *be evasive*

⁸ *spoudē, zeal* (for Gorgias)

⁹ *lack*

¹⁰ *in a fold* (of your tunic)

¹¹ *dessert*

¹² *secretary* (to copy his notes)

¹³ *notes*

³ Cicero had ordered his son to dismiss Gorgias for his bad influence.

⁴ the father, who might get the idea that his son really liked Gorgias

⁵ "The poor boy," Tiro may have said, "has to copy his own notes."





Unit VIII

Cicero's Philosophical Works

The Acropolis of Athens sits atop the highest point in the city. Its beauty and majesty probably provided much inspiration to the early Greek philosophers. The Romans borrowed much of their philosophy from the Greeks. There were several schools of Greek philosophy, the best known of which were Stoicism and Epicureanism. Western philosophy actually began in Greece with Thales of Miletus. His two best-known students were Anaximander and Anaximenes. They sought an element or force behind things that would explain everything. Thales believed this element was water, Anaximander thought it was the infinite, and Anaximenes said it was air. Socrates of Athens was more concerned with values, morals, and how a person should act—the right way of life. Plato was a disciple of Socrates and founder of the Academy. He developed the first comprehensive philosophical system. Aristotle was a pupil of Plato but broke with him. He stressed the importance of explaining the changing world that people live in.

Introducing Cicero's Philosophical Works



Perhaps the word philosophy suggests to you something obscure and formidable. Sometimes it is just that; for example, the philosophy of the ancient Greek Zeno. But it is not frightening in the form in which Cicero offered it. He presented Greek philosophy in a popular way to his Latin-speaking audience.

It is difficult to describe the nature and boundaries of the study of philosophy, especially since philosophers themselves have not always agreed on this point. However, we can say that over the centuries many philosophers have wrestled with some of the same questions, among them: What is truth? What is beauty? How should we act to achieve happiness?

Ethics, the branch of philosophy dealing with this last type of question, was particularly attractive to the practical Romans, who were interested in such considerations as the relationship of conduct to the good life, or happiness. And so Cicero's *Dē officiīs*, "On Duties," written for his son, a student in Athens, had great appeal (but probably not for its chief target). As is apparent from letters of this period, young Cicero needed something of this sort, though there is no indication that he profited by it.

The *Dē senectūte*, "On Old Age," is put in the form of a dialogue between Cato the Elder and two young men. Cato is chosen because he is a good example of a man who remained vigorous in old age. The essay denies that old age is something undesirable and stresses its positive advantages.

The *Dē amicitia*, "On Friendship," is also in dialogue form. Both treatises are dedicated to Cicero's old friend Atticus; you have already read some of Cicero's letters to him.

We are indebted to Cicero the philosopher chiefly because he made the glories of Greek thought available and palatable to his fellow Romans and to later ages, and since Latin in Cicero's time had few words for Greek philosophical concepts, he had to and did create them. The influence of Cicero's Latin philosophical vocabulary is felt even in modern times.

Justice

Sed cum statuissem scribere ad tē¹ aliquid hōc tempore, multa posthāc, ab eō ōrdīrī maximē voluī quod et aetātī tuae esset² aptissimum et auctōritātī meae. Nam cum³ multa sint in philosophiā et gravia et ūtilia accūrātē cōpiōsēque ā philosophīs disputāta, lātissimē patēre³ videntur ea quae dē officiīs trādita ab illīs et praecepta sunt. Nūlla enim vītae pars neque 5 pūblicīs neque prīvātīs, neque forēnsibus neque domesticīs in rēbus, neque sī tēcum agās quid⁴ neque sī cum alterō contrahās, vacāre officiō⁵ potest, in eōque² et colendō sita vītae est honestās⁶ omnis et neglegendō turpitūdō.

Sed iūstitiae primum mūnus est ut nē cui quis noceat nisi lacessītus iniūriā, deinde ut commūnibus prō⁷ commūnibus ūtātur, prīvātīs ut suīs. 10 Sunt autem prīvāta nūlla nātūrā, sed aut vetere occupātiōne, ut quī quondam in vacua⁸ vēnērunt, aut victōriā, ut quī bellō potītī sunt, aut lēge,³ pactiōne,⁹ condiciōne,⁹ sorte;⁹ ex quō fit ut ager Arpīnās Arpīnātium¹⁰ dīcātur, Tusculānus Tusculānōrum, similisque est prīvātārū possessiōnum discriptiō.¹¹ Ex quō, quia suum¹² cuiusque fit eōrum quae nātūrā fuerant 15 commūnia,¹² quod cuique obtigit, id quisque teneat; eō plūs¹³ sī quis sibi appetet, violābit iūs hūmānae societātis.

Fundāmentum autem est iūstitiae fidēs, id est dictōrum¹⁴ conventōrumque cōstantia et vēritās.¹⁴

Meminerīmus autem etiam adversus¹⁵ infimōs iūstitiam esse servandam. 20 Est autem infima condiciō et fortūna servōrum, quibus¹⁶ nōn male praecipunt quī ita iubent ūtī ut mercennāriīs:¹⁷ operam exigendam, iūsta praebenda.¹⁸ Cum autem duōbus modīs, id est aut vī aut fraude, fīat iniūria, fraus quasi vulpēculae.¹⁹ vīs leōnis vidētur: utrumque homine aliēnissimum,⁴ sed fraus odiō digna maiōre. Tōtīus autem iniūstitiae nūlla capitālīor²⁰ est quam 25 eōrum⁵ quī tum cum maximē fallunt id agunt ut virī bonī esse videantur. Dē iūstitiā satis dictum. (Off. I, 4, 20, 23, 41)

¹ would be

² although

³ to have the widest practical application (literally, to spread most widely)

⁴ if you are dealing with something by yourself

⁵ be free from duty

⁶ all that is honorable

⁷ as

⁸ unoccupied (lands)

⁹ agreement, terms (of purchase), or allotment

¹⁰ to belong to the people of Arpinum

¹¹ assignment

¹² of those things which had been common (property) (part) becomes the property of an individual

¹³ more than that

¹⁴ truthfully abiding by things promised and agreed upon

¹⁵ toward (preposition)

¹⁶ to use whom (with ūtī)

¹⁷ hired men

¹⁸ necessities to be furnished

¹⁹ fox

²⁰ more deserving of capital punishment

¹ Cicero's son

² for *inque* *eō*, but *—que* is not attached to monosyllabic prepositions

³ such as laws giving public land to veterans

⁴ We say *alien to* rather than *from*.

⁵ i.e., hypocrites

Sense of Duty

¹ services

² looks to us (for help)

³ friendly

Sed si contentiō quaedam et comparātiō fiat quibus plūrimum tribuendum sit officiī, prīcipēs sint patria et parentēs, quōrum beneficiīs¹ maximīs obligātī sumus, proximī liberī tōtaque domus, quae spectat² in nōs sōlōs neque aliud ūllum potest habēre perfugium, deinceps bene convenientēs³ propinquī, quibuscum commūnis etiam fortūna plērumque est. (Off. I. 58)

Civic Courage

¹ attack is made

² Let arms yield to the toga (worn by civilians); let the laurel wreath (of the general) yield to (civilian) glory.

³ to omit

⁴ peace

⁵ he would have gained

⁶ (a place) where

⁷ civic courage

Illud autem optimum est, in quod invādī¹ solēre ab improbīs et invidīs audiō:

Cēdant arma togae, concēdat laurea laudī.²

Ut enim aliōs omittam,³ nōbīs rem pūblicam gubernantibus, nōne togae arma cessērunt? Neque enim perīculum in rē pūblicā fuit gravius umquam nec maius ōtium.⁴ Ita cōsiliīs diligentiāque nostrā celeriter dē manibus audācissimōrum cīvium dēlāpsa arma ipsa cecidērunt. Quae rēs igitur gesta umquam in bellō tanta? Quī triumphus cōferendus?

Licet enim mihi, M. fili, apud tē glōriārī, ad quem et hērēditās huius glōriae et factōrum imitātiō pertinet. Mihi quidem certē vir abundāns bellicīs laudibus, Cn. Pompeius, multīs audientibus, hoc tribuit, ut dīceret frūstrā sē triumphum tertium dēportātūrum fuisse⁵ nisi meō in rem pūblicam beneficiō ubi⁶ triumphāret esset habitūrus. Sunt igitur domesticae fortitudinēs⁷ nōn inferiōrēs mīlitāribus; in quibus plūs etiam quam in hīs operae studīque pōnendum est. (Off. I. 77–78)

Choice of a Career

Cōstituendum est quōs nōs et quālēs esse velīmus et in quō genere¹ vītae; quae dēlībērātiō est omnium difficillima. Ineunte enim adulēscentiā,² cum est maxima imbecillitās cōsilī,³ tum id sibi quisque genus aetātis dēgendae cōstituit quod maximē adamāvit. Itaque ante,⁴ implicātur aliquō certō genere cursūque vīvendī quam potuit quod optimum esset iūdicāre.⁵ Plērumque autem parentium praeceptīs imbūtī ad eōrum cōnsuētūdinem mōremque⁶ dēdūcimur. Aliī multitudinis iūdicīō feruntur,⁷ quaeque maiōrī partī pulcherrima videntur, ea maximē exoptant; nōn nullī tamen sīve fēlīcitatē quādam⁸ sīve bonitātē nātūrae sine parentium disciplīnā rēctam vītae secūtī sunt viam. Illud autem maximē rārū genus est eōrum quī aut¹⁰ excellentī ingenī magnitūdine aut praeclārā ēruditiōne atque doctrīnā aut utrāque rē ōrnātī spatium etiam dēlībērandī habuērunt quem potissimum vītae cursum sequī vellent; in quā dēlībērātiōne ad suam cuiusque nātūram cōnsilium est omne revocandum.⁷ (*Off.* I, 117–119)

¹ career

² at the beginning of youth

³ judgment

⁴ their (the parents') customs and manners

⁵ are carried away

⁵ ⁶ by a sort of good luck

⁷ the judgment must be based on each person's nature (literally, must be called back to)

¹ with quam

Personal Appearance

Cum autem pulchritūdinis duo genera sint, quōrum in alterō venustās¹ sit, in alterō dignitās, venustātem muliebrem dūcere² dēbēmus, dignitātem virilem. Ergō et ā fōrmā removeātur omnis virō nōn dignus ōrnātus³ et huic simile vitium in gestū mōtūque caveātur. Nam et palaestricī mōtūs⁴ sunt saepe odiōsiōrēs et histriōnum nōn nullī gestūs⁵ ineptiīs⁶ nōn vacant et in utrōque genere quae sunt rēcta et simplicia laudantur. Fōrmae autem dignitās colōris⁷ bonitātē tuenda est, color exercitātiōnibus corporis. Adhibenda praetereā munditia est nōn odiōsa neque exquīsita nimis, tantum⁸ quae fugiat agrestem et inhūmānam neglegentiam. Eadem ratiō est habenda vestītūs, in quō, sicut in plērīsq̄ue rēbus, mediocritās optima est. (*Off.* I, 130)

¹ loveliness

² consider

³ every adornment not becoming to a man

⁴ the movements (taught in the) gymnasium

⁵ ⁵ some gestures of actors

⁶ affectation

⁷ complexion

⁸ only enough to avoid

Honorable Careers for Gentlemen



¹ trades and gainful occupations

² tax collectors and usurers

³ manual labor

⁴ contract

⁵ fraud

⁶ fishsellers, butchers, cooks,
sausage makers, fishermen

⁷ burlesque show

⁸ the teaching of worthy subjects

⁹ these are honorable for those
whose social status they suit

¹⁰ importing

¹¹ distributing to many without fraud

¹² as they often made their way from
the high seas to the harbor, so
they made their way from the
harbor to the country

Iam dē artificiīs et quaestibus,¹ quī liberālēs habendī, quī sordidī sint, haec ferē accēpimus. Prīmum improbantur iī quaestūs quī in odia hominum incurrunt, ut portītōrum,² ut faenerātōrum. Illiberālēs autem et sordidī quaestūs mercennāriōrum omnium, quōrum operae,³ nōn quōrum artēs
5 emuntur; est enim in illīs ipsa mercēs auctōrāmentum⁴ servitūtis. Sordidī etiam putandī quī mercentur ā mercātōribus quod statim vēdant;¹ nihil enim prōficient nisi admodum mentiantur, nec vērō est quicquam turpius vānitāte.⁵ Opificēsque omnēs in sordidā arte versantur; nec enim quicquam ingenuum potest habēre officīna. Minimēque artēs eae probandae quae
10 ministrae sunt voluptātum:

Cētāriī, laniī, coquī, fartōrēs, piscātōrēs,⁶

ut ait Terentius. Adde hūc, sī placet, unguentāriōs, saltātōrēs, tōtumque lūdum tālārium.⁷ In quibus autem artibus aut prūdētia maior inest aut nōn mediocris ūtilitās quaeritur, ut medicīna, ut architectūra, ut doctrīna⁸
15 rērum honestārum, hae⁹ sunt eīs quōrum ōrdinī conveniunt honestae.⁹ Mercātūra autem, sī tenuis est, sordida putanda est; sīn magna et cōpiōsa, multa undique apportāns¹⁰ multisque sine vānitāte impertiēns,¹¹ nōn est admodum vituperanda, atque etiam sī satiāta³ quaestū vel contenta potius, ut saepe ex altō in portum,¹² ex ipsō portū sē in agrōs possessiōnēsque con-
20 tulit, vidētur iūre optimō posse laudārī. Omnium autem rērum ex quibus aliquid acquiritur, nihil est agrī cultūrā melius, nihil dulcius, nihil ūberius, nihil homine liberō dignius; dē quā quoniam in Catōne maiōre satis multa dīximus, illinc assūmēs quae ad hunc locum pertinēbunt. (*Off.* I, 150–151)

¹ i.e., retailers

² quoted from Terence, writer of comedy

³ modifies **mercātūra** but actually refers to those engaged in business

Knowledge and Courage and Their Value in Society

Atque ut apium exāmina¹ nōn fingendōrum favōrum² causā congregantur, sed, cum congregabilia nātūrā sint, fingunt favōs, sīc hominēs (ac multō etiam magis nātūrā congregātī) adhibent agendī cōgitandīque³ sollertiam. Itaque nisi ea virtūs⁴ quae cōstat ex hominibus tuendīs, id est ex societāte generis hūmānī, attingat⁵ cognitiōnem rērum, sōlivaga⁶ cognitiō et iēiūna videātur, itemque magnitūdō animī,⁷ remōtā communitate coniūctiōneque hūmānā.⁸ feritās sit quaedam et immānitās. Ita fit ut vincat cognitiōnis studium cōsociātiō hominum atque communitās.⁷ Nec vērū est quod dīcitur ā quibusdam, propter necessitatem vītae,³ quod ea quae nātūra dēsiderāret cōsequī sine aliīs atque efficere nōn possēmus, 10 idcirco initam esse cum hominibus communitatem et societatem; quod si omnia nōbīs quae ad vīctum cultumque pertinent, quasi virgulā⁸ dīvīnā, ut aiunt, suppeditārentur, tum optimō quisque ingeniō, negōtiīs omnibus omissīs, tōtum sē in cognitiōne et scientiā collocāret. Nōn est ita. Nam et sōlitūdinem fugeret et socium studī quaereret, tum docēre, tum discere vel- 15 let, tum audīre, tum dīcere. Ergō omne officium quod ad coniūctiōnem hominum et ad societatem tuendam valet antepōnendum est illī officiō quod cognitiōne et scientiā continētur. (Off. I. 157–158)

¹ swarms of bees

² honeycombs

³ is attached to

⁴ solitary

⁵ courage

⁶ if a social attitude is left out

⁷ (literally, is removed)

⁸ social needs take precedence over the pursuit of knowledge (by an individual)

⁸ wand

¹ i.e., together with others

² i.e., justice

³ In translating, put the last part of the sentence (from **idcirco**) next, then the **quod** clause: *it is not true that social life began on account of the need of obtaining food because, etc.*

Honor Among Thieves

Atque eīs etiam quī vēdunt, emunt, condūcunt, locant, contrahendisque negōtiīs implicantur, iūstitia ad rem gerendam necessariā est, cuius tanta vīs est ut nē illī quidem quī maleficiō et scelere pāscuntur¹ possint sine ūllā particulā iūstitiae vīvere. Nam quī eōrum cuipiam² quī ūnā³ latrōcinantur

¹ live by crime

² from any of those who

³ with him

5 fūrātur aliquid aut ēripit, is sibi nē in latrōciniō quidem relinquit locum;¹
 ille autem qui archipīrāta dīcitur, nisi aequābiliter praedam dispertiat, aut
 interficiātur ā sociīs aut relinquiātur. Quīn etiam lēgēs latrōnum esse dīcun-
 tur, quibus pāreant, quās observent. Itaque propter aequābilem praedae
 partitīōnem et Bardūlis Illyrius latrō, dē quō est apud Theopompum.
 10 magnās opēs habuit et multō maiōrēs Viriāthus Lūsitānus, cui quidem
 etiam exercitūs nostrī imperātōrēsque cessērunt, quem C. Laelius, is quī
 Sapiēns ūsūrpātur,⁴ praetor frēgit et comminuit ferōcitatēque eius ita
 repressit ut facile bellum reliquīs trāderet. Cum igitur tanta vīs iūstitiae sit
 ut ea etiam latrōnum opēs firmet atque augeat, quantam eius vim inter
 15 lēgēs et iūdicia et in cōstitutā rē pūblicā fore putāmus? (*Off.* II, 40)

⁴ uses (the name of) the Wise

¹ i.e., he loses his place in the gang of robbers (*latrōciniō*)

The Responsibility of Wealth

Id quidem nōn dubium est, quīn¹ illa benignitās quae cōnstat ex operā²
 et industriā et honestior sit et lātius pateat³ et possit prōdesse plūribus; nōn
 numquam tamen est largiendum,⁴ nec hoc benignitātis genus omnīnō repu-
 diandum est et saepe idōneīs hominibus indigentibus dē rē familiārī⁵
 5 impertiendum, sed dīligenter atque moderātē. Multī enim patrimonīa
 effūdērunt incōsultē largiendō.

Atque etiam illae impēnsae meliōrēs, mūrī, nāvālia,⁶ portūs, aquārum
 ductūs omniaque quae ad ūsum reī pūblīcae pertinent. Quamquam quod
 praesēns tamquam in manum⁷ datur iūcundius est; tamen haec in posterum
 10 grātiōra. Theātra, porticūs, nova templa verēcundius⁸ reprehendō propter
 Pompeium. Tōta igitur ratiō tālium¹ largitīōnum genere⁹ vitiōsa est, tempo-
 ribus¹⁰ necessāria, et tum ipsum¹¹ et ad facultātēs accommodanda et medi-
 ocritātē moderanda est. In illō autem alterō genere largiendī,² quod ā
 liberālitate proficīscitur, nōn ūnō modō in disparibus causīs affectī esse
 15 dēbēmus. Alia causa est eius quī calamitātē premitur et eius quī rēs
 meliōrēs quaerit, nullīs suīs rēbus adversīs.¹² Prōpēnsior benignitās esse
 dēbēbit in calamitōsīs, nisi forte erunt dignī calamitātē. (*Off.* II, 54, 60, 61)

¹ i.e., of such large amounts

² i.e., to individuals

¹ that

² service

³ covers more ground

⁴ money should be given

⁵ from one's resources

⁶ docks

⁷ cash in hand, so to speak

(as presents to individuals)

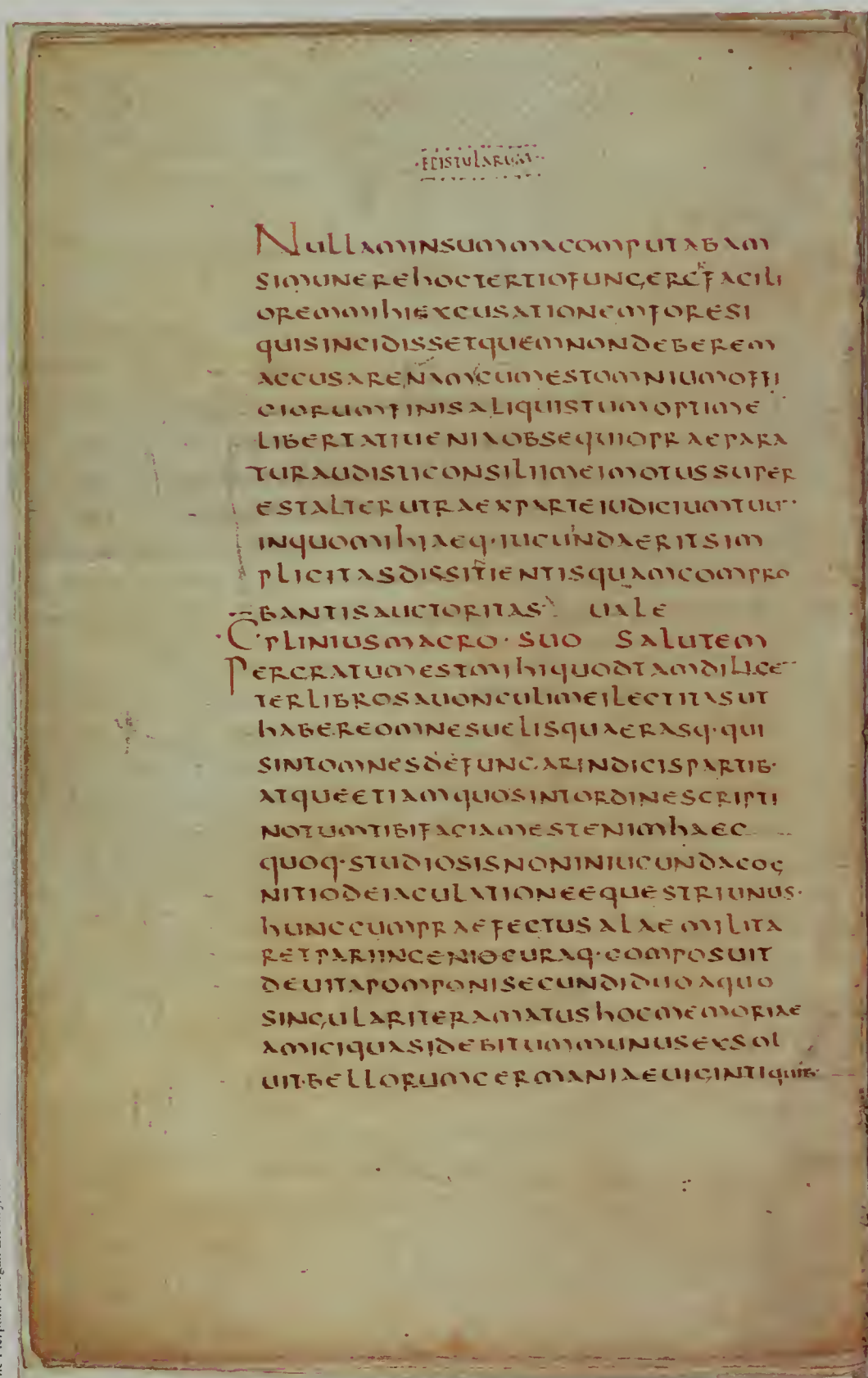
⁸ with more restraint

⁹ in nature, essentially

¹⁰ (but) necessary in (certain)
circumstances

¹¹ even then (literally, then itself)

¹² though none of his affairs is in
bad shape



This manuscript from the early 6th century is the oldest known copy of Pliny's letters. You can see the word *Epistulārum* at the very top. The first line reads *Nūllam in summā computābam*. What other words can you pick out? Notice that, like other ancient manuscripts, no spaces are left between words, and hyphens are not used at the end of a line. Pliny's name appears in red near the center. How can you tell—what words give you a clue—that the red line is the beginning of something new?

Cancellation of Debts

¹ cancellation of debts

² what is their meaning

³ a debt which would injure

⁴ if there should be (a debt), (it should) not (happen) that

⁵ profit (by) someone else's money

⁶ holds together

⁷ debts

⁸ Never was there more violent agitation that (debts) be not paid than in any consulship.

⁹ though no longer advantageous to him

Tabulae vērō novae¹ quid habent argumentī,² nisi ut emās meā₁ pecūniā fundum, eum tū habeās, ego nōn habeam pecūniam? Quam ob rem nē sit aes aliēnum quod³ reī pūblicae noceat, prōvidendum est; quod multīs ratiōnibus cavērī potest; nōn,⁴ sī fuerit, ut locuplētēs suum perdant, 5 dēbitōrēs lucrentur aliēnum.⁵ Nec enim ūlla rēs vehementius rem pūblicam continet⁶ quam fidēs, quae esse nūlla potest nisi erit necessāria solūtiō rērum crēditārum.⁷ Numquam vehementius āctum est quam, mē cōnsule, nē solverētur.⁸ Armīs et castrīs temptāta rēs est ab omnī genere hominum et ōrdine; quibus ita restitī ut hoc tōtum malum dē rē pūblicā tollerētur. 10 Numquam nec maius aes aliēnum fuit nec melius nec₂ facilius dissolutum est; fraudandī enim spē sublātā, solvendī necessitās cōnsecūta est. At vērō hic nunc victor, tum quidem victus, quae cōgitārat ea perfēcit, cum eius iam nihil interesset.⁹ Tanta in eō peccandī libīdō fuit ut hoc ipsum eum dēlectāret, peccāre, etiam sī causa nōn esset. (*Off.* II, 84)

₁ i.e., that of the lender

₂ We would say *or*.

The Activities of Old Age

Ā rēbus gerendīs senectūs abstrahit.₁ Quibus? An eīs quae iuventūte geruntur et vīribus? Nūllaene igitur rēs sunt senīlēs, quae, vel infirmīs corporibus, animō tamen administrentur?

Nihil igitur afferunt quī in rē gerendā versārī senectūtem negant, sim- 5 ilēsque¹ sunt ut sī quī gubernātōrem in nāvīgandō nihil agere dīcant, cum aliī mālōs scandant, aliī per forōs cursent, aliī sentīnam exhaustiant, ille autem clāvum tenēns quiētus sedeat in puppī. Nōn facit ea quae iuvenēs, at vērō multō maiōra et meliōra facit. Nōn vīribus aut vėlōcitāte aut celeritāte corporum rēs magnae geruntur, sed cōnsiliō, auctōritāte, sentiētiā; quibus 10 nōn modo nōn orbārī, sed etiam augērī senectūs solet. Nisi forte ego vōbīs, quī et mīles et tribūnus et lēgātus et cōnsul versātus sum in variō genere bellōrum, cessāre nunc videor cum bella nōn gerō. At senātuī quae sint gerenda praescrībō et quō modō; Carthāginī male iam diū cōgitantī² bellum multō ante dēnūntiō; dē quā verērī nōn ante dēsīnam quam illam 15 excīsam esse cognōverō. (*Sen.* 15, 17–18)

¹ they are like (people) who say

² plotting evil

₁ This is the charge made by some people.

A Busy Old Age

Cedo,¹ quī² vestram rem pūblicam tantam amīsisistis tam citō?
Sic enim percontantur in Naevī poētae Lūdō; respondentur et alia et hoc
in prīmīs:

Prōveniēbant ōrātōrēs novī, stultī adulēscenulī.

Temeritās est vidēlicet flōrentis aetātis, prūdētia senēscēntis.

Possum nōmināre ex agrō Sabīnō rūsticōs Rōmānōs, vicīnōs et familiārēs
meōs, quibus absentibus, numquam ferē ūlla in agrō maiōra opera fiunt,
nōn serendīs,³ nōn percipiendīs, nōn condendīs fructibus. Quamquam in
aliīs⁴ minus hoc mīrum est; nēmō enim est tam senex quī sē annum⁵ nōn
putet posse vīvere; sed idem in eīs ēlabōrant quae sciunt nihil ad sē omnīnō 10
pertinēre:

Serīt arborēs quae alterī saeculō prōsint,
ut ait Stātius noster in Synephebīs.⁶

Vidētis ut⁷ senectūs nōn modo languida atque iners nōn sit, vērūm etiam
sit operōsa et semper agēns aliquid et mōliēns, tāle scīlicet quāle cuiusque 15
studium in superiōre vītā fuit. Quid quī⁸ etiam addiscunt aliquid? Ut et ⁹
Solōnem versibus glōriantem vidēmus, quī sē cotīdiē aliquid addiscentem
dīcit senem fierī, et ego fēcī, quī litterās Graecās senex didicī: quās quidem
sīc avidē arripui (quasi diūturnam sitim explēre cupiēns) ut ea ipsa mihi
nōta essent quibus mē nunc exemplīs¹⁰ ūtī vidētis. Quod cum fēcisse 20
Sōcratem in fidibus audīrem,¹¹ vellem¹² equidem etiam illud (discēbant
enim fidibus₁ antīquī), sed in litterīs certē ēlabōrāvī. (Sen. 20, 24, 26)

¹ Tell me

² how (adverb)

³ at (the time of) sowing

⁴ other things (than the one which follows, about planting trees)

⁵ another year

⁶ The Young Companions (a play)

⁷ how

⁸ What of those who?

⁹ not only . . . but also (with the next et)

¹⁰ as examples

¹¹ when I heard that Socrates had done this (i.e., learned in old age) on the lyre

¹² I could have wished

₁ Supply *canere, to play*.

Occupations in Old Age

Quid in leviōribus studiīs, sed tamen acūtīs?¹ Quam gaudēbat bellō suō Pūnicō Naevius! Quam Truculentō Plautus, quam Pseudolō! Vīdī etiam senem Līvium; quī cum sex annīs ante quam ego nātus sum, fābulam docuisset,¹ Centōne Tuditānōque cōsulibus,² usque ad adulēscēntiam
5 meam prōcessit aetāte.²

Veniō nunc ad voluptātēs agricolārum, quibus ego incrēdibiliter dēlectō; quae nec ūllā impediuntur senectūte et mihi ad sapientis vītā proximē videntur accēdere. Habent enim ratiōnem³ cum terrā, quae numquam recūsāt imperium⁴ nec umquam sine ūsūrā reddit quod accēpit, sed aliās⁵
10 minōre, plērumque maiōre cum faenore. Quamquam mē quidem nōn fructus modo, sed etiam ipsius terrae vīs ac nātūra⁶ dēlectat.

Sed veniō ad agricolās, nē ā mē ipsō recēdam. In agrīs erant³ tum senātōrēs, id est senēs,⁴ siquidem arantī L. Quīntiō Cincinnātō nūntiātum est eum dictātōrem esse factum; cuius dictātōris iussū magister equitum,⁵ C. Servīlius Ahāla,
15 Sp. Maelium rēgnum appetentem occupātum interēmit.⁷ (*Sen.* 50, 51, 56)

¹ i.e., that demand keenness

² 240 B.C.

³ i.e., they lived on farms

⁴ **Senātor** is derived from **senex**.

⁵ The *master of the horse* was the dictator's assistant.

Authority, The Reward of Old Age

Sed in omnī ōrātiōne¹ mementōte eam mē senectūtem laudāre quae fundāmētīs adulēscēntiae cōstitūta sit.¹ Ex quō efficitur, id quod ego magnō quondam cum assēnsū omnium dīxī, miseram esse senectūtem quae sē ōrātiōne dēfenderet. Nōn cānī² nec rūgae repente auctōritātem arripere
5 possunt, sed honestē ācta superior aetās fructūs capit auctōritātis extrēmōs.³ Haec enim ipsa sunt honōrābilia, quae videntur levia atque commūnia,

¹ Supply **meā**.

¹ *had produced a play* (literally, *he, as author, taught it to the actors*)

² *continued to live* (literally, *went on in life*)

³ *account*

⁴ *draft* (a demand for payment)

⁵ *at times*

⁶ *the natural forces of the earth*

⁷ *took by surprise and put to death*

¹ *that kind of old age which*

² *white hair* (Supply **capillī**.)

³ *at the end* (literally, *last*, with **fructūs**)

salūtārī,² appetī, dēcēdī, assurgī, dēdūcī,⁴ redūcī,⁴ cōnsulī; quae et apud nōs et in aliīs cīvitatibus, ut quaeque optimē mōrāta est,⁵ ita dīligentissimē observantur. Lysandrum Lacedaemonium dīcere aiunt solitum Lacedaemonem esse honestissimum domicilium senectūtis; nusquam enim tantum tribuitur⁶ 10 aetātī, nusquam est senectūs honōrātior. Quīn etiam memoriae prōditum est, cum Athēnīs lūdīs⁷ quīdam in theātrum grandis nātū⁸ vēnisset, magnō consessū,⁹ locum nusquam eī datum ā suīs cīvibus; cum autem ad Lacedaemoniōs accessisset, quī lēgātī cum essent,¹⁰ certō¹¹ in locō cōnsēderant, cōsurrēxisse omnēs illī dīcuntur et senem sessum¹² recēpisse. Quibus cum ā cūctō 15 cōnsessū plausus esset multiplex datus, dīxisse ex eīs quendam Athēniēnsēs scīre quae rēcta essent, sed facere nōlle. (Sen. 62–64)

⁴ that they escort us (to the Forum) and back (home)
⁵ to the degree that each state has a high code of morals
⁶ so much respect shown
⁷ at the games
⁸ old man (literally, great as to birth [or age])
⁹ in the great crowd
¹⁰ being ambassadors (literally, who, since they were ambassadors)
¹¹ fixed, reserved
¹² to sit down

² In translating, it would be a good idea to use the active voice, since two of the infinitives, dēcēdī and assurgī, are impersonal: *that people greet us*, etc.

The Meaning of Friendship

Est enim amīcitia nihil aliud nisi omnium dīvinārum hūmānārumque rērum cum benevolentīā et cārītāte cōnsēnsiō: quā quidem haud sciō an,¹ exceptā sapientiā, nihil melius hominī sit ā dīs immortalibus datum. Dīvitias aliī praepōnunt, bonam aliī valētūdinem, aliī potentiam, aliī honōrēs,² multī etiam voluptātēs. Bēluārum hoc quidem extrēmum,³ illa autem superiora cadūca et incerta, posita⁴ nōn tam in cōsiliīs nostrīs quam in fortunae temeritāte. Quī autem in virtūte summum bonum⁵ pōnunt, praeclārē illī quidem,¹ sed haec ipsa virtūs amīcitiam et gignit et continet,⁶ nec sine virtūte amīcitia esse ūllō pactō potest.

¹ haud sciō an = nesciō an, perhaps (literally, I do not know whether)
² political offices
³ this last (i.e., voluptātēs) is (characteristic) of wild beasts
⁴ dependent on
⁵ the highest good
⁶ preserves
⁷ = quōcum, cum quō
⁸ how
⁹ equally as

Quid dulcius quam habēre quīcum⁷ omnia audeās sīc loquī ut tēcum? 10 Quī⁸ esset tantus fructus in prōsperīs rēbus, nisi habērēs quī illis aequē ac⁹ tū ipse gauderet? Adversās² vērō ferre difficile esset sine eō quī illās gravius etiam quam tū ferret. (Am. 20, 22)

¹ Supply faciunt.

² Supply rēs; in contrast with prōsperīs.

The Ultimate in Friendship

¹ theater

Quī clāmōrēs tōtā caveā¹ nūper in hospitīs et amīcī meī M. Pācuvī novā fābulā, cum, ignōrante rēge uter Orestēs esset, Pyladēs Orestem sē esse dīceret, ut prō illō necārētur, Orestēs autem, ita ut erat, Orestem sē esse persevērāret. Stantēs₁ plaudēbant in rē fictā; quid arbitrāmur in vērā
5 factūrōs fuisse? Facile indicābat ipsa nātūra vim suam, cum hominēs, quod₂ facere ipsī nōn possent, id rēctē fierī in alterō iūdicārent. (Am. 24)

₁ i.e., the audience in the theater

₂ i.e., die for someone else

The Friendship of Laelius and Scīpiō

¹ for me

² fine character

³ For I (quī) have always had it
(virtūtem) at my disposal
(literally, in my hands).

⁴ more (than usually) important

⁵ without thinking (literally, who
does not think)

⁶ so far as I realized, at any rate

Sed quoniam rēs hūmānae fragilēs cadūcaeque sunt, semper aliquī anquīrēndī sunt quōs dīligāmus et ā quibus dīligāmur; cārītāte enim benev-
olentiāque sublātā, omnis est ē vītā sublāta iūcunditās. Mihi¹ quidem
Scīpiō, quamquam est subitō ēreptus, vīvit tamen semperque vīvet; virtūtem²
5 enī amāvī illīus virī, quae exstīncta nōn est; nec mihi sōlī versātur ante
oculōs, quī illam semper in manibus habuī,³ sed etiam posterīs erit clāra et
īnsignis. Nēmō umquam animō aut spē maiōra⁴ suscipiet quī sibi nōn illīus
memoriam atque imāginem prōpōnendam putet.⁵ Equidem ex omnibus
rēbus quās mihi aut fortūna aut nātūra tribuit nihil habeō quod cum amīci-
10 tiā Scīpiōnis possim comparāre. In hāc mihi dē rē pūblicā cōnsēsus, in
hāc rērum prīvātārum cōnsilium, in eādem requiēs plēna oblectātiōnis fuit.
Numquam illum nē minimā quidem rē offendī, quod⁶ quidem sēnserim,
nihil audīvī ex eō ipse quod nōllem; ūna domus erat, īdem vīctus isque

commūnis, neque solum mīlitia₁ sed etiam peregrīnātiōnēs rūsticātiōnēsque
commūnēs. Nam quid ego dē studiīs dīcam cognōscendī semper aliquid 15
atque discendī? In quibus remōtī ab oculīs populī omne ōtiōsum tempus
contrīvimus. Quārum rērum recordātiō et memoria sī ūnā cum illō occidis-
set, dēsīderium coniūctissimī atque amantissimī virī ferre nūllō modō
possem. Sed nec₂ illa₃ extīncta sunt alunturque potius et augentur
cōgitātiōne et memoriā meā, et, sī illīs plānē orbātus essem, magnum 20
tamen affert mihi aetās⁷ ipsa sōlācium. Diūtius enim iam in hōc dēsīderiō ⁷ age
esse nōn possum. Omnia autem brevia tolerābilia esse dēbent, etiam sī
magna sunt. (*Am.* 102–104).

₁ one of the subjects of *erant*, to be supplied; *commūnēs* is predicate adjective

₂ = *et nōn*, correlative with the following *et*

₃ i.e., *recordātiō et memoria*



ΚΑΛΛΙΟΠΗ

ΚΛΕΪΩ ΕΡΑΤΩ

ΜΕΛΠΟΜΕΝΗ ΤΕΡΨΙΧΟΡΗ

Unit IX

Two Thousand Years of Latin



The nine Muses were daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne (Memory). Apollo, god of music and poetry, is in the center. As the principal god of culture, he presides with the Muses over the various arts and sciences. Each Muse (from left to right) had a different realm of responsibility: *Clio* was the Muse of history, *Euterpe* of music, *Thalia* of comedy, *Melpomenē* of tragedy, *Terpsichorē* of dance, *Eratō* of love poetry, *Polyhymnia* of poetry, *Ourania* of astronomy, and *Calliopē* of eloquence. You can see their names in Greek along the bottom of this painting, entitled *Apollo and the Muses*, by Baldassarre Peruzzi (1481-1536).

Plautus

The third and second centuries B.C. were the great centuries of Roman comedy, which was an adaptation and imitation of the Greek comedy of Menander and others. The plays of two Roman comedy writers, Plautus (ca. 254–184 B.C.) and Terence (ca. 190–159 B.C.), have survived. The *Menaechmī* of Plautus is named after twin brothers who look so much alike that they are constantly confused with each other—and by the confusion hangs the humor. The Menaechmi were separated in boyhood. After Menaechmus II grows up, he travels around looking for his brother. Unaware that he has arrived at the town where his brother lives, he meets a girl who takes him for Menaechmus I and gives him an expensive dress to be altered. The dress is one that Menaechmus I had taken from his wife's wardrobe and given to the girl. The scene below shows Menaechmus II and the wife (*matrōna*) of Menaechmus I. The *matrōna* mistakes Menaechmus II for her husband and recognizes the dress.

As in other Roman comedies, the characters in the *Menaechmī* are Greek, and the scenes are laid in Greece.

Who Is Who?

¹ disgrace of a man

² What have I brought on myself;
i.e., what have I done?

³ curses on

⁴ (all my) life

MA. Adībo atque hominem accipiam quibus dictīs meret.
Nōn tē pudet prōdīre in cōnspectum meum.
flāgitium hominis,¹ cum istōc ōrnātū? ME. Quid est?
710 Quae tē rēs agitat, mulier? MA. Etiamne, impudēns,
muttīre verbum ūnum audēs aut mēcum loquī?
ME. Quid tandem admīsī in mē² ut loquī nōn audeam?
MA. Rogās mē? Hominis impudentem audāciam!
ME. Nōn tū scīs, mulier, Hecubam quāpropter canem
715 Grāiī esse praedicābant? MA. Nōn equidem sciō.
ME. Quia idem faciēbat Hecuba quod tū nunc facis.
Omnia mala³ ingerēbat quemquem aspexerat.
Itaque adeō iūre coepta appellārī est canēs.¹
MA. Nōn ego istaec flāgitia possum perpetī.
720 Nam mēd₂ aetātem⁴ viduam esse māvelim₃
quam istaec flāgitia tua patī quae tū facis.
ME. Quid id ad mē, tū tē nuptam possīs₄ perpetī.

¹ nominative for *canis*

² old form of *mē*

³ old form of *mālim*

⁴ Supply *whether* in translation.

an sīs abitūra ā tuō virō? An mōs hīc ita est,
 peregrīnō ut advenientī nārrent fābulās?
 MA. Quās fābulās? Nōn, inquam, patiar praeterhāc,
 quīn vidua vīvam quam⁵ tuōs mōrēs perferam.
 ME. Meā quidem hercle causā⁶ vidua vīvitō
 vel usque dum⁷ rēgnum obtinēbit Iuppiter.
 MA. At mihi negābās dūdum surrupuisse tē,
 nunc eandem ante oculōs attinēs? Nōn tē pudet?
 ME. Heu, hercle, mulier, multum et audāx et mala es.
 Tūn⁸ tibi hanc surruptam dīcere audēs quam mihi
 dedit alia mulier, ut concinnandam darem?
 MA. Nē istūc⁹ mēcastor iam patrem arcessam meum
 atque eī nārrābō tua flāgitia quae facis.
 Ī, Deciō,⁵ quaere meum patrem, tēcum simul
 ut veniat ad mē: ita rem esse dīcitō.
 Iam ego aperiam istaec tua flāgitia. ME. Sānan¹⁰ es?
 Quae mea flāgitia? MA. Pallam atque aurum meum
 domō suppīlās tuae uxōrī et tuae
 dēgeris amīcae. Satin¹¹ haec rēctē fābulor?
 ME. Quaesō hercle, mulier, sī scīs, mōnstrā quod bibam,¹²
 tuam quī¹³ possim perpetī petulantiam.
 Quem tū hominem mēd₂ arbitrēre, nesciō;
 ego tē simītū₆ nōvī cum Porthāone.⁷
 MA. Sī mē dērīdēs, et pol illum nōn potes,
 patrem meum, quī hūc advenit. Quīn respicis?
 Nōvistīn tū illum? ME. Nōvī cum Calchā₇ simul:
 eōdem diē₈ illum vīdī quō tē ante hunc diem.
 MA. Negās nōvisse mē? Negās patrem meum?
 ME. Idem hercle dīcam sī avum vīs addūcere.
 MA. Ēcastor pariter hoc atque aliās rēs solēs.⁹

725

⁵ (rather) than

⁶ for my part

⁷ as long as

⁸ = Tūne

⁹ surely for that reason

¹⁰ = Sānane

730 ¹¹ = Satisne

¹² something to drink

¹³ in order that I

735

740

745

750

⁵ a slave

⁶ old form of simul

⁷ a mythological character

⁸ He had never seen either of them.

⁹ Supply agere.

Catullus

Do you remember Catullus, who wrote about the death of the pet sparrow of his sweetheart Lesbia? He wrote many other charming poems, too, of which the following are samples. C. Valerius Catullus died in 54 B.C. at about age thirty, while Caesar was conquering the Gauls.

A Dinner Invitation

¹ laughter
² cobwebs

5

10

Cēnābis bene, mī Fabulle, apud mē
paucīs, sī tibi dī favent, diēbus,
sī tēcum attuleris bonam atque magnam
cēnam, nōn sine candidā puellā
et vīnō et sale et omnibus cachinnīs.¹
Haec sī, inquam, attuleris, venuste noster,
cēnābis bene; nam tuī Catullī
plēnus sacculus est—arāneārum.²
Sed contrā accipiēs merōs amōrēs
seu quid suāviūs ēlegantiusve est;
nam unguentum dabō quod meae puellae
dōnārunt Venerēs Cupīdinēsque,₁
quod tū cum olfaciēs, deōs rogābis
tōtum ut tē faciant, Fabulle, nāsum!
(13)

₁ i.e., all the gods of beauty and love

Writ in Water

Nūllī sē dīcit mulier mea nūbere,₁ mälle
quam mihi, nōn sī sē Iuppiter ipse petat.
Dīcit; sed mulier cupidō quod dīcit amantī,
in ventō et rapidā scribere oportet aquā.
(70)

₁ used only of women marrying; literally, *take the (marriage) veil for*

Mixed Feelings

Ōdī et amō. Quārē id faciam fortasse requīris.
Nesciō, sed fierī sentiō et excrucior.
(85)

At His Brother's Tomb

Multās per gentēs et multa per aequora vectus
adveniō hās miserās, frāter, ad īferiās,¹
ut tē postrēmō dōnārem mūnere mortis
et mūtā nēquīquam alloquerer cinerem,
quandoquidem fortūna mihī tētē abstulit ipsum,
heu, miser indignē frāter adēmp̄te mihi.
Nunc tamen intereā haec, prīscō quae mōre parentum
trādita sunt trīstī mūnere ad² īferiās,
accipe frāternō multum mānantia flētū
atque in perpetuum, frāter, avē³ atque valē.
(101)

¹ offerings (as we might offer a wreath or a bunch of flowers)

² for offerings

³ hail and farewell

5

10

Livy

Livy (Titus Livius) was born in 59 B.C. at Padua, in northern Italy, not far from Verona.

You have read stories of early Rome based on Livy's history. His history filled 142 books, but only about a third of it has survived—Books 1–10, dealing with early history, and Books 21–45, beginning with the Second Punic War. Livy considered this war so important that he stopped to write a preface to his account of it, as if he were beginning a new work. And, as a matter of fact, this war had an incalculable effect on the future of the world. We can only speculate what the world would be today had the Carthaginians won. But Rome conquered and became the dominant power. It was fitting that Livy's patriotic presentation of Rome's accomplishments should be written during the reign of Augustus, who has been called the architect of the Roman Empire.

Hannibal

¹ the entire work (noun)

² = *rērum gestārum*, history

³ offensive and defensive strength

⁴ Mars was impartial

⁵ nearer

⁶ they, the conquered, had been ruled

⁷ coaxing

⁸ there, i.e., to Spain

⁹ the loss of Sicily and Sardinia (literally, Sicily and Sardinia lost)

¹⁰ just after

¹¹ would have brought

¹² first choice of the soldiers

I. In parte operis mei licet mihi praefari quod in principiō summae¹ tōtius professi plērique sunt rērum² scriptōrēs, bellum maximē omnium memorābile quae umquam gesta sint mē scriptūrum, quod, Hannibale duce, Carthāginiēnsēs cum populō Rōmānō gessere. Nam neque validiōrēs
5 opibus ūllae inter sē civitatēs gentēque contulērunt arma neque hīs ipsīs tantum umquam vīrium³ aut rōboris³ fuit, et haud ignōtās bellī artēs inter sēsē sed expertās primō Pūnicō cōnserēbant bellō, et adeō varia fortuna bellī ancepsque Mārs⁴ fuit ut propius⁵ periculum fuerint quī vicērunt. Odiīs etiam prope maiōribus certārunt quam vīribus, Rōmānīs indignantibus
10 quod victōribus victi ultrō inferrent arma, Poenīs₁ quod superbē avārēque crēderent imperitātum⁶ victis esse. Fāma est etiam Hannibalem, annōrum fermē novem, pueriliter blandientem⁷ patrī Hamilcarī ut dūceretur in Hispāniam, cum, perfectō Āfricō bellō, exercitum eō⁸ trāiectūrus sacrificāret, altāribus admōtum,₂ tāctis sacrīs,₃ iūre iūrandō adāctum, sē cum primum
15 posset hostem fore populō Rōmānō. Angēbant ingentis spīritūs virum₄ Sicilia Sardiniaque āmissae;⁹ nam et Siciliam nimis celerī dēspērātiōne rērum concessam et Sardiniam inter mōtum Āfricae fraude Rōmānōrum, stīpendiō etiam īnsuper impositō, interceptam.

II. Hīs ānxius cūrīs ita sē Āfricō bellō, quod fuit sub¹⁰ recentem
20 Rōmānam pācem, per quīnque annōs, ita deinde novem annīs in Hispāniā augendō Pūnicō imperiō gessit ut appāreret maius eum quam quod gereret agitāre in animō bellum et, sī diūtius vīxisset, Hamilcare duce, Poenōs arma Italiae illātūrōs fuisse,¹¹ quī Hannibalis ductū intulērunt.

Mors Hamilcaris peropportūna₅ et pueritia Hannibalis distulērunt bellum. Medius Hasdrubal inter patrem ac filium octō fermē annōs imperium obtinuit.

III. In Hasdrubalis locum haud dubia rēs fuit quīn praerogātivam¹² mīlitārem, quā extemplō iuvenis Hannibal in praetōrium dēlātus imperātorque ingentī omnium clāmōre atque assēnsū appellātus erat, favor plēbis
30 sequeretur.

₁ i.e., indignantibus

₂ He was so small that he had to be lifted up.

₃ presumably some of the sacred utensils, like touching the Bible today

₄ Hamilcar

₅ from the Roman point of view

Hannibal's Virtues and Vices

IV. Missus Hannibal in Hispāniam prīmō statim adventū omnem exercitum in sē convertit; Hamilcarem iuvenem redditum sibi veterēs mīlitēs crēdere; eundem vigōrem in vultū vimque in oculīs, habitum ōris lineāmentaque intuērī. Dein brevī¹ effēcit ut pater in sē¹ minimum mōmentum² ad favōrem conciliandum esse. Numquam ingenium idem ad rēs dīversis-
simās, pārendum³ atque imperandum, habilius⁴ fuit. Itaque haud facile dis-
cernerēs⁵ utrum imperātōrī an exercituī cārīor esset; neque Hasdrubal
alium quemquam praeficere malle ubi quid fortiter ac strēnuē agendum
esset, neque mīlitēs aliō duce plūs cōnfidere aut audēre. Plūrimum audāciae
ad perīcula capessenda, plūrimum cōnsiliū inter ipsa perīcula erat. Nūllō 10
labōre aut corpus fatīgārī aut animus vincī poterat. Calōris ac frīgoris pati-
entia pār; cibī potiōnisque dēsideriō nātūralī, nōn voluptāte modus fīnītus;
vigiliārū somnīque nec diē nec nocte discrīmināta tempora: id quod
gerendīs rēbus⁶ superesset quiētī datum; ea neque mollī strātō neque silen-
tiō accersita; multī saepe mīlitārī sagulō opertum humī iacentem inter 15
custōdiās statiōnēsque mīlitum cōspexērunt. Vestītus nihil⁷ inter aequālēs
excellēns, arma atque equī cōspiciēbantur. Equitum peditumque īdenī
longē prīmus erat; prīnceps in proelium ībat, ultimus, cōnsertō proeliō,
excēdēbat. Hās tantās virī virtūtēs ingentia vitia aequābant: inhūmāna
crūdēlitās, perfidia plūs quam Pūnica,² nihil vērī, nihil sānctī, nūllus deum 20
metus, nūllum iūs iūrāndum, nūlla religiō. Cum hāc indole virtūtum atque
vitiōrum trienniō sub Hasdrubale imperātōre meruit, nūllā rē quae agenda
videndaque magnō futūrō ducī³ esset praetermissā.

¹ the father in him, i.e., his likeness
to his father

² impulse

³ obeying and commanding

⁴ more suitable

⁵ could you distinguish

⁶ from doing things

⁷ not at all

¹ Supply **tempore**.

² **Pūnica fidēs** was proverbial in the sense of **perfidia**. The Romans said the same of the Greeks.

³ dative of agent with **videnda**

Horace

The Augustan Age was the greatest in Roman literature, producing such writers as Vergil, Horace, Ovid, Livy, Tibullus, and Propertius. It was to Roman literature what the Age of Pericles was to Athens and the Elizabethan Age to England. Horace (Q. Horatius Flaccus) was one of the glories of the Augustan Age. He is famous for his *Odes*, *Satires*, and *Epistles*. The charm of his writing, described in antiquity as *cūriōsa fēlicitās*, “happy turns of expression worked out with great care,” is a notable characteristic. In the following poem we have an ode in which he draws a moral lesson from an adventure. Remember that this is poetry, not history, that the lesson he draws is not based on fact but is true only in a poetic sense. The other selection, part of a longer poem, is a fable to be applied to human beings: the simple life of the country is preferred over the elaborate luxury of city life.

Integer Vītae

¹ *upright in (literally, of) life and free from crime*

Integer vītae scelerisque pūrus¹
nōn eget Maurīs iaculis neque arcū
nec venēnātīs gravidā sagittīs,
Fusce, pharetrā,

5 sive per Syrtīs iter aestuōsās,
 sive factūrus per inhospitālem
 Caucasum vel quae loca fābulōsus
 lambit Hyaspēs.

10 Namque mē silvā lupus in Sabīnā,
 dum meam cantō Lalagē¹ et ultrā
 terminum cūrīs vagor expeditīs,
 fūgit inermem,

15 quāle portentum neque militāris
 Dauniās² lātīs alit aesculētīs
 nec Iubae tellūs generat, leōnum
 ārida nūtrīx.

¹ accusative, name of his sweetheart, Lalage
² Apulia, where Horace was born

Pōne mē pigrīs² ubi nūlla campīs
 arbor aestīvā recreātur aurā,
 quod latus mundi³ nebulae malusque
 Iuppiter³ urget.

² frozen (literally, sluggish [from cold])
³ = latus mundi quod
⁴ denied to (human) habitation (on account of the heat)
 20

Pōne sub currū nimium propinquī
 sōlis in terrā domibus⁴ negātā:
 dulce ridentem Lalagēn amābō,
 dulce loquentem.
 (Od. 1, 22)

³ Jupiter is god of the sky; therefore this means a dark, cloudy sky.

The City Mouse and His Country Cousin

Rūsticus urbānum mūrem mūs paupere fertur
 accēpisse cavō, veterem vetus hospes amīcum,
 asper et attentus quaesītīs,¹ ut tamen artum
 solveret hospitīis animum. Quid multa? Neque ille
 sēpositī ciceris nec longae invīdit¹ avēnae,
 arīdum et ōre ferēns acinum sēmēsaque lardī
 frūsta dedit, cupiēns variā fastīdia cēnā
 vincere tangentis male² singula dente superbō;
 cum pater ipse³ domūs paleā porrēctus in hōrnā⁴
 ēsset² ador⁵ loliumque,⁵ dapīs meliōra relinquēns.
 Tandem urbānus ad hunc, "quid tē iuvat," inquit, "amīce,
 praeruptī⁶ nemoris patientem vīvere dorsō?⁷
 Vīs⁸ tū hominēs urbemque ferīs praepōnere silvīs?
 Carpe viam, mihi crēde, comes; terrestria quādo
 mortālīs animās vīvunt sortīta, neque ūlla est
 aut magnō aut parvō lētī fuga: quō, bone, circā,³
 dum licet, in rēbus iūcundīs vīve beātus,
 vīve memor quam sīs aevī brevis." Haec ubi dicta
 agrestem pepulēre,⁹ domō levis exsilit: inde
 ambō prōpositum peragunt iter, urbis aventēs
 moenia nocturnī subrēpere. Iamque tenēbat
 nox medium caelī spatium, cum pōnit uterque

80

¹ begrudge
² hardly touching the items
 85 ³ the host, i.e., the country mouse
⁴ this year's straw
⁵ spelt, an old-fashioned wheat, and darnel, a weed
⁶ steep
⁷ ridge
⁸ Won't you
 90 ⁹ affected, influenced

95

100

¹ He was "tight" (artum) and attentive to gain but he did not stint hospitality.

² from edō, eat

³ with quō = therefore

- ¹⁰ courses
¹¹ to one side
¹² of the evening before
¹³ acts, plays
¹⁴ as soon as, when

in locuplēte domō vēstīgia, rubrō ubi coccō
tīncta super lectōs candēret vestis eburnōs,
multaque dē magnā superessent fercula¹⁰ cēnā,
105 quae procul¹¹ exstrūctīs inerant hesterna¹² canistrīs.
Ergō ubi purpureā porrēctum in veste locāvit
agrestem, velutī succīnctus⁴ cursitat hospes
continuatque dapēs, nec nōn vernīliter ipsīs
fungitur officiīs, praelambēns omne quod affert.
110 Ille cubāns gaudet mūtātā sorte bonīsque
rēbus agit¹³ laetum convīvam, cum subitō ingēns
valvārum strepitus lectīs excussit utrumque.
Currere per tōtum pavidī conclāve, magisque
exanimēs trepidāre, simul¹⁴ domus alta Molossīs⁵
115 personuit canibus. Tum rūsticus, "haud mihi vītā
est opus hāc," ait et "valeās; me silva cavusque
tūtus ab īnsidiīs tenuī sōlābitur ervō."
(Sat. II, 6, 80–117)

⁴ (his tunic) pulled up, like a servant (vernīliter). He even stuck his fingers in everything and then licked them (praelambēns).
⁵ large, fierce dogs

Sulpicia

Sulpicia is the only known Latin woman poet. She was of aristocratic birth and was the niece of Messalla, a prominent citizen and supporter of the arts. She was welcome in Tibullus' literary circle, and probably wrote around 30 B.C. Her contributions indicate the more prominent role women were beginning to play in fashionable society. Only six of her love poems, written to Cerinthus, have survived.

- ¹ exhausted
² fever
³ otherwise

Estne tibi, Cērinthe, tuae pia cura puellae,
quod mea nunc vexat corpora fessa¹ calor²?
at ego nōn aliter³ tristēs ēvincere morbōs
optārim, quam tē sī quoque velle putem.
5 at mihi quid prōsit morbōs ēvincere, sī tū
nostra potes lentō pectore ferre mala?



The Pierpont Morgan Library/Art Resource, NY. M.728.F.15.

Many ancient and medieval manuscripts are beautifully scripted and decorated. This page comes from the beginning of the Gospel according to John. It begins, *In prīncipiō erat verbum*. (In English, the next words are: "And the word was with God and the Word was God." Can you translate this part into Latin?) Notice that the *In* is so integrated into the design that it is hardly visible. If you compare this manuscript to the ones in Units VII and VIII, you can clearly see the increased sophistication and beauty that was added to manuscripts. Dating from the 9th century, the script used in this piece is Carolingian (French).

Phaedrus

Fables, which are part of folklore, were passed on by word of mouth. The Greek writer Aesop wrote some of them down; his fables are still famous and have been translated into many languages. The Roman Phaedrus translated them into Latin verse during the Age of Augustus. For a long time fables of Phaedrus, and versions of them, were the ones generally known, until in modern times Aesop was again translated.

Mūlī Duo et Raptōrēs (Two Mules and Thieves)

¹ money bags

² barley

³ poverty

⁴ = periculō

⁵ subject to

Mūlī gravātī sarcinīs ībant duo:
ūnus ferēbat fiscōs¹ cum pecūniā.
alter tumentēs multō saccōs hordeō.²
Ille onere dīves celsā cervīce ēminet
5 clārumque collō iactat tintinnābulum;
comes quiētō sequitur et placidō gradū.
Subitō latrōnēs ex īnsidiīs advolant
interque caedem ferrō mūlum sauciant,
dīripiunt nummōs, neglegunt vīle hordeum.
10 Spoliātus igitur cāsūs cum flēret suōs:
“Equidem,” inquit alter, “mē contemptum gaudeō,
nam nīl āmīsī nec sum laesus vulnere.”
Hōc argumentō tūta est hominum tenuitās;³
Magnae perīclō⁴ sunt opēs obnoxiae.⁵
(II, 7)

Lupus ad Canem (The Wolf to the Dog)

¹ well fed

² to greet each other

³ when

Quam dulcis sit libertās breviter prōloquar.
Canī perpāstō¹ maciē cōnfectus lupus
forte occurrīt. Dein salūtātum² invicem
ut³ restitērunt: “Unde sīc, quaesō, nitēs?
5 Aut quō cibō fēcistī tantum corporis?
Ego, quī sum longē fortior, pereō fame.”
Canis simpliciter: “Eadem est condiciō tibi,
Praestāre dominō sī pār officium potes.”
“Quod?” inquit ille. “Custōs ut sīs liminis,
10 ā fūribus tueāris et noctū domum.”
“Ego vērō sum parātus; nunc patior nivēs
imbrēsque in silvīs asperam vītā trahēns.
Quantō est facilius mihi sub tēctō vīvere,

et ōtiōsum largō satiārī cibō!"

"Venī ergō mēcum." Dum prōcēdunt, aspicit

lupus ā catēnā collum dētrītum canī.⁴

"Unde hoc, amīce?" "Nihil est." "Dīc, quaesō, tamen."

"Quia videor ācer, alligant mē interdiū,

lūce ut quiēscam, et vigilem nox cum vēnerit;

crepusculō⁵ solūtus, quā vīsum est⁶ vagor.

Affertur ultrō pānis; dē mēnsā suā

dat ossa dominus; frūsta iactant familia

et quod fastīdit quisque pulmentārium.⁷

Sic sine labōre venter implētur meus."

"Age, abīre sī quō est animus, est licentia?"

"Nōn plānē est," inquit. "Fruere quae laudās, canis;

rēgnāre nōlō, liber ut⁸ nōn sim mihi."

(III, 7)

15

⁴ for the dog (we would say of)

⁵ at twilight

⁶ wherever I like

⁷ whatever food anyone doesn't like

⁸ on condition that

20

25

Soror et Frāter (Sister and Brother)

Praeceptō monitus saepe tē cōnsīderā.¹

Habēbat quīdam fīliam turpissimam

īdemque īnsignem pulchrā faciē fīlium.

Hī, speculum in cathedrā māt̄ris ut positum fuit,

puerīliter lūdentēs forte īnspeērunt.

Hic sē formōsum iactat; illa īrāscitur

nec glōriantis² sustinet frātris iocōs.

accipiēns quippe cūncta in contumēliam.³

Ergō ad patrem dēcurrit laesūra⁴ invicem

magnāque invidiā crīminātur fīlium,

vir nātus quod rem fēminārum tetigerit.⁵

Amplexus ille utrumque et carpēns ōscula

dulcemque in ambōs cāritātem partiēns;

"cotīdiē," inquit, "speculō vōs ūtī volō;

tū fōrmam nē corrumpās nēquitiae malīs;

tū faciem ut istam mōribus vincās bonīs."

(III, 8)

¹ look at yourself

² boasting brother

³ as an insult (to herself)

⁴ to hurt (her brother)

⁵ because, though born a man,
he touched women's things

5 (i.e., mirrors)

10

15

Dē Vitiīs Hominum (The Imperfections of Men)

Pērās¹ imposuit Iuppiter nōbīs duās:

propriīs replētam vitiīs post tergum dedit,

aliēnīs, ante pectus suspendit gravem.

Hāc rē vidēre nostra mala nōn possumus;

aliī simul² dēlinquunt, cēnsōrēs sumus.

(IV, 10)

¹ sacks

² as soon as

5

¹ Supply vitiīs.

Seneca

Seneca the Younger wrote verse tragedies that had a great influence on Shakespeare and other Elizabethan writers, and philosophical works in prose, in which he preached Stoic doctrines. These too had a wide influence.

Seneca was Nero's tutor and later became his adviser, in effect his prime minister during the first five "golden years," as they were called, of Nero's reign. Then Nero forced Seneca to commit suicide and started on his mad course.

The following selections are from Seneca's letters to his friend Lucilius. They are not really letters, but essays.

Read Intensively, Not Extensively

Illud autem vidē, nē ista lēctiō auctōrum multōrum et omnis generis volūminum habeat aliquid vagum et īnstabile. Certīs ingeniīs¹ immorārī et innūtrīrī oportet, sī velīs aliquid trahere quod in animō fidēliter sedeat. Nusquam est quī ubīque est. Vitam in peregrīnātiōne exigentibus hoc
5 ēvenit, ut multa hospitia habeant, nullās amīcitiās. Idem accadat necesse est hīs quī nulliūs sē ingeniō familiāriter applicant, sed omnia cursim et properantēs trāsmittunt. Nōn prōdest cibus nec corporī accēdit quī statim sūmptus ēmittitur. Nihil aequē sānitātem impedit quam remediōrum crēbra mūtātiō. Nōn venit vulnus ad cicātrīcem in quō medicāmenta temptantur.
10 Nōn convalēscit planta quae saepe trāsfertur. Nihil tam ūtile est ut in trānsitū¹ prōsit: dstringit librōrum multitūdō. Itaque cum legere nōn possīs quantum habuerīs, satis est habēre quantum legās. "Sed modo," inquis, "hunc librum ēvolvere volō, modo illum." Fastīdientis stomachī est multa dēgustāre, quae ubi varia sunt et dīversa, inquinant, nōn alunt. Probātōs itaque
15 semper lege, et sī quandō ad aliōs dīvertī libuerit, ad priōrēs redī; aliquid cotīdiē adversus paupertātem, aliquid adversus mortem auxiliī comparā, nec minus adversus cēterās pestēs. Et cum multa percurrerīs, ūnum excerpe quod illō diē concoquās.² Hoc ipse quoque faciō: ex plūribus quae lēgī aliquid apprehendō. Hodiernum hoc est quod apud Epicūrum nāctus
20 sum (soleō enim et in aliēna castra trānsīre, nōn tamquam trāsfuga, sed tamquam explōrātor): "Honestā," inquit, "rēs est laeta paupertās." Illa vērō nōn est paupertās, sī laeta est; cui cum paupertāte bene convenit.³ dīves est. Nōn quī parum habet, sed quī plūs cupit, pauper est. (*Epist.* 2, 2–6)

¹ *in transit*, i.e., when used only in passing

² *can digest*

³ *he who is on good terms with poverty*

¹ i.e., books written by geniuses

The Proper Treatment of Slaves

Libenter ex hīs quī ā tē veniunt cognōvī familiārīter tē cum servīs tuīs vivere. Hoc prūdētiā tuā, hoc ēruditiōnem decet. "Servī sunt." Immō hominēs. "Servī sunt." Immō contubernālēs. "Servī sunt." Immō humilēs amīcī. "Servī sunt." Immō cōservī. Itaque rīdeō istōs quī turpe exīstīmant cum servō suō cēnāre. Quārē? Nisi quia superbissīma cōsuētūdō cēnantī 5 dominō stantium servōrum turbam circumdedit. Deīde eiusdem arrogantiāe prōverbium iactātur: *totidem hostēs esse quot servōs*. Nōn habēmus illōs hostēs sed facimus. Alius pretiōsās avēs scindit;¹ per pectus et clūnēs certīs ductibus circumferēs ērudītā manum frūsta excutit. Infēlīx quī huic ūnī reī vīvit, ut altīlia decenter secet; nisi quod miserior est quī hoc 10 voluptātis causā docet quam quī necessitātis² discit. Adice obsōnātōrēs,¹ quibus dominicī palātī nōtitia subtilis est, quī sciunt cuius illum reī sapor excitet,² cuius dēlectet aspectus, cuius novitāte nausiābundus ērigī possit, quid iam ipsā satietāte fastīdiat, quid illō diē ēsuriat.³ Cum hīs cēnāre nōn sustinet et maiestātis suae dīmīnūtiōnem putat ad eandem mēnsam cum 15 servō suō accēdere. Vīs tū⁴ cōgitāre istum quem servum tuum vocās, ex iisdem sēminibus ortum, eōdem fruī caelō, aequē spīrāre, aequē vīvere, aequē morī? Nōlō in ingentem mē locum immittere et dē ūsū servōrum disputāre, in quōs superbissīmī, crūdēlissīmī, contumēliōsissīmī sumus. Haec tamen praeceptī meī summa est: sīc cum īferiōre vīvās quemad- 20 modum tēcum superiōrem⁵ velīs vīvere. Quotiēns in mentem venerit quantum tibi in servum liceat, veniat in mentem tantundem in tē dominō tuō licēre. Vīve cum servō clēmēter, comiter quoque, et in sermōnem illum admitte et in cōnsilium et in convīctum. Nē illud quidem vidētis quam⁶ omnem invidiam maiōrēs nostrī dominīs, omnem contumēliā servīs 25 dētrāxerint? Dominum patrem familiae appellavērunt, servōs, familiārēs. Instituērunt diem fēstum, nōn quō sōlō cum servīs dominī vēscerentur, sed quō utique honōrēs illīs in domō gerere, iūs dīcere permīsērunt et domum pusillam rem pūblicā esse iūdicāvērunt. Quid ergō? Omnēs servōs admovēbō mēnsae meae? Nōn magis quam omnēs liberōs. Errās sī exīs- 30 timās mē quōsdam quasi sordidiōris operae reiectūrum, ut putā⁷ illum mūliōnem et illum bubulcum: nōn ministeriīs illōs aestimābō, sed mōribus. Sibi quisque dat mōrēs: ministeria cāsus⁸ assignat. Nōn est, mī Lūcili, quod amīcum tantum in forō et in cūrīā quaerās; sī diligenter attenderis, et domī inveniēs. "Servus est." Sed fortasse liber animō. "Servus est." Hoc 35 illī nocēbit? Ostende quis nōn sit: alius libīdinī servit, alius avāritiae, alius ambitiōnī, omnēs timōrī. (*Epist.* 47, 1–2, 5–6, 8, 10–11, 13–17)

¹ The ones who go to market

² the taste of what thing will tempt the master

³ what he is hungry for

⁴ Won't you

⁵ your master

⁶ how

⁷ for example

⁸ chance assigns their jobs

¹ the expert carver

² Supply causā.

Petronius



Petronius, who lived in the age of Nero, wrote a novel telling of the adventures of three rascals as they wandered about southern Italy, constantly getting into difficulties through cheating, stealing, and similar activities. Unfortunately much of the novel has been lost, but we do have the description of a dinner party given by an extremely rich self-made man, whose education left much to be desired. In the following selection the host, Trimalchio, boasts of his collection of antiques.

Trimalchio's Dinner

Quam cum Agamemnōn₁ propius cōsiderāret, ait Trimalchiō: “Sōlus sum quī vēra Corinthia habeam.” Exspectābam ut prō¹ reliquā insolentiā dīceret sibi vāsa Corinthō² afferrī. Sed ille melius et “forsitan,” inquit, “quaeris quārē sōlus Corinthia vēra possideam. Quia scīlicet aerārius³ ā
5 quō emō Corinthus vocātur. Quid est autem Corinthium nisi quis Corinthum⁴ habeat? Et nē mē putētis nesapium⁵ esse, valdē bene sciō unde primum Corinthia nāta sint. Cum Īlium captum est, Hannibal, homō vafer et magnus stēliō,⁶ omnēs statuās aēneās et aureās et argenteās in ūnum rogam conguessit et eās incendit. Factae sunt in ūnum aera miscellānea.⁷ Ita ex hāc
10 māsā fabrī sustulērunt et fēcērunt catilla⁸ et parapsidēs⁸ et statuncula. Sīc Corinthia nāta sunt, ex omnibus in ūnum, nec hoc nec illud.” (50, 2–6)

¹ in accordance with

² from Corinth

³ worker in bronze

⁴ has a Corinthus (to make it)

⁵ nit-wit

⁶ rascal

⁷ into one miscellaneous mass

⁸ dishes

₁ one of the guests

Quintilian



The school teacher M. Fabius Quintilianus (ca. 35–96 A.D.) has left us a famous textbook on teaching, called *Institutio Oratoria*, *Introduction to Public Speaking*. How could a textbook on public speaking be a textbook on teaching? Because most teaching, especially at the higher levels, prepared for law and a public career, and therefore involved public speaking. This passage deals with the education of the young.

Mihi ille dētur puer quem laus excitet, quem glōria iuuet, quī victus fleat. Hic erit alendus ambitū, hunc mordēbit obiūrgātiō, hunc honor excitābit, in hōc dēsidiā numquam verēbor. Danda est tamen omnibus aliqua remissiō,¹ nōn solum quia nūlla rēs est quae perferre possit continuum labōrem, atque ea quoque quae sēnsū et animā carent, ut servāre vim suam possint, velut quiēte alternā retenduntur,² sed quod studium discendī voluntāte, quae cōgī nōn potest, cōstat.³ Itaque et vīrium plūs afferunt ad discendum renovātī ac recentēs et ācriōrem animum, quī ferē necessitatibus⁴ repugnat. Nec me offenderit lūsus in puerīs (est et hoc signum alacritātis). Modus tamen sit remissiōnibus, nē aut odium studiōrum faciant negātae⁵ 10 aut ōtiī cōsuētūdinem nimiae.⁵ Sunt etiam nōnnūllī acuendīs puerōrum ingeniīs nōn inūtilēs lūsūs, cum positīs invicem cuiusque generis quaestiunculis aemulantur. Mōrēs quoque sē inter lūdendum simplicius dētegunt. (I, 3, 7–12)

¹ relaxation

² are relaxed by alternating rest periods, so to speak

³ is based on willingness

⁴ fights against requirements

⁵ if denied . . . if excessive

Martial



The first century A.D. was the Spanish century of Latin literature. As at an earlier date Catullus, Vergil, Livy, and others had come from Cisalpine Gaul (northern Italy), so now we have the two Senecas, Lucan, Martial, and Quintilian from Spain. Martial is famous for his epigrams; in fact, it was he who gave the word epigram its present meaning—a short poem with a clever point, sometimes not revealed until the last word.

1. Petit Gemellus nūptiās Marōnillae
et cupit et īnstat et precātur et dōnat.
Adeōne pulchra est? Immō foedius nīl est.
Quid ergō in illā petitur et placet? Tussit.
(I, 10)

2. Nōn amo tē, Sabidī, nec possum dīcere quārē;
hoc tantum possum dīcere, nōn amo tē.
(I, 32)

3. Nūper erat medicus, nunc est vispillo¹ Diaulus;
quod vispillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.
(I, 47)

¹ undertaker

4. Vērōna doctī syllabās amat vātis,₁
 Marōne₂ fēlīx Mantua est,
 cēnsētur Aponī₃ Līviō suō tellus
 Stēllaque₄ nec Flaccō₄ minus,
 5 Apollodōrō₅ plaudit imbrifer Nīlus,
 Nāsōne Paelignī₆ sonant,
 duōs Senecās ūnicumque Lūcānum
 fācunda loquitur² Corduba,
 gaudent iocōsae Caniō suō Gādēs,
 10 Ēmerita₇ Deciānō meō:
 tē, Liciniāne, glōriābitur nostra
 nec mē tacēbit Bilbilis.
 (I, 61)

² speaks of

5. "Rīdē, sī sapis, Ō puella, rīdē,"
 Paelignus, putō, dīxerat poēta;₈
 sed nōn dīxerat omnibus puellīs.
 Vērūm ut³ dīxerit omnibus puellīs,
 5 nōn dīxit tibi; tū puella nōn es,
 et trēs⁴ sunt tibi, Maximīna, dentēs,
 sed plānē piceīque buxeīque.⁵
 Quārē sī speculō mihīque crēdis,
 dēbēs nōn aliter timēre rīsum
 10 quam ventum Spanius manumque Prīscus,₉
 quam crētāta⁶ timet Fabulla nimbū,
 cērussāta⁷ timet Sabella sōlem.
 Vultūs indue tū magis sevērōs
 quam coniūnx Priamī nurusque maior.
 15 Mīmōs rīdiculī Philistiōnis
 et convīvia nequiōra vītā₁₀
 et quicquid lepidā procācitāte
 laxat perspicuō labella rīsū.

³ grant that

⁴ (only) three

⁵ black and brown (literally, like fir
 and boxwood)

⁶ powdered (literally, chalked)

⁷ painted with white lead

₁ Catullus

₂ Vergil

₃ Aponus was a spring near Padua, Livy's birthplace.

₄ unknown contemporary writer from Padua

₅ another unknown

₆ Ovid's birthplace was Sulmo, in the country of the Paeligni.

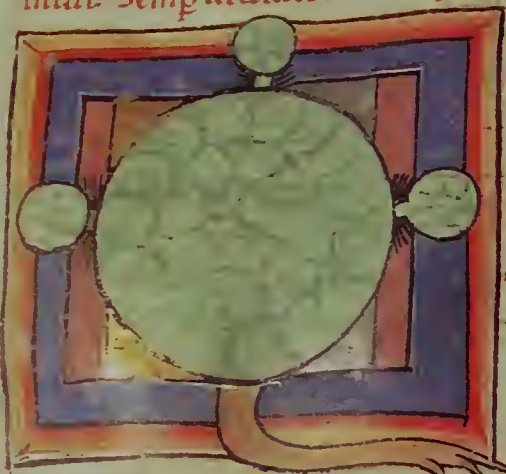
₇ Merida

₈ Ovid

₉ Spanius fears that the wind might disarrange his carefully combed hair; Priscus did not want to have his toga disturbed.

₁₀ verb

Herba scilicet hydiosmon. *Precaatio ipsi*
etia hydiosmon herbe ita incipit.
 et p[ro]curat auxilio tuo curso[rum] a
 que de te sunt infra sc[ri]pta. Eam u[er]o le
 gal p[ri]mo mane celo sereno. *Prima cu*
erbe hydi ra ei ad ignem sacru[m].
Hydiosmon succum ex p[re]ssum sumas
 cum sulphure. r[ati]o eto misceas. igne q[ue]
 factum inde cum p[er]cuna linas. mi
 rabis effectum bonum. *ad u[er]et[er]i*
herba hydiosmon sunt incipi
contra tu[m]posita. p[er]si te
mos humores deficiat. Nom[en] herbe
istius. Semp[er] uiuum nuncupat[ur].



Prima cura ipsius. contra ap[osto]le
herbam semp[er] uiuam cu[m] mata
auxungia p[er] a[nt]e r[ati]o an d[omi]no te
ras. r[ati]o ueluti malagina. r[ati]o super
imponas. mira facit. ip[s]e sanat. *Con*
herbam semp[er] ua[m]it[ur].
uiuum. r[ati]o simbrum. r[ati]o agrino
nam. r[ati]o uuluum uirginem simit.

terat. ad recto etiam. h[ic] fine r[ati]o aqua ma
ialat[ur] celeste tribuas potum. bonu[m]
miraberis effectum. Nom[en] hui[us] her
be. Anetum.



Precaatio e[st]dem herbe. sic incipient
Herba scilicet anetum te queso. rob
 scro p[er] inuentorem tuum et
 cussapum quatinus michi in ad
 iutorum sis. r[ati]o n[on]a remedia tu
 res. ad quecumq[ue] manum meam
 misero. *Prima cura ei. ad u[er]et[er]i*
herbam anetum com[odo]lorem.

buas. r[ati]o puluerem mollissi
mu[m] redigas. eumq[ue] cum melle
misceas. unde uului foveas. aqua
mirum calido laues. sicq[ue] medi
cam tuum ip[s]um factum mities. Cont[ra]
herbe ane capias dolorem;
ti florem. deoq[ue] cum oleo. unde

From the 12th century, we have a fine example of a page from a medical text describing the uses of herbs. The illustrations not only make the text more beautiful to look at but also more informative to the reader. Many monasteries grew herbs for both culinary and medicinal purposes. Hildegard von Bingen (see page 235) was especially well known for her knowledge of the uses of herbs and medicines.

20 tē maestae decet assidēre mātī
lūgentīque virum piumve frātrem,
et tantum tragicīs vacāre Mūsīs.
at tū iūdicium secūta nostrum
plōrā, sī sapis, Ō puella, plōrā.
(II, 41)

⁸ of Tartarus

⁹ property

¹⁰ plain, not fancy

¹¹ wish to be what you are and
prefer nothing else

6. Hanc tibi, Fronto pater, genetrīx Flācilla, puellam¹¹
ōscula¹² commendō dēliciāsque meās,
parvula nē nigrās horrēscat Erōtion umbrās
ōraque Tartareī⁸ prōdigiōsa canis.
5 Implētūra fuit sextae modo frīgora brūmae,
vīxisset totidem¹³ nī minus illa diēs.
Inter tam veterēs lūdat lascīva patrōnōs
et nōmen blaesō garriat ōre meum.
Mollia nōn rigidus caespes tegat ossa nec illī.
10 terra, gravis fuerīs:¹⁴ nōn fuit illa tibi.
(V, 34)

7. Vītam quae faciant beātiōrem,
iūcundissime Martiālis,¹⁵ haec sunt:
rēs⁹ nōn parta labōre sed relīcta,
nōn ingrātus ager, focus perennis,
5 līs numquam, toga rāra, mēns quiēta,
vīrēs ingenuae,¹⁶ salūbre corpus,
prūdēns simplicitās, parēs amīcī,
convīctus facilis, sine arte¹⁰ mēnsa,
nox nōn ēbria sed solūta cūrīs,
10 nōn trīstis torus et tamen pudīcus,
somnus quī faciat brevēs tenebrās,
quod sīs esse velīs¹¹ nihilque mālīs,
summum nec metuās diem nec optēs.
(X, 47)

¹¹ Unlike most of the epigrams of Martial, this one accords with the early Greek sense of an epitaph: it is about a little girl named Erotion, *Lovey*, similar to *Mabel*, from *Amabilis*. He asks his father and mother, now in the Lower World, to take care of the girl.

¹² in apposition with *puellam*: *sweetheart*

¹³ i.e., six

¹⁴ a variant of the formula found on hundreds of Roman tombstones: *sit tibi terra levis*

¹⁵ not the poet but a friend by the same name

¹⁶ suitable for a "gentleman," not an athlete or a working man

Apuleius

Apuleius was born in northern Africa about A.D. 125. His greatest work was the *Metamorphoses*, in which he tells, among others, the charming story of Cupid and Psyche. Psyche was so beautiful that, human though she was, she made the goddess Venus jealous. So Venus told her son Cupid to marry her off to some impossible man. But Cupid fell in love with her and married her, though remaining invisible. With the aid of a lamp, Psyche discovered that her husband was very handsome. But then her troubles began, for she was punished by Venus. Finally Cupid appealed to Jupiter, and everything ended happily with a marriage in heaven.

Nec mora,¹ cum cēna nūptiālis affluēns exhibētur. Accumbēbat summum torum marītus, Psychēn gremiō suō complexus. Sīc et cum suā Iūnōne Iuppiter ac deinde per ordinem tōtī² deī. Tunc, dum pōculum nectaris, quod vīnum deōrum est, Iovī quidem suus pōcillātor,³ ille rūsticus puer, cēterīs vērō Liber ministrābat, Vulcānus cēnam coquēbat, Hōrae rosīs et cēterīs flōribus purpurābant omnia, Grātiae spargēbant balsama, Apollō cantābat ad citharam. Mūsae quoque canōra personābant, Venus suāvī mūsicae superingressa⁴ fōrmōsa saltāvit, scaenā sibi sīc concinnātā ut Mūsae quidem chorum canerent et tībiās inflārent, Satyrus et Pāniscus ad fistulam dīcerent. Sīc ritē Psychē convenit in manum Cupīdinis et nāscitur illis 10 mātūrō partū filia, quam Voluptātem nōmināmus. (*Met.* VI, 23)

¹ without delay (literally, (there is) no delay when)

² = omnēs

³ cupbearer

⁴ coming in to the music

Hadrian

The historian Spartianus, in the collection of biographies of emperors called *Scriptores Historiae Augustae*, tells us that on his deathbed the emperor Hadrian, who died in A.D. 138, composed these verses about his soul:

Animula₁ vagula, blandula,
hospes comesque corporis,
quae nunc abībis in loca₂
pallidula, rigida, nūdula,
nec, ut solēs, dabis iocōs.
(25)

5

¹ **Anima** is not merely *soul* in our sense, but *life, the breath of life*.

² The Lower World is pictured as dark, cold, and bare.

Macrobius

About the year A.D. 400 Macrobius wrote a book called *Saturnalia*, somewhat similar to the *Attic Nights* of Aulus Gellius. A group of cultured men meet on the Saturnalia and discuss literary and historical subjects. They get to talking about Cicero's jokes. Macrobius found these in a Cicero jokebook prepared by Cicero's secretary Tiro. The purpose of the book was to supply material for public speakers.

¹ have kept silent about the jokes

² It doesn't show its age

³ miracle

⁴ Cicero had been reluctant

⁵ those saying (dative)

Sed mīror omnēs vōs ioca tacuisse¹ Cicerōnis, in quibus fācundissimus, ut in omnibus, fuit. Cicerō, cum apud Damasippum cēnāret, et ille, mediocrī vīnō positō, dīceret: "Bibite Falernum¹ hoc; annōrum quadrāgintā est," "Bene," inquit, "aetātem fert."²

5 Īdem cum Lentulum, generum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, longō gladiō accīnctum vīdisset, "Quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?"

Nec Q. Cicerōnī frātrī pepercit. Nam cum in eā prōvinciā quam ille² rēxerat vīdisset imāginem eius³ ingentibus līnēamentīs usque ad pectus ex
10 mōre pictam (erat autem Quīntus ipse statūrae parvae), ait: "Frāter meus dīmīdius⁴ maior est quam tōtus."

In cōsulātū Vatīniī, quem paucīs diēbus gessit, notābilis Cicerōnis urbānitās circumferēbātur. "Magnum ostentum,"³ inquit, "annō Vatīniī factum est, quod, illō cōsule, nec brūma nec vēr nec aestās nec autumnus fuit."

15 Querentī deinde Vatīniō, quod gravātus esset⁴ ad sē infirmum venīre, respondit: "Volūī in cōsulātū tuō venīre, sed nox mē comprehendit."

Pompeius Cicerōnis facētiārū impatiēns fuit. Cum Cicerō ad Pompeium vēnisset, dīcentibus⁵ sērō eum vēnisse respondit: "Minimē sērō vēnī: nam nihil hīc parātum videō." Deinde interrogantī Pompeiō ubi gener eius
20 Dolābella⁵ esset, Cicerō respondit: "Cum socerō tuō." (II, 3)

¹ an excellent brand of wine

² Marcus Cicero

³ Quintus

⁴ The painting showed the bust but was larger than the whole of the real Quintus.

⁵ Pompey, knowing that Dolabella had joined Caesar, reproaches Cicero for having a relative on the other side. Cicero neatly reminds Pompey that he (Pompey) was the son-in-law of Caesar.

The Vulgate

The Vulgate is the Latin translation of the Bible made by Jerome (Hieronymus) before and after the year 400. He translated the Old Testament from the Hebrew and the New Testament from the Greek. Jerome's translation is still an accepted version used in the Catholic Church. The following selection is from the first chapter of Genesis.

In p̄ncipiō creāvit Deus caelum et terram.

Terra autem erat inānis et vacua, et tenebrae erant super faciem abyssi; et Sp̄ritus Deī ferēbātur super aquās.

Dīxitque Deus: "Fīat lūx." Et facta est lūx.

Et vīdit Deus lūcem quod¹ esset bona, et dīvisit lūcem ā tenebrīs.

Appellāvitque lūcem diem, et tenebrās noctem; factumque est vespere et māne, diēs ūnus.

Dīxit quoque Deus: "Fīat firmāmentum in mediō aquārum; et dīvidat aquās ab aquīs."

Et fēcit Deus firmāmentum dīvisitque aquās quae erant sub firmāmentō 10 ab hīs quae erant super firmāmentum. Et factum est ita.

Vocāvitque Deus firmāmentum caelum; et factum est vespere et māne, diēs secundus.

Dīxit vērō Deus: "Congregentur aquae quae sub caelō sunt in locum ūnum, et appāreat ārida." Et factum est ita. 15

Et vocāvit Deus āridam terram, congregātiōnēsque aquārum appellāvit maria. Et vīdit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et ait: "Germinet terra herbam virentem et facientem sēmen, et lignum pōmiferum faciēns fructum iūxtā genus suum, cuius sēmen in sēmetipsō² sit super terram." Et factum est ita. 20

Et prōtulit terra herbam virentem et facientem sēmen iūxtā genus suum, lignumque faciēns fructum et habēns ūnumquodque³ sēmentem secundum speciem suam. Et vīdit Deus quod esset bonum.

Et factum est vespere et māne, diēs tertius.

Dīxit autem Deus: "Fīant lūmināria in firmāmentō caelī, et dīvidant 25 diem ac noctem, et sint in⁴ signa et tempora et diēs et annōs.

Ut lūceant in firmāmentō caelī et illūminent terram." Et factum est ita.

Fēcitque Deus duo lūmināria magna: lūmināre maius ut praeesset⁵ diēi, et lūmināre minus ut praeesset noctī, et stēllās.

Et posuit eas in firmāmentō caelī ut lūcērent super terram. 30

(I, 1–17)

5 ¹ that
² in itself
³ each one
⁴ for
⁵ rule

Bede

Bede was an Englishman who lived in the seventh century. The best of his writings is the *Historia ecclēsiastica gentis Anglōrum*, for which he has been called the father of English history. The selection that follows tells about the conversion of Britain to Christianity.

¹ story

² placed there for sale as slaves

³ O grief

⁴ the author of darkness

⁵ such beauty of an exterior

⁶ the word (of God)

Nec silentiō praetereunda opīniō¹ quae dē beātō Gregoriō trādiōne maiōrum ad nōs usque perlāta est; quā videlicet ex causā admonitus tam sēdulam ergā salūtem nostrae gentis cūram gesserit. Dīcunt quia diē quādam cum, advenientibus nūper mercātōribus, multa vēnālia in forum
5 fuissent collāta, multī ad emendum cōnflūxissent, et ipsum Gregorium inter aliōs advēnisse ac vīdisse inter alia puerōs vēnālēs positōs² candidī corporis ac venustī vultūs, capillōrum quoque fōrmā ēgregiā. Quōs cum aspiceret, interrogāvit, ut aiunt, dē quā regiōne vel terrā essent allātī. Dictumque est quia dē Britanniā īnsulā, cuius incolae tālis essent aspectūs.
10 Rūrsus interrogāvit utrum īdem īnsulānī Chrīstiānī an pāgānīs adhūc errōribus essent implicātī. Dictum est quod essent pāgānī. At ille, intimō ex corde longa trahēns suspīria: “Heu, prō dolor!”³ inquit, “quod tam lūcidī vultūs hominēs tenebrārum auctor⁴ possidet, tantaque grātia frontispiciī⁵ mentem ab internā grātiā₁ vacuam gestat!” Rūrsus ergō interrogāvit
15 quod esset vocābulum gentis illīus. Respōnsum est quod Anglī vocārentur. At ille: “Bene,” inquit; “nam et angelicam habent faciem, et tālēs angelōrum in caelīs decet esse cohērēdēs. Quod habet nōmen ipsa prōvincia dē quā istī sunt allātī?” Respōnsum est quod Deīrī vocārentur īdem prōvinciālēs. At ille: “Bene,” inquit, “Deīrī; dē īrā ērutī, et ad misericordiam Chrīstī
20 vocātī. Rēx prōvinciae illīus quōmodō appellātur?” Respōnsum est quod Aellī dīcerētur. At ille allūdēns ad nōmen ait: “Allēlūia, laudem Deī Creātōris, illīs in partibus oportet cantārī.”

Accēdēnsque ad pontificem Rōmānae et apostolicae sēdis (nōndum enim erat ipse pontifex factus), rogāvit ut gentī Anglōrum in Britanniam
25 aliquōs verbī⁶ ministrōs per quōs ad Chrīstum converterētur mitteret; sē ipsum parātum esse in hoc opus, Dominō cooperante, perficiendum, sī tamen apostolicō papae hoc ut fieret placēret. Quod dum perficere nōn posset, quia, etsī pontifex concēdere illī quod petierat voluit, nōn tamen cīvēs Rōmānī ut tam longē ab urbe sēcēderet potuēre permittere; mox ut ipse
30 pontificātūs officiō₂ fūctus est, perfēcit opus diū dēsīderātum. (II, 1)

₁ in the Christian sense of *grace*

₂ A.D. 590–604

Paulus Diaconus

Paul the Deacon was a Lombard from northern Italy who lived in the eighth century. He was a Benedictine monk of the famous monastery of Monte Cassino. The following selection is from his history of the Lombards.

Haud ab rē esse arbitror paulisper nārrandī ōrdinem postpōnere, et quia adhūc stilus¹ in Germāniā vertitur, mīrāculum quod illīc apud omnēs celebre habētur, seu¹ et quaedam alia breviter intimāre. In extrēmīs circium versus² Germāniae finibus, in ipsō ōceanī lītore, antrum sub ēminentī rūpe cōspicitur, ubi septem virī, incertum ex quō tempore, longō sōpitī sopōre quiēscunt, ita³ illaesīs nōn solum corporibus sed etiam vestīmentīs, ut ex hōc ipsō, quod sine ūllā per tot annōrum curricula corruptiōne perdūrant, apud indocilēs eāsdem et barbarās nātiōnēs venerātiōne habeantur. Hī dēnique, quantum ad habitum spectat, Rōmānī esse cernuntur. Ē quibus dum ūnum quīdam cupiditāte stimulātus vellet exuere,³ mox eius, ut dīcitur, brachia āruērunt,⁴ poenaeque 10 sua⁵ cēterōs perterrituit nē quis eōs ulterius contingere audēret. (I, 4)

¹ and also (with et)

² toward the northwest

³ strip, take off his clothes

⁴ dried up, withered

⁵ = eius

¹ stilus vertitur literally means *my stilus is turned* (for erasure) but here means *my pen is engaged*

Hildegard von Bingen

Hildegard von Bingen (1098-1179) was the first German female physician, the mother of German botany, and one of the most accomplished abbesses of the Middle Ages. She also wrote numerous songs and at least one play, all embracing good virtues and showing the constant battle between good and evil. The following are excerpts from her play, *The Virtues*.

Ecce quadrāgēsīmō tertiō temporālis cursus meī annō,
cum cēlestī magnō timōre,
tremulā intentiōne inhērerem,¹
vīdī maximum splendōrem,
in quō facta est vōx dē cēlō² ad mē dicēs:
ō homō fragilis,
et cinis cineris
et pūtrēdō pūtrēdinis
dīc et scrībe quē vidēs et audīs.

¹ I dwelt

² = caelō

5

- ³ all creation was verdant
⁴ greenness
⁵ champion
⁶ to grow dry
⁷ are exposed to mockery
⁸ reach

In principiō omnēs creatūrē viruērunt³
in mediō flōrēs flōruērunt;
postea viriditās⁴ dēscendit.
Et istud vir prēliātor⁵ vīdit et dixit:
5 Hoc sciō, sed aureus numerus nōndum est plēnus.
Tū ergō, paternum speculum aspice:
in corpore meō fatīgatiōnem sustineō,
parvulī etiam meī dēficiunt.
Nunc memor estō, quod plēnitūdō quē in prīmō facta est
10 ārēscere⁶ nōn dēbuit,
et tunc in tē habuistī
quod oculus tuus numquam cēderet
usque dum corpus meum vidērēs plēnum gemmārum.
Nam mē fatīgat quod omnia membra mea in irrisiōnem vādunt.⁷
15 Pater, vidē, vulnera mea tibi ostendō.
Ergō nunc, omnēs hominēs,
genua vestra ad patrem vestrum flectite,
ut vōbīs manum suam porrigat.⁸

Caesar of Heisterbach

Caesar was a monk in the monastery of Heisterbach, near Bonn, in the thirteenth century. He wrote a book of miracles, of which the following is one.

- ¹ of Treves
² subject, theme
³ homage
⁴ yes

In ecclēsiā sānctī Simeōnis diōcēsis Trēverēnsis¹ scholāris parvulus erat. Hic cum diē quādam, datā eī māteriā² ā magistrō suō, versūs ex eā compōnere nequīret trīstisque sedēret, sōlī sīc sedentī diabolus in speciē hominis appāruit. Cui cum diceret: “Quid dolēs, puer, quid sīc trīstis
5 sedēs?” respondit puer: “Magistrum meum timeō, quia de themate² quod ab eō recēpī versūs compōnere nequeō.” Et ille: “Vīs mihi facere hominium³ et ego versūs tibi compōnam?” Puerō vērō nōn intelligente quod inimīcus omnium diabolus tenderet ad malum suum, respondit: “Etiam,⁴ domine, parātus sum facere quicquid iusseris, dum modo versūs habeam et nōn
10 vāpulem.” Nesciēbat enim quis esset. Porrēxit eī manum, hominium eī faciēns. Ā quō continuō versūs dictātōs in tabulīs accipiēns, dictātōrem amplius nōn vīdit.

Quōs₁ cum tempore congruō magistrō suō redderet, ille versuum excellentiam mīrātus expāvit, dīvīnam, nōn hominis, in illīs cōnsiderāns scientiam. Quī ait: “Dīc mihi, quis tibi dictāvit hōs versūs?” Dīcente puerō, “Ego,

₁ i.e., the verses

fies au nostre ou que nos
n'ayons dit mainz que la
doyse ne requiert. Si puis-
donques des oies mais de la
singuliere partie de redoyse.
Et au si vze en ton courage
i hance d'ysaines premiere
parties. i confirme par lan-
gement i par vzeance ce qui
est mesmement necessaire.



*Ja comise le vi. liure de Redon q'q' a
te de l'adon q' est la singuliere par-
tie de l'art. .C. xxiii.*

Nos auons es-
crit en ce liure
de l'adon
qui est la sin-
guliere partie
de redoyse. sicom est desus
dit au tiers liure i la ou m-
mesher nos fu te metre ex-
ples nos auons vze de nos

propres exemples. i ce fynes
nos contre la coustume des
genfons qui de cest art ont es-
crit. **L**a n'ison pour nos
auons ce fait ce diuons nos
bienement que au pusses repr-
assez apertement que ce ne
faisons nos mie par volen-
te mais par fine necessite.
Quar es autres liures auant
nos ne parlames rien deuant
la maniere ne fors de la ma-
niere. Et si nos disons ou-
auant poi de doyses que la
maniere requiert a dire la
tost apres ce puserons ce qui
temente de l'art en la manie-
re que nos l'auons establi a
faire. **A**u enuies plus le
gierement nostre maison se
au l'adys premierement que
al dient. et pour ce reacionf
nos auant loz paroles i loz
di. **Q**uant les genfons co-
mandent en loz esars i en sei-
gnent comment il couient a
orner l'adon il auient p-
plusors causes i dient quil
couient metre exemples de
dysaine auant maniere de do-
ses ou de science que len doit
prendre auant i redoyse ou

Cicero's rhetorical work, *Dē Ōrātōre*, dealt with the history and theory of oratory, as well as the education and characteristics of the ideal orator. This manuscript page from the late 13th century is a translation into French of Cicero's work. Richly decorated, it even includes a drawing, complete with a caption, of a professor lecturing to six students and two adults. The upheld book represents the work he is lecturing on. Notice that, at least in the French version, small spaces are left between the words.

⁵ cutting off the sleeves from the surplice (an outer garment)

⁶ in the presence of

⁷ were struck by lightning

magister," et ille omnīnō, dum nōn crēderet, immō puerum diligentius
īnstāret interrogātiōnis verbum saepius repetēns, cōfessus est puer omnia
secundum ōrdinem quae gesserat. Tunc ait magister: "Filī, malus ille versi-
ficātor fuit, scīlicet diabolus," et adiēcit: "Cārissime, paeniteat tē sēductōrī
20 illī hominīum fēcisse?" Respondente puerō: "Etiam, magister," ait ille: "Modo
abrenūntiā diabolo et hominīo eius et omnibus pompīs eius et omnibus eius
operibus." Et fēcit sīc. Magister autem superpellicī eius manicās abscīdēns⁵
diabolo iactāvit dīcēns: "Hae manicae tuae sunt, hominū sēductor, nīl
aliud in hāc deī creatūrā possidēbis." Statimque raptae sunt manicae cōram⁶
25 omnibus et fulminātae⁷ sunt, corpore tamen puerī incorruptō. Haec mihi
dicta sunt ā quōdam priōre Trēverēnsis ecclēsiaē. (II, 14)

Petrarch

Petrarch (1304–1374) was born at Arezzo, Italy, but early in life he moved to southern France. He is most famous for his Italian poems but he wrote far more in Latin, including his letters. He had a great enthusiasm for the ancient classics and awakened other people's interest in them. Cicero was one of his favorite authors.

Petrarch searched far and wide for copies of the classics. He played a very important part in starting the movement called the Renaissance, a revival of interest in the classics.

The Craving for Books

Ūna inexplēbilis cupiditās mē tenet, quam frēnāre hāctenus nec potuī
certē nec voluī; mihi enim interblandior¹ honestārum rērum nōn inhones-
tam esse cupīdinem. Exspectās audīre morbī genus? Librīs satiārī nequeō.
Et habeō plūrēs forte quam oportet; sed sīcut in cēterīs rēbus, sīc et in
5 librīs accidit: quaerendī successus avāritiae calcar est. Quīn immō, singulāre
quiddam in librīs est: aurum, argentum, gemmae, purpurea vestis, marmorea
domus, cultus ager, pictae tabulae, cēteraque id genus,² mūtā habent et
superficiāriam voluptātem; librī medullitus³ dēlectant, colloquuntur, cōsulunt
et vīvā quādam nōbīs atque argūtā familiāritāte iunguntur, neque solum
10 sēsē lēctōribus quisque suīs īnsinuat, sed et aliōrum nōmen ingerit et alter
alterius dēsīderium facit. Ac nē rēs egeat exemplō, Mārcum mihi Varrōnem

¹ I flatter myself

² other things of this sort

³ to the heart, deep within (adverb)

cārum et amābilem Cicerōnis *Acadēmicus*₁ fēcit; Ennī nōmen in *Officiōrum* librīs audīvī; prīmum Terentiī amōrem ex *Tusculānārum quaestiōnum* lēctiōne concēpī.

Sunt quī librōs, ut cētera, nōn ūtendī studiō cumulent, sed habendī libī- 15
dine, neque tam ut ingenīi praesidium, quam ut thalamī ōrnāmentum.
Ammōnicus Serēnus bibliothēcā habuisse memorātur sexāgintā duo
librōrum mīlia continentem, quōs omnēs Gordiānō minōrī, quī tunc erat
imperātor, amantissimō discipulō suō, moriēns reliquit; quae rēs nōn minus
illum quōdam modō quam imperium honestāvit. Haec prō excūsātiōne vitiī 20
meī prōque sōlaciō tantōrum comitum dicta sint. Tū vērō, sī tibi cārus
sum, aliquibus fidīs et litterātīs virīs hanc cūram impōnitō: Etrūriam
perquīrant, religiōsōrum⁴ armāria⁵ ēvolvant cēterōrumque studiōsōrum
hominum, sī quid usquam ēmergeret lēniendae dīcam an⁶ irrītandae sitī
meae idōneum. Quōque vigilantior fīās, scītō mē eāsdem precēs amīcīs 25
aliīs in Britanniam Galliāsque et Hispāniās dēstināsse. (*Fam.* III, 18)

⁴ monks

⁵ shelves

⁶ or shall I say

₁ title of a book by Cicero

To Marcus Tullius Cicero

Ō Rōmānī ēloquiī summe parēs, nec sōlus ego sed omnēs tibi grātiās
agimus, quicumque Latīnae linguae flōribus ōrnāmur; tuīs enim prāta dē
fontibus irrigāmus, tuō ducātū dīrēctōs,₁ tuīs suffrāgiīs adiūtōs,₁ tuō nōs
lūmine illūstrātōs ingenuē profitēmur; tuīs dēnique, ut ita dīcam, auspiciīs
ad hanc, quantulacumque est, scrībendī facultātem ac prōpositum pervēnisse. 5

Quid dē vitā, quid dē ingenīō tuō sentiam, audistī. Exspectās audīre dē
librīs tuīs, quāenam illōs excēperit fortūna, quam seu vulgō seu doctiōribus
probentur?¹ Exstant equidem praeclāra volūmina, quae nē dīcam² perlegere,
sed nec³ ēnumerāre sufficimus. Fāma rērum tuārum celeberrima atque
ingēns et sonōrum nōmen; perrārī autem studiōsī,₂ seu temporum adver- 10
sitās seu ingenīōrum hebetūdō ac sēgnitiēs seu, quod magis arbitror, aliō⁴
cōgēns animōs cupiditās causa est. Itaque librōrum aliquī, nesciō quidem
an irreparābiliter, nōbīs tamen quī nunc vīvimus, nisi fallor, periēre; mag-
nus dolor meus, magnus saeculī nostrī pudor, magna posteritātis iniūria.

¹ how they are regarded by the
common people and the more
learned

² not to say

³ not even

⁴ in other directions

⁵ whether the Danube

⁶ whatever

Reliquum est ut urbis Rōmae ac Rōmānae reī pūblīcae statum audīre 15
velīs, quae patriae faciēs, quae cīvium concordia, ad quōs rērum summa
pervēnerit, quibus manibus quantōque cōnsiliō frēna trāctentur imperiī;
Histerne⁵ et Gangēs, Hibērus, Nīlus et Tanais līmitēs nostrī sint, an vērō
quisquam surrēxerit “Imperium Ōceanō, fāmam quī terminet astrīs.”
Vērū enim vērō tacēre melius fuerit; crēde enim mihi, Cicerō, sī quō in 20
statū rēs nostrae sint audieris, excident tibi lacrimae, quamlibet⁶ vel caelī
vel Erebi partem tenēs. Aeternum valē. (*Fam.* XXIV, 4)

₁ with nōs

₂ Supply sunt.

Coluccio Salutati

Coluccio Salutati (1331–1406) was a busy man as chancellor of Florence for more than thirty years, but he still had time to follow in Petrarch's footsteps, becoming an eager reader of the ancient classics and interesting a large number of young men in them. Thus he founded the group of humanists who made Florence the center of the new learning and developed the great movement called the Renaissance. He was chiefly responsible for bringing the Greek teacher Manuel Chrysoloras to Florence in 1396, thus starting the study of Greek, largely unknown in the West before that time.

To Manuel Chrysoloras

¹ that I have arranged that
² from so far away

... Nunc autem scītō mē tibi quod¹ in hāc urbe rēgiā Graecās doceās litterās salāriō pūblicō prōcūrāsse;¹ nec pigēbit, ut arbitror, mūtāsse caelum,¹ cum hīc et honorābilem vītā et plūrimōs quī tē colent invēneris. Quid tē deceat quī tam ā longē² vocāris, Graecus in Ītaliā, Thrācius in
5 Tusciam et Byzantium Flōrentiam, tū vidēbis.

₁ i.e., changed your home

The Defense of Poetry

¹ to put it more correctly
² that's up to you (literally, you see to it)

Vīdī nūper et rīsī, venerābilis in Chrīstō pater, litterās tuās quās mittis ad ēgregium virum Angelum Corbinellum, dīlēc̄tissimum fīlium₁ meum, quibus eum mōre tuō cōnāris ā poēticis et saeculāribus studiis revocāre, vel, quō rēctius dīxerim,¹ dēterrere. Quod an rēctē faciās tū vīderis.² Vērum
5 tē videō nōndum quaestiōnis terminōs intellegere versārīque in illō tuae simplicitātis errōre, quō reputās ista nostra poētica grave et inexplābile nefās esse et pernīciōsa mendācia. Quod sī vērū est, nec potest sub verbōrum cortice mendācium latere pūritās et integritās vērītātis, dīc, obsecrō, quō modō vērū est: "spīritus Domīnī ferēbātur super aquās"; et
10 illud: "dīxit Deus: 'fiat lūx'";₂ et sescenta₃ tālia? Quō modō fertur enim, quod corporālium est, "spīritus Domīnī super aquās," quī prōrsus incorporeus est? Quō modō: "dīxit Deus: 'fiat lūx'"; cum Deus nec ōs habeat nec linguam,

₁ not literally

₂ Coluccio's point is that these two passages from the Bible cannot be understood literally, that therefore poetry need not be so understood.

₃ we would say *thousand*

quae sunt necessariā membra instrūmentaque dicentis? Vērum haec aliās. Nunc autem, quō vidēre possīs liquidius vēritātem, ostendam prius quid per poēticam intellegere dēbeāmus; cōnsequenter clārum efficiam sacrās 15 litterās dīvinamque Scīptūrā nēdum³ habēre cum istā⁴ commercium, sed ³ not only vērē nihil esse nisi poēticam; tertiō vērō quantum oportet annītar ostendere etiam fidēlibus Chrīstiānīs nōn esse prohibendam gentīlium poētarum lēctiōnem; tandemque cōnābor ad illa quae dīxerīs respondēre.

Quid inter istōs est cūr dēbeant prohibērī? Sciō legōque cotīdiē apud 20 Hieronymum, Ambrosium, et Augustīnum ēgregia philosophōrum et ōrātōrum dicta carminaque poētarum, quae velut sīdus aliquod inter trāctātūs illōs sāctissimōs ēminent et resplendent; quae quidem tē nōn arbitror quasi crīmen aliquod condemnāre. Sī vēra, sī sācta, sī decōra pulchraque sunt apud istōs doctōrēs inventa et ibi sine peccātō leguntur, cūr apud auctōrēs 25 suōs dīcī dēbent nefāria vel profāna? Cūr nōbīs prohibita, sī sacris doctōribus concessa sunt?

⁴ i.e., poetry

Leonardo Bruni

Leonardo Bruni was a disciple of Coluccio. In this letter he writes to Poggio, another of Coluccio's disciples, about Poggio's discoveries of manuscripts of previously unknown authors and better manuscripts of other authors.

Sī valēs, bene est; ego quidem valeō. Lēgī apud Nīcolāum¹ nostrum litterās quās dē hāc ultimā profectiōne ac dē inventiōne quōrundam librōrum scrīpsistī. Nec tantum dē iīs sed dē optimā spē quam prō cēterōrum adeptiōne suscēpisse tē videō laetandum exīstimō. Erit profectō haec tua glōria, ut āmissa iam ac perditā excellentium virōrum scrīpta tuō labōre ac dīli- 5 gentiā saeculō nostrō restituās. Nec ea rēs solum nōbīs grāta erit sed et posterīs nostrīs, id est studiōrum nostrōrum successōribus. Neque enim silēbuntur ista nec oblitterābuntur sed exstābit memoriā haec² dūdum longō intervāllō perditā et iam plānē dēplōrāta per tuam industriam recuperāta ac restitūta nōbīs fuisse. Utque Camillus secundus ā Rōmulō conditor¹ 10 ¹ second founder (of Rome) after Romulus dictus est, quod ille³ statuit urbem, hic āmissam restituit, sic tū omnium quae iam āmissa tuā virtūte ac diligentiā nōbīs restitūta fuerint secundus auctor meritō nuncupābere.

¹ Niccolò Niccoli was another disciple of Coluccio.

² i.e., *scrīpta*

³ Romulus

Quārē tē hortātum ōrātumque maximē velim, nē in hōc praeclārō opere
 15 dēsideās, sed ērigās tē atque īnsistās. Nam reī pecūniāriae tenuitās nē tibi
 impedīmentō sit, nostra iam hīc prōvidentia erit, atque in hāc inventiōne
 tuā scītō maius lucrum factum esse quam tū sentīre videāris. Quīntiliānus
 enim prius lacer atque discerptus cūncta membra sua per tē recuperābit.
 Vīdī enim capita librōrum; tōtus est, cum vix nōbīs media pars et ea ipsa
 20 lacera superesset. Ō lucrum ingēns! Ō īnspērātum gaudium! Ego tē, Ō
 Mārce Fabī,⁴ tōtum integrumque aspiciam? Ōrō tē, Poggī, fac mē quam
 cito huius dēsīderiī compotem, ut hunc prius vīderim quam ē vītā dēcēdam.
 Nam dē Ascōniō quidem et Flaccō, licet uterque placeat, tamen nōn usque
 adeō labōrandum exīstimō; quōrum sī neuter umquam fuisset, nihilō ferē
 25 minus Latīnitās habēret. At Quīntiliānus, rhētoricae pater et ōrātōriae mag-
 ister, eius modī est, ut, cum tū illum diūturnō ac ferreō barbarōrum carcere
 liberātum hūc mīseris, omnēs Etrūriae populī grātulātum² concurrere
 dēbeant; mīrorque tē et illōs quī tēcum erant nōn statim in hunc⁵ manūs
 avidās iniēcisse, sed leviōribus perscrībendīs hunc posthabuisse,³ quem
 30 ego post Cicerōnis *Dē rē pūblicā* librōs plūrimum ā Latīnīs dēsīderātum et
 prae cūnctīs dēplōrātum affirmāre ausim.

Proximum est, ut tē moneam, nē in iīs quae hīc habēmus tempus terās,
 sed quae nōn habēmus conquīrās, quōrum maximē Varrōnis et Cicerōnis
 opera tibi prōposita sint. Valē et mē amā. Flōrentiae, Īdibus Septembr.
 35 MCCCCXVI.

² to congratulate

³ postponed this in favor of copying
 less important books

⁴ Quintilian

⁵ the Quintilian manuscript

Poggio Bracciolini

Poggio was Coluccio's most important disciple, particularly famous for discovering manuscripts, especially at the monastery of St. Gall in Switzerland, which he visited while attending a church council at Constance, Germany. He spent several years in England and helped spread the new gospel of humanism (the reading of the classics) there. He was a papal secretary and, like Bruni, chancellor of Florence.

Great Discoveries

Sed quam temere persaepe eveniunt quae nōn audeās optāre! ut inquit Terentius noster. Fortūna quaedam fuit cum sua tum maximē nostra¹ ut, cum essēmus Cōstantiae ōtiōsī, cupīdō incesset videndī eius locī quō ille₁ reclūsus tenēbātur. Est autem monastērium Sāctī Gallī prope urbem hanc. Itaque nōnnūllī² animī₂ laxandī et simul perquīrendōrum librōrum, 5 quōrum magnus numerus esse dicēbātur, grātiā eō perrēximus. Ibi inter cōfertissimam librōrum cōpiam, quōs longum esset recēnsere, Quīntiliānum comperimus adhūc salvum et incolumem, plēnum tamen sitū et pulvere squālentem. Erant enim nōn in bibliothēcā librī illī, ut eōrum dignitās postulābat, sed in taeterrimō quōdam et obscurō carcere, fundō scīlicet ūnūs 10 turris, quō nē capitālis quidem reī damnātī³ retrūderentur. Atquī ego prō certō existimō, sī essent quī haec barbarōrum ergastula, quibus hōs dētinent virōs,³ rīmārentur ac recognōscerent mōre maiōrum, similem fortūnam expertūrōs in multīs.

¹ not only his (Quintilian's) but especially mine, with **fortūna**

² several (of us)

³ not even those convicted of a capital crime

¹ Quintilian
² with **grātiā**
³ i.e., their writings

The Ruins of Rome

Nūper, cum pontifex Martīnus, paulō antequam diem suum obīret,¹ ab urbe in agrum Tusculānum₁ sēcessisset valētūdinis grātiā, nōs autem essēmus negōtiīs cūrisque pūblicīs vacuī, vīsēbāmus saepe dēserta urbis, Antōnius Luscus,² vir clārissimus, egoque, admīrantēs animō tum ob veterem collāpsōrum aedificiōrum magnitudinem et vāstās urbis antīquae 5 ruīnās, tum ob tantī imperiī ingentem strāgem stupendam profectō ac dēplōrandam fortūnae varietātem. Cum autem cōnscendissēmus aliquandō Capitōlīnum collem, Antōnius obequitandō paulum fessus cum quiētem appeteret, dēscendentēs ex equīs cōnsēdimus in ipsīs Tarpeiae arcīs₃ ruīnīs pōne² ingēns portae cuiusdam, ut putō, templī marmoreum līmen plūrimāsque 10 passim cōnfrāctās columnās, unde magnā ex parte prōspectus urbis patet.

¹ met his day, i.e., died

² behind (preposition)

³ like one who was stupefied

Hīc Antōnius, cum aliquantum hūc illūc oculōs circumtulisset, suspīrāns stupentīque similis,³ “Ō quantum,” inquit, “Poggī, haec Capitōlia ab illīs distant quae noster Marō cecinit.

Aurea nunc, ōlim silvestribus horrida dūmīs!

15

¹ Tusculum was in the hills southeast of Rome.
² Antonio Loschi was still another of Coluccio's disciples.
³ the Capitoline Hill, where the Tarpeian rock was

Ēvolvās licet⁴ historiās omnēs, omnia scrīptōrum monumenta pertrāctēs, omnēs gestārum rērum annālēs scrūtēris, nūlla umquam exempla mūtatiōnis suae maiōra fortūna prōtulit quam urbem Rōmam, pulcherrimam ōlim ac magnificentissimam omnium quae aut fuēre aut futūrae sunt.

20 Id vērō gravissimum et haud parvā cum admīrātiōne recēnsendum, hunc Capitoliū collem, caput quondam Rōmānī imperiī atque orbis terrārum arcem, quem omnēs rēgēs ac prīncipēs tremēbant, in quem triumphantēs tot imperātōrēs ascendērunt, dōnīs ac spoliīs tot tantārumque gentium ōrnātum flōrentemque ac ūniversō orbī spectandum, adeō dēsōlātum atque
25 ēversum et ā priōre illō statū immūtātum ut vīneae in senātorum subsellia successerint.

Lorenzo Valla

Lorenzo Valla (1407–1457) wrote a book on the Latin language and was one of the most prominent humanists in the Italy of his time.

¹ sacred nature

² by us Romans

Magnum Latīnī sermōnis sacrāmentum¹ est, magnum profectō nūmen, quod apud peregrīnōs, apud barbarōs, apud hostēs sāctē ac religiōsē per tot saecula custōdītur, ut nōn tam dolendum nōbīs Rōmānīs² quam gaudendum sit atque, ipsō etiam terrārum orbe exaudiente, glōriandum. Āmīsimus
5 Rōmam, āmīsimus rēgnum, āmīsimus dominātum, tametsī nōn nostrā sed temporum culpā, vērū tamen per hunc splendidiōrem dominātum₁ in magnā adhūc orbis parte rēgnāmus. Nostra est Ītalia, nostra Gallia, nostra Hispānia, Germānia, Pannonia, Dalmatia, Illyricum, multaeque aliae nātiōnēs. Ibi namque Rōmānum imperium est ubicumque Rōmāna lingua dominātur.

₁ i.e., of the Latin language

Pius II

(Enea Silvio Piccolomini)

Pope Pius II (1405–1464), a Siennese poet in his youth, and a famous pope in his later years (1458–1464), was a great supporter of the Roman classics. Here he gives advice to his nephew.

Rettulit mihi Nannēs, pater tuus, tē, dum puer adhūc forēs, mīrō litterārum amōre fuisse incēsum, postquam vērō ex ephēbīs¹ excessistī, nēminem esse quī tibi amplius ut studeās queat persuādēre; quae rēs nōn mīra tantum mihi sed stupenda fuit. Cēterī enim pueritiam simul et stultitiam dēpōnunt, virīlem togam et prūdentiā induentēs. Tū contrā sapiēns² puer, stultus vir cupis vidērī et barbā quasi umbrāculum³ virtūtis recipis. Doleō certē tuī causā nec quid dē tē futūrum sit sciō. Iubet Cicerō ut quilibet in adulēscientiā viam ēligat et genus vītāe honestum quō ūtī dēbeat. Idem Herculēs factitāvit. Nam cum per quiētem⁴ duae sibi mulierēs suprà hūmānam fōrmam venustae appārērent et altera sibi voluptātem, labōrem altera 10 prōmitteret, hanc secūtus est sciēns quod post labōrem praemium certāminis datur. Nec corōnātur, ut inquit apostolus, nisi quī lēgitimē certāverit. Tū vērō, ut audiō, vagārī vīs semper nec aliquod genus vītāe honestum amplectī studēs. Litterās, quās puer amāstī, iam vir odiō habēs. Pudet mē tuī causā. Nesciō enim quid esse possīs absque⁵ litterīs, nisi asinus bipēs. Quid enim 15 homō est absque doctrīnā quantumvīs⁶ dīves, quantumvīs potēns? Quid inter hominem illitterātum et marmoream statuam interest? Nōn dux, nōn rēx, nōn imperātor alicuius pretiī est litterārum ignārus.

¹ from boyhood

² umbrella

³ in sleep

⁴ without

⁵ no matter how



Unit X

Ovid



Alinari/Art Resource, NY

Apelles was a very famous Greek artist who lived in the 4th century B.C. Pliny the Elder thought him the greatest painter who ever lived. He was a friend of Alexander the Great and was court painter to Philip of Macedon. His style was characterized by graceful figures, spatial depth, fine line quality, and attention to detail. He was conscious of showing realism and only used four colors, which he considered basic earth colors: black, white, red, and yellow. Unfortunately, all of his works are lost, but in the 15th century, Sandro Botticelli, the great Italian Renaissance painter tried to recreate two of them based on descriptions in Pliny and Lucan. This one is called *The Calumny of Apelles*, and shows King Midas, with donkey's ears, sitting in judgment on "Ignorance" and "Suspicion," as "Calumny" is brought in as a witness.

Ovid's Life

Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō was born on March 20, 43 B.C. in Sulmo, about 90 miles southeast of Rome. After studying law, Ovid began a career in public life, but soon turned away to give his full attention to the writing of poetry. He said of himself that he was unable to write prose, that every statement came out as poetry. He became the most cherished poet of the smart set, brilliant and witty and popular. At the age of 50 he was removed from his position as a poet of pleasure in cosmopolitan Rome by exile to Tomis on the Black Sea, where he died in A.D. 17. The reasons for his exile, resulting from the displeasure of the emperor Augustus, are still a mystery; the allusions Ovid makes to those reasons are couched in veiled terms.

In his earlier years Ovid was acclaimed for his love poems (*Amōrēs*, *Ars Amatōria*, *Heroidēs*), but his greatest work was the *Metamorphōsēs*, 15 books of stories of transformation of animals, human beings, and inanimate objects into other forms. A work on the calendar, the *Fastī*, was left unfinished (six books, one for each month of the first half of the year), interrupted by exile. At Tomis, Ovid wrote the *Trīstia* and *Epistulae ex Pontō*, elegies with some pleas for recall.

The *Metamorphōsēs*, comprising 250 stories of changes, from the creation of the world out of chaos down to the transformation of Julius Caesar into a star, constitutes our main storehouse of Greek and Roman mythology. Ovid was an excellent poet technically, writing with grace, humor, and charm. He is one of the great poets of Rome.

Poetic Word Order

The order of words in Latin poetry is even freer than in prose. Words that belong together are often widely separated. This is especially true of adjectives and their nouns. Note particularly the following points, illustrated by references to lines in the first selection, "Pyramus and Thisbe":

1. The order adjective—preposition—noun is common. Often a number of other words come between the adjective and the preposition. In such cases preposition and noun are likely to be at the end of the line.
Cf. lines 100, 166.
2. An interlocking order, in which two or more phrases are involved, occurs frequently. A particular favorite is the use of two nouns and two adjectives in all possible combinations. Cf. lines 57–58, 69–70, 81, 100, 104.

3. A verb or participle is particularly likely to come between adjective and noun. Cf. lines 57, 62, 81, 82, 83, 87.
4. Subjects and other words often precede the introductory word of the subordinate clauses to which they belong. Cf. lines 111, 147.
5. Coordinate conjunctions (**et**, **sed**, etc.) sometimes come second instead of first in their clauses.
6. Other remarkable characteristics are illustrated in the following lines:
64 (**magis tegitur, tēctus magis**); 71 (**hinc Thisbē, Pȳramus illinc**);
91–92 (**lūx... praecipitātur aquis et aquis nox exit**); 117 (**dedit nōtae lacrimās, dedit ōscula vesti**).

Reading Latin Verse

The rhythm of Latin verse does not depend on word accent as does that of English but on the length of syllables. The rules for determining the length of syllables are:

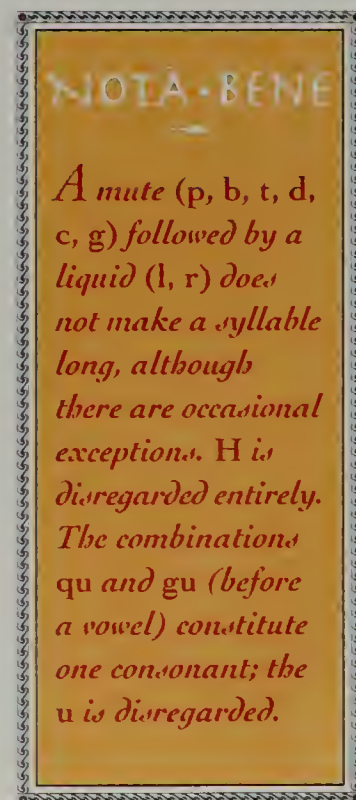
1. A syllable is long *by nature* if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong.
2. A syllable is long *by position* if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants or the consonant **x** (= **cs**).

In poetry a long syllable is treated as twice the length of a short syllable. Since a line of poetry is considered one long word, in a case like **is facit** the first word is a long syllable because the (short) vowel is followed by two consonants (**s, f**).

Several syllables are combined to form a foot. The *dactyl* is a foot consisting of a long syllable followed by two short syllables, written – ∪ ∪.

The *spondee* consists of two long syllables, – –. When a line contains six feet, it is called a hexameter. The *Metamorphoses* is written in the dactylic hexameter. A spondee may be substituted for a dactyl in every foot except the fifth, though occasionally a spondee is used even here. The sixth foot is always a spondee.¹ The beat is on the first syllable of each foot.

¹ The last syllable is often short, but the “rest” at the end of the line fills out the foot.



Elision

If a word ends in a vowel or a vowel plus **m** and the next word begins with a vowel or **h**, the first vowel disappears entirely. This is called *elision*; the vowel is said to be “elided.”

foribusqu(e) excēdere is pronounced **foribusquexcēdere**.

Before **es** or **est**, *prodelision* occurs—that is, the first vowel of the following word disappears.

nimum est is pronounced **nimumst**.

Scansion

The first five lines of *Pyramus and Thisbe* are scanned (marked) to show the meter, as follows:

P̄yramus | et This|bē, iuve|num pul|cherrimus | alter, |
altera, | quās Ori|ēns habu|it, prae|lāta pu|ellīs, |
contigu|ās tenu|ēre do|mōs, ubi | dīcitur | altam |
coctili|bus mū|rīs cīn|xisse Se|mīramis | urbem. |
Nōtiti|am prī|mōsque gra|dūs vī|cīnia | fēcit |

Pyramus and Thisbe

This is the famous story of two lovers living in adjacent homes in ancient Babylonia who were forbidden by their parents to see each other. Conversing through a crack in the common wall between the two houses, they arranged a secret meeting at night outside the city. Their trysting place was under a mulberry tree. The metamorphosis in this story is the change in the color of the fruit of the mulberry from white to red, from the blood of the young people.

- 55 P̄yramus et Thisbē, iuvenum pulcherrimus alter,
altera, quās¹ Oriēns habuit, praelāta puellīs,
contiguās tenuēre domōs, ubi dīcitur altam
coctilibus¹ mūrīs cīnxisse Semīramis urbem.
Nōtitiam prīmōsque gradūs² vīcīnia fēcit,
60 tempore crēvit amor; taedae quoque iūre³ coissent,

¹ of brick (literally, baked)

² i.e., of love

³ in lawful wedlock (literally, by the law of the torch)

₁ The relative clause precedes the antecedent, **puellīs**.

sed vetuere patrēs. Quod nōn potuere vetāre,
ex aequo captis ārdēbant mentibus ambō.
Cōnscius omnis abest; nūtū signisque loquuntur,
quōque⁴ magis tegitur, tēctus magis aestuat ignis.
Fissus erat² tenui rīmā, quam dūxerat⁵ ōlim
cum fieret, pariēs domuī commūnis utrīque.
Id vitium nulli per saecula longa notātum
(quid nōn sentit amor?) primū vīdistis amantēs
et vōcis fēcistis iter;⁶ tūtaeque per illud
murmure blanditiae minimō trānsire solēbant.
Saepe, ubi cōnstitēbant, hinc Thisbē, Pȳramus illinc,
inque vicēs fuerat captātus anhelitus ōris,⁷
“Invide,” dīcēbant, “pariēs, quid amantibus obstās?
Quantum erat⁸ ut sinerēs tōtō nōs corpore iungī,
aut, hoc sī nimium est, vel ad ōscula danda patērēs!³
Nec sumus ingrātī; tibi nōs dēbere fatēmur
quod⁹ datus est verbis ad amīcās trānsitus aurēs.”
Tālia dīversā nēquīquam sēde locūtī
sub noctem¹⁰ dīxere, “Valē,” partīque dedere
ōscula quisque¹¹ suae nōn pervenientia contrā.
Postera nocturnōs Aurōra remōverat ignēs,
sōlque pruīnōsās radiīs siccāverat herbās;
ad solitum coiēre locum. Tum murmure parvō
multa prius questī,⁴ statuunt ut nocte silentī
fallere custōdēs foribusque excēdere temptent,⁵
cumque domō exierint, urbis quoque tēcta relinquunt,⁵
nēve sit errandum lātō spatiantibus⁶ arvō,
convenient⁵ ad busta Ninī⁷ lateantque⁵ sub umbrā
arboris: arbor ibi niveīs ūberrima pōmīs,
ardua mōrus,¹² erat gelidō contermina fontī.
Pācta placent; et lūx¹³ tardē discēdere vīsa
praecipitātur aquīs et aquīs nox exit ab īsdem.
Callida per tenebrās, versātō cardine,¹⁴ Thisbē
ēgreditur fallitque suōs adopertaque vultum
pervenit ad tumulum distāque sub arbore sēdit.
Audācem⁸ faciēbat amor. Venit ecce recentī
caede leaena boum,⁹ spūmantēs oblita¹⁵ rictūs¹⁶

- ⁴ the more
⁵ it had acquired
65 ⁶ a passage for the voice
⁷ and each had heard the other's
breathing
⁸ how small a thing it would be
⁹ the fact that
¹⁰ at nightfall
¹¹ each
70 ¹² mulberry tree (feminine)
¹³ daylight
¹⁴ opening the door (literally,
turning the hinge)
¹⁵ smeared (from oblinō)
¹⁶ jaws

75

80

85

90

95

² The subject is **pariēs**.

³ i.e., wide enough (from **pateō**)

⁴ from **queror**

⁵ volitive clause, object of **statuunt**

⁶ modifies **eīs** understood, dative of agent: *that they need not wander at random*

⁷ Semiramis' husband

⁸ Supply **eam**.

⁹ from **bōs**; genitive with **caede**

¹⁷ to quench
¹⁸ from her back (with *lāpsa*)
¹⁹ it is (the part of) a coward
²⁰ just as when a faulty lead water pipe splits and sends long (streams of) water through the small, hissing hole and bursts through the air with its jets
²¹ spray
²² is anxious
²³ and although . . . yet
²⁴ seen (before) (with *arbore*)

dēpositūra¹⁷ sitim vīcīnī fontis in undā.
 Quam procul ad lūnae radiōs Babylōnia Thisbē
 vīdit et obscūrum timidō pede fūgit in antrum;
 dumque fugit tergō¹⁸ vėlāmina lāpsa reliquit.
 Ut lea saeva sitim multā compescuit undā,
 dum redit in silvās, inventōs forte sine ipsā¹⁰
 ōre cruentātō tenuēs laniāvit amictūs.
 Sērius ēgressus vēstīgia vīdit in altō
 pulvere certa ferae tōtōque expalluit ōre
 Pȳramus. Ut vērō vestem quoque sanguine tīnctam
 repperit, "Ūna duōs," inquit, "nox perdet amantēs,
 ē quibus illa fuit longā dignissima vītā;
 110 nostra nocēns anima est. Ego tē, miseranda, perēmī,
 in loca plēna metūs quī iussī nocte venīrēs
 nec prior hūc vērī. Nostrum dīvellite corpus
 et scelerāta ferō cōnsūmite vīscera morsū,
 Ō quicumque sub hāc habitātis rūpe, leōnēs!
 115 Sed timidī¹⁹ est optāre necem!" Vėlāmina Thisbēs¹¹
 tollit et ad pāctae sēcum fert arboris umbram.
 Utque dedit nōtae¹² lacrimās, dedit ōscula vestī,
 "Accipe nunc," inquit, "nostrī quoque sanguinis haustūs."
 Quōque¹³ erat accīnctus dēmīsit in īlia ferrum,
 120 nec mora,¹⁴ ferventī moriēns ē vulnere trāxit,¹⁵
 et iacuit resupīnus humō.¹⁶ Cruor ēmicat altē,
 nōn aliter²⁰ quam cum vitiātō fistula plumbō
 scinditur et tenuī strīdente forāmine longās
 ēiaculātur aquās atque ictibus āera rumpit.²⁰
 125 Arboreī fētūs aspergine²¹ caedis in ātram
 vertuntur faciem, madefactaque sanguine rādīx
 purpureō tingit pendentia mōra colōre.
 Ecce metū nōndum positō, nē fallat amantem,
 illa redit iuvenemque oculīs animōque requīrit,
 130 quantaque vītārit nārrare perīcula gestit.²²
 Utque²³ locum et vīsā²⁴ cognōscit in arbore fōrmam,
 sīc²³ facit incertam pōmī color: haeret an haec sit.

¹⁰ i.e., Thisbe
¹¹ genitive
¹² modifies *vestī*
¹³ = *quō* and *–que*; *ferrum* is the antecedent
¹⁴ Supply *est*.
¹⁵ Supply *ferrum*.
¹⁶ ablative (instead of locative *humī*): *on the ground*

Dum dubitat, tremebunda videt pulsāre cruentum
 membra solum²⁵ retrōque pedem tulit ōraque buxō²⁶
 pallidiōra gerēns exhorruit aequoris īnstar²⁷
 quod tremit exiguā cum summū²⁸ stringitur aurā.
 Sed postquam remorāta suōs cognōvit amōrēs,²⁹
 percutit indignōs¹⁷ clārō plangōre lacertōs
 et laniāta comās amplexaque corpus amātum
 vulnera supplēvit lacrimīs flētumque cruorī
 miscuit et gelidīs in vultibus ōscula fīgēs
 “Pȳrame,” clāmāvit, “quis tē mihi cāsus adēmit?
 Pȳrame, respondē! Tua tē cārissima Thisbē
 nōminat; exaudī vultūsque attolle iacentēs!”
 Ad nōmen Thisbēs oculōs ā morte gravātōs
 Pȳramus ērēxit vīsāque recondidit illā.
 Quae postquam vestemque suam cognōvit et ēnse¹⁸
 vīdit ebur³⁰ vacuum, “Tua tē manus,” inquit, “amorque
 perdidit, īnfēlix. Est et mihi fortis in ūnum
 hoc³¹ manus; est et amor; dabit hic in vulnera vīrēs.
 Persequar exstīnctum¹⁹ lētīque miserrima dīcar
 causa comesque tuī; quīque ā mē morte revellī
 heu sōlā poterās, poteris nec³² morte revellī.
 Hoc²⁰ tamen ambōrum verbīs estōte³³ rogātī,
 Ō multum miserī meus illīusque parentēs,
 ut quōs certus amor, quōs hōra novissima iūnxit,
 compōnī tumulō nōn invidēātis eōdem.
 At tū quae rāmīs arbor²¹ miserābile corpus
 nunc tegis ūnīus, mox es tēctūra duōrum,
 signa tenē caedis pullōsque et lūctibus aptōs
 semper habē fētūs, geminī monumenta cruorīs.”
 Dīxit et aptātō pectus mūcrōne sub īmum
 incubuit ferrō, quod adhūc ā caede tepēbat.
 Vōta tamen tetigēre deōs, tetigēre parentēs;
 nam color in pōmō est, ubi permātūruit, āter,
 quodque rogīs³⁴ superest, ūnā requiēscit in urnā.
 (IV, 55–166)

²⁵ ground
²⁶ paler than boxwood
²⁷ like the sea
²⁸ surface
²⁹ lover
³⁰ sheath (literally, ivory)
³¹ for this one act
³² not even
³³ let me make this request (literally,
 be asked)
³⁴ and what remains from the pyres
 (i.e., the ashes)

145

150

155

160

165

¹⁷ i.e., they did not deserve a beating
¹⁸ ablative of separation with *vacuum*
¹⁹ Supply *tē*.
²⁰ object of *rogātī*
²¹ prose order: *tū, arbor, quae*

Midas

Midas, king of Phrygia, helped restore to Bacchus his companion and attendant, the Satyr (half goat, half man) Silenus. In return for this service Bacchus offered Midas anything he desired.

¹ day

² foster son, i.e., Bacchus

³ free choice

⁴ foster father

⁵ of Ceres (grain)

⁶ you would think

⁷ grasps

⁸ and not without bread (literally, not lacking baked grain)

Quem₁ simul agnōvit₂ socium comitemque sacrōrum,₃
 95 hospitis adventū fēstum geniāliter ēgit
 per bis quīnque diēs et iūctās ōrdine noctēs.
 Et iam stellārum sublīme coēgerat agmen
 Lūcifer¹ ūndecimus, Lŷdōs cum laetus in agrōs
 rēx venit et iuvenī Silēnum reddit alumnō.²
 100 Huic deus optandī grātum sed inūtile fēcit
 mūneris arbitrium,³ gaudēns altōre⁴ receptō.
 Ille₄ male ūsūrus dōnīs ait, "Effice quicquid
 corpore contigerō fulvum vertātur₅ in aurum."
 Annuit optātis₆ nocitūraque mūnera solvit
 105 Līber₇ et indoluit quod nōn meliōra petīssset.
 Laetus abit gaudetque malō Berecynthius hērōs₈
 pollicitīque fidem tangendō singula temptat.
 Vixque sibī crēdēns, nōn altā₉ fronde virentem
 ilice dētrāxit virgam: virga aurea facta est.
 110 Tollit humō saxum: saxum quoque palluit aurō.
 Contigit et glaebam: contactū glaeba potentī
 māssa fit. Ārentēs Cereris⁵ dēcerpsit aristās:
 aurea messis erat. Dēmptum tenet arbore pōmum:
 Hesperidās dōnāsse putēs.⁶ Sī postibus altīs
 115 admōvit digitōs, postēs radiāre videntur.
 118 Vix spēs ipse suās animō capit,⁷ aurea fingēns
 omnia. Gaudentī₁₀ mēnsās posuēre ministrī
 120 exstrūctās dapibus nec tostae frūgis egentēs.⁸

¹ Bacchus

² The subject is Midas.

³ Midas was celebrating a festival.

⁴ Midas

⁵ Supply *ut*.

⁶ Supply *rēbus*: *his choice of gift*.

⁷ Bacchus

⁸ Midas

⁹ modifies *ilice*

¹⁰ Supply *eī*.

Transmission of Latin and Greek Works Before Printing: 6



Ovid's mythological subject matter was obviously a joy to illustrate (see the small pictures). This 14th century manuscript is from an early part of the *Metamorphoses*. You can just read the words **Liber primus** at the top. The rest of the manuscript is in French. Annotations made are in the margins among the birds and vines. The really popular works of Latin authors were translated into many languages. This work of Ovid was among the most popular. The manuscript itself was written and illustrated for a French nobleman.

- ⁹ a golden layer covered the food
¹⁰ the author (giver) of the gift
 (Bacchus), i.e., wine 125
¹¹ You might have seen liquid gold
 flowing over his jaws.
¹² Bacchus
¹³ = **deōrum**
¹⁴ a proof
¹⁵ removed the gift
¹⁶ smeared 130
¹⁷ meeting the waters, i.e., going
 upstream
¹⁸ having received the seed of
 ancient vein
¹⁹ fat, i.e., stupid
²⁰ plays a song
²¹ compared to himself 135

Tum vērō, sīve ille suā Cereālia dextrā
 mūnera contigerat, Cereālia dōna rigēbant;
 sīve dapēs avidō convellere dente parābat,
 lāmina⁹ fulva dapēs, admōtō dente, premēbat;⁹
 mīscuerat pūrīs auctōrem¹⁰ mūneris undīs:
 fūsile¹¹ per rictūs aurum fluitāre vidērēs.¹¹
 Attonitus novitāte malī dīvēsque miserque
 effugere optat opēs et quae modo vōverat ōdit.
 Cōpia nūlla famem relevat; sitis ārida guttur
 ūrit, et invīsō meritis torquētur ab aurō,
 ad caelumque manūs et splendida brachia tollēs,
 “Dā veniam, Lēnaee¹² pater! Peccāvimus,” inquit,
 “sed miserēre, precor, speciōsōque ēripe¹¹ damnō.”
 Mīte deum¹³ nūmen: Bacchus peccāsse fatentem
 restituit factīque fidē¹⁴ data mūnera solvit.¹⁵
 “Nēve male optātō maneās circumlitus¹⁶ aurō,
 vāde,” ait, “ad magnīs vīcīnum Sardibus amnem
 perque iugum Lūdum lābentibus obviis undīs¹⁷
 carpe viam, dōnec veniās ad flūminis ortūs.
 140 Spūmigerōque tuum fontī, quā plūrimus exit,
 subde caput corpusque simul, simul ēlue crīmen.”
 Rēx iussae succēdit aquae: vīs aurea tīnxit
 flūmen et hūmānō dē corpore cessit in amnem.
 Nunc quoque, iam veteris perceptō sēmine vēnae,¹⁸
 145 arva rigent aurō¹² madidīs pallentia glaeibīs.
 Ille perōsus opēs silvās et rūra colēbat
 Pānaque¹³ montānīs habitantem semper in antrīs.
 Pingue¹⁹ sed ingenium mānsit, nocitūraque, ut ante,
 rūrsus erant dominō stultae praecordia mentis.¹⁴
 150 Nam freta prōspiciēns lātē riget arduus altō
 Tmōlus in ascēnsū clīvōque extēsus utrōque
 Sardibus hinc, illinc parvīs fīnītur Hypaepīs.
 Pān ibi dum tenerīs iactat sua carmina nymphīs
 et leve cērātā modulātur²⁰ harundine carmen,²⁰
 155 ausus Apollineōs prae²¹ sē contemnere cantūs,
 iūdice sub Tmōlō¹⁵ certāmen vēnit ad impār.

¹¹ Supply **mē** as object.

¹² with **madidīs**

¹³ accusative singular

¹⁴ **stultae praecordia mentis** = **stulta mēns**

¹⁵ here the god of the mountain

Monte suō senior iūdex cōnsēdit et aurēs
liberat arboribus. Quercū coma caerulea tantum
cingitur, et pendent circum cava tempora glandēs.
Isque deum¹⁶ pecoris spectāns. "In iūdice," dīxit,
"nūlla mora est." Calamīs agrestibus īsonat ille
barbaricōque Midān (aderat nam forte canentī)
carmine dēlēnit. Post hunc sacer ōra retorsit
Tmōlus ad ōs Phoebī; vultum sua silva secūta est.
Ille caput flāvum laurō Parnāsīde vīctus
verrit humum Tyriō saturātā mūrīce pallā,
īnstrictamque fidem²² gemmīs et dentibus Indīs
sustinet ā laevā.²³ tenuit manus altera plēctrum;
artificis status ipse fuit. Tum stāmina²⁴ doctō
pollice sollicitat, quōrum dulcēdīne captus
Pāna iubet Tmōlus citharae¹⁷ summittere cannās.
Iūdicium sānctīque placet sententia montis
omnibus; arguitur²⁵ tamen atque iniūsta vocātur
ūnīus sermōne Midae. Nec Dēlius¹⁸ aurēs
hūmānam stolidās patitur retinēre figūrā,
sed trahit in spatium²⁶ vīllīsque albentibus implet
īnstabilēsque īmās²⁷ facit et dat²⁸ posse movērī.
Cētera sunt hominis; partem damnātur in ūnam²⁹
induiturque aurēs lentē gradientis asellī.
Ille quidem cēlāre cupit turpīque pudōre
tempora purpureīs temptat vėlāre tiārīs;
sed solitus longōs ferrō resecāre capillōs
vīderat hoc famulus;¹⁹ quī cum nec prōdere vīsum
dēdecus audēret. cupiēns efferre sub aurās,³⁰
nec posset reticēre tamen, sēcēdit humumque
effodit et, dominī quālēs aspexerit aurēs,
vōce refert parvā terraeque immurmurat haustae³¹
indiciūque suae vōcis, tellūre regeštā,
obruit et scrobibus³² tacitus discēdit opertīs.
Crēber harundinibus tremulīs ibi surgere lūcus
coepit et, ut prīmum plēnō mātūruit annō
prōdidit agricolam;²⁰ lēnī nam mōtus ab austrō
obruta verba refert dominīque coarguit aurēs.
(XI, 94–193)

160

165

²² lyre

²³ on the left (side)

²⁴ strings

²⁵ (the judgment) is challenged

170 ²⁶ lengthens them (literally, draws them into space)

²⁷ loose at the bottom

²⁸ causes them

²⁹ in respect to one part

³⁰ in the open

³¹ dug out

³² hole

175

180

185

190

¹⁶ Pan

¹⁷ dative

¹⁸ Apollo

¹⁹ i.e., his servant saw it while cutting his hair

²⁰ i.e., the famulus (barber)

Daedalus

Daedalus was a famous Greek sculptor, architect, and inventor. He went to Crete to build the labyrinth to house the Minotaur, a beast half man, half bull that was the son of King Minos. Later imprisoned with his son Icarus by King Minos, Daedalus made an escape plan.

- ¹ though 185
² at least
³ although Minos possesses all things
⁴ directs
⁵ changes (the laws of) nature
⁶ beginning with the smallest
⁷ so that you would think they grew on a slope 190
⁸ a (shepherd's) pipe, (made of reeds)
⁹ = **pericula**: not knowing that he was handling (things that were) dangerous to him
¹⁰ = **molliēbat**
¹¹ final touch 195
¹² (his) work
¹³ balanced
¹⁴ too low

Daedalus intereā, Crētēn longumque perōsus
 exsilium, tāctusque locī nātālis¹ amōre,
 clausus erat pelagō. "Terrās licet,"¹ inquit, "et undās
 obstruat,² at² caelum certē patet; ībimus illāc.
 Omnia possideat,³ nōn possidet āera Mīnōs."

Dīxit, et ignōtās animum dīmittit⁴ in artīs
 nātūramque novat,⁵ nam pōnit in ōrdine pennās,
 ā minimā coeptās,⁶ longam breviōre sequente,
 ut clīvō crēvisse putēs;⁷ sīc rūstica quondam
 fistula⁸ disparibus paulātīm surgit avēnīs.
 Tum līnō mediās et cērīs alligat īmās,
 atque ita compositās parvō curvāmine flectit
 ut vērās imitētur avīs. Puer Īcarus ūnā
 stābat et, ignārus sua sē trāctāre perīcla,⁹
 ōre renīdentī modo quās vaga mōverat aura
 captābat plūmās, flāvam modo pollice cēram
 mollībat,¹⁰ lūsūque suō mīrābile patris
 200 impediēbat opus. Postquam manus ultima¹¹ coeptō¹²
 imposita est, geminās opifex librāvit¹³ in ālās
 ipse suum corpus, mōtāque pependit in aurā.
 Īnstruit et nātum, "Mediō" que "ut līmite currās,
 Īcare," ait, "moneō, nē, sī dēmissior¹⁴ ībis,
 205 unda gravet pennās, sī celsior, ignis adūrat.

Inter utrumque volā. Nec tē spectāre Boōtēn₃
 aut Helicēn₃ iubeō strictumque Ōrionis₃ ēnsem:
 mē duce, carpe viam." Pariter praecepta volandī
 trādīt et ignōtās umerīs accommodat ālās.

¹ Athens

² Supply Minos as subject.

³ constellations; Helicē = Ursa Major, the constellation containing the Big Dipper.

Inter opus monitūsque genae¹⁵ maduēre senīlēs,
et patriae tremuēre manūs; dedit ōscula nātō—
nōn iterum repetenda!—suō, pennisque levātus
ante volat comitūque timet, velut āles, ab altō
quae teneram prōlem prōdūxit in āera nīdō,
hortāturque sequī¹⁶ damnōsāsque ērudīt artīs,
et movet ipse suās et nātī respicit ālās.

Hōs aliquis, tremulā dum captat arundine piscīs,
aut pāstor baculō,¹⁷ stīvāve¹⁷ innīxus arātor,
vīdit et obstupuit, quīque aethera carpere¹⁸ possent
crēdidit esse deōs. Et iam Iūnōnia laevā
parte Samos (fuerant Dēlosque Parosque relīctae),
dextra Lebinthus erat fēcundaque melle Calymnē,
cum puer audācī coepit gaudēre volātū
dēseruitque ducem caelīque cupīdine tāctus
altius ēgit iter; rapidī vīcīnia sōlis
mollit odōrātās, pennārum vīcula, cērās.
Tābuerant cērae: nūdōs quatit ille lacertōs,
rēmigiōque¹⁹ carēns nōn ūllās percipit aurās,²⁰
ōraque caeruleā patrium clāmāntia nōmen
excipiuntur aquā,²¹ quae nōmen trāxit ab illō.⁴

At pater īnfēlīx, nec iam pater, “Īcare,” dīxit,
“Īcare,” dīxit. “ubi es? Quā tē regiōne requīram?”
“Īcare,” dīcēbat: pennās aspexit in undīs,
dēvōvitque suās artīs, corpusque sepulchrō
condidit. Et tellūs⁵ ā nōmine dicta sepultī.
(VIII, 183–235)

210 ¹⁵ cheeks
¹⁶ encourages him to follow
¹⁷ staff, plow
¹⁸ fly
¹⁹ wings (literally, rowing)
²⁰ does not take hold of the air
²¹ his mouth (i.e., voice) is drowned
215 by the water

220

225

230

235

⁴ the Icarian Sea

⁵ Icaria, an island near Samos

Niobe

Niobe, queen of Thebes, and beautiful mother of seven sons and seven daughters, feels that she is more worthy of honor and worship than Latona, the goddess mother of Apollo and Diana.

¹ surrounded by a throng	165
² tossing, along with her head, her hair flowing down on	
³ tall, standing erect	
⁴ to prefer gods (merely) heard of to those (you have) seen	
⁵ incense (used in worship)	
⁶ father	170
⁷ royal palace	
⁸ put together by the lyre	
⁹ there is in addition	
¹⁰ some Coeus or other	
¹¹ a Titan's daughter, born of Coeus	
¹² to whom about to give birth (with cui)	175
¹³ offspring (literally, womb)	
¹⁴ I am too great for Fortune to harm	
¹⁵ grant that	
¹⁶ my wealth (i.e., my children) has gone beyond fear	
¹⁷ even if I am robbed	
¹⁸ Latona's crowd (in apposition with duorum)	180

	Ecce venit comitum Niobē crēberrima ¹ turbā, vestibus intextō Phrygiīs spectābilis aurō et, quantum īra sinit, fōrmōsa movēnsque decōrō cum capite immissōs umerum per utrumque capillōs. ² Cōnstitit, utque oculōs circumtulit alta ³ superbōs, “Quis furor ₁ audītōs,” ⁴ inquit, “praepōnere vīsīs caelestēs? Aut cūr colitur Lātōna per ārās, nūmen adhūc sine tūre ⁵ meum est? Mihi Tantalus auctor, ⁶ cui licuit sōlī superōrum tangere mēnsās; Plēiadum soror est genetrīx mea; maximus Atlās est avus, aetherium quī fert cervīcibus axem; Iuppiter alter avus; socerō quoque glōrior illō. Mē gentēs metuunt Phrygiae, mē rēgia ⁷ Cadmī sub dominā ₂ est, fidibusque meī commissa ⁸ marītī moenia cum populīs ā mēque virōque reguntur. In quamcumque domūs advertī lūmina partem immēnsae spectantur opēs. Accēdit eōdem ⁹ digna deā faciēs; hūc nātās adice septem et totidem iuvenēs et mox generōsque nurūsque. Quaerite nunc, habeat quam nostra superbia causam; nesciō quōque ¹⁰ ₃ audēte satam ¹¹ Titānida ¹¹ Cōeō Lātōnam praeferre mihī, cui maxima quondam exiguam sēdem paritūrae ¹² terra negāvit. Nec caelō nec humō nec aquīs dea vestra recepta est; exsul erat mundī, dōnec miserāta ₄ vagantem, ‘Hospita tū terrīs errās, ego,’ dixit, ‘in undīs,’ īnstabilemque ₅ locum Dēlos dedit. Illa duorum facta parēns; uterī ¹³ pars haec est septima nostrī. Sum fēlix (quis enim neget hoc?) fēlixque manēbō (hoc quoque quis dubitet?) tūtā mē cōpia fēcit. Maior sum quam cui possit Fortūna nocēre, ¹⁴ multaque ut ¹⁵ ēripiat, multō mihi plūra relinquet. Excessēre ¹⁶ metum mea iam bona. ¹⁶ Fingite ₆ dēmī huic aliquid populō nātōrum posse meōrum, ₆ nōn tamen ad numerum redigar spoliāta ¹⁷ duorum. Lātōnae turbae: ¹⁸ quae quantum distat ab orbā?
--	--

¹ Supply est.

² with mē

³ nesciō here = two long syllables

⁴ modifies Dēlos

⁵ Delos was then a floating island.

⁶ suppose that something could be taken from this nation (that) my children constitute,

i.e., her children are so numerous that they form a nation

Īte satis properē sacrīs¹⁹ laurumque capillīs
 pōnite.”²⁰ Dēpōnunt et sacra infecta²¹ relinquunt,
 quodque⁷ licet, tacitō venerantur murmure nūmen.
 Indignāta dea est summōque in vertice Cynthī
 tālibus est dictīs geminā cum prōle locūta:
 “Ēn ego vestra parēns, vōbīs animōsa creatīs,²²
 et nisi Iūnōnī nullī cessūra deārum,
 an dea sim dubitor,²³ perque omnia saecula cultīs⁸
 arceor, Ō nātī, nisi vōs succurritis, ārīs.
 Nec dolor hīc sōlus: dīrō convīcia factō
 Tantalīs²⁴ adiēcīt vōsque est postpōnere nātīs
 ausa suīs et mē (quod in ipsam reccidat)²⁵ orbam
 dīxit et exhibuit linguam scelerāta paternam.”
 Adiectūra precēs erat hīs Lātōna relātīs:
 “Dēsine,” Phoebus ait, “poenae mora longa querēla est.”
 Dīxit idem Phoebē celerīque per āera lāpsū
 contigerant tēctī Cadmēida²⁶ nūbibus arcem.
 Plānus erat lātēque patēns prope moenia campus,
 assiduīs pulsātus equīs, ubi turba rotārum
 dūraque mollierat subiectās ungula glaebās.
 Pars ibi dē septem genītīs Amphīone fortēs
 cōnscendunt in equōs Tyriōque rubentia sūcō²⁷
 terga premunt aurōque gravēs moderantur habēnās.
 Ē quibus Ismēnus, quī mātīrī sarcina²⁸ quondam
 prīma suae fuerat, dum certum flectit in orbem
 quadrupedis cursūs spūmantiaque ōra coerces,
 “Ei²⁹ mihi!” conclāmat mediōque in pectore fīxa
 tēla gerit, frēnīsque manū moriente remissīs,
 in latus⁹ ā dextrō paulātim dēfluit armō.³⁰
 Proximus, audītō sonitū per ināne¹⁰ pharetrae,
 frēna dabat Sipylus, velutī cum praescius imbris
 nūbe fugit vīsā, pendentiaque undique rēctor³¹
 carbasa dēdūcit,³² nē quā³³ levis effluat aura;
 frēna tamen dantem nōn ēvītābile tēlum
 cōnsequitur, summāque tremēns cervīce sagitta
 haesit, et exstābat nūdum dē gutture ferrum.
 Ille, ut erat prōnus, per colla admissa iubāsque³⁴
 volvitur et calidō tellūrem sanguine foedat.

¹⁹ go away from the rites quickly
²⁰ = dēpōnite
²¹ unfinished
²² proud of you (whom I have) borne
²³ my divinity is being questioned
²⁴ daughter of Tantalus, i.e., Niobe
²⁵ may this fall to her lot
²⁶ of Cadmus (with arcem)
²⁷ dye (used on the saddlecloth)
²⁸ burden, i.e., child
²⁹ Oh! mihi is dative of reference
³⁰ shoulder (of the horse)
³¹ pilot (of a ship)
³² unfurls the sails
³³ anywhere
³⁴ the swift neck and the mane (of the horse)

215

220

225

230

235

⁷ The antecedent is the clause that follows.

⁸ with ārīs

⁹ accusative of the noun latus, side

¹⁰ noun

		Phaedimus infelix et aviti nominis heres,
	240	Tantalus, ut solito finem imposuere labori,
³⁵ of the glistening (with oil)		transierant ad opus nitidae iuvenale palaestrae, ³⁵
wrestling places		et iam contulerant artu luctantia nexu
³⁶ an arrow sent from the taut string		pectora pectoribus: contentu concita ³⁶ nervu,
(of the bow) (with sagitta)		sicut erant iuncti, traiecit utrumque sagitta.
³⁷ writhing		Ingemuere simul, simul incurvata ³⁷ dolore
³⁸ on the ground		membra solu ³⁸ posuere, simul suprema ³⁹ iacentes
³⁹ they moved their eyes (for the)	245	lumina versarunt, animam simul exhalarunt. ⁴⁰
last (time) (with lumina)		Aspicit Alphenor laniataque pectora plangens ⁴¹
⁴⁰ expired		evolat, ut gelidos complexibus allevet artus,
⁴¹ beating his torn breast (but of		inque pio cadit officio; nam Delius illi
course it was not torn until he		intima fatiferu rupit praecordia ferro.
beat it)		Quod simul ⁴² eductum est, pars ⁴³ et pulmōnis in hamis
⁴² = simul ac		eruta ⁴³ cumque anima cruor est effusus in aurās.
⁴³ part of his lungs was torn out	250	At non ¹¹ intonsum simplex Damasichthona ¹² vulnus
(and stuck to) the barbs (of the		afficit: ictus erat qua crus esse incipit et qua
arrow)		mollia nervosus facit internodia poples.
⁴⁴ up to the feathers		Dumque manu temptat trahere exitiabile telum,
⁴⁵ i.e., in vain		altera per iugulum pennīs tenuis ⁴⁴ acta sagitta est.
⁴⁶ informed the mother of the sudden		Expulit hanc sanguis seque ei aculatus in altum
disaster		emicat et longe terebrata prosilit aura.
⁴⁷ wondering (that the gods) could	255	Ultimus Ilioneus non profectura ⁴⁵ precando
(do this)		brachia sustulerat "di" que "O communiter omnes,"
⁴⁸ had walked proudly through		dixerat, ignarus non omnes ¹³ esse rogandos,
the city		"parcite!" Motus erat, cum iam revocabile telum
		non fuit, Arcitenens. Minimō tamen occidit ille
	260	vulnere, non alte percussu corde sagitta.
		Fama mali populique dolor lacrimaeque suorum
		tam subitae matrem certam fecere ruinae, ⁴⁶
		mirantem potuisse, ⁴⁷ irascentemque quod ausi
	270	hoc essent superi, quod tantum iuris haberent.
		Nam ¹⁴ pater Amphion, ferro per pectus adactu,
		finierat moriens pariter cum luce dolorem.
		Heu quantum haec Niobe Niobe distabat ab illa
		quae modo Latōis populum summoverat aris
	275	et mediam tulerat ⁴⁸ gressus resupina per urbem, ⁴⁸
		invidiosa suis, at nunc miseranda vel hosti!

¹¹ with simplex

¹² accusative (Greek form)

¹³ a prayer to Apollo would have been preferable

¹⁴ This line and the next explain why Niobe was not joined in grief by her husband.



This magnificent French manuscript from the 15th century is richly illustrated throughout in true Renaissance style, including detailed scenes, a fancy initial capital letter, and marginal flora and fauna. The text tells the story of the landing in England by Julius Caesar. It was written by the historian, Jean Mansel. You can read Caesar's name in French (Cesar) in the second line of column 1 and the fifth line of column 2. By the 15th century, the making of manuscripts was a fairly large industry and not all confined to monasteries. Soon printing on paper (1450 onward) would supplant manuscripts and provide many copies of the same work to an increasingly expanded reading public. From then on, the Roman and Greek classics were safely preserved!

⁴⁹ *I am carried out (i.e., to the grave)*

⁵⁰ *because of her misfortune*

⁵¹ *biers*

⁵² *the weapon fixed in (her brother's) heart*

⁵³ *her face placed upon her brother*

⁵⁴ *was bent double*

⁵⁵ *after her breath left her, i.e., when she died, her mouth opened*

⁵⁶ *the youngest*

⁵⁷ *a strong gust of wind*

280

285

290

295

300

305

310

Corporibus gelidīs incumbit et ōrdine nūllō
ōscula dispēnsat nātōs suprēma per omnēs.
Ā quibus ad caelum līventia¹⁵ bracchia tollēns,
“pāscere, crūdēlis, nostrō, Lātōna, dolōre;
pāscere,” ait, “satiāque meō tua pectora lūctū
corque ferum satiā,” dīxit. “Per fūnera septem
efferor.⁴⁹ Exsultā victrīxque inimīca triumphā!
Cūr autem victrīx? Miserae mihi plūra supersunt
quam tibi fēlīcī; post tot quoque fūnera vincō.”
Dīxerat, et sonuit contentō nervus ab arcū,¹⁶
quī praeter Niobēn ūnam conterruit omnēs;
illa malō⁵⁰ est audāx. Stābant cum vestibus ātrīs
ante torōs⁵¹ frātrum, dēmissō crīne, sorōrēs.
Ē quibus ūna trahēns haerentia vīscere tēla⁵²
impositō⁵³ frātrī moribunda relanguit ōre.
Altera sōlārī miserum cōnāta parentem
conticuit subitō duplicātaque⁵⁴ vulnere caecō est,
ōraque compressit, nisi postquam spīritus ībat.⁵⁵
Haec frūstrā fugiēns collābitur; illa sorōrī
immoritur; latet haec; illam trepidāre vidērēs.
Sexque datīs lētō dīversaue vulnera passīs,
ultima restābat. Quam tōtō corpore māter,
tōtā veste tegēns, “Ūnam minimamque⁵⁶ relinque!
Dē multīs minimam poscō,” clāmāvit, “et ūnam.”
Dumque rogat, prō quā¹⁷ rogat occidit. Orba resēdit
exanimēs inter nātōs nātāsque virumque
dēriguitque malīs; nūllōs movet aura capillōs,
in vultū color est sine sanguine, lūmina maestīs
stant immōta genīs, nihil est in imāgine vīvum.
Ipsa quoque interius cum dūrō lingua palātō
congelat, et vēnae dēsistunt posse movērī;
nec flectī cervīx nec bracchia reddere mōtūs
nec pēs īre potest; intrā quoque vīscera saxum est.
Flet tamen et validī circumdata turbine ventī⁵⁷
in patriam¹⁸ rapta est. Ibi fīxa cacūmine montis
līquitur, et lacrimās etiam nunc marmora mānant.¹⁹
(VI, 165–312)

¹⁵ as a result of beating herself in grief

¹⁶ of Diana, who will kill the daughters

¹⁷ Supply *ea* as antecedent of *quā* and subject of *occidit*.

¹⁸ Phrygia

¹⁹ The rock on Mt. Sipylus was called Niobe and resembled a female form. The tears are explained by the spring trickling down the face of the figure.

Philemon and Baucis

A kind aged couple of Phrygia entertain to the best of their resources Jupiter and Mercury who, disguised as wanderers, have been refused hospitality in other homes. The gods reward Philemon and Baucis for their purity with many blessings in life and in death.

Iuppiter hūc₁ speciē mortālī, cumque parente
vēnit Atlantiadēs positīs cādūcifer¹ ālīs.
Mīlle domōs adiēre locum requiemque petentēs,
mīlle domōs clausēre serae.² Tamen ūna recēpit,
parva quidem stipulīs³ et cannā tēcta palūstrī,³
sed pia Baucis anus⁴ parilīque aetāte Philēmōn
illā₂ sunt annīs iūctī iuvenālibus, illā₂
cōsensuēre casā paupertātemque fatendō
effēcēre levem nec inīquā mente ferendō.
Nec rēfert⁵ dominōs illīc famulōsne requīrās;
tōta domus duo sunt, īdem pārentque iubentque.
Ergō ubi caelicolae parvōs tetigēre Penātēs⁶
submissōque humilēs intrārunt vertice⁷ postēs,
membra senex positō iussit relevāre sedilī.
quō superiniēcit textum rude sēdula Baucis;
inque focō tepidum cinerem dīmōvit et ignēs
suscitat hesternōs foliīsque et cortice siccō
nūtrit et ad flammās animā prōdūcit anīlī,
multifidāsque⁸ facēs⁸ rāmāliaque⁹ ārida tēctō¹⁰
dētulit et minuit¹¹ parvōque admōvit aēnō.¹²
Quodque suus coniūnx riguō collēgerat hortō,
truncat holus foliīs. Furcā levat ille bicornī
sordida terga suis₃ nigrō pendentia tignō
servātōque diū resecat dē terгоре partem
exiguam sectamque domat¹³ ferventibus undīs.
Intereā mediās fallunt¹⁴ sermōnibus hōrās.
concutiuntque torum¹⁵ dē mollī flūminis ulvā¹⁶
impositum lectō spondā¹⁷ pedibusque salignīs.¹⁷

¹ the bearer of the caduceus
(a wand), i.e., Mercury
² locks
³ covered with straw and marsh
reeds
630 ⁴ old woman
⁵ It does not matter whether
... or (-ne)
⁶ household gods, i.e., house
⁷ head(s)
⁸ fine-split kindling
⁹ branches
635 ¹⁰ from (under the) roof
¹¹ broke into pieces
¹² kettle
¹³ makes tender
¹⁴ they pass the time
¹⁵ mattress
¹⁶ sedge-grass
640 ¹⁷ with willow frame and feet

645

650

651

655

₁ the home of Philemon and Baucis

₂ with casā

₃ suis from sūs, pork blackened (by smoke)

¹⁸ = **etiam**

¹⁹ *reclined at the table*

²⁰ *with tucked up skirts (literally, girded up)* 660

²¹ *green mint wiped the balanced (table)*

²² *cornel berries preserved in the lees of wine*

²³ *endive*

²⁴ *cheese*

²⁵ *earthenware dishes* 665

²⁶ *the same silver*

²⁷ *coated on the inside (literally, where they are hollow) with yellow wax (to prevent leaks)*

²⁸ *the second course, i.e., dessert*

²⁹ *figs*

³⁰ *you will be exempt from this misfortune* 670

Vestibus hunc vēlant quās nōn nisi tempore fēstō
sternere cōnsuerant, sed et ¹⁸ haec vīlisque vetusque
vestis erat lectō nōn indignanda salignō.

Accubuēre¹⁹ deī. Mēnsam succīncta²⁰ tremēnsque
pōnit anus, mēnsae sed erat pēs tertius impār:⁴

testa parem fēcit; quae postquam subdita clīvum
sustulit, aequātam mentae²¹ tersēre virentēs.²¹

Pōnitur hīc bicolor⁵ sincērae bāca Minervae,⁵
conditaque in liquidā corna²² autumnālīa faece²²
intibaque²³ et rādīx et lactis²⁴ māsā coāctī,²⁴

ōvaque nōn ācrī leviter versāta favillā,
omnia fictilibus,²⁵ Post haec caelātus eōdem
sistitur argentō²⁶ crāter fabricātaque fāgō
pōcula, quā²⁷ cava sunt, flāventibus illita cērīs.²⁷
Parva mora est, epulāsque focī mīsere calentēs,
nec longae rūrsus referuntur vīna senectae,
dantque locum mēnsīs paulum sēducta secundīs.²⁸

Hīc nux, hīc mixta est rūgōsīs cārīca²⁹ palmīs
prūnaque et in patulīs redolentia māla canistrīs
et dē purpureīs collēctae vītibus ūvae.

Candidus in mediō favus est; super omnia vultūs
accessēre bonī nec iners pauperque voluntās.

Intereā totiēns haustum crātēra⁷ replērī

sponte suā per sēque vident succrēscere vīna.

Attonitī novitāte pavent manibusque supīnīs
concipiunt Baucisque precēs timidusque Philēmōn
et veniam dapibus nūllisque parātibus⁸ ōrant.

Ūnicus ānser erat, minimae custōdia villae,
quem dīs hospitibus dominī mactāre parābant.

Ille celer pennā tardōs aetāte fatīgat
ēlūditque diū, tandemque est vīsus ad ipsōs
cōnfūgis deōs; superī vetuēre necārī

“dī” que “sumus, meritāsque luet vīcīnia poenās
impia,” dīxērunt; “vōbīs³⁰ immūnibus huius
esse malī dabitur.³⁰ Modo vestra relinquitē tēcta

ac nostrōs comitāte gradūs et in ardua montis
īte simul.” Pārent ambō baculisque levātī
nītuntur longō vēstīgia pōnere clīvō.

⁴ The table had three legs.

⁵ i.e., green and black (ripe) olives

⁶ a humorous reference to **fictilibus**

⁷ accusative singular (Greek form)

⁸ i.e., poor entertainment; literally, *for no preparation*

Tantum aberant summō³¹ quantum semel ire sagitta
missa potest; flexere oculōs et mersa palūdē
cētera prōspiciunt, tantum sua tēcta manēre.
Dumque ea mīrantur, dum dēflent fāta suōrum,
illa vetus dominīs etiam casa parva duōbus
vertitur in templum. Furcās subiēre columnae,³²
strāmina flāvēscunt, adopertaque marmore tellūs
caelātaeque forēs aurātaque tēcta videntur.
Tālia tum placidō Sāturnius, ēdidit ōre:
“Dīcite, iūste senex et fēmina coniuge iūstō
digna, quid optētis.” Cum Baucide pauca locūtus
iūdiciū superīs aperit commūne Philēmōn:
“Esse sacerdōtēs dēlūbraque vestra tuērī
poscimus, et quoniam concordēs ēgimus annōs,
auferat hōra duōs eadem, nec coniugis umquam
busta meae videam neu sim tumulandus³³ ab illā.”
Vōta fidēs sequitur;¹⁰ templī tutēla fuēre,
dōnec vīta data est. Annīs aevōque solūtī³⁴
ante gradūs sacrōs cum stārent forte locīque
nārrārent cāsūs, frondēre Philēmona Baucis,
Baucida cōspexit senior frondēre Philēmōn.
Iamque super geminōs crēscēte cacūmine vultūs,
mūtua, dum licuit, reddēbant dicta “Valē” que
“Ō coniūnx”³⁵ dīxere simul, simul abdita tēxit
ōra frutex.³⁶ Ostendit adhūc Thynēius³⁷ illīc
incola dē geminō vīcīnōs corpore truncōs.
Haec mihi nōn vānī (neque erat cūr fallere vellent)
nārrāvēre senēs. Equidem pendentia vīdī
serta super rāmōs pōnēnsque recentia dīxī
“Cūra deum dī sint, et quī coluere colantur.”
(VIII, 626–724)

695 ³¹ the top
³² columns took the place of the
(wooden) supports (forks)
³³ buried
³⁴ weakened
³⁵ dear mate
³⁶ foliage
700 ³⁷ Bithynian

705

710

715

720

⁹ Jupiter

¹⁰ i.e., their prayer was answered

Daphne and Apollo

Apollo, the god of archery, falls in love with Daphne, the daughter of the river god Peneus. Cupid, out of envy and revenge, inspired Apollo with his passion for Daphne, a passion made hopeless by her resistance, also caused by Cupid. She turned into a laurel tree.

		Prīmus amor Phoebī Daphnē Pēnēia, quem nōn fors ignāra dedit sed saeva Cupīdinis īra. Dēlius ¹ hunc, nūper victō serpente superbus, vīderat adductō flectentem ² cornua ¹ nervō “quid” que ³ “tibī, ⁴ lascīve puer, cum fortibus armīs?” dīxerat; “īsta decent umerōs gestāmina ² nostrōs, quī dare certa ferae, dare vulnera possumus hostī, quī modo pestiferō tot iūgera ventre prementem strāvimus innumerīs tumidum Pŷthōna ⁵ sagittīs. Tū face nesciō quōs ³ estō contentus amōrēs irritāre tuā, ⁶ nec laudēs assere nostrās.” ⁴ Fīlius huic Veneris, “Fīgat tuus omnia, Phoebe, tē meus arcus,” ait, “quantōque ⁵ animālia cēdunt cūncta deō, ⁵ tantō minor est tua glōria nostrā.” Dīxit et, ēlīsō ⁶ percussīs āere pennīs, ⁶ impiger umbrōsā Parnāsī cōstitit arce ēque ⁷ sagittiferā prōmpsit duo tēla pharetrā dīversōrum operum: ⁷ fugat hoc, ⁸ facit illud ⁸ amōrem. Quod ⁸ facit, aurātum est et cuspide fulget acūtā: quod fugat, obtūsum est et habet sub harundine plumbum. ⁹ Hoc deus in nymphā Pēnēide ⁹ fīxit; at illō laesit ¹⁰ Apollineās trāiecta per ossa medullās. ¹⁰ Prōtinus alter amat, fugit altera nōmen amantis silvārum latebrīs captīvārumque ferārum exuviīs gaudēs innuptaeque aemula Phoebēs. ¹¹
¹ bow	455	
² equipment		
³ some love or other (with amōrēs)		
⁴ do not lay claim to my honors		
⁵ as much as all living things yield to (you), a god		
⁶ striking the air by beating his wings	460	
⁷ of opposite effects		
⁸ the (arrow) which		
⁹ is tipped with lead (literally, has lead under the shaft)		
¹⁰ struck the heart of Apollo, piercing the bones		
¹¹ the rival of the maiden Diana	465	
	470	
	475	

¹ Apollo
² Supply eum, Cupid.
³ connects the two verbs vīderat and dīxerat
⁴ Originally the second i of tibi was long; supply est.
⁵ accusative (Greek form)
⁶ modifies face
⁷ = ē and -que
⁸ Supply tēlum.
⁹ ablative of Pēnēis, daughter of Peneus, i.e., Daphne

Vitta coercēbat positōs sine lēge capillōs.
 Multī illam petiēre, illa āversāta petentēs¹²
 impatiēns expersque virī nemora āvia lūstrat,
 nec quid Hymēn, quid Amor, quid sint cōnūbia cūrat.
 Saepe pater dīxit, "generum mihi, fīlia, dēbēs";
 saepe pater dīxit, "dēbēs mihi, nāta, nepōtēs."
 Illa, velut crīmen taedās exōsa iugālēs
 pulchra verēcundō suffūderat ōra rubōre
 inque patris blandīs haerēns cervīce lacertīs,
 "Dā¹³ mihi perpetuā, genitor cārissime," dīxit,
 "virginitāte fruī.¹³ Dedit hoc pater ante¹⁰ Diānae."
 Ille quidem obsequitur. Sed tē decor iste quod¹⁴ optās
 esse vetat,¹⁴ vōtōque tuō tua fōrma repugnat.
 Phoebus amat vīsaeque¹¹ cupit cōnūbia Daphnēs,
 quodque cupit, spērat, suaque illum ōrācula¹² fallunt.
 Utque levēs stipulae dēemptīs¹⁵ adolentur aristīs,¹⁵
 ut facibus saepēs ārdent quās forte viātor
 vel nimis admōvit vel iam sub lūce relīquit,
 sīc deus in flammās abiit,¹⁶ sīc pectore tōtō
 ūritur et sterilem spērandō nūtrit amōrem.
 Spectat inōrnātōs collō pendēre capillōs,
 et "quid sī cōmantur?" ait; videt igne micantēs
 sīderibus similēs oculōs, videt ōscula,¹⁷ quae nōn
 est vīdisse satis; laudat digitōsque manūsque
 brachiaque et nūdōs¹⁸ mediā plūs parte lacertōs;¹⁸
 sī qua latent meliōra putat.¹⁹ Fugit ōcior aurā
 illa levī neque ad haec revocantis verba resistit:
 "Nympha, precor, Pēnēi, manē! Nōn īnsequor hostis;²⁰
 nympha, manē! Sīc agna lupum, sīc cerva leōnem,
 sīc aquilam pennā fugiunt trepidante columbae,
 hostēs quaeque suōs: amor est mihi causa sequendī.
 Mē miserum! ²¹ Nē ²² prōna cadās, indignave²³ laedī
 crūra notent sentēs,²⁴ et sim tibi causa dolōris.
 Aspera quā properās loca sunt. Moderātius, ōrō,
 curre fugamque inhibē, moderātius īnsequar ipse.

¹² *rejecting* (object of *āversāta*)
¹³ *grant me to enjoy*
¹⁴ *forbids you to be what you desire*
 480 (i.e., remain unmarried)
¹⁵ *when the grain has been harvested*
¹⁶ *went up in flames* (of love)
¹⁷ *mouth, which then came to mean kiss*
¹⁸ *arms more than half bare*
 485 ¹⁹ *he believes her hidden features lovelier*
²⁰ *as an enemy* (nominative)
²¹ *How wretched I am!*
²² *for fear that*
²³ *that do not deserve it* (with *crūra*)
²⁴ *thorns*

490

495

500

505

510

¹⁰ adverb

¹¹ with *Daphnēs*, genitive (Greek form): *at first sight*

¹² i.e., gifts of prophecy

²⁵ *who your suitor is*
²⁶ *songs harmonize with the strings*
(of the lyre)
²⁷ *my arrow is unerring, to be sure*
²⁸ *medicine is my invention* 515
²⁹ *left him and his unfinished words*
³⁰ *The youthful god cannot bear to*
waste his persuasive words
further.
³¹ *at quickened pace*
³² *like one about to pounce*
³³ *grazes the heels (of the hare) with*
outstretched muzzle 520
³⁴ *escapes from*
³⁵ *breathes upon her hair streaming*
down her neck

525

530

535

540

Cui placeās,²⁵ inquīre tamen: nōn incola montis,
 nōn ego sum pāstor, nōn hīc armenta gregēsque
 horridus observō. Nescīs, temerāria, nescīs
 quem fugiās, ideōque fugis. Mihi Delphica tellūs
 et Claros et Tenedos Patarēaque rēgia servit;
 Iuppiter est genitor; per mē quod eritque fuitque
 estque patet; per mē concordant carmina nervīs.²⁶
 Certa quidem nostra est.²⁷ nostrā tamen ūna sagitta
 certior, in vacuō quae vulnera pectore fēcit.
 Inventum medicīna meum est,²⁸ opiferque per orbem
 dīcor, et herbārum subiecta potentia nōbīs.
 Ei mihi, quod nūllīs amor est sānābilis herbīs,
 nec prōsunt dominō quae prōsunt omnibus artēs!"
 Plūra locūtūrum timidō Pēnēia cursū
 fūgit cumque ipsō verba imperfecta relīquit.²⁹
 Tum quoque vīsa decēns; nūdābant corpora ventī,
 obviaque adversās vibrābant flāmina vestēs,
 et levis impulsōs retrō dabat aura capillōs,
 auctaque fōrma fugā est. Sed enim nōn³⁰ sustinet ultrā
 perdere blanditiās iuvenis deus,³⁰ utque movēbat
 ipse amor, admissō³¹ sequitur vēstīgia passū.³¹
 Ut canis in vacuō leporem cum Gallicus arvō
 vīdit, et hic₁₃ praedam pedibus petit, ille salūtem;
 alter inhaesūrō similis³² iam iamque tenēre
 spērat et extentō³³ stringit vēstīgia rōstrō;³³
 alter in ambigūō est an sit comprēsus et ipsīs
 morsibus ēripitur³⁴ tangentiaque ōra relinquit,
 sīc deus et virgō; est hic spē celer, illa timōre.
 Quī tamen īnsequitur, pennīs adiūtus amōris
 ōcior est requiemque negat tergōque fugācis
 imminet et crīnem³⁵ sparsum cervīcibus afflat.³⁵

₁₃ i.e., the dog

Viribus absūptīs, expalluit illa citaeque
victa labōre fugae spectāns Pēnēidas undās,
“fer, pater,” inquit, “opem, sī flūmina nūmen habētis!
Quā³⁶ nimium placuī, mūtandō perde figūram!”³⁶
Vix prece finītā, torpor gravis occupat artūs,
mollia cinguntur tenuī praecordia librō,³⁷
in frondem crīnēs, in rāmōs bracchia crēscunt;
pēs³⁸ modo tam vēlōx pigrīs rādīcibus haeret,
ōra cacūmen habet.³⁹ Remanet nitor ūnus in illā.⁴⁰
Hanc₁₄ quoque Phoebus amat, positāque in stīpite dextrā,
sentit adhūc trepidāre novō sub cortice pectus,
complexusque suīs rāmōs, ut membra,⁴¹ lacertīs
ōscula dat lignō: refugit tamen ōscula lignum.
Cui deus, “at quoniam coniūnx mea nōn potes esse,
arbor eris certē,” dīxit, “mea. Semper habēbunt
tē coma,₁₅ tē citharae, tē nostrae, laure, pharetrae.
Tū ducibus Latiīs aderis, cum laeta Triumphum
vōx canet et vīsant longās Capitōlia pompās.₁₆
Postibus Augustīs eadem fīdissima custōs
ante forēs stābis,₁₇ mediamque tuēbere quercum,₁₈
utque meum intōnsīs caput est iuvenāle capillīs,
tū quoque perpetuōs semper gere frondis honōrēs.”
Fīnierat Paeān.₁₉ Factīs modo laurea rāmīs⁴²
annuit utque caput⁴³ vīsa est agitāsse cacūmen.
(I, 452–567)

545

547 ³⁶ *destroy by changing (this) form by
which I pleased too much*

³⁷ *bark*

³⁸ = **pedēs**

550 ³⁹ *a treetop has (is) her face*

⁴⁰ *her beauty alone remains*

⁴¹ *as though (they were human) limbs*

⁴² *with its newly made branches*

⁴³ *like a head*

555

560

565

¹⁴ i.e., Daphne changed into a tree

¹⁵ Apollo's long hair

¹⁶ The triumphal processions of Roman generals are referred to here.

¹⁷ Two laurels stood at the entrance of Augustus' palace on the Palatine.

¹⁸ a wreath of oak leaves was over the door of the palace

¹⁹ Apollo

Appendix

Important Dates, Events, and People

B.C.		49	Caesar crosses
753	Rome founded (traditional date)		the Rubicon, precipitating the Civil War
753–509	Legendary kings		
509	Republic established	48	Battle of Pharsalus, Pompey defeated
494	Secession of the plebs		
451–450	Laws of the Twelve Tables	46	Caesar reforms calendar
390	Gauls capture Rome	44	Caesar assassinated, March 15; Cicero against Antony
280–275	War with Pyrrhus		
264–241	First Punic War		
254–184	Plautus, comic writer	43	Cicero's death
218–201	Second Punic War	43–A.D. 17	Ovid, poet
149–146	Third Punic War	31–A.D. 14	Reign of Augustus
146	Capture of Corinth	15?–A.D. 50?	Phaedrus, fabulist
111–106	War with Jugurtha	4?–A.D. 65	Seneca, philosopher
106–48	Pompey, general	?–A.D. 66?	Petronius
106–43	Cicero, orator, statesman	A.D.	
100–44	Caesar, general, statesman	8	Ovid banished
99?–24?	Cornelius Nepos	14–37	Reign of Tiberius
96?–55	Lucretius, poet	35–96?	Quintilian, teacher
90–88	Social War	37–41	Reign of Caligula
87?–54?	Catullus, poet	40?–104	Martial, epigrammatist
86–34	Sallust, historian	41–54	Reign of Claudius
70	Cicero against Verres	54–68	Reign of Nero
70–19	Vergil, poet	62–114?	Pliny the Younger
65–8	Horace, poet	68–69	Reigns of Galba, Otho, Vitellius
63–A.D. 14	Augustus	69–79	Reign of Vespasian
62	Cicero defends Archias	79–81	Reign of Titus
60	First triumvirate (Caesar, Crassus, Pompey)	81–96	Reign of Domitian
59–A.D. 17	Livy, historian	96–98	Reign of Nerva
58–50	Caesar in Gaul	98–117	Reign of Trajan
51	Cicero governor of Cilicia	117–138	Reign of Hadrian
		125?–?	Apuleius, philosopher
		138–161	Reign of Antonius Pius
		161–180	Reign of Marcus Aurelius

Basic Forms

Nouns

First Declension			Second Declension	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	via	viae	servus	servī
GEN.	viae	viārum	servī	servōrum
DAT.	viae	viīs	servō	servīs
ACC.	viam	viās	servum	servōs
ABL.	viā	viīs	servō	servīs
VOC.			serve	

Nouns in **-ius** often have **-ī** in the genitive and vocative singular: **fīlī**, **Cornēlī**. The accent does not change.₁

Second Declension						
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	ager	agrī	puer	puerī	signum	signa
GEN.	agrī	agrōrum	puerī	puerōrum	signī	signōrum
DAT.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs
ACC.	agrum	agrōs	puerum	puerōs	signum	signa
ABL.	agrō	agrīs	puerō	puerīs	signō	signīs

Nouns in **-ium** often have **-ī** in the genitive singular: **cōnsilī**. The accent does not change.₁

Third Declension						
	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	mīles	mīlitēs	lēx	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
GEN.	mīlitis	mīlitum	lēgis	lēgum	corporis	corporum
DAT.	militī	militibus	lēgī	lēgibus	corporī	corporibus
ACC.	mīlitem	mīlitēs	lēgem	lēgēs	corpus	corpora
ABL.	mīlite	mīlitibus	lēge	lēgibus	corpore	corporibus

Third Declension I–Stems				
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	cīvis	cīvēs	mare	maria
GEN.	cīvis	cīvium	maris	marium
DAT.	cīvī	cīvibus	marī	maribus
ACC.	cīvem	cīvēs (–īs)	mare	maria
ABL.	cīve	cīvibus	marī	maribus

Turris and a few proper nouns have **-im** in the accusative singular. **Turris**, **ignis**, **nāvis**, **securis**, and a few proper nouns sometimes have **-ī** in the ablative singular.

The rules for determining whether or not a noun is an **i**-stem are:

(a) The class of masculine and feminine **i**-stem nouns are:

1. Nouns ending in **-is** and **-ēs** in the nominative with the same numbers of syllables in the genitive: **cīvis**, **nūbēs**.
2. Nouns of one syllable whose base ends in two consonants: **pars** (gen. **part-is**), **nox** (gen. **noct-is**).
3. Nouns whose nominative ends in **-ns** or **-rs**: **cliēns**, **adulēscēns**.

(b) Neuter nouns whose nominative ends in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar**: **mare**, **animal**, **calcar**.

₁ From the time of Augustus, the form in **-ī** becomes common.

Fourth Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	cāsus	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
GEN.	cāsūs	cāsuum	cornūs	cornuum
DAT.	cāsuī	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus
ACC.	cāsum	cāsūs	cornū	cornua
ABL.	cāsū	cāsibus	cornū	cornibus

Fifth Declension

	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
NOM.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
GEN.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
DAT.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
ACC.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
ABL.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

Irregular Nouns

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	SING.	PLUR.
NOM.	vīs	vīrēs	nēmō	domus	domūs
GEN.	——	vīrium	(nūllius)	domūs (-ī)	domuum (-ōrum)
DAT.	——	vīribus	nēminī	domuī (-ō)	domibus
ACC.	vim	vīrēs (-īs)	nēminem	domum	domōs (-ūs)
ABL.	vī	vīribus	(nūllō)	domō (-ū)	domibus
LOC.				domī	

Adjectives and Adverbs

First and Second Declensions

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	magnus	magna	magnum	magnī	magnae	magna
GEN.	magnī	magnae	magnī	magnōrum	magnārum	magnōrum
DAT.	magnō	magnae	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
ACC.	magnum	magnam	magnum	magnōs	magnās	magna
ABL.	magnō	magnā	magnō	magnīs	magnīs	magnīs
VOC.	magne					

	SINGULAR			SINGULAR		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	liber	libera	liberum	noster	nostra	nostrum
GEN.	liberī	liberae	liberī	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
DAT.	liberō	liberae	liberō	nostrō	nostrae	nostrō
ACC.	liberum	liberam	liberum	nostrum	nostram	nostrum
ABL.	liberō	liberā	liberō	nostrō	nostrā	nostrō

Plural, liberī, liberae, libera, etc.

Plural, nostrī, -ae, -a, etc.

Third Declension
(a) THREE ENDINGS

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācre m	ācre m	ācre	ācrēs (-īs)	ācrēs (-īs)	ācria
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

(b) TWO ENDINGS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M F	N	M F	N
NOM.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
GEN.	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
DAT.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
ACC.	fortem	forte	fortēs (-īs)	fortia
ABL.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

(c) ONE ENDING₁

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M F	N	M F	N
NOM.	pār	pār	parēs	paria
GEN.	paris	paris	parium	parium
DAT.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus
ACC.	pare m	pār	parēs (-īs)	paria
ABL.	parī	parī	paribus	paribus

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M F	N	M F	N
NOM.	portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
GEN.	portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
DAT.	portantī	portantī	portantibus	portantibus
ACC.	portantem	portāns	portantēs (-īs)	portantia
ABL.	portante (-ī)	portante (-ī)	portantibus	portantibus

The ablative singular regularly ends in **-e**, but **-ī** is used wherever the participle is used simply as an adjective.

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES AND NUMERALS

	M	F	N	M F	N
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	trēs	tria
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	trium	trium
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	tribus	tribus
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	trēs	tria
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	tribus	tribus

	M	F	N	M F N (adj.)	N (noun)
NOM.	duo	duae	duo	mīlle	mīlia
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	mīlle	mīlium
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus
ACC.	duōs	duās	duo	mīlle	mīlia
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	mīlle	mīlibus

₁ **Vetus** has **vetere** in the ablative singular and **veterum** in the genitive plural.

Declined like **ūnus** are **alius**, **alter**, **ūllus**, **nūllus**, **sōlus**, **tōtus**, **uter**, **neuter**, **uterque**; the plurals are regular. The nominative and accusative singular neuter of **alius** is **aliud**; for the genitive singular, **alterius** is generally used. **Ambō** is declined like **duo**.

Comparison of Regular Adjectives and Adverbs

POSITIVE		COMPARATIVE		SUPERLATIVE	
ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.	ADJ.	ADV.
altus	altē	altior	altius	altissimus	altissimē
fortis	fortiter	fortior	fortius	fortissimus	fortissimē
līber	līberē	līberior	līberius	liberrimus	liberrimē
ācer	ācritēr	ācrior	ācrius	ācerrimus	ācerrimē
facilis	facile	facilior	facilius	facillimus	facillimē

Like **facilis** are **difficilis**, **similis**, **dissimilis**, **gracilis**, **humilis**, but their adverbs (not used in this book) vary in the positive degree. Adjectives in **-er** are like **līber** or **ācer**.

Comparison of Irregular Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus	melior	optimus
malus	peior	pessimus
magnus	maior	maximus
parvus	minor	minimus
multus	——, plūs	plūrimus
īferus	īferior	īfimus <i>or</i> īmus
superus	superior	suprēmus <i>or</i> summus
——	prior	primus
——	propior	proximus
——	ulterior	ultimus

Comparison of Irregular Adverbs

bene	melius	optimē
male	peius	pessimē
(magnopere)	magis	maximē
——	minus	minimē
multum	plūs	plūrimum
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē
prope	propius	proximē

Declension of Comparatives

	SINGULAR		PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL	
	M F	N	M F	N	N	M F	N
NOM.	altior	altius	altiōres	altiōra	plūs ₁	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	altiōris	altiōris	altiōrum	altiōrum	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	altiōrī	altiōrī	altiōribus	altiōribus	——	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	altiōrem	altius	altiōrēs	altiōra	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	altiōre	altiōre	altiōribus	altiōribus	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

₁ Masculine and feminine lacking in the singular.

Numerals

	ROMAN	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
1.	I	ūnus, -a, -um	prīmus, -a, -um
2.	II	duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3.	III	trēs, tria	tertius
4.	IIII <i>or</i> IV	quattuor	quārtus
5.	V	quīnque	quīntus
6.	VI	sex	sextus
7.	VII	septem	septimus
8.	VIII	octō	octāvus
9.	VIII <i>or</i> IX	novem	nōnus
10.	X	decem	decimus
11.	XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
12.	XII	duodecim	duodecim
13.	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus
14.	XIII <i>or</i> XIV	quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15.	XV	quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16.	XVI	sēdecim	sextus decimus
17.	XVII	septendecim	septimus decimus
18.	XVIII	duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsīmus ₁
19.	XVIII <i>or</i> XIX	ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsīmus
20.	XX	vīgintī	vīcēsīmus
21.	XXI	vīgintī ūnus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīgintī	vīcēsīmus prīmus <i>or</i> ūnus et vīcēsīmus
30.	XXX	trīgintā	trīcēsīmus
40.	XXXX <i>or</i> XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
50.	L	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
60.	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
70.	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
80.	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
90.	LXXX <i>or</i> XC	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
100.	C	centum	centēsīmus
101.	CI	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus
200.	CC	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
300.	CCC	trecentī, -ae, -a	trecentēsīmus
400.	CCCC	quadrīngentī, -ae, -a	quadrīngentēsīmus
500.	D	quīngentī, -ae, -a	quīngentēsīmus
600.	DC	sescentī, -ae, -a	sescentēsīmus
700.	DCC	septīngentī, -ae, -a	septīngentēsīmus
800.	DCCC	octīngentī, -ae, -a	octīngentēsīmus
900.	DCCCC	nōngentī, -ae, -a	nōngentēsīmus
1000.	M	mīlle	mīllēsīmus
2000.	MM	duo mīlia	bis mīllēsīmus

₁ The forms in -ēsīmus are sometimes spelled -ēnsīmus.

Pronouns

Personal

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.	M	F	N
NOM.	ego	nōs	tū	vōs	is	ea	id
GEN.	meī	nostrum (nostrī)	tuī	vestrum (-trī)	(For the full declension, see the demonstrative is chart.)		
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs			
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs			
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs			

Reflexive

Not being used in the nominative, reflexives have no nominative form.

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
GEN.	meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	suī	suī
DAT.	mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
ACC.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
ABL.	mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

Demonstrative

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
GEN.	huius	huius	huius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs
NOM.	is	ea	id	eī (iī)	eae	ea
GEN.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)	eīs (iīs)
	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M	F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem (īdem)	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)	eīsdem (īsdem)

	SINGULAR				SINGULAR		
	M	F	N		M	F	N
NOM.	ille	illa	illud		ipse	ipsa	ipsum
GEN.	illius	illius	illius		ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
DAT.	illī	illī	illī		ipsī	ipsī	ipsī
ACC.	illum	illam	illud		ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
ABL.	illō	illā	illō		ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

(The plural is regular like **magnus**.)

(The plural is regular.)

Iste is declined like **ille**.

	Relative						Interrogative	
	SINGULAR			PLURAL			SINGULAR	
	M	F	N	M	F	N	M F	N
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae	quis	quid
GEN.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum	cuius	cuius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae	quem	quid
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus	quō	quō

The plural of **quis** is like **quī**. The interrogative adjective **quī** is like the relative **quī**.

Both parts of **quisquis** are declined like **quis**, except that the neuter is usually **quicquid**.

Indefinite

	SINGULAR			PLURAL	
	M F	N	M	F	N
NOM.	aliquis	aliquid	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	alicuius	alicuius	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	alicui	alicui	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquem	aliquid	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquō	aliquō	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

The adjective form is **aliquī**, **-qua**, **-quod**, etc.

	SINGULAR		
	M	F	N
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam
GEN.	cuiusdam	cuiusdam	cuiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	PLURAL		
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

The adjective has **quoddam** for **quiddam**.

	SINGULAR		SINGULAR	
	M F	N	M F	N
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)	quisque	quidque
GEN.	cuiusquam	cuiusquam	cuiusque	cuiusque
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)	quemque	quidque
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam	quōque	quōque

(The plural is lacking.)

(The plural is rare.)

The adjective form of **quisque** is **quisque**, **quaeque**, **quodque**, etc.

The indefinite pronoun **quis** (declined like the interrogative) and adjective **quī** (declined like the relative, but in the nominative feminine singular and the nominative and accusative neuter plural **qua** may be used for **quae**) are used chiefly after **sī**, **nisi**, **num**, and **nē**.

Verbs

First Conjugation

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **portō**, **portāre**, **portāvī**, **portātus**

ACTIVE

PASSIVE

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	<i>I carry, etc.</i>		<i>I am carried, etc.</i>	
	portō	portāmus	portor	portāmur
	portās	portātis	portāris (–re)	portāminī
	portat	portant	portātur	portantur
IMPERFECT	<i>I was carrying, etc.</i>		<i>I was (being) carried, etc.</i>	
	portābam	portābāmus	portābar	portābāmur
	portābās	portābātis	portābāris (–re)	portābāminī
	portābat	portābant	portābātur	portābantur
FUTURE	<i>I shall carry, etc.</i>		<i>I shall be carried, etc.</i>	
	portābō	portābimus	portābor	portābimur
	portābis	portābitis	portāberis (–re)	portābiminī
	portābit	portābunt	portābitur	portabuntur
PERFECT	<i>I carried, have carried, etc.</i>		<i>I was carried, have been carried, etc.</i>	
	portāvī	portāvimus	portātus	portātī
	portāvistī	portāvistis	(–a, –um) {	(–ae, –a) {
	portāvit	portāvērunt (–ēre)	sum es est	sumus estis sunt
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had carried, etc.</i>		<i>I had been carried, etc.</i>	
	portāveram	portāverāmus	portātus	portātī
	portāverās	portāverātis	(–a, –um) {	(–ae, –a) {
	portāverat	portāverant	eram erās erat	erāmus erātis erant

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE			
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have carried, etc.</i>		<i>I shall have been carried, etc.</i>			
	portāverō	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erō} \\ \text{eris} \\ \text{erit} \end{array} \right.$	portātī (-ae, -a)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{erimus} \\ \text{eritis} \\ \text{erunt} \end{array} \right.$
SUBJUNCTIVE						
PRESENT	portem	portēmus	porter		portēmur	
	portēs	portētis	portēris (-re)		portēmini	
	portet	portent	portētur		portentur	
IMPERFECT	portārem	portārēmus	portārer		portārēmur	
	portārēs	portārētis	portārēris (-re)		portārēmini	
	portāret	portārent	portārētur		portārentur	
PERFECT	portāverim	portāverimus	portātus (-a, -um)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{array} \right.$	portātī (-ae, -a)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{array} \right.$
PLUPERFECT	portāvissem	portāvissēmus	portātus (-a, -um)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essem} \\ \text{essēs} \\ \text{esset} \end{array} \right.$	portātī (-ae, -a)	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{essēmus} \\ \text{essētis} \\ \text{essent} \end{array} \right.$

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

2D SING.	portā, <i>carry</i>	portāre, <i>be carried</i>
2D PLUR.	portāte, <i>carry</i>	portāmini, <i>be carried</i>

FUTURE IMPERATIVE

2D SING.	portātō, <i>carry</i>	portātor, <i>be carried</i>
3D SING.	portātō, <i>he shall carry</i>	portātor, <i>he shall be carried</i>
2D PLUR.	portātōte, <i>carry</i>	
3D PLUR.	portantō, <i>they shall carry</i>	portantor, <i>they shall be carried</i>

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	portāre, <i>to carry</i>	portārī, <i>to be carried</i>
PERFECT	portāvisse, <i>to have carried</i>	portātus esse, <i>to have been carried</i>
FUTURE	portātūrus esse, <i>to be going to carry</i>	(portātum īrī, <i>to be going to be carried</i>)

PARTICIPLE

PRESENT	portāns, <i>carrying</i>	
PERFECT		portātus, <i>(having been) carried</i>
FUTURE	portātūrus, <i>going to carry</i>	portandus, <i>(necessary) to be carried</i>

GERUND

GEN.	portandī, <i>of carrying, etc.</i>	DAT.	portandō	ACC.	portandum	ABL.	portandō
------	------------------------------------	------	----------	------	-----------	------	----------

SUPINE

ACC.	portātum, <i>in order to carry</i>	ABL.	portātū, <i>in carrying</i>
------	------------------------------------	------	-----------------------------

Second, Third, and Fourth Conjugations

2d Conj.

3d Conj.

4th Conj.

3d Conj. (–iō)

PRINCIPAL PARTS

doceō

pōnō

mūniō

capiō

docēre

pōnere

mūnīre

capere

docuī

posuī

mūnīvī

cēpī

doctus

positus

mūnītus

captus

INDICATIVE ACTIVE

PRESENT

doceō

pōnō

mūniō

capiō

docēs

pōnis

mūnīs

capis

docet

pōnit

mūnit

capit

docēmus

pōnimus

mūnīmus

capimus

docētis

pōnitis

mūnītis

capitis

docent

ponunt

mūniunt

capiunt

IMPERFECT

docēbam

pōnēbam

mūniēbam

capiēbam

docēbās

pōnēbās

mūniēbās

capiēbās

docēbat

pōnēbat

mūniēbat

capiēbat

docēbāmus

pōnēbāmus

mūniēbāmus

capiēbāmus

docēbātis

pōnēbātis

mūniēbātis

capiēbātis

docēbant

pōnēbant

mūniēbant

capiēbant

FUTURE

docēbō

pōnam

mūniam

capiam

docēbis

pōnēs

mūniēs

capiēs

docēbit

pōnet

mūniet

capiet

docēbimus

pōnēmus

mūniēmus

capiēmus

docēbitis

pōnētis

mūniētis

capiētis

docēbunt

pōnent

mūnient

capient

PERFECT

docuī

posuī

mūnīvī

cēpī

docuistī

posuistī

mūnīvistī

cēpistī

docuit

posuit

mūnīvit

cēpit

docuimus

posuimus

mūnīvimus

cēpimus

docuistis

posuistis

mūnīvistis

cēpistis

docuērunt

posuērunt

mūnīvērunt

cēpērunt

(–ēre)

(–ēre)

(–ēre)

(–ēre)

PLUPERFECT

docueram

posueram

mūnīveram

cēperam

docuerās

posuerās

mūnīverās

cēperās

docuerat

posuerat

mūnīverat

cēperat

docuerāmus

posuerāmus

mūnīverāmus

cēperāmus

docuerātis

posuerātis

mūnīverātis

cēperātis

docuerant

posuerant

mūnīverant

cēperant

	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	docuerō docueris docuerit docuerimus docueritis docuerint	posuerō posueris posuerit posuerimus posueritis posuerint	mūnīverō mūnīveris mūnīverit mūnīverimus mūnīveritis mūnīverint	cēperō cēperis cēperit cēperimus cēperitis cēperint
SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE				
PRESENT	doceam doceās doceat doceāmus doceātis doceant	pōnam pōnās pōnat pōnāmus pōnātis pōnant	mūniam mūniās mūniat mūniāmus mūniātis mūniant	capiam capiās capiat capiāmus capiātis capiant
IMPERFECT	docērem docērēs docēret docērēmus docērētis docērent	pōnerem pōnerēs pōneret pōnerēmus pōnerētis pōnerent	mūnīrem mūnīrēs mūnīret mūnīrēmus mūnīrētis mūnīrent	caperem caperēs caperet caperēmus caperētis caperent
PERFECT	docuerim docuerīs docuerit docuerīmus docuerītis docuerint	posuerim posuerīs posuerit posuerīmus posuerītis posuerint	mūnīverim mūnīverīs mūnīverit mūnīverīmus mūnīverītis mūnīverint	cēperim cēperīs cēperit cēperīmus cēperītis cēperint
PLUPERFECT	docuissē docuissēs docuisset docuissēmus docuissētis docuissent	posuissē posuissēs posuisset posuissēmus posuissētis posuissent	mūnīvissem mūnīvissēs mūnīvisset mūnīvissēmus mūnīvissētis mūnīvissent	cēpissē cēpissēs cēpisset cēpissēmus cēpissētis cēpissent
PRESENT IMPERATIVE ACTIVE				
2D SING.	docē	pōne ₁	mūnī	cape ₁
2D PLUR.	docēte	pōnite	mūnite	capite

₁ Dīcō, dūcō, and faciō have dīc, dūc, fac in the imperative singular.

	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
FUTURE IMPERATIVE ACTIVE				
2D SING.	docētō	pōnitō	mūnītō	capitō
3D SING.	docētō	pōnitō	mūnītō	capitō
2D PLUR.	docētōte	pōnitōte	mūnītōte	capitōte
3D PLUR.	docentō	pōnuntō	mūniuntō	capiuntō
INFINITIVE ACTIVE				
PRESENT	docēre	pōnere	mūnīre	capere
PERFECT	docuisse	posuisse	mūnīvisse	cēpisse
FUTURE	doctūrus esse	positūrus esse	mūnītūrus esse	captūrus esse
PARTICIPLE ACTIVE				
PRESENT	docēns	pōnēns	mūniēns	capiēns
FUTURE	doctūrus	positūrus	mūnītūrus	captūrus
GERUND				
GEN.	docendī	pōnendī	mūniendī	capiendī
DAT.	docendō	pōnendō	mūniendō	capiendō
ACC.	docendum	pōnendum	mūniendum	capiendum
ABL.	docendō	pōnendō	mūniendō	capiendō
SUPINE				
ACC.	doctum	positum	mūnītum	captum
ABL.	doctū	positū	mūnītū	captū
INDICATIVE PASSIVE				
PRESENT	doceor	pōnor	mūnior	capior
	docēris (-re)	pōneris (-re)	mūnīris (-re)	caperis (-re)
	docētur	pōnitur	mūnītur	capitur
	docēmur	pōnimur	mūnīmur	capimur
	docēminī	pōniminī	mūnīminī	capiminī
	docentur	pōnuntur	mūniuntur	capiuntur
	docēbar	pōnēbar	mūniēbar	capiēbar
	docēbāris (-re)	pōnēbāris (-re)	mūniēbāris (-re)	capiēbāris (-re)
	docēbātur	pōnēbātur	mūniēbātur	capiēbātur
IMPERFECT	docēbāmur	pōnēbāmur	mūniēbāmur	capiēbāmur
	docēbāminī	pōnēbāminī	mūniēbāminī	capiēbāminī
	docēbantur	pōnēbantur	mūniēbantur	capiēbantur

	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
FUTURE	docēbor docēberis (-re) docēbitur docēbimur docēbiminī docēbuntur	pōnar pōnēris (-re) pōnētur pōnēmur pōnēminī pōnentur	mūniar mūniēris (-re) mūniētur mūniēmur mūniēminī mūnientur	capiar capiēris (-re) capiētur capiēmur capiēminī capientur
PERFECT	doctus sum doctus es doctus est doctī sumus doctī estis doctī sunt	positus sum positus es positus est positī sumus positī estis positī sunt	mūnītus sum mūnītus es mūnītus est mūnītī sumus mūnītī estis mūnītī sunt	captus sum captus es captus est captī sumus captī estis captī sunt
PLUPERFECT	doctus eram doctus erās doctus erat doctī erāmus doctī erātis doctī erant	positus eram positus erās positus erat positī erāmus positī erātis positī erant	mūnītus eram mūnītus erās mūnītus erat mūnītī erāmus mūnītī erātis mūnītī erant	captus eram captus erās captus erat captī erāmus captī erātis captī erant
FUTURE PERFECT	doctus erō doctus eris doctus erit doctī erimus doctī eritis doctī erunt	positus erō positus eris positus erit positī erimus positī eritis positī erunt	mūnītus erō mūnītus eris mūnītus erit mūnītī erimus mūnītī eritis mūnītī erunt	captus erō captus eris captus erit captī erimus captī eritis captī erunt
SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE				
PRESENT	docear doceāris (-re) doceātur doceāmur doceāminī doceantur	pōnar pōnāris (-re) pōnātur pōnāmur pōnāminī pōnantur	mūniar mūniāris (-re) mūniātur mūniāmur mūniāminī mūniantur	capiar capiāris (-re) capiātur capiāmur capiāminī capiantur
IMPERFECT	docērer docērēris (-re) docērētur docērēmur docērēminī docērentur	pōnerer pōnerēris (-re) pōnerētur pōnerēmur pōnerēminī pōnerentur	mūnīrer mūnīrēris (-re) mūnīrētur mūnīrēmur mūnīrēminī mūnīrentur	caperer caperēris (-re) caperētur caperēmur caperēminī caperentur

	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
PERFECT	doctus sim doctus sis doctus sit	positus sim positus sis positus sit	mūnītus sim mūnītus sis mūnītus sit	captus sim captus sis captus sit
	doctī simus doctī sitis doctī sint	positī simus positī sitis positī sint	mūnītī simus mūnītī sitis mūnītī sint	captī simus captī sitis captī sint
PLUPERFECT	doctus essem doctus essēs doctus esset	positus essem positus essēs positus esset	mūnītus essem mūnītus essēs mūnītus esset	captus essem captus essēs captus esset
	doctī essēmus doctī essētis doctī essent	positī essēmus positī essētis positī essent	mūnītī essēmus mūnītī essētis mūnītī essent	captī essēmus captī essētis captī essent
PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE				
2D SING.	docēre	pōnere	mūnīre	capere
2D PLUR.	docēminī	pōniminī	mūnīminī	capiminī
FUTURE IMPERATIVE PASSIVE				
2D SING.	docētor	pōnitor	mūnītor	capitor
3D SING.	docētor	pōnitor	mūnītor	capitor
3D PLUR.	docentor	pōnuntor	mūnīuntor	capiuntor
INFINITIVE PASSIVE				
PRESENT	docērī	pōnī	mūnīrī	capī
PERFECT	doctus esse	positus esse	mūnītus esse	captus esse
FUTURE	doctum īrī	positum īrī	mūnītum īrī	captum īrī
PARTICIPLE PASSIVE				
PERFECT	doctus	positus	mūnītus	captus
FUTURE	docendus	pōnendus	mūniendus	capiendus

Deponent Verbs

Deponent verbs are active in meaning but passive in form, conjugated like the passive forms of the conjugations to which they belong: **arbitror**, *I think*. But the present and future participles and the future infinitive are active in both form and meaning. The perfect participle, though passive in form, is active in meaning.

<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
PRINCIPAL PARTS				
arbitror	vereōr	loquor	orior	gradior
arbitrārī	verērī	loquī	orīrī	gradī
arbitrātus	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus

	<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
INDICATIVE					
PRESENT	arbitror, <i>I think</i>	vereor, <i>I fear</i>	loquor, <i>I talk</i>	orior, <i>I rise</i>	gradior, <i>I walk</i>
IMPERFECT	arbitrābar	verēbar	loquēbar	oriēbar	gradiēbar
FUTURE	arbitrābor	verēbor	loquar	oriar	gradiar
PERFECT	arbitrātus sum	veritus sum	locūtus sum	ortus sum	gressus sum
PLUPERFECT	arbitrātus eram	veritus eram	locūtus eram	ortus eram	gressus eram
FUTURE PERFECT	arbitrātus erō	veritus erō	locūtus erō	ortus erō	gressus erō
SUBJUNCTIVE					
PRESENT	arbitrer	verear	loquar	oriar	gradiar
IMPERFECT	arbitrārer	verērer	loquerer	orīrer	graderer
PERFECT	arbitrātus sim	veritus sim	locūtus sim	ortus sim	gressus sim
PLUPERFECT	arbitrātus essem	veritus essem	locūtus essem	ortus essem	gressus essem
IMPERATIVE					
PRESENT	arbitrāre	verēre	loquere	orīre	gradere
FUTURE	arbitrātor	verētor	loquitor	orītor	graditor
INFINITIVE					
PRESENT	arbitrārī	verērī	loquī	orīrī	gradī
PERFECT	arbitrātus esse	veritus esse	locūtus esse	ortus esse	gressus esse
FUTURE	arbitrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	locūtūrus esse	ortūrus esse	gressūrus esse
PARTICIPLE					
PRESENT	arbitrāns	verēns	loquēns	oriēns	gradiēns
PERFECT	arbitrātus	veritus	locūtus	ortus	gressus
FUTURE ACTIVE	arbitrātūrus	veritūrus	locūtūrus	ortūrus	gressūrus
FUTURE PASSIVE	arbitrandus	verendus	loquendus	oriendus	gradiendus

	<i>1st Conj.</i>	<i>2d Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj.</i>	<i>4th Conj.</i>	<i>3d Conj. (-iō)</i>
	GERUND				
GEN.	arbitrandī, etc.	verendī, etc.	loquendī, etc.	oriendī, etc.	gradiendī, etc.
	SUPINE				
ACC.	arbitrātum	veritum	locūtum	ortum	gressum
ABL.	arbitrātū	veritū	locūtū	ortū	gressū

A few verbs (called "semideponent") are active in the present system and deponent in the perfect system, as **audeō, audēre, ausus**.

Irregular Verbs

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī, futūrus**

	INDICATIVE			SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT	<i>sum, I am</i> <i>es, you are</i> <i>est, he is</i>	<i>sumus, we are</i> <i>estis, you are</i> <i>sunt, they are</i>	PRESENT	<i>sim</i> <i>sīs</i> <i>sit</i>	<i>sīmus</i> <i>sītis</i> <i>sint</i>
IMPERFECT	<i>I was, etc.</i> <i>eram</i> <i>erās</i> <i>erat</i>	<i>erāmus</i> <i>erātis</i> <i>erant</i>	IMPERFECT	<i>essem</i> (forem) <i>essēs</i> (forēs) <i>esset</i> (foret)	<i>essēmus</i> <i>essētis</i> <i>essent</i> (forent)
FUTURE	<i>I shall be, etc.</i> <i>erō</i> <i>eris</i> <i>erit</i>	<i>erimus</i> <i>eritis</i> <i>erunt</i>			
PERFECT	<i>I was, etc.</i> <i>fuī</i> <i>fuistī</i> <i>fuit</i>	<i>fuimus</i> <i>fuistis</i> <i>fuērunt (-ēre)</i>	PERFECT	<i>fuerim</i> <i>fuerīs</i> <i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerīmus</i> <i>fuerītis</i> <i>fuerint</i>
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been, etc.</i> <i>fueram</i> <i>fuerās</i> <i>fuerat</i>	<i>fuerāmus</i> <i>fuerātis</i> <i>fuerant</i>	PLUPERFECT	<i>fuissem</i> <i>fuisēs</i> <i>fuisset</i>	<i>fuissemus</i> <i>fuissetis</i> <i>fuisissent</i>
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been, etc.</i> <i>fuerō</i> <i>fueris</i> <i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerimus</i> <i>fueritis</i> <i>fuerint</i>			

	INFINITIVE		PRESENT IMPERATIVE
PRESENT	esse, <i>to be</i>	2D SING.	es, <i>be</i> 2D PLUR. este, <i>be</i>
PERFECT	fuisse, <i>to have been</i>		
			FUTURE IMPERATIVE
FUTURE	futūrus esse (fore), <i>to be going to be</i>	2D SING.	estō 2D PLUR. estōte
		3D SING.	estō 3D PLUR. suntō
	PARTICIPLE		
FUTURE	futūrus, <i>going to be</i>		

PRINCIPAL PARTS: possum, posse, potuī, —

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	<i>I am able, I can, etc.</i>		
	possum possumus	PRESENT	possim possimus
	potes potestis		possīs possītis
	potest possunt		possit possint
IMPERFECT	<i>I was able, I could, etc.</i>		
	poteram, etc.	IMPERFECT	possem, etc.
FUTURE	<i>I shall be able, etc.</i>		
	poterō, etc.		
PERFECT	<i>I was able, I could, etc.</i>		
	potuī, etc.	PERFECT	potuerim, etc.
PLUPERFECT	<i>I had been able, etc.</i>		
	potueram, etc.	PLUPERFECT	potuissem, etc.
FUTURE PERFECT	<i>I shall have been able, etc.</i>		
	potuerō, etc.		

	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE
PRESENT	posse, <i>to be able</i>	PRESENT	potēns (adj.), <i>powerful</i>
PERFECT	potuisse, <i>to have been able</i>		

PRINCIPAL PARTS: ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	INDICATIVE			
PRESENT	ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
	fers	fertis	ferris (–re)	ferimini
	fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur
IMPERFECT	ferēbam, etc.		ferēbar, etc.	
FUTURE	feram, ferēs, etc.		ferar, ferēris, etc.	
PERFECT	tulī, etc.		lātus sum, etc.	
PLUPERFECT	tuleram, etc.		lātus eram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT	tulerō, etc.		lātus erō, etc.	

	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	SUBJUNCTIVE			
PRESENT	feram, ferās, etc.		ferar, ferāris, etc.	
IMPERFECT	ferrem, etc.		ferrer, etc.	
PERFECT	tulerim, etc.		lātus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT	tulissem, etc.		lātus essem, etc.	
	PRESENT IMPERATIVE			
2D PERS.	fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
	FUTURE IMPERATIVE			
2D PERS.	fertō	fertōte	fertor	
3D PERS.	fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor
	INFINITIVE			
PRESENT	ferre		ferri	
PERFECT	tulisse		lātus esse	
FUTURE	lātūrus esse		(lātum īrī)	
	PARTICIPLE			
PRESENT	ferēns			
PERFECT			lātus	
FUTURE	lātūrus		ferendus	
	GERUND			
GEN. ferendī	DAT. ferendō	ACC. ferendum	ABL. ferendō	
	SUPINE			
	ACC. lātum	ABL. lātū		
	PRINCIPAL PARTS: eō, īre, iī, itūrus			
	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVE
PRESENT	eō	īmus	eam, etc.	īre
	īs	ītis		
	it	eunt		
IMPERFECT	ībam, etc.		īrem, etc.	
FUTURE	ībō	ībimus		itūrus esse
	ībis	ībitis		
	ībit	ībunt		
PERFECT	iī	iimus	ierim, etc.	isse
	īstī	īstis		
	iit	iērunt (–ēre)		
PLUPERFECT	ieram, etc.		īssem, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT	ierō, etc.			

	PARTICIPLE	IMPERATIVE
PRESENT	iēns, GEN. euntis	ī īte
FUTURE	itūrus (PASSIVE eundus)	itō itōte itō euntō
	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	eundi	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	itum
ABL.	eundō	itū

PRINCIPAL PARTS

volō	nōlō	mālō
velle	nōlle	mālle
voluī	nōluī	māluī

INDICATIVE

PRESENT	volō	volumus	nōlō	nolumus	mālō	mālumus
	vīs	vultis	nōn vīs	nōn vultis	māvīs	māvultis
	vult	volunt	nōn vult	nōlunt	māvult	mālunt
IMPERFECT	volēbam, etc.		nōlēbam, etc.		mālēbam, etc.	
FUTURE	volam, volēs, etc.		nōlam, nōlēs, etc.		mālam, mālēs, etc.	
PERFECT	voluī, etc.		nōluī, etc.		māluī, etc.	
PLUPERFECT	volueram, etc.		nōlueram, etc.		mālueram, etc.	
FUTURE PERFECT	voluerō, etc.		nōluerō, etc.		māluerō, etc.	

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT	velim	velimus	nōlim	nōlimus	mālim	mālimus
	velīs	velitis	nōlis	nōlitis	mālis	mālitis
	velit	velint	nōlit	nōlint	mālit	mālint
IMPERFECT	vellem, etc.		nōllem, etc.		māllem, etc.	
PERFECT	voluerim, etc.		nōluerim, etc.		māluerim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT	voluissem, etc.		nōluissem, etc.		māluissem, etc.	

PRESENT AND FUTURE IMPERATIVE

2D PERS.	—	—	nōlī	nōlite	—	—
2D PERS.	—	—	nōlitō	nōlitōte	—	—

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERFECT	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

		PARTICIPLE			
PRESENT	volēns		nōlēns		—
PRINCIPAL PARTS: fīō, fierī, (factus)					
	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	IMPERATIVE	
PRESENT	fīō	fīmus	fīam, etc.		fieri
	fīs	fītis		fī	fite
	fit	fīunt			
IMPERFECT	fīēbam, etc.		fierem, etc.		
FUTURE	fīam, fīēs, etc.				

Defective Verbs

Coepī is used only in the perfect system. For the present system **incipiō** is used. With a passive infinitive the passive of **coepī** is used: **Lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt**, *Stones began to be thrown*. **Memini** and **ōdī** likewise are used only in the perfect system, but with present meaning. The former has an imperative **mementō**, **mementōte**.

The only forms of **inquam** in common use are in the present indicative: **inquam, inquis, inquit, inquiunt**. Similarly **aiō, ais, ait, aiunt**, and the imperfect: **aiēbam**, etc.

Impersonal verbs are used only in the third personal singular and the infinitive: **decet, libet, licet, miseret, oportet, piget, pudet, taedet**.

Contracted Forms

Verbs having perfect stems ending in **-āv-** or **-ēv-** are sometimes contracted by dropping **-ve-** before **-r-** and **-vi-** before **-s-**: **amārunť, cōnsuēsse**. Verbs having perfect stems ending in **-īv-** drop **-vi-** before **-s-** but only **-v-** before **-r-**: **audisset, audierat**.

Syntax₁

Questions

Information questions are introduced by interrogative pronouns or adverbs (**quis**, **ubi**, etc.) Other questions are introduced as follows:

1. In questions the answer to which might be either *yes* or *no* the particle **-ne** is attached to the first word.

Frāterne venit? *Is your brother coming?*

2. In questions that expect a *yes* answer, the introductory word is **nōnne** (i.e., **nōn** + **ne**; cf. English).

Nōnne frāter venit? *Isn't your brother coming?*
Your brother is coming, isn't he?

3. In questions that expect a *no* answer the introductory word is **num**.

Num frāter venit? *Your brother is not coming, is he?*

Double questions are introduced by **utrum**, **-ne**, or nothing at all and are connected by **an**.

Frāterne bonus an malus est? *Is your brother good or bad?*

Reflexive Pronouns and Adjectives

The personal pronouns of the first and second persons and the possessive adjectives derived from them may be used reflexively. It is only in the third person that the Latin uses a distinct reflexive pronoun, **suī** (adjective **suus**).

- a. Both **suī** and **suus** commonly refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive).

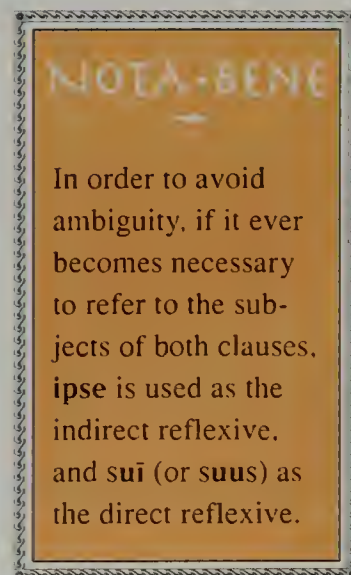
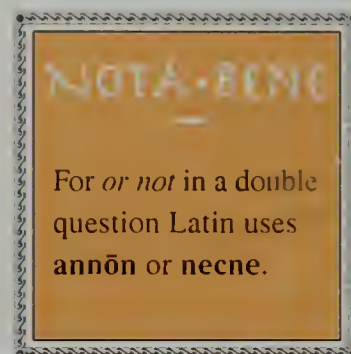
Sē suaque omnia dēdidērunt. *They surrendered themselves and all their possessions.*

- b. Sometimes **suī** or **suus**, occurring in a subordinate clause, refers not to the subject of its own clause, but to the subject of the main verb (indirect reflexive).

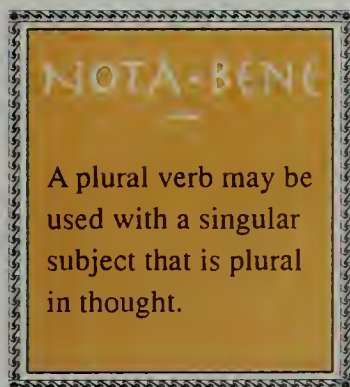
Petēbant utī Caesar sibi potestātem faceret. *They begged that Caesar give them a chance.*

Agreement

1. *Adjectives*. Adjectives and participles agree in number, gender, and case with the nouns they modify. When an adjective modifies several nouns of different numbers or genders, it either agrees with the last or is put in the neuter plural.
2. *Adjectives as Nouns (substantives)*. Sometimes adjectives are used as nouns: **nostrī**, *our (men)*; **malum**, *evil*.



¹ In this summary only those constructions that are relatively more important and that recur repeatedly in the text or are referred to in the book are included.



3. *Verbs.* Verbs agree in person and number with their subjects. When two subjects are connected by **aut, aut... aut, neque... neque**, the verb agrees with the nearer subject.
4. *Relative Pronoun.* The relative pronoun agrees in gender and number with its antecedent but its case depends upon its use in its own clause.
 - a. The antecedent of the relative pronoun is sometimes omitted.
 - b. Sometimes the antecedent is represented by an entire clause, in which case the pronoun is best translated *a thing which*.
 - c. In Latin a relative pronoun is often used at the beginning of a sentence to refer to the entire thought of the preceding sentence. The English idiom calls for a demonstrative or personal pronoun.

quā de cāusā

for this reason

5. *Appositives.* Appositives agree in case. It is often best to supply *as* in translating the appositive.

eōdem homine magistrō ūtī

to use the same man as teacher

Noun Syntax

Nominative

1. *Subject.* The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
2. *Predicate.*
 - a. A noun or adjective used in the predicate with a linking verb (*is, are, seem, etc.*) is in the nominative.

Īnsula est magna.

The island is large.

Sicilia est ĩnsula.

Sicily is an island.

- b. Predicate nouns and adjectives are used not only with **sum** but also with **fiō** and the passive voice of verbs meaning *call, choose, appoint, elect*, and the like.

Caesar dux factus est.

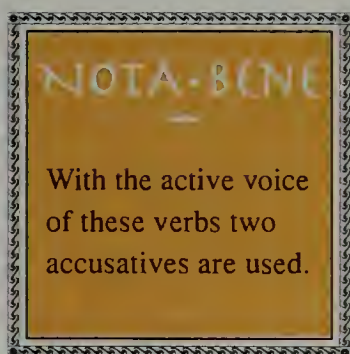
Caesar was made leader.

Cicerō Pater Patriae

Cicero was called the Father

appellātus est.

of his Country.



Genitive

1. *Of Possession.* Possession is expressed by the genitive.

viae ĩnsulae

the roads of the island

2. *Predicate.* The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate with **sum** (or **faciō**), often translated *it is the part of, the duty of, etc.*

Sapientiae est vidēre.

It is the part of wisdom to see.

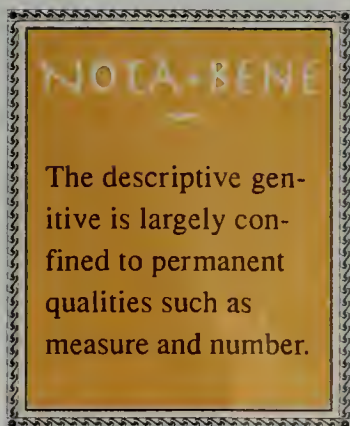
3. *Of Description.* The genitive, if modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

virī magnae virtūtis

men of great courage

spatium decem pedum

a space of ten feet



4. *Of the Whole.* The genitive of the whole (also called partitive genitive) represents the whole to which the part belongs.

hōrum omnium fortissimī *the bravest of all these*
nihil praesidi *no guard*

- a. This is similar to the English idiom except when the genitive is used with such words as **nihil**, **satis**, **quid**.
b. Instead of the genitive of the whole, the ablative with **ex** or **dē** is regularly used with cardinal numerals (except **mīlia**) and **quīdam**, often also with other words, such as **paucī** and **complūrēs**.

quīnque ex nostrīs *five of our men*
quīdam ex militibus *certain of the soldiers*

5. *Subjective.* The subjective genitive expresses the subject of the verbal idea of the noun on which it depends. If this noun is turned into a verb, the genitive becomes subject.

timor populī *the fear of the people*
 (i.e., the people feared)

6. *Objective.* The objective genitive expresses the object of the verbal idea of the noun or adjective on which it depends. If this noun or adjective is turned into a verb, the genitive becomes object.

amantissimōs reī pūblīcae virōs *patriotic men (i.e., they loved*
 the state)

7. *Of the Charge and Penalty.* With verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, or *acquitting* the genitive is used to indicate either the charge or the penalty.

capitis damnātum *condemned to death*
 (lit., of the head)

Accūsō tē inertiae. *I accuse you of inaction.*

8. *Of Indefinite Value.* The genitive is used with **sum** and other verbs to express indefinite value.

Est tantī. *It is worth that much.*
parvī esse dūcenda *to be considered of little value*

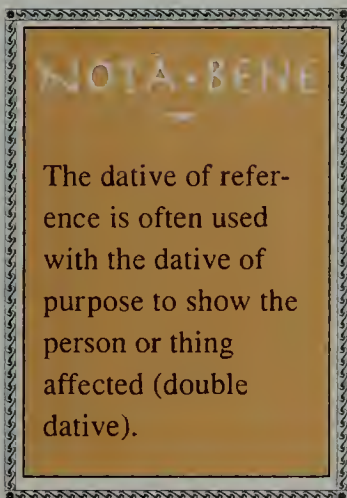
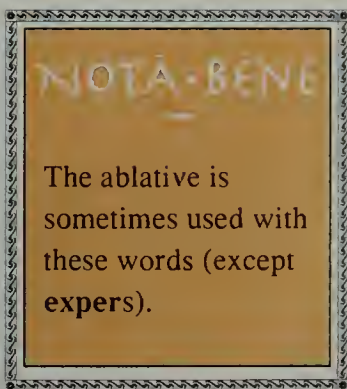
9. *With Special Verbs.* With **oblīvīscor** (*forget*), **meminī**, **reminīscor** (*remember*), **misereor** (*pity*), and occasionally **potior** (*get possession of*), the genitive is used.

Oblīvīscere caedis atque *Forget bloodshed and burning.*
incendiōrum.

10. *With Adjectives.* The genitive is used with certain adjectives. In many cases the English idiom is the same; in others, it is not.

bellandī cupidus *desirous of waging war*
reī militāris perītus *skilled in warfare*
tuī similis *like you*





11. *Of Plenty and Want.* With certain adjectives and verbs having the idea of plenty or want the genitive is regularly used: **plēnus** and **refertus**, *full of*; **inānis**, **inops**, and **expers**, *empty, without, devoid of*.

Dative

1. *Of Indirect Object.* The indirect object of a verb is in the dative. It is used with verbs of *giving, reporting, telling*, etc.

Nautae pecūniam dōnō. *I give money to the sailor.*

2. *Of Purpose.* The dative is sometimes used to express purpose.

Locum castris dēlēgit. *He chose a place for a camp.*

3. *Of Reference.* The dative of reference shows the person concerned or referred to.

sī mihi dignī esse vultis *if you wish to be worthy in my sight (literally, for me)*

Haec castra erunt praesidiō oppidō. *This camp will be (for) a protection to the town.*

4. *Of Separation.* The dative of separation (really reference) is usually confined to persons and occurs chiefly with verbs compounded with **ab**, **dē**, and **ex**.

scūtō ūnī milītī dētrāctō *having seized a shield from a soldier*

5. *With Adjectives.* The dative is used with certain adjectives, as **amīcus**, **idōneus**, **pār**, **proximus**, **similis**, **ūtilis**, and their opposites. In many cases the English idiom is the same.

Hic liber est similis illī. *This book is similar to that.*

6. *With Special Verbs.* The dative is used with a few intransitive verbs, such as **cōnfidō**, **crēdō**, **dēsum**, **faveō**, **ignōscō**, **imperō**, **invidēō**, **minitor**, **noceō**, **parcō**, **pāreō**, **persuādeō**, **placeō**, **praestō**, **resistō**, **serviō**, and **studeō**.

Tibi pāret sed mihi resistit. *He obeys you but resists me.*

- a. Some of these verbs become impersonal in the passive and the dative is retained. The perfect passive participle of such verbs is used only in the neuter.

Eī persuāsum est. *He was persuaded.*

- b. A neuter pronoun or adjective or an **ut** clause may be used as a direct object with **imperō** and **persuādeō**.

Hoc mihi persuāsit. *He persuaded me of this.*

7. *With Compounds.* The dative is often used with certain compound verbs, especially when the noun goes closely with the prefix of the verb. No general rule can be given. Sometimes both an accusative and a dative are used when the main part of the verb is transitive.

Gallīs bellum intulit. *He made war against the Gauls.*

8. *Possession.* The possessor may be expressed by the dative with **sum**.

Liber mihi est. *I have a book.*

9. *Agent.* The dative of agent is used with the gerundive (future passive participle) to indicate the person upon whom the obligation rests. Occasionally it is used with the perfect participle.

Hoc opus vōbīs faciendum est. *This work is to be done by you,
i.e., This work must be done
by you.*

Accusative

1. *Of Direct Object.* The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Viam parāmus. *We are preparing a way.*

2. *Of Extent of Space and Duration of Time.* Extent of time or space is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

Duōs annōs remānsit. *He remained two years.*

Flūmen decem pedēs altum est. *The river is ten feet deep.*

3. *Of Place to Which.* The accusative with **ad** (to) or **in** (into) expresses *place to which*. These prepositions, however, are omitted before **domum** and names of towns and cities.

Lēgātōs ad eum mittunt. *They send envoys to him.*

Rōmam eunt. *They go to Rome.*

4. *Subject of Infinitive.* The subject of an infinitive is in the accusative.

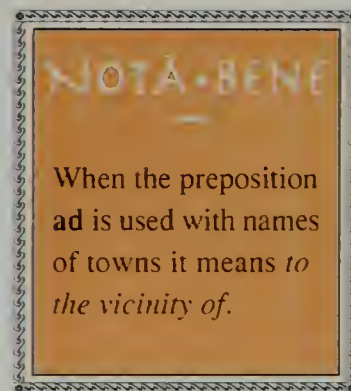
Puerōs esse bonōs volumus. *We want the boys to be good.*

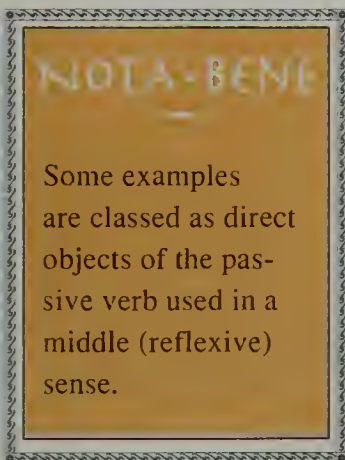
5. *Two Accusatives.* With **trādūcō** and **trānsportō** two accusatives are used. In the passive the word closely connected with the prefix remains to the accusative.

Cōpiās Rhēnum trādūcīt. *He leads his forces across
the Rhine.*

Cōpiae Rhēnum trādūcuntur. *The forces are led across
the Rhine.*

6. *With Prepositions.* The accusative is used with prepositions (except those listed in **Ablative**, 19). When **in** and **sub** show the direction toward which a thing moves, the accusative is used.





7. *Of Exclamation.* The object of an emotion is expressed by the accusative.

Ō fortūnātam rem pūblicam! *O fortunate republic!*
Ō tempora, Ō mōrēs! *O what a time, what a state of affairs!*

8. *Of Respect.* In poetry the accusative of respect is used with verbs and adjectives to indicate the part affected:

hirsūta capillōs *with shaggy hair (lit., shaggy as to the hair)*

Ablative

Summary. The uses of the ablative may be grouped under three heads:

- I. The *true* or “from” ablative (**ab**, *from*, and **lātus**, *carried*), used with the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, and **ex**—if any preposition is used.
- II. The *associative* or “with” ablative, used with the preposition **cum**—if any preposition is used.
- III. The *place* or “in” ablative, used with the prepositions **in** and **sub**—if any preposition is used.

1. *Of Separation.* Separation may be expressed by the ablative without a preposition, always so with **careō** and **liberō**, often also with **abstineō**, **dēsistō**, **excēdō**, and other verbs; also adjectives such as **liber** and **vacuus**.

a. **Prohibeō**, *keep from*, is generally used without a preposition but occasionally with it.

Suīs finibus eōs prohibent. *They keep them from their own territory.*

b. Other verbs expressing separation regularly require the prepositions **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

2. *Of Place from Which.* The ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex** expresses *place from which*.

ex agrīs *out of the fields*

3. *Of Origin.* The ablative without or with a preposition (**ab**, **dē**, **ex**) expresses origin.

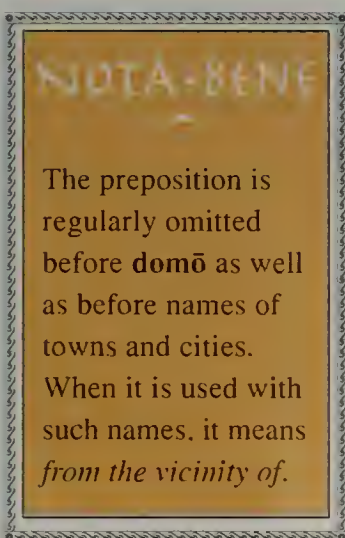
amplissimō genere nātus *born of most illustrious family*

4. *Of Agent.* The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with a passive verb to show the person (or animal) by whom something is done.

Amāmur ab amicīs. *We are loved by our friends.*

5. *Of Comparison.* After a comparative the ablative is used when **quam** (*than*) is omitted.

amplius pedibus decem *more than ten feet*
Nec locus tibi ūllus dulcior *No spot ought to be dearer to*
esse dēbet patriā. *you than your native land.*



6. *Of Accompaniment.* The ablative with **cum** expresses accompaniment.

Cum servō venit.

He is coming with the slave.

a. When **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it is attached to it as an enclitic: **vōbiscum**, *with you*; **sēcum**, *with himself*; **quibuscum**, *with whom*.

b. **Cum** may be omitted in military phrases indicating accompaniment, if modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

omnibus suis cōpiīs

with all his forces

cum tribus legiōnibus

with three legions

7. *Of Manner.* The ablative of manner with **cum** describes how something is done. **Cum** is sometimes omitted if an adjective modifies the noun.

(Cum) magnō studiō labōrat.

*He labors with great eagerness
(very eagerly).*

8. *Absolute.* A noun in the ablative used with a participle, adjective, or other noun and having no grammatical connection with any other word in its clause is called an ablative absolute. In translating, an ablative absolute should, as a rule, be changed to a clause expressing *time, cause, condition, means, or concession*, according to the context. At times it may best be rendered by a coordinate clause.

**Servō accūsātō, dominus
discessit.**

*After accusing the slave (literally,
the slave having been accused),
the master departed.*

**Oppidīs nostrīs captīs,
bellum gerēmus.**

*If our towns are captured
(literally, our towns captured),
we shall wage war.*

9. *Of Means.* The means by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Ratibus trānsībant.

*They were trying to cross by
means of rafts.*

10. *With Special Verbs.* The ablative is used with a few verbs, notably **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, **ūtor**, and **vescor**, whose English equivalents generally govern a direct object.

Castrīs potītī sunt.

They got possession of the camp.

11. *Of Cause.* The ablative of cause is used chiefly with verbs and adjectives expressing feeling.

**labōrāre iniūriā
vīribus cōnfīsī**

*to suffer because of the wrong
relying on their strength*

12. *Of Degree of Difference.* The ablative without a preposition expresses the measure of difference.

tribus annīs ante	<i>three years ago (literally, before by three years)</i>
multō maior	<i>much larger (literally, larger by much)</i>

13. *Of Description.* The ablative, like the genitive, is used with an adjective to describe a noun. It is regularly used of temporary qualities, such as personal appearance.

hominēs inimicā faciē	<i>men with an unfriendly appearance</i>
------------------------------	--

14. *Of Place Where.* The ablative with **in** or **sub** expresses *place where*. The preposition may be omitted, however, with certain words like **locō**, **locīs**, and **parte**, also in certain fixed expressions like **tōtō orbe terrārum**, *in the whole world*. In poetry the omission of the preposition is more frequent. See also Locative.

15. *Of Time When.* *Time when* or *time within which* is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

aestāte	<i>in summer</i>
paucīs diēbus	<i>within a few days</i>

16. *Of Respect.* The ablative tells in what respect the statement applies.

Nōs superant numerō.	<i>They surpass us in number.</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------------

17. *Of Accordance.* The ablative is used with a few words to express the idea *in accordance with*.

mōre suō	<i>in accordance with his custom</i>
-----------------	--------------------------------------

18. *With Dignus.* The ablative is used with **dignus** and **indignus**.

dignus patre	<i>worthy of his father</i>
---------------------	-----------------------------

19. *With Prepositions.* The ablative is used with the prepositions **ab**, **cum**, **dē**, **ex**, **prae**, **prō**, **sine**; sometimes with **in** and **sub**.

20. *With Opus Est and Egeō.* **Opus est**, meaning *there is need*, and **egeō**, *need*, may be followed by the ablative.

Pecūniā opus est.	<i>There is need of money.</i>
--------------------------	--------------------------------

21. *With Cōnfidō.* With **fidō** and **cōnfidō** (*trust*) the ablative may be used. Regularly the dative (of persons) is used.

cum affinitāte Pompei	<i>since he trusted in his relationship</i>
cōnfideret	<i>with Pompey</i>

22. With *Rēfert* and *Interest*. With *rēfert* and *interest*, it concerns, it is for the interest of, the genitive of the person or thing concerned, if a noun, is used; otherwise the feminine ablative singular of the possessive is used.

Rēgis rēfert.

It concerns the king.

Meā videō quid intersit.

I see what is to my interest.

Locative

Domus, humus, rūs and the names of towns, cities, and small islands require a separate case, called the locative, to express *place where*. The locative has the same ending as the genitive in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions; it has the same ending as the ablative in the plural of these declensions and in the third declension, singular and plural.

domī

at home

Rōmae

at Rome

Athēnīs

at Athens

Vocative

The vocative is used in addressing a person. Unless emphatic it never stands first.

Quid facis, amīce?

What are you doing, my friend?

Verb Syntax

Tenses

The tenses of the indicative in Latin are in general used like those in English, but the following points should be noted.

1. *Present*. The Latin present has the force of the English simple present and of the progressive present.

vocat

he calls, he is calling, he does call

2. *Historical Present*. The historical present is used for vivid effect instead of a past tense in Latin as in English.

Rōmam proficīscuntur.

They depart(ed) for Rome.

- a. In clauses introduced by **dum** meaning *while*, the historical present is always used. In translating use the English past. For **dum** meaning *as long as* or *until* see **Indicative Mood, 2; Subjunctive Mood, 12.**

dum haec geruntur

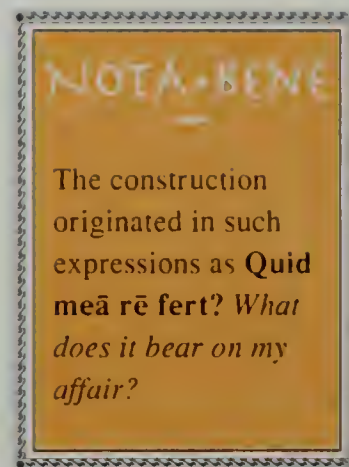
while these things were going on

3. *Imperfect*. The Latin imperfect expresses repeated, customary, or continuous action in the past and is usually best translated by the English progressive past, sometimes by the auxiliary *would*, or by a phrase, such as *used to* or *kept on*.

Pugnābant.

They were fighting.

Sometimes the imperfect expresses attempted action (*trying to*).



4. *Perfect*. The Latin perfect is generally equivalent to the English past, occasionally to the present perfect.

Vīcī.

I conquered. I have conquered.

5. *Sequence of Tenses*. The subjunctive mood is used chiefly in subordinate clauses, in which its tenses are determined by the principle of "sequence of tenses," as shown in the following summary and examples:

a. PRIMARY TENSES

(referring to the present or future)

Indicative:

present, future, future perfect

Subjunctive:

present, perfect

1. **Venit ut mē videat.**

He is coming to see me (that he may see me).

2. **Veniet ut mē videat.**

He will come to see me (that he may see me).

3. **Excesserō priusquam veniat.**

I shall have departed before he comes.

4. **Rogō quid crās faciās**

(or **factūrus sīs**).

I ask what you will do tomorrow.

5. **Rogō quid herī fēcērīs.**

I ask what you did yesterday.

b. SECONDARY TENSES

(referring to the past)

Indicative:

imperfect, perfect, pluperfect

Subjunctive:

imperfect, pluperfect

1. **Vēnit ut mē vidēret.**

He came to see me (that he might see me).

2. **Rogābam quid facerēs.**

I kept asking what you were doing.

3. **Rogābam quid anteā fecissēs.**

I kept asking what you had done before.

4. **Excesseram priusquam venīret.**

I had departed before he came.

Primary indicative tenses are followed by primary subjunctive tenses, secondary by secondary.

6. *Epistolary Tenses*. In writing letters the Roman determined the tense from the standpoint of the reader, not the writer. Therefore he or she used a past tense for events going on when he or she wrote. Such tense usage is known as epistolary.

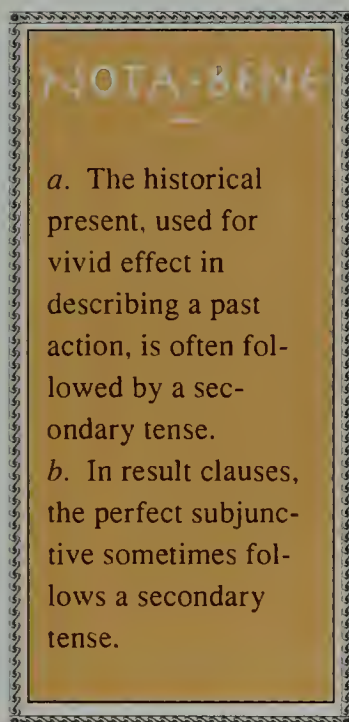
Hanc epistulam scrīpsī.

I am writing this letter.

Indicative Mood

The indicative mood is generally used in Latin as in English. The following points should be noted.

1. *Relative Clauses*. Most relative clauses are in the indicative, as in English. But see **Subjunctive Mood**, 3, 10, 14.



2. *Adverbial Clauses.* Clauses introduced by **postquam**, **posteaquam** (*after*), **ubi**, **ut** (*when*), **cum primum**, **simul ac** (*as soon as*), **dum** (*while, as long as*), **quamquam**, **etsi** (*although*) are in the indicative.

Postquam id cōspexit, *After he noticed this, he gave*
signum dedit. *the signal.*

3. *Noun Clauses.* A clause introduced by **quod** (*the fact that, that*) is in the indicative and may be used as subject or object of the main verb or in apposition with a demonstrative.

Grātum est quod mē requīris. *It is gratifying that you miss me.*

Subjunctive Mood

1. *Volitive.* The volitive (**volō**) subjunctive represents an act as *willed* and is translated by *let*. The negative is **nē**. When the volitive is used in the first person (*let us*), it is often called the hortatory subjunctive. When used in the third person (singular or plural), it is called the jussive subjunctive (*let him, let them*).

Patriam dēfendāmus. *Let us defend our country.*

Nē id videat. *Let him not see it.*

2. *Purpose Clauses.* The subjunctive is used in a subordinate clause with **ut** or **utī** (negative **nē**) to express the purpose of the act expressed by the principal clause.

Venīmus ut videāmus. *We come that we may see.*
 We come to see.

Fugit nē videātur. *He flees that he may not be seen.*

3. *Relative Purpose Clauses.* If the principal clause contains (or implies) a definite antecedent, the purpose clause may be introduced by the relative pronoun **quī** (= **ut** is or **ut eī**) instead of **ut**.

Militēs mīsit quī hostem *He sent soldiers to hinder*
impedirent. *the enemy.*

4. *Quō Purpose Clauses.* If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, **quō** is generally used instead of **ut**.

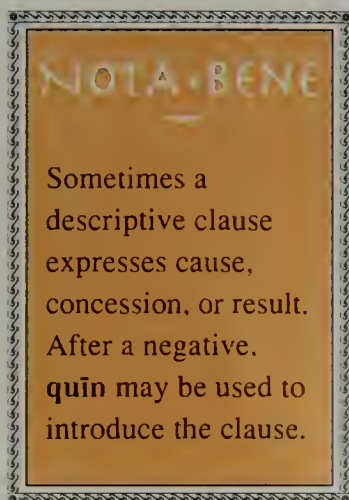
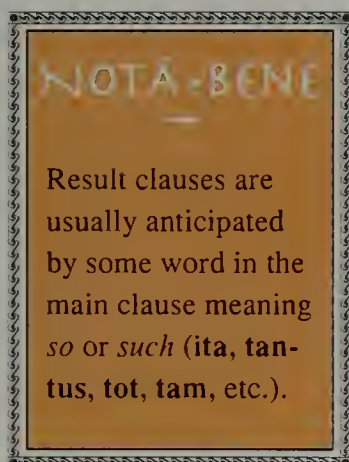
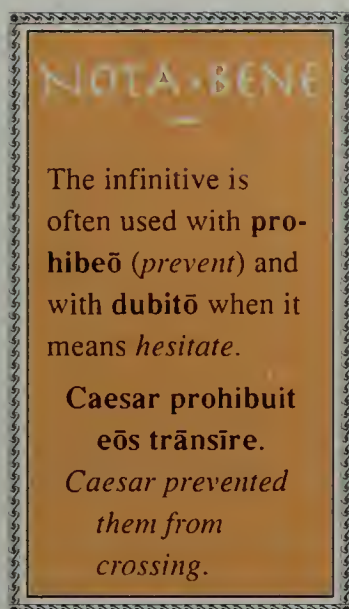
Accēdit quō facilius audiat. *He approaches in order that he*
 may hear more easily.

For other ways to express purpose see **Dative, Gerundive, Gerund.**

5. *Volitive Noun Clauses.* Clauses in the subjunctive with **ut** (negative **nē**) are used as the objects of such verbs as **moneō**, **rogō**, **petō**, **hortor**, **persuādeō**, and **imperō**.

Militēs hortātus est ut *He urged the soldiers to be brave.*
fortēs essent.

Helvētiīs persuāsīt ut exīrent. *He persuaded the Helvetians*
 to leave.



- a. With **iubeō** (*order*), unlike **imperō**, the infinitive is generally used. The subject of the infinitive is in the accusative.

Iussit eos venire. *He ordered them to come.*

Imperavit eis ut venirent. *He ordered them to come.*

- b. **Vetō** (*forbid*) and **cupiō** (*desire*) are used like **iubeō**.

6. *Clauses with Verbs of Hindering.* With verbs of hindering, preventing, and doubting, as **impediō**, **deterreō**, and **dubitō**, the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **quō minus** is used if the main clause is affirmative, by **quoniam** if negative.

Tū deterrere potes nē maior multitūdō traducatur. *You can prevent a greater number from being brought over.*

7. *Clauses of Fear.* With verbs of fearing, clauses in the subjunctive introduced by **nē** (*that*) and **ut** (*that not*) are used.

Verēbatur nē tū aeger essēs. *He feared that you were sick.*

Timui ut venirent. *I was afraid that they would not come.*

8. *Result Clauses.* The result of the action or state of the principal verb is expressed by a subordinate clause with **ut** (**utī**), negative **ut nōn** (**utī nōn**), and the subjunctive.

Tantum est periculum ut pauci veniant. *So great is the danger that few are coming.*

Ita bene erant castra munita ut nōn capi possent. *So well had the camp been fortified that it could not be taken.*

9. *Noun Clauses of Result.* Verbs meaning *to happen* (**accidō**) or *to cause* or *effect* (**efficiō**) require clauses of result in the subjunctive with **ut** (**utī**) or **ut** (**utī**) **nōn**, used as subject or object of the main verb:

Accidit ut mē nōn vidēret. *It happened that he did not see me.*

Efficiam ut veniat. *I shall cause him to come.*

10. *Descriptive Relative Clauses.* A relative clause with the subjunctive may be used to describe an indefinite antecedent. Such clauses are called relative clauses of description (characteristic) and are especially common after such expressions as **ūnus** and **sōlus**, **sunt quī** (*there are those who*), and **nēmō est quī** (*there is no one who*).

11. *Cum Clauses.* In secondary sequence **cum** (*when*) is used with the imperfect or the past pluperfect subjunctive to describe the circumstances under which the action of the main verb occurred.

Cum milites redissent, Caesar orationem habuit. *When the soldiers had returned, Caesar made a speech.*

a. In some clauses **cum** with the subjunctive is best translated *since*.

Cum ita sint, nōn ībō.

Since this is so, I shall not go
(literally, *When this is so*).

b. In some clauses **cum** with the subjunctive is best translated *although*.

Cum ea ita sint, tamen nōn ībō.

Although this is so, yet I shall not go (literally, *When, etc.*).

When **ut** means *although, granted that*, its clause is in the subjunctive.

12. **Anticipatory Clauses.** **Dum** (until), **antequam**, and **priusquam**

(before) introduce clauses (a) in the indicative to indicate *an actual fact*, (b) in the subjunctive to indicate an act as *anticipated*.

Silentium fuit dum tū vēnistī.

There was silence until you came.

**Caesar exspectāvit dum nāvēs
convenīrent.**

*Caesar waited until the ships
should assemble.*

**Priusquam tēlum adigī posset,
omnēs fūgērunt.**

*Before a weapon could be thrown,
all fled.*

13. **Indirect Questions.** In a question indirectly quoted or expressed after some introductory verb such as *ask, doubt, learn, know, tell, hear, etc.*, the verb is in the subjunctive.

Rogant quis sit.

They ask who he is.

14. **Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse.** An indicative in a subordinate clause becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse. If the clause is not regarded as an essential part of the quotation but is merely explanatory or parenthetical, its verb may be in the indicative.

**Dixit sē pecūniam invēnisse
quam āmīsisset.**

*He said that he found the money
which he had lost.*

15. **By Attraction.** A verb in a clause dependent upon a subjunctive or an infinitive, is frequently "attracted" to the subjunctive, especially if its clause is an essential part of the statement.

**Dat negōtium hīs utī ea quae
apud Belgās gerantur
cognōscant.**

*He directs them to learn what is
going on among the Belgians.*

16. **Quod Causal Clauses.** Causal clauses introduced by **quod** (or **propterea quod**) and **quoniam** (*since, because*) are in the indicative when they give the writer's or speaker's reason, the subjunctive when the reason is presented as that of another person.

**Amicō grātiās ēgī quod mihi
pecūniam dederat.**

*I thanked my friend because he
had given me money.*

**Rōmānīs bellum intulit quod
agrōs suōs vāstāvissent.**

*He made war against the Romans
because (as he alleged) they had
laid waste his lands.*

NOTA-BENE

The first member of a double indirect question is introduced by **utrum** or **-ne**, the second by **an**.

**Quaerō utrum
vērum an
falsum sit.**

*I ask whether it is
true or false.*

17. *Proviso Clauses*. The subjunctive with **dum, dum modo, modo**, meaning *provided that*, is used to express a proviso (negative **nē**).
- modo inter mē atque tē** *provided that a wall is between*
mūrus intersit *you and me*
18. *Deliberative*. In questions of doubt and perplexity where the speaker asks himself or someone else for advice, or in questions or exclamations expressing surprise or indignation, the subjunctive is used, sometimes with **ut**. The negative is **nōn**. The deliberative subjunctive is commonly used in questions that expect a *no* answer, and is therefore purely rhetorical.
- Quid fiat?** *What shall be done?*
Cūr ego nōn laeter? *Why should I not rejoice?*
Tū ut umquam tē corrigās? *You ever reform?*
19. *Optative*. The optative (**optō**) subjunctive represents a wish. It frequently is preceded by **utinam** (*would that*). The negative is **nē**.
- a. The present (rarely the perfect) is used when the wish can come true:
Vivās fēliciter! *May you live happily!*
- b. The imperfect expresses a wish contrary to fact in present time:
Utinam venīret! *Oh, that he were coming*
 (but he is not)!
- c. The pluperfect expresses a wish contrary to fact in past time:
Utinam nē vēnisset! *Would that he had not come*
 (but he did)!
20. *Potential*. The potential subjunctive expresses the possibility or capability of something being done. The negative is **nōn**. The present and perfect refer to present or future time, the imperfect to past time. It is variously translated by *may, might, can, could*.
- Aliquis mihi dīcat.** *Someone may say to me.*
Aurum fluitāre vidērēs. *You might have seen the gold*
 flowing.
21. *Of Obligation*. The negative is **nōn**. It is translated by *should* or *ought*.
Quid ego cōnārer? *Why should I have tried?*
22. *Of Comparison*. With words meaning *as if* (**quasi, velut**, etc.) the subjunctive is used.
quasi nātūrā dīiūctī sint *as if they were naturally separated*
23. *Second Singular Indefinite*. When the second person singular is not applied to an individual but generally (where we use *one* in English), the subjunctive may be used.
Putēs dīcere. *One might think you are saying.*

Conditions

a. Subordinate clause (condition) introduced by **sī**, **nisi**, or **sī nōn**.

b. Principal clause (conclusion).

1. *Simple* (nothing implied as to truth). Any possible combination of tenses of the indicative, as in English.

Sī mē laudat, laetus sum. *If he praises me, I am glad.*

2. *Contrary-to-Fact*.

a. *Present*: imperfect subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī mē laudāret, laetus essem. *If he were praising me (but he isn't), I should be glad (now).*

b. *Past*: past perfect subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī mē laudāvisset, laetus fuisset. *If he had praised me (but he didn't) I should have been glad (then).*

c. *Mixed*: past condition and present conclusion.

Sī mē laudāvisset, laetus essem. *If he had praised me (but he didn't) I should be glad (now).*

3. *Future Less Vivid* (should/would). Present subjunctive in both clauses.

Sī mē laudet, laetus sim. *If he should praise me, I would be glad.*

Imperative Mood

Affirmative commands are expressed by the imperative; negative commands by the present imperative of **nōlō** (**nōlī**, **nōlīte**) and the infinitive. The imperative with **nē** is used in poetry.

Amā inimicōs tuōs. *Love your enemies.*

Nōlīte īre. *Do not go (literally, Be unwilling to go).*

a. The future imperative is rare, being found chiefly in religious and legal language.

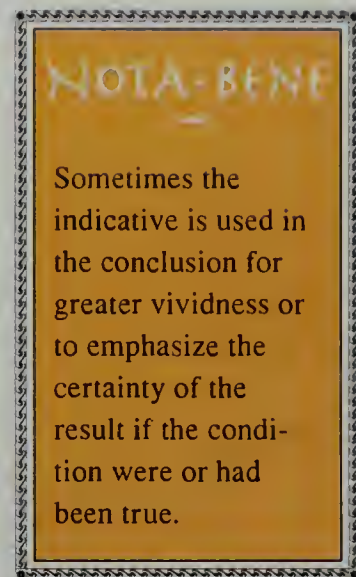
b. Exhortations (volitive subjunctive) and commands, though main clauses, become subjunctive in indirect discourse.

(Direct) **Īte!** *Go!*

(Indirect) **Dixit īrent.** *He said that they should go.*

c. Occasionally the subjunctive is used instead of the imperative.

Mihi hās lēgēs. *Will these to me.*



Impersonal Verbs

- a. Some verbs are used only impersonally and therefore have no forms in the first and second persons.
- b. The various constructions with **licet** are as follows:

Licet $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{tibi} \\ \text{tē} \end{array} \right\}$ **īre.** *You may go.*

Licet (ut) eās. *You may go.*

- c. Other verbs may at times be used impersonally, i.e., without a personal subject.
- d. Intransitive verbs are used only impersonally in the passive.

Ventum erat. *He (or they) had come.*

See also **Dative**, 6, a.

Reflexive Use of the Passive

Occasionally the passive form of a verb or participle is used in a "middle" or reflexive sense.

armārī *to arm themselves*

Participle

1. The tenses of the participles (present, perfect, future) indicate time *present, past, or future* from the standpoint of the main verb.
2. a. Perfect participles are often used simply as adjectives: **nōtus**, *known*.
b. Participles, like adjectives, may be used as nouns: **factum**, "having been done," *deed*.
3. The Latin participle is often a *one-word substitute* for a subordinate clause in English introduced by *who* or *which*, *when* or *after*, *since* or *because*, *although*, and *if*.

Gerundive (Future Passive Participle)

The gerundive (future passive participle) is a verbal adjective, having thirty forms. It has two distinct uses:

1. As a predicate adjective with forms of **sum**,₁ when it naturally indicates, as in English, *what must be done*. The person upon whom the obligation rests is in the dative.

Caesarī omnia erant agenda. *Caesar had to do all things*
(literally, *all things were to be done by Caesar*).

2. As modifier of a noun or pronoun in various constructions, with no idea of obligation:

dē Rōmā cōstituendā *about founding Rome* (literally,
about Rome to be founded)

₁ The so-called passive periphrastic, a term not used in this book. The term should be avoided because it is not only useless but troublesome.

3. With phrases introduced by **ad** and the accusative or by **causā** (or **grātiā**) and the genitive it expresses purpose. **Causā** and **grātiā** are always placed after the participle.

**Ad eās rēs cōficiendās
Mārcus dēligitur.**

Marcus is chosen to accomplish these things (literally, for these things to be accomplished).

Caesaris videndī causā
(or grātiā) vēnit.

*He came for the sake of seeing
Caesar (literally, for the sake
of Caesar to be seen).*

4. It is used in agreement with the object of **cūrō**, **locō**, **dō**, *etc.*

Pontem faciendum cūrat.

He attends to having a bridge built.

Gerund

The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension with only four forms—genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative singular.

The uses of the gerund are similar to some of those of the gerundive.

cupidus bellandī

desirous of waging war

Ad discendum vēnī.

I came for learning (i.e., to learn).

Discendī causā (or grātiā) vēnī.

I came for the sake of learning.

Infinitive

1. The infinitive is an indeclinable neuter verbal noun, and as such it may be used as the subject of a verb.

Errāre hūmānum est.

Too err is human.

Vidēre est crēdere.

To see is to believe.

2. With many verbs the infinitive, like other nouns, may be used as a direct object.

Cōpiās movēre parat.

He prepares to move the troops.

3. The infinitive object of some verbs, such as **iubeō**, **volō**, **nōlō**, and **doceō**, often has a noun or pronoun subject in the accusative.

4. Statements that give indirectly the thoughts or words of another, used as the objects of verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, hearing, perceiving*, etc., have verbs in the infinitive with their subjects in the accusative.

(Direct) **Dīcit**, “Puerī veniunt.”

He says, "The boys are coming."

(Indirect) **Dīcit** puerōs venīre.

He says that the boys are coming.

The gerund usually does not have an object. Instead, the gerundive is used, modifying the noun.

With the passive third singular (impersonal) of these verbs the infinitive is the subject.

Caesarī nūntiātur
eōs trānsire.

*It is reported to
Caesar that they
are crossing.*

5. *a.* The present infinitive represents time or action as *going on at the same time*, from the standpoint of the introductory verb:

$\begin{matrix} \text{Dicit} \\ \text{Dixit} \end{matrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{eōs pugnāre.} \\ \end{matrix} \right. \text{He} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{says} \\ \text{said} \end{matrix} \right\} (\text{that}) \text{they} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{are} \\ \text{were} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{fighting.}$

- b.* The future infinitive represents time or action as *subsequent to or after* that of the introductory verb:

$\begin{matrix} \text{Dicit} \\ \text{Dixit} \end{matrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{eōs pugnā-} \\ \text{tūrōs esse.} \end{matrix} \right. \text{He} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{says} \\ \text{said} \end{matrix} \right\} (\text{that}) \text{they} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{will} \\ \text{would} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{fight.}$

- c.* The perfect infinitive represents time or action as *completed before* that of the introductory verb:

$\begin{matrix} \text{Dicit} \\ \text{Dixit} \end{matrix} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{eōs} \\ \text{pugnāvisse.} \end{matrix} \right. \text{He} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{says} \\ \text{said} \end{matrix} \right\} (\text{that}) \text{they} \left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{have} \\ \text{had} \end{matrix} \right\} \text{fought.}$

6. *Historical Infinitive.* The historical infinitive with its subject in the nominative has the force of the indicative imperfect or perfect. It is used for vividness, as in English we use the present indicative instead of the past. Usually two or more such infinitives are used together.

**Omnēs obstrepere, hostem
atque parricidam vocāre.** *All cried out against him, called
him an enemy and murderer.*

Supine

The supine, like the gerund, is a verbal noun. It has only two cases.

- a.* The accusative in **-um**, used with the verbs of motion to express purpose:

Pācem petītum vēnērunt. *They came to seek peace.*

- b.* The ablative in **-ū**, used to express respect. It is used only with certain adjectives, e.g., **facilis**, **difficilis**, **mirabile**, and **optimus**.

difficile factū *hard to do (literally, hard in
the doing)*

Summary of Prefixes and Suffixes

Prefixes

Many Latin words are formed by joining prefixes (*prae*, *in front*; *fixus*, *attached*) to *root* words. These same prefixes, most of which are prepositions, are those chiefly used in English, and by using them, many new words can be formed.

Some prefixes change their final consonants to make them like the initial consonants of the words to which they are attached. This change is called assimilation (*ad*, *to*; *similis*, *like*).

Many prefixes in Latin and English have intensive force, especially *con-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *per-*. They are then best translated either by an English intensive, such as *up* or *out*, or by an adverb, such as *completely*, *thoroughly*, *deeply*. Thus *commoveō* means *move greatly*, *permagnus*, *very great*, *obtineō*, *hold on to*, *concitō*, *rouse up*, *excipiō*, *catch*, *receive*.

1. **ab** (*abs*, *ā*), *from*: **abs-tineō**; *ab-undance*, *abs-tain*, *a-vocation*.
2. **ad**, *to*, *toward*: **ad-iciō**; *ac-curate*, *an-nounce*, *ap-paratus*, *ad-vocate*.
3. **ante**, *before*: **ante-cēdō**; *ante-cedent*.
4. **bene**, *well*: **bene-dīcō**; *bene-factor*.
5. **bi-**, **bis-**, *twice*, *two*: **bi-ennium**; *bi-ennial*.
6. **circum**, *around*: **circum-eō**; *circum-ference*.
7. **con-**, *with*, *together*: **con-vocō**; *con-voke*, *col-lect*, *com-motion*, *cor-rect*.
8. **contrā**, *against*: *contra-dict*.
9. **dē**, *from*, *down from*, *not*: **dē-ferō**; *de-ter*.
10. **dis-**, *apart*, *not*: **dis-cēdō**; *dis-locate*, *dif-fuse*, *di-vert*.
11. **ex** (*ē*), *out of*, *from*: **ex-eō**; *ex-port*, *e-dit*, *ef-fect*.
12. **extrā**, *outside*: *extra-legal*.
13. **in**, *in*, *into*, *against*: **in-dūcō**; *in-habit*, *im-migrant*, *il-lusion*, *en-chant*.
14. **in-**, *not*, *un-*: **im-mēnsus**; *il-legal*, *im-moral*, *ir-regular*.
15. **inter**, *between*, *among*: **inter-clūdō**; *inter-class*.
16. **intrā**, *within*, *inside*: *intra-collegiate*.
17. **intrō-**, *within*: *intro-duce*.
18. **male**, *ill*: *male-factor*, *mal-formation*.
19. **multi-**, *much*, *many*: *multi-graph*.
20. **nōn**, *not*: *non-sense*.
21. **ob**, *against*, *toward*: **ob-tineō**; *oc-cur*, *of-fer*, *o-mit*, *op-pose*, *ob-tain*.
22. **per**, *through*, *thoroughly*: **per-moveō**; *per-fect*.
23. **post**, *after*: *post-pone*.
24. **prae**, *before*, *in front of*: **prae-ficiō**; *pre-cede*.
25. **prō**, *for*, *forward*: **prō-dūcō**; *pro-mote*.
26. **re-** (*red-*), *back*, *again*: **re-dūcō**, **red-igō**; *re-fer*.
27. **sē-**, *apart from*: **sē-cēdō**; *se-parate*.
28. **sēmi-**, *half*, *partly*: **sēmi-barbarus**; *semi-annual*.
29. **sub**, *under*, *up from under*: **suc-cēdō**; *suf-fer*, *sug-gest*, *sup-port*, *sub-let*.
30. **super** (*sur-*), *over*, *above*: **super-sum**; *super-fluous*, *sur-mount*.
31. **trāns** (*trā-*), *through*, *across*: **trā-dūcō**; *trans-fer*.
32. **ultrā**, *extremely*: *ultra-fashionable*.
33. **ūn-** (*ūni-*), *one*: *uni-form*.

Suffixes

Participles that are attached to the ends of words are called suffixes (*sub, under, after; fixus, attached*). Like the Latin prefixes, the Latin suffixes play a very important part in the formation of English words.

The meaning of suffixes is often far less definite than that of prefixes. In many cases they merely indicate the part of speech.

Suffixes are often added to words that already have suffixes. Thus, *functionalistically* has six suffixes, all of Latin or Greco-Latin origin except the last. A suffix often combines with a preceding letter or letters to form a new suffix. This is especially true of suffixes added to perfect participles whose base ends in *-s-* or *-t-*. In the following list no account is taken of such English suffixes as *-ant*, derived from the ending of the Latin present participle.

1. *-ālis* (*-al*), pertaining to: **liber-ālis**; *annu-al*.
2. *-ānus* (*-an, -ane, -ain*), pertaining to: **Rōm-ānus**; *capt-ain, hum-ane*.
3. *-āris* (*-ar*), pertaining to: **famili-āris**; *singul-ar*.
4. *-ārium* (*-arium, -ary*), place where: *aqu-arium, gran-ary*.
5. *-ārius* (*-ary*), pertaining to: **frūment-ārius**; *ordin-ary*.
6. *-āticum* (*-age*): *bagg-age*.
7. *-āx* (*-ac-ious*), tending to: **aud-āx**; *rap-acious*.
8. *-faciō, -ficō* (*-fy*), make: **signi-ficō**; *satis-fy*.
9. *-ia* (*-y*), *-cia, -tia* (*-ce*), *-antia* (*-ance, -ancy*), *-entia* (*-ence, -ency*), condition of: **memor-ia, grā-tia, cōnst-antia, sent-entia**; *memor-y, provin-ce, gra-ce, const-ancy, sent-ence*.
10. *-icus* (*-ic*), pertaining to: **pūbl-icus**; *civ-ic*.
11. *-idus* (*-id*), having the quality of: **rap-idus**; *flu-id*.
12. *-ilis* (*-ile, -il*), *-bilis* (*-ble, -able, -ible*), able to be: **fac-ilis, laudā-bilis**; *fert-ile, no-ble, compar-able, terr-ible*.
13. *-ilis* (*-ile, -il*), pertaining to: **cīv-ilis**; *serv-ile*.
14. *-īnus* (*-ine*), pertaining to: **mar-īnus**; *div-ine*.
15. *-iō* (*-ion*), *-siō* (*-sion*), *-tiō* (*-tion*), act or state of: **reg-iō, măn-siō, ōrā-tiō**; *commun-ion, ten-sion, rela-tion*.
16. *-ium* (*-y*), *-cium, -tium* (*-ce*): **remed-ium, sōlā-cium, pre-tium**; *stud-y, edifi-ce*.
17. *-īvus* (*-ive*), pertaining to: **capt-īvus**; *nat-ive*.
18. *-lus, -ellus, -ulus* (*-lus, -le*) little ("diminutive"): **parvu-lus, castel-lum**; *gladio-lus, parti-cle*.
19. *-men* (*-men, -min, -me*): **lū-men**; *cri-min-al, cri-me*.
20. *-mentum* (*-ment*), means of: **im-pedī-mentum**; *comple-ment*.
21. *-or* (*-or*), state of: **tim-or**; *terr-or*.
22. *-or, -sor, -tor* (*-sor, -tor*), one who: **scrīp-tor**; *inven-tor*.
23. *-ōrium* (*-orium, -ory, -or*), place where: *audit-orium, fact-ory, mirr-or*.
24. *-ōsus* (*-ous, -ose*), full of: **ōti-ōsus**; *copi-ous*.
25. *-tās* (*-ty*), state of: **liber-tās**; *integri-ty*.
26. *-tō, -sō, -itō*, keep on ("frequentative"): **dic-tō, prēn-sō, vent-itō**.
27. *-tūdō* (*-tude*), state of: **magni-tūdō**; *multi-tude*.
28. *-tūs* (*-tue*), state of: **vir-tūs**; *vir-tue*.
29. *-ūra, -sūra, -tūra* (*-ure, -sure, -ture*): **fig-ūra, mēn-sūra, agricul-tūra**; *proced-ure, pres-sure, na-ture*.

Vocabulary



Latin-English

Verbs of the first conjugation whose parts are regular (i.e., like **portō**, p. 280) are indicated by the figure 1. Proper names are not included unless they are spelled differently in English or are difficult to pronounce in English. Their English pronunciation is indicated by a simple system. The vowels are as follows: *ā* as the "o" in *hot*, *ă* as in *hat*, *ē* as the "ai" in *raid*, *ě* as in *fed*, *ī* as the "ee" in *weed*, *ĭ* as in *bit*, *ō* as in *hope*, *ŏ* as in *hop*, *ū* as in *cute*, *ŭ* as in *cut*. In the ending *ēs* the *s* is soft.

A

A., *abbreviation for Aulus*, **-ī, m.**, Aulus
ā, ab, abs, *prep. w. abl.*, from, away from, by
abdicō, 1, disown; w. **sē**, resign
abditus, **-a, -um**, hidden
abdō, -ere, abdidī, abditus, put away, bury
abdūcō, -ere, abdūxī, abductus, lead *or* take away, withdraw
abeō, -īre, abiī, abitūrus, go away *or* off, depart
abhinc, *adv.*, ago
abhorreō, -ēre, uī, —, shrink from, be inconsistent with
abiectus, **-a, -um**, cast down
abnegō, 1, refuse, deny
abrenūntiō, 1, renounce
abripīō, -ere, abripuī, abreptus, snatch away
abscidō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, cut off, separate, divide
abscondō, -ere, -condī, -conditus, hide, conceal
absēns, *gen. -entis*, absent
absolūtiō, -ōnis, f., acquittal
absolvō, -ere, absolvi, absolūtus, acquit; finish
abstinentia, -ae, f., abstinence
abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, abstain from
abstrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, draw away
absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, be away, be distant; be absent: w. **ab**, fail
absūmō, -ere, absūmpsī, absūmptus, consume, destroy
absurdus, -a, -um, harsh, absurd, stupid

abundē, *adv.*, enough

abūtor, abūtī, abūsus, abuse, take advantage of

abyssus, -ī, m., a bottomless pit, abyss, Hades

ac, *see atque*

Acadēmicus, -a, -um, of the Academy (*where Plato taught*); *as noun, m.*, an Academic philosopher

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessūrus, come to, approach; be added

accendō, -ere, accendī, accēnsus, inflame, excite

accersō, *see arcessō*

accidō, -ere, accidī, —, fall (to), befall, happen (*w. dat.*)

accingō, -ere, accīnxī, accīnctus, gird on, equip, arm

accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus, receive, accept; hear

Accius, -cī, m., Accius

accola, -ae, m., neighbor

accommodō, 1, adapt, adjust, suit

accumbō, -ere, accubuī, accubitūrus, lie down, recline at table

accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully

accursus, -ūs, m., gathering

accūsātor, -ōris, m., accuser

accūsātōriē, *adv.*, as a prosecutor, in an accusing manner

accūsō, 1, blame, censure

ācer, ācris, ācre , sharp, keen, fierce, bitter, severe, active	adluō, -ere, adluī, — , flow near to, wash against
acerbitās, -tātis, f. , severity	administer, -trī, m. , assistant, servant, tool
acerbus, -a, -um , bitter, harsh	administrō, 1 , conduct, carry on, govern
acervus, -ī, m. , heap, multitude	admīrābilis, -e , admirable
Achillēs, -is, m. , Achilles	admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. , admiration
Acidīnus, -ī, m. , Acidinus	admīror, 1 , wonder (at), admire
aciēs, aciēī, f. , (keen) edge, battle line	admittō, -ere, admīsī, admissus , let to, admit
acinus, -ī, m. , small berry, grape, wine, vinegar	admodum, adv. , very (much)
acquirō, -ere, acquisīvī, acquisītus , add to	admoneō, -ēre, admonuī, admonitus , remind, warn
ācriter, adv. , vigorously, sharply	admonitus, -ūs, m. , suggestion
Actium, -tī, n. , Actium	admoveō, -ēre, admōvī, admōtus , (move to), place near, apply
āctum, -ī, n. , deed, transaction, decree, law	adnotātiō, -ōnis, f. , noting down, remark
āctus, -ūs, m. , driving impulse	adnotō, 1 , direct
acūmen, -inis, n. , acuteness, keenness, sharpness	adoleō, -ēre, adoluī, — , destroy by fire
acuō, -ere, acuī, acūtus , sharpen	adoperiō, -īre, adoperuī, adopertus , cover, close
acūtus, -a, -um , sharp, keen	adoptō, 1 , select, choose, adopt
ad, prep. w. acc. , to, toward, near, for, until, according to	adōrō, 1 , worship
adaequō, 1 , make equal (to)	adrīdeō, -ēre, adrisī, adrisus , laugh, smile at
adamō, 1 , love	adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus , be near, be on hand, be present; assist
addiscō, -ere, addidicī, — , learn in addition, gain knowledge of	adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. , young person
addō, -ere, addidī, additus , add	adulēscēntia, -ae, f. , youth
addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus , lead to, bring, influence, move	adulēscēntulus, -ī, m. , mere lad, young man
adeō, adīre, adiī, aditūrus , go to, approach	adulter, -erī, m. , adulterer
adeō, adv. , so, so much, to such a degree; in fact	adulterium, -rī, n. , adultery
adeptiō, -ōnis, f. , obtaining, attainment	adultus, -a, -um , full-grown
adhaereō, -ēre, adhaesī, adhaesus , stick (to), trial after	adūrō, -ere, adussī, adustus , set fire to, scorch
adhibeō, -ēre, adhibuī, adhibitus , hold toward, admit, summon; use, furnish	adveniō, -īre, advēnī, adventūrus , arrive
adhūc, adv. , up to this time, thus far, still	adventus, -ūs, m. , approach, arrival
adiaceō, -ēre, —, — , be adjacent	adversārius, -a, -um , opposed; <i>as noun, m.</i> , enemy
adiciō, -ere, adiēcī, adiectus , throw (to), add	adversitās, -tātis, f. , opposition
adigō, -ere, adēgī, adāctus , drive (to), hurl (to)	adversus, -a, -um , adverse
adimō, -ere, adēmī, adēemptus , take away	adversus, prep. w. acc. , toward, against
adipēs, -ium, m. and f. pl. , fat; corpulence	advertō, -ere, advertī, adversus , turn to, direct
adipīscor, -ī, adeptus , obtain	advesperāscit, -āre, —, (impers.) , approaches evening, is twilight
aditus, -ūs, m. , approach	advocātiō, -ōnis, f. , legal case
adiungō, -ere, adiūnxī, adiūctus , join to, add, attach, win over	advolō, 1 , fly to, hasten to
adiuvō, -āre, adiūvī, adiūtus , help	aedēs, -is, f. , building, temple; <i>pl.</i> , house
	aedificium, -cī, n. , building
	aedificō, 1 , build
	aedilitās, -tātis, f. , aedileship

aeger, aegra, aegrum, sick, ill, suffering
aegrōtō, 1, be ill, be sick
aegrōtus, -a, -um, ill
Aegyptiacus, -a, -um, Egyptian
Aegyptiī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Egyptians
Aegyptus, -ī, f., Egypt
Aellius, -lī, m., Aellius
Aemilius, -lī, m., Aemilius
aemulor, 1, rival
aemulus, -a, -um, rivalling; comparable, similar
(of things)
Aenēās, -ae, m., Aeneas
aēneus, -a, -um, of copper, of bronze
Aeolus, -ī, m., Aeolus
aequābilis, -e, equal
aequābiliter, adv., equally
aequālis, -e, equal
aequē, adv., justly
aequitās, -tātis, f., equality, justice
aequō, 1, make even *or* level
aequor, -oris, n., surface of the sea, ocean
aequus, -a, -um, even, equal, just, calm, right;
aequō animō, calmly, with resignation;
ex aequō, equally
āēr, āēris, m., air (*acc. āera*)
aerārium, -rī, n., treasury
aerumnōsus, -a, -um, wretched
aes, aeris, n., copper, bronze, money; **aes**
aliēnum, debt
aesculētum, -ī, n., forest of oaks
aestās, -tātis, f., summer
aestimō, 1, estimate, value
aestīvus, -a, -um, of summer
aestuō, 1, be hot, be excited; burn
aestuōsus, -a, -um, burning, hot
aestus, -ūs, m., heat
aetās, -tātis, f., age, life
aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting, endless
aethēr, -eris, m., upper air, sky
aetherius, -a, -um, of heaven
Aetna, -ae, f., (Mt.) Etna
Aetōlī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Aetolians
aevum, -ī, n., time, age
affectus, -ūs, m., affection

afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus, bring (to), apply,
 cause, present, produce
afficiō, -ere, affēcī, affectus, affect, afflict with,
 wound
affinis, -is, m., relative (*by marriage*)
affinitās, -tātis, f., relationship by marriage
affirmō, 1, assert
afflictō, 1, afflict
affligō, -ere, afflixī, afflictus, discourage
afflō, 1, blow on, breathe on; inspire
affluēns, gen. -entis, abounding in
Āfrānius, -nī, m., Afrānius
Āfrica, -ae, f., Africa
Āfricānus, -a, -um, African; **Africānus, -ī, m.**,
 Africānus
Āfricus, -a, -um, African; *i.e., from the southwest;*
as noun, m., the southwest wind
Agamemnon, -onis, m., Agamemnon, king of
Mycenae
agellus, -ī, m., little field, small estate
ager, agrī, m., field, farm, land, country; **agrī**
cultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
aggredior, aggredī, aggressus, attack
aggregō, 1, gather
agitō, 1, plan, act; stir, excite; express, spend
agmen, agminis, n., line of march, column
agna, -ae, f., ewe lamb
agnōscō, -ere, agnōvī, agnitus, recognize,
 acknowledge
agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, drive, act, do; treat, discuss,
 speak, plead with *or* for; make; live *or* spend
(of time); *pass.*, be at stake; **grātiās agō**, thank;
iter agō, pursue a course; **vītam agō**, lead a life
agrestis, -e, rustic, boorish
agricola, -ae, m., farmer, planter
agricultūra, -ae, f., agriculture
Ahāla, -ae, m., Ahala
Ahēnobarbus, -ī, Ahenobarbus
ait, he/she says, asserts
āla, -ae, f., wing
alacritās, -tātis, f., eagerness, delight
albēns, gen. -entis, white
albus, -a, -um, white
āleātor, -ōris, m., gambler

āles, *gen. -itis*, winged: *as noun, m. and f.*, bird
Alexander, *-drī, m.*, Alexander, *king of Macedonia*
Alexandrīnus, *-a, -um*, Alexandrian
algor, *-ōris, m.*, coldness
aliēnus, *-a, -um*, of another, another's, foreign;
 unfavorable: *as noun, m.*, stranger
aliōquī, *adv.*, besides, moreover
aliquamdiū, *adv.*, a while, for some time
aliquandō, *adv.*, some time, at last
aliquantō, *adv.*, a little
aliquantum, *-ī, n.*, for some time
aliquis, **aliquid**, someone, anyone; some, any;
 something, anything
aliquot, *indecl. adj.*, some, several, few
aliter, *adv.*, otherwise
alius, **alia**, **aliud**, other, another; different, else;
 alius... alius, one . . . another; **aliī... aliī**, some
 . . . others
Allēlūia, *interj.*, praise ye Jehovah
allevō, 1, raise
alliciō, *-ere, allexī, allectus*, attract
alligō, 1, tie (to), fasten
Allobrogēs, *-um, m. pl.*, the Allobroges, *a Gallic tribe*
allocūtiō, *-ōnis, f.*, address, comforting
alloquor, **alloquī**, **allocūtus**, speak to, address
allūdō, *-ere, allūsī, allūsūrus*, play, joke, pun
alō, *-ere, aluī, altus (alitus)*, feed, nourish, sustain
Alpēs, *-ium, f. pl.*, the Alps
Alphēnōr, *-oris, m.*, Alphē'nor, *one of Niobe's sons*
altāria, *-ium, n. pl.*, altar
altē, *adv.*, high, deeply, far
alter, **altera**, **alterum**, the other (*of two*), another,
 second; **alter... alter**, the one . . . the other
alternus, *-a, -um*, alternating
alteruter, *-utra, -utrum*, one or the other, either
 this or that, one of two
altilis, *-is*, fattened, fat; *as noun, f.*, a fattened bird
altitūdō, *-dinis, f.*, height, depth
altus, *-a, -um*, high, tall, deep
amābilis, *-e*, lovely, attractive
amāns, *gen. amantis*, fond, loving; *as noun, m.*,
 lover
ambiguum, *ī, n.*, doubt

ambiguus, *-a, -um*, uncertain, wavering; obscure
ambiō, **ambīre**, **ambīi**, **ambitūrus**, go round,
 encircle, canvass for votes, solicit
ambitiō, *-ōnis, f.*, courting, flattery; desire for honor
ambitus, *-ūs, m.*, circuit; suing for office
ambō, *-ae, -o*, both
Ambrosius, *-sī, m.*, Ambrose
ambulō, 1, walk
āmentia, *-ae, f.*, madness, folly
Americānus, *-a, -um*, American; **Americānus**,
 -ī, m., an American
amīca, *-ae, f.*, friend
amīcitia, *-ae, f.*, friendship
amictus, *-a, -um*, clothed
amictus, *-ūs, m.*, mantle
amīcus, *-a, -um*, friendly; **amīcus**, *-ī, m.*, friend
 amīca, *-ae, f.*, friend
āmittō, *-ere, āmīsī, āmissus*, lose, let go, send
 away
Ammōnicus, Ammonicus Serenus
amnis, *-is, m.*, stream, river
amō, 1, love, like
amoenitās, *-tātis, f.*, delightfulness, charm
amoenus, *-a, -um*, pleasant
amor, *-ōris, m.*, love, affection
Amphīōn, *-ōnis, m.*, Amphī'on, *husband of Niobe*
amphitheātrum, *-ī, n.*, amphitheater
amplector, *-ī, amplexus*, embrace
amplificō, 1, enlarge, increase
amplitūdō, *-dinis, f.*, greatness
amplius, *adv.*, more, further
amplus, *-a, -um*, great, ample, generous.
 distinguished
an, *conj.*, or, *introducing the second part of a*
 double question; **utrum... an**, (whether) . . . or;
 w. indir. question, whether; *w. vērō*, or indeed
anceps, **ancipitis**, double, two-headed; doubtful;
 dangerous
angelicus, *-a, -um*, like an angel, angelic
angelus, *-ī, m.*, angel
Angelus, Angelo (Corbinelli)
Anglī, *-ōrum, m. pl.*, the Angles
Anglicus, *-a, -um*, English
angō, *-ere, —, —*, trouble

angulus, -ī, *m.*, angle, corner
anhēlitus, -ūs, *m.*, panting
anīlis, -e, old woman's, feeble
anima, -ae, *f.*, breath, soul; existence
animadvertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, give attention to, notice, punish
animal, -ālis, *n.*, animal
animālis, -e, of life, living
animula, -ae, *f.*, little soul
animus, -ī, *m.*, soul, spirit, heart, mind, feeling, courage, desire
annālis, -e, relating to a year; *as noun, m.*, a record of events, annals
annectō, -ere, **annexuī**, **annexus**, tie to, fasten on, annex
annītor, ī, **annixus**, lean upon; strive
anniversārius, -a, -um, annual, yearly
annuō, -ere, **annuī**, —, nod (to), assent to
annus, -ī, *m.*, year
anquīrō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, look about, search after; inquire diligently
ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose
ante, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, before (*of time or place*), beforehand, ago
anteā, *adv.*, before
antecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go before, take the lead
antecellō, -ere, —, —, excel
anteeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, precede; surpass; anticipate
antelūcānus, -a, -um, before dawn
antepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, place before, prefer
antequam (ante quam), *conj.*, before
Antiochia, -ae, *f.*, Antioch, *chief city of Syria*
Antiochus, -ī, *m.*, Antiochus, *king of Syria*
antīquitās, -tātis, *f.*, antiquity
antīquus, -a, -um, old, ancient
antistes, -itis, *m. and f.*, priest
Antōnius, -nī, *m.*, Antonius, Antony
antrum, -ī, *n.*, cave
anus, -ūs, *f.*, old woman
ānxius, -a, -um, troubled, causing anxiety; cautious

aper, **apri**, *m.*, wild boar
aperiō, -īre, **aperuī**, **apertus**, open, uncover
apertē, *adv.*, openly, frankly
apertus, -a, -um, open, unprotected
Apollineus, -a, -um, of Apollo
Apollō, -īnis, *m.*, Apollo, *god of prophecy*
Apollodorus, -ī, *m.*, Apollodorus
Aponius, -nī, *m.*, Aponius
apostolicus, -a, -um, apostolic
apostolus, -ī, *m.*, apostle
apparātus, -a, -um, well prepared
apparātus, -ūs, *m.*, preparation, splendor
appāreō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, appear
appellō, 1, call, speak to, name, address
Appennīnus, -ī, *m.*, Appennines, *mountain range in Italy*
appetō, -ere, **appetīvī**, **appetitus**, seek for
Appius, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Appius, Appian; **Appius**, -pī, *m.*, Appius
applicō, 1, apply, direct (to); drive to
apprehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, seize
approbō, 1, approve
appropinquō, 1, draw near
Aprīlis, -e, (of) April
aptō, 1, fit, place carefully
aptus, -a, -um, fit, suited, suitable (*w. dat.*)
apud, *prep. w. acc.*, at, among, near, with, before, in the presence of, at the house of
aqua, -ae, *f.*, water
aquaeductus, -ūs, *m.*, aqueduct
aquila, -ae, *f.*, eagle; legionary standard
aquilō, -ōnis, *m.*, north wind, north
Aquītānus, -ī, *m.*, an Aquitanian
āra, -ae, *f.*, altar
arātor, -ōris, *m.*, ploughman
arbiter, -trī, *m.*, witness, judge
arbitrium, -rī, *n.*, judgment, opinion, choice
arbitror, 1, think
arbor, -oris, *f.*, tree
arboreus, -a, -um, of a tree
arbuscula, -ae, *f.*, small tree
arcānus, -a, -um, secret
arceō, -ere, -uī, —, keep away, ward off, prevent

arcessō, -ere, arcessivī, arcessitus, summon,
invite, accuse
 Archiās, -ae, *m.*, Archias, a Greek poet
 archipirāta, -ae, *m.*, pirate captain
 architectūra, -ae, *f.*, architecture
 architectus, -ī, *m.*, architect
 Arcitenēns, -entis, *m.*, (bowbearing), Apollo
 arcus, -ūs, *m.*, bow, arch
 ārdeō, -ēre, ārsī, ārsus, be on fire, burn; be
aroused
 arduus, -a, -um, steep, lofty; *as noun, n. pl.*,
heights
 ārea, -ae, *f.*, flat surface; threshing-floor
 arēna, -ae, *f.*, arena, sand, desert, seashore
 arēnōsus, -a, -um, full of sand
 āreō, -ēre, -uī, —, be parched
 argenteus, -a, -um, of silver, silvery
 argentum, -ī, *n.*, silver, money
 argumentum, -ī, *n.*, proof, argument, subject
 arguō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, make known, accuse
 argūtus, -a, -um, bright
 āridus, -a, -um, dry, arid
 arista, -ae, *f.*, head of grain
 arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons
 armārium, -rī, *n.*, closet, chest, safe
 armātūra, -ae, *f.*, equipment
 armātus, -a, -um, armed
 armentum, -ī, *n.*, cattle, herd
 arō, 1, plow
 Arpinās, *gen.*, -ātis, of Arpinum
 arripiō, -ere, arripuī, arreptus, grasp
 arrogantia, -ae, *f.*, arrogance, insolence
 arrogō, 1, associate with, claim
 ars, artis, *f.*, skill, art, profession, practice
 artifex, -ficis, *m.*, artist; *w. scaenicus*, actor
 artificium, -cī, *n.*, profession, trade; theory;
art, craft
 artus, -a, -um, tight
 artus, -ūs, *m.*, joint, limb
 ārula, -ae, *f.*, small altar
 arundō, -inis, *f.*, reed, fishing-rod, shepherd's
pipe, flute
 arvum, -ī, *n.*, field
 arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel

as, assis, *m.*, whole; penny
 ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsus, climb (up),
mount, ascend
 ascēsus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent
 asciscō, -ere, ascivī, ascitus, admit
 Ascōnius, -nī, *m.*, Asconius
 ascribō, -ere, ascripsī, ascriptus, enroll
 asellus, -ī, *m.*, donkey
 Asia, -ae, *f.*, Asia
 asinus, -ī, *m.*, ass, fool
 aspectus, -ūs, *m.*, appearance, sight
 asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh, cruel
 aspiciō, -ere, aspexī, aspectus, look at, behold, see
 aspirō, 1, aspire, reach
 asportō, 1, carry off
 assēsus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement, approval
 assentiō, -īre, assēnsī, assēsus, agree with,
approve
 assequor, assequī, assecūtus, accomplish, obtain
 asserō, -ere, asseruī, assertus, claim, appropriate
 asservō, 1, watch over, keep
 assevērō, 1, assert
 assidō, -ere, assēdī, assessus, sit near, sit at the
side of, be seated
 assiduus, -a, -um, continual, incessant
 assignō, 1, allot, assign; entrust; ascribe
 assuēscō, -ere, assuēvī, assuētus, become
accustomed
 assūmō, -ere, assūmpsī, assūptus, take
 assurgō, -ere, assurrēxī, assurrēctus, rise up,
stand up
 astrum, -ī, *n.*, star, constellation
 at, *conj.*, but, on the other hand
 Ateius, -eī, *m.*, Ateius
 āter, ātra, ātrum, black, dark
 Athēna, *f.*, a Greek goddess = Minerva
 Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens
 Athēniēnsēs, -ium, *m., pl.*, the Athenians
 Atlantiadēs, -ae, *m.*, Mercury
 Atlās, -antis, *m.*, Atlas, a giant
 atque (ac), *conj.*, and, and especially; than
 ātrium, ātrī, *n.*, atrium, entry hall, house
 atrōx, *gen.* -ōcis, cruel, inhuman

attendō, -ere, attendī, attentus, (stretch toward),
 direct, give heed (to), listen
attentus, -a, -um, attentive
atterō, -ere, attrīvī, attrītus, rub or wear away
attineō, -ēre, attinuī, —, detain, delay; reach;
 concern
attingō, -ere, attigī, attāctus, assign
attollō, -ere, —, —, lift
attonitus, -a, -um, astounded
attribuō, -ere, attribui, attribūtus, assign
attrītus, -a, -um, worn
auctor, -ōris, m., maker, author, authority, writer,
 voucher
auctōritās, -tātis, f., authority, influence, opinion
audācia, -ae, f., boldness
audāx, gen. audācis, bold, daring, courageous
audeō, -ēre, ausus, semideponēt, dare
audiō, -īre, -īvī, (-iī), -ītus, hear, hear of, listen (to)
auditiō, -ōnis, f., lecture
audītor, -ōris, m., hearer, auditor
auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātus, take away, remove
Aufidius, -dī, m., Aufidius
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, increase
Augustīnus, -ī, m., Augustine
Augustus, -a, -um, of Augustus; *as noun, m.*,
 Augustus, *the emperor*
aura, -ae, f., breeze, air
aurātus, -a, -um, covered with gold
Aurēlia, -ae, f., Aurelia
aureus, -a, -um, golden, made of gold; *as noun*,
m., gold piece
aurīga, -ae, m., charioteer
auris, -is, f., ear
Aurōra, -ae, f., morning, dawn
aurum, -ī, n., gold
auspicātus, -a, -um, auspicious
auspicia, -ōrum, n. pl., auspices
auspicor, 1, take the auspices
auster, -trī, m., south wind
aut, or; aut... aut, either . . . or
autem, conj. (*never first word*), however, but,
 moreover
autumnālis, -e, of autumn
autumus, -ī, m., autumn, fall

auxiliārius, -a, -um, auxiliary
auxilium, -lī, n., aid, help, assistance; *pl.*
 reinforcements
avārē, adv., greedily
avāritia, -ae, f., greed, avarice
avēna, -ae, f., reed
aveō, -ēre, —, —, long for, crave
aversor, 1, repulse, avoid
avertō, -ere, avertī, aversus, turn from, turn
 away, turn off, remove
āvia, -ōrum, n. pl., pathless regions
avidus, -a, -um, eager
avis, avis, f., bird
avītus, -a, -um, of a grandfather
āvocō, 1, call away *or* aside
avus, -ī, m., grandfather, ancestor
axis, -is, f., axle, chariot; globe

B

Babylōnius, -a, -um, Babylonian
bāca, -ae, f., fruit, berry
bacchor, 1, revel
Bacchus, -ī, m., Bacchus, *god of wine*
baculum, -ī, n., staff
Bagrada, -ae, m., Bagrada
Balbus, -ī, m., Balbus
balineum (balneum), -ī, n., bath
ballista, -ae, f., ballista
balsamum, -ī, n., fragrant gum, balsam
barba, -ae, f., beard
barbaria, -ae, f., savage people
barbaricus, -a, -um, barbaric
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign; savage, uncivilized,
 barbarous; *as noun, m.*, foreigner, barbarian
barbātus, -a, -um, bearded
Bardulis, -is, m., Bardulis, *king of Illyria*
basilica, -ae, f., basilica
Baucis, -idis (acc. -ida), f., Baucis (Bausis), *wife*
of Philemon
beātus, -a, -um, happy, blessed, rich
Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., the Belgians; the Belgian
 people
bellicōsus, -a, -um, warlike
bellō, 1, wage war

bellum, -ī, n., war
bellus, -a, -um, nice
bēlua, -ae, f., (wild) beast
bene, adv., well, well done, successfully; *comp.*
melius, better; *superl. optimē,* best, very good
beneficium, -cī, n., kindness, favor; honor, benefit
benevolentia, -ae, f., good will, kindness
benignē, thank you
benignitās, -tātis, f., kindness
benignus, -a, -um, kind
Berecynthius, -a, -um, Berecynthian
bēstia, -ae, f., beast
bibliothēca, -ae, f., library
bibō, -ere, bibī, —, drink
Bibulus, -ī, m., Bibulus
bicolor, -ōris, two-colored
bicornis, -e, two-pronged
Bilbilis, -is, f., Bilbilis, a town in Spain
bīnī, -ae, -a, two each, two
bipertītō, adv., in two divisions
bipēs, bipedis, two-footed
bis, adv., twice
Bithynia, -ae, f., Bithynia, a province in Asia Minor
blaesus, -a, -um, lisping
blanditiae, -ārum, f., fond words
blandulus, -a, -um, pleasing, charming
blandus, -a, -um, coaxing, caressing
bonitās, -tātis, f., goodness
bonus, -a, -um, good; *comp. melior, melius,*
 better; *superl. optimus, -a, -um,* best; *bona,*
-ōrum, n., goods, property
Boōtes, -ae, m., Bo-o'tēs, a constellation
bōs, bovis, m. and f., ox, cow; *pl. cattle (gen. pl.,*
boum or bovim)
bracchium, -chī, n., arm
brevī, adv., in a short time, soon
brevis, -e, short
brevitās, -tātis, f., brevity
breviter, adv., briefly
Britannia, -ae, f., Britain
Britannus, -ī, m., a Briton
brūma, -ae, f., winter
Brūtus, -ī, m., Brutus
bubulcus, -ī, m., ploughman

bustum, -ī, n., pyre; tomb
Byzantius, -a, -um, Byzantine, of Byzantium
(Constantinople)

C

C., abbreviation for Gāius
cacūmen, -minis, n., peak; tree top
Cadmus, -ī, m., Cadmus, founder of Thebes
cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsūrus, fall, die, be slain
cadūcus, -a, -um, falling, frail, perishable
Caecilius, -lī, m., Caecilius
caedēs, -is, f., slaughter, murder, bloodshed
caedō, -ere, cecidī, caesus, cut, beat
caelestis, -is, m. and f., heavenly being
caelicola, -ae, m., god
Caelius, -lī, m., Caelius
caelō, 1, carve, emboss
caelum, -ī, n., sky; weather
caerulus (-eus), -a, -um, blue
Caesar, -aris, m., Caesar; emperor
caespes, -itis, m., sod, earth
calamitās, -tātis, f., loss, misfortune, defeat, ruin
calamitōsus, -a, -um, unfortunate, disastrous
calamus, -ī, m., reed, reed-pipe
calcar, -āris, n., stimulus, goad
Calchas, -antis, m., Calchas, a mythological seer
calcō, 1, tread
caleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, be warm or hot
calidus, -a, -um, warm
calliditās, -tātis, f., shrewdness, cunning
callidus, -a, -um, cunning
calor, -ōris, m., heat
Calymnē, -ēs, f., Calym'ne, an island in the Aegean
Camillus, -ī, m., Camillus
campus, -ī, m., field, plain; the Campus Martius, a
park and place of assembly at Rome
candeō, -ēre, -uī, —, shine, be brilliant, glitter
candidātōrius, -a, -um, of a candidate
candidātus, -ī, m., candidate
candidus, -a, -um, white, clear
Canīnius, -nī, m., Caninius
canis, -is, m. and f., dog
canistrum, -ī, n., reed basket
Canius, -nī, m., Canius

canna, -ae, *f.*, reed
Cannēnsis, -e, of Cannae
canō, -ere, **cecinī**, **cantus**, sing. predict, play
canōrus, -a, -um, melodious, harmonious
cantō, 1, sing
cantus, -ūs, *m.*, song
cānus, -a, -um, white, hoary
capāx, *gen.* **capācis**, spacious; capable of
caper, **caprī**, *m.*, goat
capessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, strive to reach, undertake
capillus, -ī, *m.*, hair; *pl.*, locks, hair
capiō, -ere, **cēpī**, **captus**, take, seize, hold,
 captivate, capture; **cōnsilium capiō**, adopt a plan
Capitō, -ōnis, *m.*, Capito
Capitōlium, -lī, *n.*, the Capitol, *temple of Jupiter at Rome*; the Capitoline Hill
captiō, -ōnis, *f.*, deception; sophism; injury, loss
captīvus, -a, -um, captive; captured; *as noun, m.*, prisoner
captīvus, -ī, *m.*; **captīva**, -ae, *f.*, prisoner
captō, 1, capture, grasp, seize
caput, **capitis**, *n.*, head
Carbō, -ōnis, *m.*, Carbo
carcer, -eris, *m.*, prison
cardō, -dinis, *m.*, hinge
careō, -ēre, **caruī**, **caritūrus**, be without, lack, be deprived of
Cāria, -ae, *f.*, Caria, *a province in Asia Minor*
cāritās, -tātis, *f.*, high price; affection
carmen, -minis, *n.*, song, poem
carpō, -ere, **carpsī**, **carptus**, pick, seize; *of a road*, pursue, traverse
carrus, -ī, *m.*, cart, wagon
Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians
Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*, Carthage, *a city in Africa*;
Carthāgō Nova, New Carthage, *in Spain*
cārus, -a, -um, dear
casa, -ae, *f.*, house, cottage
Cassius, -sī, *m.*, Cassius
castellum, -ī, *n.*, fort
Castor, -oris, *m.*, Castor, *one of the twins*,
 with Pollux
castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, camp
castrēnsis, -e, of the camp, open

cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, fall, chance, event, misfortune, accident; case
catapulta, -ae, *f.*, catapult
catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain; constraint
cathedra, -ae, *f.*, chair, litter; professor's chair
Catilina, -ae, *m.*, Catiline, *the conspirator of 63 B.C.*
Catō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cato, *a Roman senator*
Catulus, -ī, *m.*, Catulus
Caucasus, -ī, *m.*, Caucasus, *a chain of mountains in Asia*
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, reason; case, pretext; position;
causā, for the sake of, for the purpose of
cautus, -a, -um, cautious
cavea, -ae, *f.*, cage, den; (*in a theater*) auditorium, spectators' seats
caveō, -ēre, **cāvī**, **cautūrus**, beware (of), take care
cavus, -a, -um, hollow
-ce, (*enclitic*), here, this, that
cēdō, -ere, **cessī**, **cessūrus**, go away, retreat, retire, yield
celeber, -bris, -bre, populous, crowded
celebritās, -tātis, *f.*, throng; renown
celebrō, 1, throng, celebrate, attend, honor
celer, **celeris**, **celere**, swift
celeritās, -tātis, *f.*, speed, swiftness, quickness
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly, swiftly
cella, -ae, *f.*, storeroom; closet
cēlō, 1, hide, keep secret
celsus, -a, -um, high
Celtae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, Celts, *a people of Gaul*
cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner
cēnō, 1, dine
cēnsēō, -ēre, **cēnsuī**, **cēnsus**, enroll; think; decree
cēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, census
cēnsor, -ōris, *m.*, censor
cēnsūra, -ae, *f.*, censorship
cēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, census
centum, hundred
centumvirī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the hundred men, *a special jury for important civil suits*
cēnula, -ae, *f.*, little dinner
Cēpārius, -rī, *m.*, Ceparius
cēra, -ae, *f.*, wax

cērātus, -a, -um, waxed
 Cereālis, -e, of Ceres; Cereālia, -ium, *n. pl.*, the festival of Ceres
 Cerēs, Cereris, *f.*, Ceres, *goddess of agriculture*
 cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, separate, discern, see
 certāmen, -minis, *n.*, contest
 certātīm, *adv.* earnestly, eagerly
 certātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, strife, dispute
 certē, *adv.*, certainly
 certō, 1, struggle
 certus, -a, -um, fixed, certain, sure; certiōrem facere, inform (him); certior fierī, be informed
 cerva, -ae, *f.*, deer
 cervīx, -īcis, *f.*, neck; *pl.*, shoulders
 cessō, 1, delay, stop, be idle
 cēterī, -ae, -a, the other(s), the rest; everything else
 Cethēgus, -ī, *m.*, Cethegus
 chorus, -ī, *m.*, choral dance; choir
 Christiānus, -a, -um, *adj. and n.*, Christian
 Chrīstus, -ī, *m.*, Christ
 cibus, -ī, *m.*, food
 cicātrix, -īcis, *m.*, scar
 cicer, -eris, *n.*, chickpea
 Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*, Cicero (Marcus Tullius, *the orator*; Quintus, *his brother*; Marcus, *his son*)
 cingō, -ere, cīnxī, cīnctus, surround; crown
 cinis, cineris, *m.*, ashes
 circā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, around, about
 Circē, -ae, *f.*, Circe, *a sorceress*
 circum, *prep. w. acc.*, about, around
 circumagō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, drive or turn around
 circumcīsus, -a, -um, cut off, steep, inaccessible
 circumclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, surround
 circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datus, put around, surround (with)
 circumeō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go around
 circumferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bear or spread around, cast about
 circumscribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, bound, circumscribe
 circumspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look around
 circumstō, -āre, -stetī, —, stand around
 circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventus, surround

circus, -ī, *m.*, circle, circus, *esp. the Circus Maximus at Rome*
 cithara, -ae, *f.*, cithara, lyre
 citus, -a, -um, swift; citō, quickly, speedily
 cīvīlis, -e, civil
 cīvīs, cīvīs, *m. and f.*, citizen
 cīvītās, -tātis, *f.*, citizenship, state; city
 clam, *adv.*, secretly
 clāmitō, 1, keep shouting
 clāmō, 1, noise, shout, cry out
 clāmor, -ōris, *m.*, shout(ing), noise, uproar; applause
 clandestīnus, -a, -um, secret
 clārē, *adv.*, clearly
 clāritās, -tātis, *f.*, fame
 Claros, -ī, *f.*, Claros
 clārus, -a, -um, clear, brilliant, illustrious, loud, famous
 classis, -is, *f.*, class, fleet
 Claudius, -dī, *m.*, Claudius, *Roman emperor*
 claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, close, shut, cut off, bar
 clāva, -ae, *f.*, rough stick, club
 clāvus, -ī, *m.*, nail; rudder, helm
 clēmēns, *gen. -entis*, mild, gentle, merciful
 clēmenter, *adv.*, gently, with forbearance
 clēmentia, -ae, *f.*, mercy
 clīvus, -ī, *m.*, slope, hillside
 clūnis, -is, *m. and f.*, buttock, haunch
 Cn., *abbreviation for Gnaeus*, -ī, *m.*, Roman praenōmen
 coalēscō, -ere, -aluī, -alitus, grow together
 coarguō, -ere, -uī, —, make known, betray
 coartō, 1, compress, confine; abridge, shorten
 coccum, -ī, *n.*, berry (*yielding a scarlet dye*)
 codicillī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, writing tablet, petition, will
 coeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, come together, assemble, unite
 coepī, coepisse, coeptus (*used only in perfect tenses*), have begun, began
 coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, check, repress
 coetus, -ūs, *m.*, meeting
 cōgitātē, *adv.*, thoughtfully
 cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, thought, meditation
 cōgitō, 1, think (of), consider, plan
 cognātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, kinship

cognātus, -ī, *m.*, kinsman
cognitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, (learning to know), trial, acquaintance
cognitor, -ōris, *m.*, supporter
cognōmen, -minis, *n.*, nickname, surname
cognōscō, -ere, **cognōvī**, **cognitus**, become acquainted with, learn; recognize, note; *perf.*, have learned, know, understand
cōgō, -ere, **cōēgī**, **cōāctus**, (drive together), assemble; force, compel, collect
cohaereō, -ēre, **cohaesī**, **cohaesus**, cling together, be connected with
cohērēs, -ēdis, *m. and f.*, fellow heir
cohors, **cohortis**, *f.*, cohort
cohortātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, encouragement
cohortor, 1, urge
collābor, -lābī, -lāpsus, fall in ruin, sink down
collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague
collēgium, -gī, *n.*, company
colligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, collect, infer
collis, -is, *m.*, hill
collocō, 1, put, establish, set up
colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, talk (with), hold a conference
collum, -ī, *n.*, neck
colō, -ere, **coluī**, **cultus**, worship, cultivate, till, inhabit, attend, cherish, honor
colōnia, -ae, *f.*, colony
colōnus, -ī, *m.*, settler, colonist
color, -ōris, *m.*, color
Colossēum, -ī, *n.*, the Colosseum, *an amphitheater at Rome*
columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon
columna, -ae, *f.*, pillar, column
coma, -ae, *f.*, hair
comes, -itis, *m.*, companion
cōmitās, -tātis, *f.*, courtesy, kindness, friendliness
comitātus, -ūs, *m.*, escort, company
cōmiter, *adv.*, affably
comitium, -tī, *n.*, comitium, *an assembly place in Rome: pl.*, election, assembly
comitō, **comitor**, 1, accompany
commeminī, -isse, remember
commemorātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, remembrance, mention

commendātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, recommendation
commendō, 1, entrust, commend, approve
commercium, -cī, *n.*, trade, commerce; fellowship
comminuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, weaken
committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, join together, commit, start, entrust; **proelium committō**, begin battle
commodē, *adv.*, suitably
commodus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, favorable, convenient; *as noun, n.*, advantage
commoror, 1, linger, remain
commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, disturb, move
commūnis, -e, common
commūnitās, -tātis, *f.*, fellowship
commūniter, *adv.*, in general
commūtō, 1, change, alter
cōmō, -ere, **cōmpsī**, **cōmptus**, comb, adorn
comoedus, -ī, *m.*, comedian, comic actor
comparātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, comparison
comparō, 1, get ready, prepare; collect, provide; constitute; compare
comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertus, find out, discover
compescō, -ere, -pescuī, —, check
competitor, -ōris, *m.*, rival, competitor
complector, -plectī, -plexus, embrace, include
complexus, -ūs, *m.*, embrace
complūrēs, -a (-ia), several, many
compōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, (put together), compose, settle, arrange; bury
compos, -potis, master of, possessing
compositiō, -ōnis, *f.*, agreement
comprehendō, (**comprēndō**), -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, seize, catch, detect, understand; arrest
comprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus, press together, restrain, repress
comprobō, 1, approve
compugnō, 1, fight together
computō, 1, sum up, compute; count
cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, attempt
concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, give way, retire, grant
concidō, -ere, -cidī, —, fall (together), collapse
conciliō, 1, win (over)
concilium, -lī, *n.*, meeting, council

concinnō , 1, cause, produce, make fit	cōnfugiō , -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee for refuge
concupiō , -ere, cēpī, -ceptus, take up, receive, utter	congelō , 1, freeze; stiffen
concitō , 1, arouse	congerō , -ere, -gessī, -gestus, bring together, collect
conclāmō , 1, cry out, exclaim, shout	concredior , -ī, -gressus, meet
conclāve , -is, <i>n.</i> , room, chamber	congregābilis , -e, easily brought together, social
concordia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , harmony, concord	congregātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , union, society, association
concordō , 1, agree, be consistent	congregō , 1, collect; <i>pass.</i> , assemble
concors , <i>gen.</i> -cordis, in harmony	congruō , -ere, -uī, —, coincide, agree, suit, accord
concupiscō , -ere, -cupīvī, -ītus, long (for), desire, covet	congruus , -a, -um, suitable
concurrō , -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run, gather	coniciō , -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw, aim
concursum , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , running together, gathering, throng	coniectūra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , guess
concutiō , -ere, -cussī, -cussus, strike together, shake (up)	coniūctiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , association
condemnō , 1, condemn	coniungō , -ere, -iūnxī, -iūctus, join with, connect
condiciō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , condition, terms	coniūnx , -iugis, <i>m. and f.</i> , husband, wife
condītus , -a, -um, seasoned; ornamented	coniūrātī , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , conspirators
condō , -ere, -didī, -ditus, found, establish; bring to an end; bury	coniūratiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , conspiracy
condūco , -ere, -duxī, -ductus, hire, rent, be of help	cōnor , 1, attempt, try, endeavor
conexus , -a, -um, adjoining	conquiēscō , -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētus, find rest
cōnfābulor , 1, talk	conquīrō , -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītus, seek out, hunt up, collect
cōnferō , cōnferre, contulī, collātus, bring together, join, compare, collect; postpone; mē conferō , go, proceed	cōnscelerātus , -a, -um, wicked
cōnfertus , -a, -um, crowded, compact, full	cōnscendō , -ere, -scendī, -scēnsus, climb, mount, scale, embark
cōnfessiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , confession	cōnscientia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , consciousness, conscience
cōnfestim , <i>adv.</i> , at once	cōnscius , -cī, <i>m.</i> , witness
cōnficiō , -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, do up, complete, exhaust, destroy	cōnscriptī , patrēs cōnscriptī, senators
cōnfidō , -ere, cōnfisus, <i>semideponent</i> , trust, be confident, rely on, have confidence (in)	cōnsecrō , 1, dedicate
cōnfirmō , 1, strengthen, assure, establish, declare, encourage, make firm	cōnsenēscō , -ere, -senuī, —, grow old together
cōnfiteor , -ērī, cōnfessus, confess, admit	cōnsēnsiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , agreement
cōnflagrō , 1, be consumed (<i>by fire</i>)	cōnsēnsus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , agreement
cōnflictiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , combat	cōnsentiō , -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, agree
cōnflitor , 1, struggle, conflict, contend	cōnsequenter , <i>adv.</i> , then
cōnflō , 1, blow up, kindle, excite; compose	cōnsequor , -ī, cōnsecūtus, follow (up), pursue; result; obtain, accomplish
cōnfluō , -ere, -flūxī, -flūxus, flock (together)	cōnserō , -ere, -sēvī, -situs, plant
cōnfodiō , -ere, -fōdī, -fossus, stab	cōnserō , -ere, -seruī, -sertus, bind, join, connect
cōnfōrmō , 1, mold, train	cōnservō , 1, keep, save, maintain, preserve
cōnfringō , -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus, shatter, destroy	cōnservus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , fellow slave
	cōnsiderō , 1, consider
	cōnsidō , -ere, -sēdī, -sessūrus, sit down, encamp, sink
	cōnsilium , -lī, <i>n.</i> , plan, purpose, prudence, advice, wisdom; council, counsel

cōsistō, -ere, cōstitī, cōstitūrus, stop, stand still
 cōsociātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, union, association
 cōsōlātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, consolation, comfort
 cōsōlor, 1. comfort
 cōspectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight
 cōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, catch sight of,
 look upon, see
 cōspicor, 1. catch sight of
 cōstāns, *gen.* -antis, firm
 cōstanter, *adv.*, firmly, consistently
 cōstantia, -ae, *f.*, firmness
 Cōstantia, -ae, *f.*, Constance
 cōstituō, -ere, -stitūī, -stitūrus, put, establish,
 settle; appoint, create; determine, decide,
 agree upon
 cōstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātūrus, stand together,
 agree; cōstat, it is evident, it is agreed
 cōstringō, -ere, -strīnxī, -strictus, bind, hold
 in check
 cōstrūctiō, -ōnis, *f.*, construction
 cōstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctus, heap together;
 pile up; erect
 cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus, become
 accustomed; *perfect*, be accustomed
 cōnsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, custom, habit, practice;
 intimacy
 cōnsul, -ulis, *m.*, consul, *the highest Roman*
official
 cōsulāris, -e, consular, of consular rank; *as noun*,
m., ex-consul, man of consular rank
 cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.*, consulship
 cōsulō, -ere, -sulūī, -sultus, consider, consult,
 put the question; look out for
 cōsultātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, consultation
 cōsultum, -ī, *n.*, decree
 cōsummō, 1. complete
 cōsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, take
 (wholly), spend; destroy, consume
 cōsurgō, -ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctūrus, rise
 together
 cōtāctus, -ūs, *m.*, touch
 cōtāgiō, -ōnis, *f.*, touch, infection
 cōtāminō, 1. stain, defile
 cōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, cover

contemnō, -ere, -temp̄sī, -temptus, despise,
 disregard
 contemptus, -ūs, *m.*, contempt, scorn, disgrace
 contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus, contend,
 struggle, hasten, stretch
 contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentus, hold (together), contain
 contentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, struggle, dispute
 contentus, -a, -um, satisfied, content
 conterminus, -a, -um, adjoining, neighboring
 conterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītus, waste
 conterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, terrify
 conticēscō, -ere, -uī, —, be silent, be still
 contiguus, -a, -um, adjoining
 continēns, *gen.* -entis, temperate, self-restrained;
as noun, f., the mainland
 continentia, -ae, *f.*, self-control
 contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, bound; hold fast;
 restrain; comprise
 contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctus, touch, reach; happen
 continuō, 1. prolong
 continuō, *adv.*, continuously
 continuus, -a, -um, successive
 contiō, -ōnis, *f.*, assembly, meeting
 cōtiōnātor, -ōris, *m.*, demagogue
 contrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, against, contrary to,
 opposite; to the other side
 contrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, draw together;
 contract
 contrārius, -a, -um, opposite, opposed
 contrōversia, -ae, *f.*, dispute
 contubernālis, -is, *m. and f.*, companion, mate
 contubernium, -nī, *n.*, dwelling together; household
 contumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse
 contumēliōsus, -a, -um, abusive, insulting
 cōnūbium, -bī, *n.*, marriage
 convalēscō, -ere, -valuī, —, recover from an
 illness, regain health
 convellō, -ere, -vellī, -vulsus, tear away
 conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come together,
 assemble, meet; be suited to; *impers.*, it is fitting
 or agreed
 conventum, -ī, *n.*, agreement
 conventus, -ūs, *m.*, assembly
 convertō, -ere, -vertī, -versus, turn, change

convīcium, -cī, <i>n.</i> , violent reproach, wrangling	crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, believe, suppose; entrust (<i>w. dat.</i>)
convīctus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , (living together), intimacy	crēdulus, -a, -um, credulous, unsuspecting, trustful
convīva, -ae, <i>m. and f.</i> , table companion, guest	creō, 1, make, create
convīvium, -vī, <i>n.</i> , feast, banquet	crepitus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , sound
convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātus, 1, call together	crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, grow, increase
cooperiō, -īre, cooperuī, coopertus, overwhelm	Crēta, -ae, <i>f.</i> , (<i>acc. Crētan</i>), Crete, an island south of Greece
cooperator, 1, work with or together, unite	crīmen, -minis, <i>n.</i> , accusation, charge, crime
cōpia, -ae, <i>f.</i> , supply, abundance; fluency; <i>pl.</i> , resources, troops, forces	crīminor, 1, charge
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, well-supplied, plentiful, rich	crīnis, -is, <i>m.</i> , hair
coquō, -ere, coxī, coctus, cook, burn	Crotōniēnsis, -e, Crotonian, of Croton (<i>a city in southern Italy</i>)
cor, cordis, <i>n.</i> , heart	cruciātus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , torture
Corduba, -ae, <i>f.</i> , Cor'dova, a city in Spain	cruciō, 1, torture; afflict
Corinthius, -a, -um, Corinthian	crūdēlis, -e, cruel
Corinthus, -ī, <i>f.</i> , Corinth, a city in Greece	crūdēliter, <i>adv.</i> , cruelly
Cornēlius, -lī, <i>m.</i> , Cornelius	crūdēlitās, -tātis, <i>f.</i> , cruelty
cornū, -ūs, <i>n.</i> , horn; wing (<i>of an army</i>), flank, tip (<i>of the moon</i>)	cruentus, -a, -um, bloody
corōna, -ae, <i>f.</i> , wreath, crown	cruentātus, -a, -um, bloody
corōnō, 1, crown	cruor, cruōris, <i>m.</i> , blood
corporālis, -e, corporeal	crūs, crūris, <i>n.</i> , leg
corpus, -poris, <i>n.</i> , body	crux, crucis, <i>f.</i> , cross
corpusculum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , a little body, dear person	cubiculum, -ī, <i>n.</i> , bedroom, lounging room
corrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus, correct	cubō, -āre, -uī, -itūrus, lie down; sleep
corrōborō, 1, strengthen	culpa, -ae, <i>f.</i> , fault, guilt
corrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, corrupt, falsify; waste	cultūra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , cultivation; agrī cultūra, agriculture
corruō, -ere, -ruī, —, fall together	cultus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , culture
corruptēla, -ae, <i>f.</i> , corruption	cum, <i>prep. w. abl.</i> , with
corruptiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , bribery, illness	cum, <i>conj.</i> , when, while, since, although; cum... tum, not only . . . but also
cortex, -ticis, <i>m. and f.</i> , bark, shell, hull	cumulō, 1, heap up, crown
Corvīnus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Corvinus	cumulus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , heap, increase
cotidiānus, -a, -um, daily	cūctanter, <i>adv.</i> , reluctantly
cotidiē, <i>adv.</i> , daily	cūctātiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , hesitancy, uncertainty
crās, tomorrow	cūctus, -a, -um, all together, all
Crassus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Crassus	cupiditās, -tātis, <i>f.</i> , desire, greed
crātēr, -is, <i>m.</i> , large bowl	cupidō, -dinis, <i>f.</i> , desire, longing; love
Cratippus, -ī, <i>m.</i> , Cratippus	cupidus, -a, -um, eager
Creātor, -oris, <i>m.</i> , the Creator	cupiō, -ere, cupivī, cupītus, desire, be eager, wish, want
creātūra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , creation, act of creation	cūr, <i>adv.</i> , why
crēber, -bra, -brum, thick, frequent, numerous	
crēdibilis, -e, credible	
crēditor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , creditor	

cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, concern, anxiety; (**cum**) **magnā cūrā**, very carefully
cūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, care; cure
cūrātor, -ōris, *m.*, manager, commissioner, guardian
cūria, -ae, *f.*, curia, senate house
cūriōsē, *adv.*, carefully
Curius, -rī, *m.*, Curius
cūrō, 1, care for, look after; take care, arrange, cause (*to be done*), cure
curriculum, -ī, *n.*, course
currō, -ere, **cucurrī**, **cursūrus**, run; fly
currus, -ūs, *m.*, chariot
cursim, *adv.*, quickly, speedily
cursitō, -āre, —, —, run constantly
cursō, 1, run around
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running; race, way, voyage, course, career
curvāmen, -minis, *n.*, curve
curvō, 1, curve
cuspis, -idis, *f.*, point; sting
custōdia, -ae, *f.*, guard, custody, protection, prison
custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, guard, watch
custōs, -ōdis, *m.*, guard, custodian, parent
Cynthus, -ī, *m.*, Cynthus, *a mountain on Delos*

D

Dalmatia, -ae, *f.*, Dalmatia, *a region on the eastern shore of the Adriatic*
Damasichthōn, -onis, *m.*, Damasich'thon, *one of Niobe's sons*
Damasippus, -ī, *m.*, Damasip'pus
damnātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, conviction
damnō, 1, condemn
damnōsus, -a, -um, harmful
damnum, -ī, *n.*, loss; fine, penalty; curse
Daphnē, -ēs, *f.*, Daphne, *daughter of the river-god Peneus*
daps, **dapis**, *f.*, meal, feast; food
Daunius, -a, -um, Daunian, Apulian
dē, *prep. w. abl.*, from, down from, concerning, about, for, during
dea, -ae, *f.*, goddess
deambulō, -āre, —, —, take a walk

dēbeō, -ēre, **dēbuī**, **dēbitus**, ought, owe, should, must; *pass.*, be due
dēbilis, -e, weak, helpless
dēbilitō, 1, weaken
dēbitor, -ōris, *m.*, debtor
dēcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, depart
decem, ten
decenter, *adv.*, becomingly, properly
dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, decide, decree, vote (for)
dēcerpō, -ere, -cerpsī, -cerptus, pluck
decet, -ēre, **decuit**, *impers.*, becomes, befits
Deciānus, -ī, *m.*, Decianus
decimus, -a, -um, tenth; **Decimus**, -ī, *m.*, Decimus
Decius, -ci, *m.*, Decius
dēclamatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, oratorical exercise, declamation
dēclāmitō, 1, declaim
dēclārō, 1, show, declare
dēclīnatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, bending aside, avoidance
decor, -ōris, *m.*, charm, beauty
decorō, 1, adorn, honor, embellish
decōrus, -a, -um, handsome, proper
dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, decree
decurrō, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus, run (down), hasten
decus, **decoris**, *n.*, honor
dēdecus, -coris, *n.*, disgrace, vice
dēdicō, 1, dedicate
dēdō, -ere, **dēdidī**, **dēditus**, hand over, surrender, devote
dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead (away)
dēfatīgō, 1, wear out
dēfendō, -ere, **dēfendī**, **dēfēnsus**, defend
dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, defense
dēferō, **dēferre**, **dētulī**, **dēlātus**, bring, report
dēfessus, -a, -um, wearied
dēficiō, -ere, **dēfēcī**, **dēfectus**, fail, revolt
dēfigō, -ere, **dēfixī**, **dēfixus**, fix, plunge
dēfiniō, -īre, **dēfinīvī**, **dēfinītus**, limit, fix, appoint, define
dēfinītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, definition
dēflagrō, 1, burn down

dēfleō, -ēre, dēflēvī, dēflētus, weep over
dēfluō, -ere, dēflūxī, dēflūxus, flow *or* sink down
dēfraudō, 1, cheat out of
dēgerō, -ere, —, —, carry off
dēgō, -ere, dēgī, —, spend, pass
dēgustō, 1, taste
dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, dēiectus, throw *or* cast down,
push aside
dēierō, dēiūrō, 1, swear
dein, deinde, *adv.*, then, next
deinceps, *adv.*, next
Deirī, -ōrum, *a tribe of the Angles*
dēlabor, -ī, dēlāpsus, fall, sink
dēlectātiō, -ōnis, f., delight
dēlecto, 1, please, charm, delight in
dēlēniō, -īre, dēlēnīvī, dēlēnītus, allay, charm
dēleō, -ēre, dēlēvī, dēlētus, blot out, destroy
dēliberātiō, -ōnis, f., deliberation, question
dēliberō, 1, think about, consider
dēlicātus, -a, -um, effeminate
dēliciae, -ārum, f. pl., delight, pleasure
dēligō, 1, tie up
dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus, select, choose
dēlinquō, -ere, dēliquī, dēlictus, fail, do wrong
dēlīrō, 1, be crazy, rave
Dēlius, -a, -um, Delian, of Delos
Dēlos, -ī, f., Delos, *an island in the Aegean*
Delphicus, -a, -um, Delphic, of Delphi, *a famous*
Greek oracle
dēlūbrum, -ī, n., shrine
dēmēns, gen. -entis, mad
dēmēnter, adv., foolishly
dēmigro, 1, go off, depart
dēminūtiō, -ōnis, f., sacrifice, loss
dēmīssus, -a, -um, downcast; w. **crīne**, disheveled
dēmīttō, -ere, dēmīsī, dēmīssus, let down
dēmō, -ere, dēmīpsī, dēmīptus, take away
dēmōnstrō, 1, point out, show
dēmum, adv., at length, at last
dēnegō, 1, deny
dēnique, adv., finally, after all, in short
dēns, dentis, m., tooth
dēnūntiō, 1, threaten
dēnuō, adv., once more, again

dēpellō, -ere, dēpulī, depulsus, drive from, avert,
remove, overthrow
dēplōrō, 1, lament, deplore
dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus, put down, lay
aside, put aside; quench
dēpositum, -ī, n., deposit, loan
dēprāvō, 1, corrupt, tamper with
dēprecōr, 1, avert by prayer
dēprendō, -ere, dēprendī, dēprēnsus, seize,
catch; perceive
dēprimō, -ere, dēpressī, dēpressus, press
down, sink
dērādō, -ere, dērāsī, dērāsus, scrape off
dērelinquō, -ere, dēreliquī, dērelictus, abandon,
forsake
dērideō, -ēre, dērīsī, dērīsus, laugh at, mock
dērigēscō, -ere, dēriguī, —, become rigid
dēscendō, -ere, dēscendī, dēscēnsus, descend,
resort
dēserō, -ere, dēseruī, dēsertus, desert
dēsertus, -a, -um, lonely
dēsideō, -ēre, dēsēdī, dēsessūrus, be idle
dēsīderium, -rī, n., longing, desire
dēsīderō, 1, desire, miss
dēsīdia, -ae, f., idleness
dēsīgnō, 1, mark out, elect, choose
dēsīliō, -īre, dēsīluī, dēsultūrus, jump down,
dismount
dēsīnō, -ere, dēsīī, dēsītus, cease
dēsīpiō, -ere, dēsīpuī, —, be silly *or* foolish
dēsīstō, -ere, dēsītī, dēsītus, stand away, cease
dēsōlō, 1, leave alone, desert
dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f., hopelessness, despair
dēspērō, 1, despair (of)
dēspiciō, -ere, dēspexī, dēspectus, look down on,
despise
dēspondeō, -ēre, dēspondī, dēsponsus, promise,
betroth
dēstinō, 1, bind; intend, determine
dēstringō, -ere, dēstrīnxī, dēstrictus, unsheath
dēstruō, -ere, destrūxī, dēstrūctus, tear down,
destroy
dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, fail, be lacking
dētegō, -ere, dētēxī, dētēctus, uncover

dēterō, –ere, dētrīvī, dētrītus, wear away, weaken
dēterreō, –ēre, dēterruī, dēterritus, deter
dētestor, 1, curse, denounce, deprecate
dētimeō, –ēre, dētinuī, dētentus, hold
dētrahō, –ere, dētrāxī, dētrāctus, draw *or* take
from, pull off, remove, withdraw
dētrimentum, –ī, *n.*, loss, defeat
deūrō, –ere, deussī, deustus, burn up
deus, –ī, *m.*, god; *nom. pl.*, diī *or* dī
dēvinciō, –īre, dēvinxī, dēvinctus, bind, unite
dēvorō, 1, devour, swallow
dēvoveō, –ēre, dēvōvī, dēvōtus, vow, dedicate;
curse
dexter, –tra (–tera), –trum (–terum), right; *comp.*
dexterior, –ius, right; *as noun, f.*, right hand
diabolus, –ī, *m.*, devil
dialecticus, –a, –um, dialectic; *as noun, m.*,
logician
Diāna, –ae, *f.*, Diana, *goddess of hunting*
Diaulus, –ī, Diaulus
diciō, –ōnis, *f.*, power
dicō, –ere, dīxī, dictus, say, speak, tell, call
dictātor, –ōris, *m.*, dictator
dictātūra, –ae, *f.*, dictatorship
dictō, 1, dictate
dictum, –ī, *n.*, word
diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*, day
differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, postpone: differ
difficilis, –e, difficult, hard
difficultās, –tātis, *f.*, difficulty, trouble
diffidō, –ere, –fīsus, *semideponent*, mistrust
diffundō, –ere, –fūdī, –fūsus, spread out
digerō, –ere, dīgessī, dīgestus, force apart, separate
digitus, –ī, *m.*, finger
dignitās, –tātis, *f.*, dignity
dignus, –a, –um, worthy
dīiūdicō, 1, decide, settle
dīiungō, –ere, dīiūnxī, dīiūnctus, separate
dīlēctus, –ūs, *m.*, choice
diligēns, *gen. –entis*, careful, scrupulous
diligenter, *adv.*, carefully
diligentia, –ae, *f.*, care, diligence
diligō, –ere, dīlexī, dīlectus, single out, esteem, love
dīlūcēscō, –ere, dīlūxī, —, grow light

dīmētiōr, –īrī, dīmēnsus, measure, lay out
dīmicātiō, –ōnis, *f.*, struggle
dīmicō, 1, fight, contend, struggle
dīmidius, –a, –um, half
dīminūtiō, –ōnis, *f.*, decrease
dīmīttō, –ere, dīmīsī, dīmīssus, let go, lose,
abandon, send away, dismiss
dīmōveō, –ēre, dīmōvī, dīmōtus, move apart, stir
diocēsis, –is, *f.*, diocese (*district ruled by a bishop*)
dīrēctus, –a, –um, straight
dīreptiō, –ōnis, *f.*, plundering, loot
dīreptor, –ōris, *m.*, plunderer
dirimō, –ere, dirēmī, dirēmtus, break off
dīripiō, –ere, dīripuī, dirēptus, plunder
dīruō, –ere, dīruī, dīrutus, tear down
dīrus, –a, –um, awful
discēdō, –ere, –cessī, –cessūrus, go away, depart
discernō, –ere, –crēvī, crētus, set apart,
distinguish, discern
discerpō, –ere, –cerpsī, –cerptus, tear in pieces
discessus, –ūs, *m.*, departure
disciplīna, –ae, *f.*, training, instruction, discipline
discipulus, –ī, *m.*, discipula, –ae, *f.*, student
learner, pupil, disciple, follower
discō, –ere, didicī, —, learn
discordia, –ae, *f.*, discord
discrībō, –ere, discrīpsī, discrīptus, assign
discrīmen, –minis, *n.*, difference, decision, danger,
crisis
discrīminō, 1, divide, separate
dispār, *gen. –paris*, unequal
dispēnsō, 1, distribute
dispertiō, –īre, –īvī, –ītus, distribute
dispiciō, –ere, dispexī, dispectus, consider
dispōnō, –ere, –posuī, –positus, place here and
there, arrange, dispose
disputō, 1, discuss, argue
disseminō, 1, spread abroad
dissēnsiō, –ōnis, *f.*, quarrel
dissentiō, –īre, –sēnsī, –sēnsus, disagree, differ
disserō, –ēre, disseruī, disertus, examine,
discuss, discourse
dissideō, –ēre, –sēdī, –sessus, disagree
dissimilis, –e, unlike

dissimulanter, *adv.*, secretly
 dissimulātor, -ōris, *m.*, dissembler
 dissimulō, 1. conceal (the truth), deny
 dissolūtus, -a, -um, lax, remiss
 dissolvō, -ere, -solvī, -solūtus, solve
 distinguō, -ere, -tīnxī, -tīnctus, distinguish
 distō, -āre, —, —, stand apart, be distant,
 be different
 distrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctus, draw away
 distribuō, -ere, -tribuī, -tribūtus, distribute, assign
 distringō, -ere, -distrīnxī, districtus, distract the
 attention
 diū, *adv.*, for a long time, long; *comp.* diūtius;
 superl. diūtissimē
 diūtinus, -a, -um, long, of long duration
 diūturnus, -a, -um, long-lasting
 dīvello, -ere, dīvellī, dīvulsus, tear away, rend,
 separate
 dīversus, -a, -um, opposite, different, widely
 separated
 dīves, *gen.* dīvitīs, rich
 dīvidō, -ere, dīvisī, dīvisus, divide, extend
 dīvīnitus, *adv.*, providentially
 dīvīnus, -a, -um, divine, godlike
 dīvitiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, riches
 dīvus, -a, -um, divine; *as noun, m.*, god, deity
 dō, dare, dedī, datus, give, put; poenam dō, pay
 the penalty
 doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus, teach, show
 doctor, -ōris, *m.*, teacher
 doctrīna, -ae, *f.*, teaching, learning
 doctus, -a, -um, learned, skilled
 Dolābella, -ae, *m.*, Dolabella
 doleō, -ēre, doluī, dolitūrus, suffer, grieve, deplore
 dolor, -ōris, *m.*, pain, grief, grievance
 dolus, -ī, *m.*, trick, snare
 domesticus, -a, -um, private, domestic
 domicilium, -lī, *n.*, home, residence
 domina, -ae, *f.*, mistress
 dominātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mastery, rule
 dominātus, -ūs, *m.*, mastery
 dominicus, -a, -um, of a lord or master; the Lord's
 dominor, 1. rule, be master

dominus, -ī, *m.*, master, owner; *voc.*, Sir;
 Dominus, the Lord
 Domitiānus, -ī, *m.*, Domitian, a Roman emperor
 Domitius, -tī, *m.*, Domitius
 domō, -āre, -uī, -itus, tame
 domus, -ūs, *f.*, house, home; household; *loc.* domī,
 at home
 dōnec, *conj.*, until, as long as
 dōnō, 1. give, present
 dōnum, -ī, *n.*, gift
 dormiō, -īre, -īvī, -itus, sleep
 dormītōrius, -a, -um, for sleeping
 dōs, dōtis, *f.*, dowry, endowment, talent
 Drūsus, -ī, *m.*, Drusus
 dubitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, doubt
 dubitō, 1. hesitate, doubt, be in doubt
 dubius, -a, -um, doubtful, uncertain
 ducātus, -ūs, *m.*, military leadership, command
 dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead, draw, attract,
 construct, draw out, consider
 ductus, -ūs, *m.*, command, motion
 dūdum, *adv.*, for a long time
 dulcēdō, -dinis, *f.*, sweetness, charm
 dulcis, -e, sweet
 dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; provided that (*often*
 w. modo)
 dūmus, -ī, *m.*, thorns
 duo, -ae, -o, two
 duodecim, twelve
 dupliciter, *adv.*, doubly
 duplicō, 1. double
 dūrē, *adv.*, harshly
 dūrō, 1. last, remain
 dūrus, -a, -um, hard, cruel, insensible, harsh
 dux, ducis, *m.*, leader, general

E

ē, ex, *prep.* w. *abl.*, from, out of, of, after, out from,
 in accordance with
 ea, she (*nom.*)
 ebrius, -a, -um, full, drunk
 ebur, -oris, *n.*, ivory
 eburneus, -a, -um; eburnus, -a, -um, of ivory
 ēcastor! *interj.*, by Castor! (*used by women*)

ecce! *interj.*, look here!
 ecclēsia, -ae, *f.*, church
 edepol! *interj.*, by Pollux!
 ēdicō, -ere, ēdixī, ēdictus, declare
 ēdictum, -ī, *n.*, edict
 ēdiscō, -ere, ēdidicī, —, learn (thoroughly)
 ēditus, -a, -um, lofty
 ēdō, -ere, ēdidī, ēditus, publish, utter
 ēducō, 1, bring up
 ēdūcō, -ere, ēdūxī, ēductus, lead out *or* forth,
 draw out
 efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, carry out; bring;
 exalt, extol
 efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus, make (out), cause,
 accomplish, produce, bring about, complete
 effigiēs, -ēī, *f.*, copy
 effluō, -ere, efflūxī, —, flow out; escape
 effodiō, -ere, effōdī, effossus, dig up
 effrēnātus, -a, -um, unbridled, unrestrained
 effugiō, -ere, effūgī, effugitūrus, escape
 effugium, -gī, *n.*, escape
 effundō, -ere, effūdī, effusus, pour out
 egeō, egēre, eguī, —, need, be in need of, lack
 egestās, -tātis, *f.*, poverty
 ego, meī, I; egomet, I myself
 ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus, go *or* march out, go,
 leave
 ēgregius, -a, -um, excellent, distinguished
 ei! *interj.*, Oh!
 ēiaculor, 1, shoot *or* spurt out
 ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, throw out
 eius, his, her
 ēlābor, ēlābī, ēlāpsus, slip away, escape
 ēlabōrō, 1, work hard
 ēlegāns, *gen.* -antis, choice
 ēleganter, *adv.*, tastefully, finely, elegantly
 elephantus, -ī, *m.*, elephant
 ēlūdō, -ere, ēlīsī, ēlīsus, tear out; shatter, destroy
 ēligō, -ere, ēlēgī, ēlēctus, pick out, select
 ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*, eloquence
 ēloquium, -ī, *n.*, speech, utterance, eloquence
 ēlūdō, -ere, ēlūsī, ēlūsus, escape; mock, make
 sport of
 ēluō, -ere, ēluī, ēlūtus, wash (off); remove

ēmendō, 1, correct, improve
 ēmentior, -īrī, ēmentītus, feign, fabricate
 ēemergō, -ere, ēmersī, ēmersus, rise, emerge
 ēmicō, -āre, -uī, -ātus, dart forth, spurt
 ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, —, stand out, be prominent
 ēmittō, -ere, ēmīsī, ēmissus, let go
 emō, -ere, ēmī, ēemptus, take, buy
 ēmior, ēmorī, ēmortuus, die
 ēmptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, purchase
 ēmptor, -ōris, *m.*, buyer
 ēn, *interj.*, behold! see! there!
 enim, *conj.*, (*never first word*), for; w. **at**, but
 you say
 enimvērō, *adv.*, yes, indeed; assuredly
 ēnitēscō, -ere, ēnituī, —, shine forth
 ēnītor, -ī, ēnīxus (ēnīsus), make one's way
 Ennius, -nī, *m.*, Ennius, *a Roman poet*
 ēnotō, 1, mark out, note down
 ēnsis, -is, *m.*, sword
 ēnumerō, 1, count out; recount, describe
 ēnūntiō, 1, report
 eō, īre, īī, itūrus, go
 Ephesus, -ī, *m.*, Ephesus, *a famous city in Asia*
 Epicūrus, -ī, *m.*, Epicurus, *a Greek philosopher*
 Ēpīrus, -ī, *f.*, Epirus, *a province in Greece*
 epistula, -ae, *f.*, letter
 epulae, -ārum, *f.*, food, banquet
 epulor, 1, hold a banquet
 epulum, -ī, *n.*, feast
 eques, equitis, *m.*, horseman, knight; *pl.*, cavalry
 equidem, *adv.*, (*w. 1st person*), for my part, at
 any rate
 equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, cavalry
 equus, -ī, *m.*, horse
 Erebus, -ī, *m.*, Erebus, *the lower world*
 ergā, *prep. w. acc.*, toward
 ergastulum, -ī, *n.*, prison
 ergō, *adv.*, accordingly, therefore, then
 ērigō, -ere, ērēxī, ērēctus, raise, set up, erect.
 encourage
 ēripiō, -ere, ēripuī, ēreptus, snatch *or* take away,
 rescue from, remove
 ērogō, 1, appropriate, pay
 errātum, -ī, *n.*, error

errō, 1, wander, be mistaken
 error, -ōris, *m.*, error
 ērudīō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, teach
 ērudītiō, -ōnis, *f.*, instruction
 ērudītus, -a, -um, educated, learned
 ērumpō, -ere, ērūpī, ēruptus, break out, burst forth
 ēruō, ēruere, ēruī, ērutus, tear out
 ervum, -ī, *n.*, bitter vetch (*a plant*)
 et, *conj.*, and, even, also, too; et... et, both . . . and
 etenim, *conj.*, for truly, and indeed
 etiam, *adv.*, even, also, too, still; nōn solum... sed
 etiam, not only . . . but also; etiam atque
 etiam, again and again
 Etrūria, -ae, *f.*, Etruria, *a district of Italy*
 Etrūscī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Etruscans
 Eumaeus, -ī, *m.*, Eumaeus (Ūmē'us)
 Eurōpa, -ae, *f.*, Europe
 ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsūrus, go out, escape
 ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventūrus, (come out), turn
 out, happen
 ēventus, -ūs, *m.*, occurrence; fate
 ēvertō, -ere, ēvertī, ēversus, overthrow, destroy,
 ruin
 ēvigilō, 1, awake
 ēvītābilis, -e, avoidable
 ēvocātor, -ōris, *m.*, a caller to arms
 ēvocō, 1, summon, call out
 ēvolō, 1, fly *or* rush forth
 ēvolvō, -ere, ēvolvī, evolūtus, unroll (and read)
 ex, *see ē*
 exaedicō, 1, finish building, erect
 exaggerō, 1, increase
 exanimis, -e, lifeless, dead
 exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hear (plainly)
 excēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go forth,
 withdraw, depart
 excellēns, *gen. -entis*, superior, remarkable
 excellentia, -ae, *f.*, superiority, excellence
 excelsus, -a, -um, elevated, high
 excerpō, -ere, -cerpsī, -cerptus, choose, select
 excīdō, -ere, -cidī, —, fall (out), disappear
 excīdō, -ere, -cidī, -cīsus, destroy
 excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, take out *or* up,
 receive, catch, intercept; follow; except

excitō, 1, arouse; raise
 exclamō, 1, shout
 exclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut out
 excolō, -ere, -uī, excultus, cultivate
 excrucīō, 1, torment, torture, harass
 excurrō, -ere, -cucurrī, -curūsus, run out *or* up
 excūsātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, excuse
 excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussus, shake off, force
 away; search, examine
 exemplum, -ī, *n.*, example, copy, precedent
 exeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus, go *or* come forth, depart
 exerceō, -ēre, exercuī, exercitus, train, exercise;
 keep busy; conduct
 exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, training, exercise
 exercitus, -ūs, *m.*, (trained) army
 exhauriō, -īre, exhausī, exhaustus, drain
 exhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus, show
 exhorreō, -ēre, uī, —, shudder at, dread
 exigō, -ere, exēgī, exāctus, drive out, demand; *of*
 time, spend, pass
 exiguus, -a, -um, small, slight, narrow
 exilis, -e, thin, meager, poor; worthless
 eximiē, *adv.*, exceedingly
 eximius, -a, -um, extraordinary
 eximō, -ere, exēmī, exēptus, take away, consume
 exīstimātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reputation
 exīstimō, 1, think, suppose, consider
 exit, he goes out
 exitiābilis, -e, fatal
 exitiōsus, -a, -um, deadly
 exitium, -tī, *n.*, ruin, destruction, death
 exitus, -ūs, *m.*, end
 exoptātus, -a, -um, earnestly desired, longed for
 exoptō, 1, desire
 exōrnō, 1, adorn
 exōrō, 1, beg
 exōsus, -a, -um, hating, detesting
 espallēscō, -ere, expalluī, —, turn pale
 expavēscō, -ere, expāvī, —, be terrified, dread
 expectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, awaiting, expectation, longing
 expediō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, set free, procure
 expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus, drive out, expel;
 deprive of
 experior, -īrī, expertus, try, test; find

expers, expertis, having no share in
 expertus, -a, -um, tried, proved; experienced in
 expetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, seek
 explānō, 1, explain
 expleō, -ēre, explēvī, explētus, fill, satisfy
 explicō, 1, unfold, explain
 explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, spy, scout
 explōrō, 1, investigate, explore
 expoliō, -īre, -īvī, ītus, smooth, polish, adorn, refine
 expōnō, -ere, exposuī, expositus, put out, expose,
 explain
 exprimō, -ere, expressī, expressus, press out,
 portray, describe
 exprobrō, 1, accuse of, charge
 exprōmō, -ere, exprōmpsī, exprōmptus, display;
 disclose
 expugnō, 1, take by storm, capture, capture by
 assault
 expūrgō, 1, clear
 exquisītus, -a, -um, exquisite, excessive
 exscribō, -ere, exscripsī, exscriptus, copy
 exsiliō, -īre, exsiluī, —, leap up
 exsilium, -lī, *n.*, exile, banishment
 existō, -ere, extitī, —, stand forth, appear
 expectātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, waiting, anticipation
 expectō, 1, look out for, expect, await, wait (for)
 exstinguō, -ere, exstīnxī, exstīnctus, extinguish,
 destroy
 exstō, -āre, —, —, stand out, protrude; exist
 exstruō, -ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus, heap up, build
 exsul, -ulis, *m. and f.*, exile
 exsultō, 1, (leap up), exult
 exsuperantia, -ae, *f.*, superiority
 extemplō, *adv.*, immediately
 extendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentus (-tēnsus), stretch
 out, prolong
 externus, -a, -um, foreign
 exterus, -a, -um, outside, foreign
 extollō, -ere, —, —, raise up
 extorqueō, -ēre, extorsī, extortus, wrest
 extrā, (*prep. w. acc.*), outside (of), beyond
 extrēmus, -a, -um, farthest, last, end of
 exūrō, -ere, exussī, exustus, burn (up)
 exuviae, -ārum, *f.*, spoils

F

faber, -brī, *m.*, mechanic, fireman
 fabricō, 1, build, construct
 fābula, -ae, *f.*, story, play
 Fabulla, -ae, *f.*, Fabulla
 Fabullus, -ī, *m.*, Fabullus
 fābulor, 1, speak, say, utter
 fābulōsus, -a, -um, storied, fabulous
 facētē, *adv.*, wittily
 facētia, -ārum, *f. pl.*, jest, wit
 faciēs, -ēī, *f.*, appearance, face
 facile, *adv.*, easily, readily
 facilis, -e, easy
 facilitās, -tātis, *f.*, friendliness
 facinorōsus, -ī, *m.*, criminal
 facinus, -noris, *n.*, deed, crime
 faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, do, make, form, cause;
 proelium faciō, fight a battle; verba faciō,
 speak, make a speech
 factiō, -ōnis, *f.*, faction
 factiōsus, -a, -um, seditious
 factitō, 1, make *or* do frequently
 factum, -ī, *n.*, deed
 facultās, -tātis, *f.*, ability, means, opportunity
 fācundus, -a, -um, eloquent
 faenerātor, -ōris, *m.*, moneylender
 faenus, faenoris, *n.*, interest
 Faesulae, -ārum, *f.*, Faesulae, Fiesole, a town in
 Etruria
 fāgus, -ī, *f.*, beech tree, beechwood
 Falernum, -ī, *n.*, Falernian wine
 fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive, elude, escape
 the notice of; disappoint: w. fidem, break
 one's word
 falsus, -a, -um, false
 fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, story; fame, reputation: w.
 est, it is said
 famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger
 familia, -ae, *f.*, household, family; slaves
 familiāris, -e, belonging to the family, friendly,
 private, intimate; *as noun. m.*, intimate friend
 familiāritās, -tātis, *f.*, friendship
 familiāriter, *adv.*, intimately
 famulus, -ī, *m.*, servant

fāmōsus, -a, -um, famous, notorious
Fannius, -nī, m., Fannius
fānum, -ī, n., shrine
fās, indeclinable, n., right
fascis, -is, m., bundle; *pl.*, fascēs
fastidiō, -īre, fastīdīvī, fastīdītus, feel disgust, disdain
fastīdium, -dī, n., loathing, aversion
fatālis, -e, fated, deadly
fateor, -ērī, fassus, confess, admit
fātifer, -era, -erum, deathbringing, fatal
fatigō, 1, weary
fātum, -ī, n., fate; *often personified*, the Fates
faucēs, -ium, f. pl., throat, jaws; pass
fautor, -ōris, m., promoter
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, be favorable to, favor
favilla, -ae, f., embers
favor, -ōris, m., favor; cheering
favus, -ī, m., honeycomb
fax, facis, f., torch
febricula, -ae, f., fever, slight fever
fēcundus, -a, -um, fruitful, rich
fēlix, gen. fēlicis, happy, fortunate, productive
fēmina, -ae, f., woman, wife
fenestra, -ae, f., window
fera, -ae, f., wild beast
ferē, fermē, adv., almost, about; *w. neg.*, hardly
fēriae, -ārum, f. pl., holidays
ferio, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hit, strike, knock
feritās, -tātis, f., wildness
fermē, see ferē
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear, carry, bring, direct, produce, obtain; say; *w. lēgem*, propose, pass; *w. pedem retrō*, start back
ferōcitās, -tātis, f., fierceness
ferōciter, adv., fiercely
ferōx, -ōcis, fierce
ferrāmentum, -ī, n., sword, dagger
ferreus, -a, -um, of iron, hard
ferrum, -ī, n., iron; sword, point
ferus, -a, -um, savage, cruel
fervēns, gen. -entis, hot, burning
fessus, -a, -um, wearied, worn out
festinātiō, -ōnis, f., haste, despatch, speed

festinō, 1, hasten, hurry
fēstivus, -a, -um, gay, pleasant, kind
fēstum, -ī, n., holiday
fēstus, -a, -um, festive
fētus, -ūs, m., offspring, fruit
fidēlis, -e, faithful
fidēliter, adv., faithfully, loyally
fidēs, -eī, f., trust, belief; credit, honor, loyalty, pledge
fidūcia, -ae, f., trust, confidence
fidus, -a, -um, trusty, faithful, reliable, loyal
figō, -ere, fixī, fixus, fix, set
Figulus, -ī, m., Figulus
figūra, -ae, f., shape, figure
fīlia, -ae, f., daughter
fīliolus, -ī, m., little son
fīlius, -lī, m., son
figō, ere, fīxī, fictus, form, imagine, suppose
fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, end, finish, bound
fīnis, -is, m., end, limit; *pl.*, borders, territory
fīnitimus, -a, -um, neighboring, near; *as noun*, neighbor
fīō, fierī, —, factus, become, be made, be done, happen
fīrmāmentum, -ī, n., foundation, firmament
fīrmiter, adv., firmly
fīrmō, 1, strengthen
fīrmus, -a, -um, strong, firm
fissus, -a, -um, split
fistula, -ae, f., (shepherd's) pipe
fīxus, see figō
Flaccus, -ī, m., Flaccus
Flacilla, -ae, f., Flacilla
flagellum, -ī, n., whip
flāgitium, -tī, n., disgraceful act, crime
flāgitō, 1, demand, insist upon
flāmen, -inis, n., breeze
Flāminius, -nī, Flaminus
Flāminius, -a, -um, Flaminian
flamma, -ae, f., flame, fire
flāvēscō, -ere, —, —, become golden
flāvus, -a, -um, yellow, golden
flectō, -ere, flexī, flexus, turn, bend, influence
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, weep

flētus, -ūs, *m.*, weeping
Flōrentia, -ae, *f.*, Florence, *a city in Italy*
flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, bloom, flourish
flōs, flōris, *m.*, flower
fluctus, -ūs, *m.*, wave
flūmen, flūminis, *n.*, river
fluō, -ere, flūxī, flūxus, flow
flūxus, -a, -um, fleeting
focus, -ī, *m.*, hearth
foederātus, -a, -um, allied
foedō, 1, stain
foedus, -a, -um, vile, shameful
foedus, -deris, *n.*, league, alliance, compact
folium, -lī, *n.*, leaf
fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain, source
forēnsis, -e, of the Forum, public
foris, -is, *f.*, door
forīs, *adv.*, out of doors, abroad
fōrma, -ae, *f.*, shape, image, form, beauty, plan
formīdō, -dinis, *f.*, fear, dread
formīdolōsus, -a, -um, alarming, formidable
fōrmō, 1, form, compose
fōrmōsus, -a, -um, handsome, beautiful
fors, fortis, *f.*, chance
forsitan, *adv.*, perhaps
fortasse, *adv.*, perhaps
forte, *adv.*, by chance
fortis, -e, strong, brave
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely
fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, strength
fortuitus, -a, -um, accidental
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune, luck
fortūnātus, -a, -um, happy, fortunate
forum, -ī, *n.*, forum, market place; **Forum**
Aurēlium, *n.*, *a town in Etruria, Forum (at Rome)*
forus, -ī, *m.*, gangway
foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtus, warm, cherish, support
fragilis, -e, fragile, weak
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, break, shatter, crush,
overcome
frāter, frātris, *m.*, brother
frāternus, -a, -um, of one's brother
fraudentus, -a, -um, deceitful
fraus, fraudis, *f.*, fraud, deceit

frēna (-ī), -ōrum, *n. or m. pl.*, bridle, rein
frēnō, 1, bridle, curb
frequēns, *gen. -entis*, in crowds
frequenter, *adv.*, often, in great numbers
frequentia, -ae, *f.*, throng, large number
fretum, -ī, *n.*, strait, sea, water
frētus, -a, -um, relying on
frīgeō, -ēre, —, —, be cold, freeze
frīgidārius, -a, -um, cooling
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold
frīgus, -goris, *n.*, cold, coolness
frondeō, -ēre, —, —, put forth leaves
frōns, frondis, *f.*, leaf
frōns, frontis, *f.*, front, forehead
Frontō, -ōnis, *m.*, Fronto, *a Roman writer*
frūctus, -ūs, *m.*, enjoyment, fruit, income, benefit,
products
frugālītās, -tātis, *f.*, thrift
frūmentārius, -a, -um, of grain; w. **auxilium**,
granary; w. **rēs**, grain supply
frūmentum, -ī, *n.*, grain
fruor, fruī, frūctus, (+ *abl.*), enjoy
frūstrā, *adv.*, in vain
frūstum, -ī, *n.*, bit
fūcus, -ī, *m.*, red dye: pretense
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight; in **fugam dō**, put to flight
fugāx, *gen. -ācis*, fleeing
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, run away, flee, avoid,
escape
fugitīvus, -ī, *m.*, runaway slave
fugō, 1, put to flight, repel
fulgeō, -ēre, fulsī, —, gleam
fulmen, -minis, *n.*, lightning, thunderbolt
Fulvia, -ae, *f.*, Fulvia
Fulvius, -vī, *m.*, Fulvius
fulvus, -a, -um, yellow
fundāmentum, -ī, *n.*, foundation, basis, beginning
fundō, 1, found
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour; rout
fundus, -ī, *m.*, estate, bottom
funestus, -a, -um, fatal
fungor, -ī, functus, perform
fūnus, fūneris, *n.*, funeral, death; ruin
fūr, fūris, *m. and f.*, thief, robber

furca, -ae, *f.*, forked pole
 furibundus, -a, -um, full of rage
 furiōsus, -a, -um, insane, furious
 Fūrius, -rī, *m.*, Furius
 Furnius, -nī, *m.*, Furnius
 furō, -ere, -uī, —, rage, be mad
 furor, -ōris, *m.*, madness, fury
 fūrtim, *adv.*, secretly
 fūrtum, -ī, *n.*, theft
 Fuscus, -ī, *m.*, Fuscus
 fūstis, -is, *m.*, staff, club
 futūrus, *see sum*

G

Gadēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, Cadiz, a city in Spain
 Gāius, -ī, *m.*, Gaius
 Galba, -ae, *m.*, Galba, a Roman emperor
 galea, -ae, *f.*, helmet
 Gallia, -ae, *f.*, Gaul, ancient France
 Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic, of Gaul
 Gallus, -a, -um, Gallic (from Gaul); *as noun, m.*,
 a Gaul
 Gangēs, -is, *m.*, Ganges, a river in India
 garriō, īre, -ivī, -itūrus, chatter
 gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus, *semideponent*, rejoice
 gaudium, -dī, *n.*, joy, gladness, delight
 gelidus, -a, -um, cold
 Gemellus, -ī, *m.*, Gemellus
 geminus, -a, -um, twin, two, both
 gemitus, -ūs, *m.*, groan, lamentation
 gemma, -ae, *f.*, precious stone
 gena, -ae, *f.*, cheek
 gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law
 genetrīx, -īcis, *f.*, mother
 geniāliter, *adv.*, merrily
 genitor, -ōris, *m.*, father
 gēns, gentis, *f.*, tribe, people, nation, family, class
 gentilis, -e, belonging to the same clan *or* race;
 pagan
 genus, generis, *n.*, birth, race; kind, class,
 family, sort
 Germānia, -ae, *f.*, Germany
 Germānus, -ī, *m.*, a German
 germinō, 1, bud, germinate, sprout

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, bear, carry on, manage,
 do, accomplish, wear; hold; **mē gerō**, act
 gestāmen, -inis, *n.*, load; *pl.*, arms
 gestō, 1, carry, bear; *pass.*, ride
 gestus, -ūs, *m.*, gesture
 gignō, -ere, genuī, genitus, bring forth, produce;
 pass., be born
 gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*, gladiator
 gladius, -dī, *m.*, sword
 glaeba, -ae, *f.*, clod
 glāns, glandis, *f.*, acorn
 glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame
 glorior, 1, boast
 glōriōsus, -a, -um, glorious
 Gnaeus, -ī, *m.*, Gnaeus
 Gordiānus, -ī, *m.*, Gordianus
 Gorgiās, -ae, *m.*, Gorgias
 Gracchus, -ī, *m.*, Gracchus
 gracilis, -e, thin, slender
 gradior, -ī, gressus, step, walk
 gradus, -ūs, *m.*, step, grade
 Graecia, -ae, *f.*, Greece
 Graecus, -a, -um, Greek; Graecus, -ī, *m.*, a
 Greek; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Greeks
 Graiī, -ōrum, *m.*, the Greeks
 grammaticus, -ī, *m.*, school teacher, grammarian
 grandis, -e, large; grandis nātū, old man
 grātē, *adv.*, gratefully
 grātia, -ae, *f.*, gratitude, favor, influence; grātiās
 agō, thank; grātiām referō, show one's
 gratitude; grātiām habeō, feel grateful; grātiā,
 for the sake of; Grātiaē, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Graces
 grātiōsus, -a, -um, popular, acceptable, agreeable
 Grattius, -tī, *m.*, Grattius
 grātuitō, *adv.*, without pay, freely
 grātulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, congratulation
 grātulor, 1, congratulate
 grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, grateful; grātum faciō,
 do a favor
 gravidus, -a, -um, heavy
 gravis, -e, heavy, difficult, important, severe
 gravitās, -tātis, *f.*, weight, dignity, seriousness
 graviter, *adv.*, heavily, seriously, strongly
 gravō, 1, make heavy, weigh down; *pass.*, be reluctant

Gregorius, -rī, *m.*, Gregory
gremium, -mī, *n.*, bosom
grex, gregis, *m.*, herd
gubernāculum, -ī, *n.*, rudder; guidance, government
gubernātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, control
gubernātor, -ōris, *m.*, pilot
gubernō, 1. steer, navigate
gustō, 1. taste, enjoy
guttur, -uris, *n.*, throat
gymnasium, -sī, *n.*, gymnasium; lecture room

H

habēna, -ae, *f.*, rein
habēō, -ēre, habuī, **habitus**, have, hold, regard,
 consider; **grātiām habēō**, feel grateful (w. *dat.*);
ōrātiōnem habēō, deliver an oration
habitō, 1. live, dwell
habitus, -ūs, *m.*, nature
hāctenus, *adv.*, so far
haereō, -ēre, haesī, **haesus**, stick, cling; be in doubt
haesitō, 1. stick fast, be undecided, be at a loss
Hamīlcar, -aris, *m.*, Hamīlcar, *the father of Hannibal*
Hannibal, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal, *a Carthaginian general*
haruspex, -picis, *m.*, soothsayer, fortune teller
Hasdrubal, -alis, *m.*, Hasdrubal, *a brother and an uncle of Hannibal*
haud, *adv.*, not, by no means
hauriō, -īre, hausi, **haustus**, draw; empty
haustus, -ūs, *m.*, drawing, shedding
hebēscō, -ere, —, —, grow dull
hebetūdō, -inis, *f.*, bluntness, dullness
Hecuba, -ae, *f.*, Hecuba, *wife of Priam, king of Troy*
Heius, -ī, *m.*, Heius
Helicē, -ēs, *f.*, Helice (Hel'isē), *a constellation*
Hēraclēa, -ae, *f.*, Heraclea, *a Greek city in southern Italy*
Hēraclēnsis, -e, of Heraclea; *as noun, m., a Heraclean*
herba, -ae, *f.*, herb, plant; *pl. grass*
hercle! by Hercules! (*used by men*)
Herculāneum, -eī, *n.*, Herculaneum, *a town of Campania*

Herculēs, -is, *m.*, Hercules, *a Greek hero*
hērēditās, -tātis, *f.*, inheritance
hērēs, -ēdis, *m. and f.*, heir, heiress
herī, *adv.*, yesterday
hērōs, -ōis, *m.*, hero
Hesperidēs, -um, *f. pl.*, Hesperides, *daughters of Atlas*
hesternus, -a, -um, of yesterday; w. **diēs**, yesterday
heu! *interj.*, alas!
hiberna, -ōrum, *n.*, winter quarters
Hibernia, -ae, *f.*, Ireland
Hibērus, -ī, *m.*, the Ebro, *a river in Spain*
hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this, the latter; he, she,
 it (*enclitic -ce added for emphasis*)
hīc, *adv.*, here, hereupon, in view of this
hiems, hiemis, *f.*, winter
Hieronymus, -ī, *m.*, Jerome, *a Father of the Church*
hilaris, -e, cheerful, glad
hilaritās, -tātis, *f.*, gaiety
hilum, -ī, *n.*, shred, trifle
hinc, *adv.*, from this place; **hinc... illinc**, on this
 side . . . on that
hiō, 1. gape; be amazed; long for
Hispania, -ae, *f.*, Spain
Hispanus, -ī, *m.*, Spaniard
Hister, -trī, *m.*, Danube River
historia, -ae, *f.*, history, account
hodiē, *adv.*, today
hodiernus diēs, this day, today
holus, -leris, *n.*, vegetables
Homērus, -i, *m.*, Homer
hominium, -nī, *m.*, homage
homō, hominis, *m.*, man, person, human being; *pl.*,
 people
honestās, -tātis, *f.*, honor, honesty
honestō, 1. honor, distinguish
honestus, -a, -um, honorable
honor, -ōris, *m.*, honor, office
honōrābilis, -e, honorable
honōrātus, -a, -um, honored
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour
hordeum, -ī, *n.*, barley
hornus, -a, -um, of this year
horrēscō, -ere, horruī, —, grow rough; tremble

horribilis, -e, dreadful
horridus, -a, -um, rough, crude, wild
hortātus, -ūs, *m.*, urging
Hortēsius, -sī, *m.*, Hortensius
hortor, 1, urge, encourage
hortus, -ī, *m.*, garden
hospes, -pitis, *m. and f.*, stranger, guest; host
hospita, -ae, *f.*, guest, stranger
hospitālis, -e, of a guest, of a host, hospitable
hospitium, -tī, *n.*, (tie of) hospitality
hostis, -is, *m.*, enemy (*usually pl.*)
hūc, *adv.*, to this place, here
hūmānitās, -tātis, *f.*, kindness, sympathy, culture
hūmānus, -a, -um, human, cultured, refining
humilis, -e, low, humble
humus, -ī, *f.*, ground, earth
Hydaspēs, -is, *m.*, a river in India
Hymēn, -enis, *m.*, Hymen, the god of marriage
Hypaepa, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, Hypaepa (Hype'pa), a town at the base of Mt. Tmolus

I

iaceō, -ēre, **iacuī**, —, lie, be prostrate
iaciō, -ere, **iēcī**, **iactus**, throw, hurl
iactō, 1, throw, toss; boast of; w. **mē**, display myself
iactus, -ūs, *m.*, throwing; stroke
iaculum, -ī, *n.*, dart, javelin
iam, *adv.*, already, now; w. *neg.*, no longer; of future time, soon, presently; w. **diū dūdum**, or **prīdem**, long ago; w. **vērō**, furthermore
iānua, -ae, *f.*, door
Iānuārius, -a, -um, January
ibi, *adv.*, there, then
ibīdem, *adv.*, in the same place
Īcarus, -ī, *m.*, Icarus, son of Daedalus
icō, (-ere), **icī**, **ictus**, strike
idcircō, *adv.*, for this (that) reason, therefore
īdem, **eadem**, **idem**, *dem. pron.*, same; also, likewise
identidem, *adv.*, again and again
ideō, *adv.*, for this reason, therefore
idōneus, -a, -um, suitable
Īdūs, -uum, *f. pl.*, the Ides (15th of March, May, July, and October; 13th of the other months)
iēiūnus, -a, -um, poor

igitur, *adv.*, therefore
ignārus, -a, -um, not knowing, ignorant
ignāvus, -a, -um, lazy; cowardly
ignis, -is, *m.*, fire
ignōbilis, -e, not noble
ignōminia, -ae, *f.*, disgrace
ignōrantia, -ae, *f.*, want of knowledge, ignorance
ignōrō, 1, be ignorant of, not know
ignōscō, -ere, **ignōvī**, **ignōtus**, overlook; forgive
ignōtus, -a, -um, unknown
īlex, **īlicis**, *f.*, oak
īlia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, abdomen, groin
Ilias, **Iliadis**, *f.*, the Iliad
Ilioneus, -ī, *m.*, Ilī'oneus, one of Niobe's sons
Ilium, -lī, *n.*, Troy, a city in Asia Minor
illāc, *adv.*, that way
illaesus, -a, -um, unharmed, unhurt
ille, **illa**, **illud**, *dem. pron.*, that, the former; he, she, it
illecebra, -ae, *f.*, enticement
illiberālis, -e, ignoble, sordid, mean
illīc, *adv.*, in that place, there
illinc, *adv.*, from that side
illinō, -ere, **illēvī**, **illitus**, smear, cover
illitterātus, -a, -um, unlettered, illiterate
illūc, *adv.*, there
illūminō, 1, illuminate, make conspicuous
illūstris, -e, brilliant, noble, glorious
illūstrō, 1, bring to light, reveal, glorify
Īllyricus, -a, -um; **Illyrius**, -a, -um, Illyrian, of Illyria, a country on the Adriatic Sea
imāgō, -ginis, *f.*, likeness, image, statue; appearance
imbecillitās, -tātis, *f.*, weakness
imbecillus, -a, -um, weak
imber, **imbris**, *m.*, rain, storm
imberbis, -e, beardless
imbrifer, -era, -erum, rain-bringing
imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus, wet, soak
imitābilis, -e, imitable
imitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, imitation
imitor, 1, imitate
immānis, -e, vast; savage
immānitās, -tātis, *f.*, enormity; fierceness, barbarism

immātūrus, -a, -um, untimely
immēnsus, -a, -um, immeasurable, boundless
immineō, -ēre, —, —, threaten
immittō, -ere, immīsī, immissus, let loose, send
in *or* against
immō, adv., on the contrary; *w. vērō*, rather
immōbilis, -e, immovable
immoderātus, -a, -um, immoderate
immodicus, -a, -um, beyond measure, excessive
immorior, -morī, -mortuus, die upon
immoror, 1, remain in, linger near
immortālis, -e, immortal
immōtus, -a, -um, unmoved; fixed
immurmurō, 1, murmur into
immūtātus, -a, -um, changed
impār, gen. imparis, unequal; short
imparātus, -a, -um, unprepared
impatiēns, gen. -entis, not bearing, impatient
impedimentum, -ī, n., hindrance, impediment:
pl., baggage
impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, hinder, prevent
impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus, urge on, prevail
upon, induce
impendeō, -ēre, —, —, overhang, threaten
impendium, -dī, n., outlay, expense
impēnsa, -ae, f., expense
imperātor, -ōris, m., commander-in-chief,
general; emperor
imperfectus, -a, -um, unfinished
imperītus, -a, -um, inexperienced, ignorant
imperium, -rī, n., command, control, military
power, government, empire
imperō, 1, command, govern, command (*w. dat.*)
impertiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, share with, bestow
impetrō, 1, gain (a request), obtain
impetus, -ūs, m., attack, fury, force; **impetum**
faciō in (w. acc.), make an attack against
impiger, -gra, -grum, diligent, quick
impius, -a, -um, undutiful, wicked
impleō, -ēre, implēvī, implētus, fill, fulfill
implicō, -āre, implicuī, implicitus, enfold,
involve, unite
implōrātiō, -ōnis, f., entreaty
implōrō, 1, implore

impōnō, -ere, imposuī, impositus, place upon, put
importō, 1, bring
importūnus, -a, -um, cruel
improbitās, -tātis, f., wickedness, dishonesty
improbō, 1, disapprove
improbus, -a, -um, wicked
imprōvisus, -a, -um, unexpected
impudēns, gen. -entis, shameless, presumptuous
impudenter, adv., impudently
impudentia, -ae, f., shamelessness, effrontery
impudīcus, -a, -um, shameless
impūnē, adv., without punishment
impūnītus, -a, -um, unpunished
impūrus, -a, -um, vile, impure
īmus, -a, -um, see inferus
in, prep. w. acc., into, to, toward, against, for;
w. abl., in, on, upon
inānis, -e, empty
inaurō, 1, overlay with gold
incēdo, -ere, incessī, incessūrus, advance, proceed
incēnātus, -a, -um, without dinner
incendium, -dī, n., fire, burning, conflagration
incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsus, set on fire, burn
incēnsiō, -ōnis, f., burning
inceptum, -ī, n., beginning, undertaking
incertus, -a, -um, uncertain
inchoō, 1, begin
incidō, -ere, incidī, —, fall, happen
incīdō, -ere, incīdī, incīsus, cut into
incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus, take to, begin
incitāmentum, -ī, n., incentive, stimulus
incitō, 1, urge on, arouse
inclinō, 1, lean, sink
inclūdō, -ere, inclūsī, inclūsus, shut up, confine
inclutus, -a, -um, famous
incognitus, -a, -um, unknown
incola, -ae, m. and f., inhabitant
incolō, -ere, incoluī, incultus, live, inhabit
incolumis, -e, unharmed, safe; undefeated
incommodum, -ī, n., inconvenience; loss, defeat
inconditē, adv., without order
incōnsultē, adv., thoughtlessly
incorporeus, -a, -um, incorporeal, without body
incorruptus, -a, -um, unspoiled, uninjured

incrēdibilis , -e, extraordinary, incredible	īnferus , -a, -um, below; <i>as noun, m. pl.</i> , the dead;
incrēdibiliter , <i>adv.</i> , incredibly	<i>comp.</i> īnferior , -ius, lower; <i>superl.</i> , īnfirmus ,
incultus , -a, -um, untilled; rude	īmus , lowest
incumbō , -ere, incubūi , incubitūrus , bend to,	īnfēstus , -a, -um, hostile, dangerous
devote oneself, press on	īnfirmus , <i>see</i> īnferus
incūnābula , -ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i> , cradle, birthplace,	īnfinītus , -a, -um, endless
beginnings	īnfirmitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , sickness, weakness
incurrō , -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run into or up	īnfirmō , 1, weaken, refute
against	īnfirmus , -a, -um, weak, sick
inde , <i>adv.</i> , then, from there	īnfitior , 1, deny
index , -dicis, <i>m.</i> , informer, witness	īnflammō , 1, set on fire, burn; inflame
indiciūm , -cī, <i>n.</i> , testimony, proof	īnflexibilis , -e, unbending, inflexible
indicō , 1, point out, prove	īnflō , 1, blow into; inspire
indictus , -a, -um, declared	īnfōrmō , 1, mold, train
indigēns , <i>gen.</i> -entis, in need of, wanting	īnfrā , <i>adv.</i> , below
indignātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , indignation	ingemēscō , -ere, -uī, —, groan, sigh (over)
indignē , <i>adv.</i> , unworthily	ingeniōsus , -a, -um, clever
indignor , 1, regard as unworthy; be angry	ingenium , -nī, <i>n.</i> , ability, nature, spirit, genius
indignus , -a, -um, unworthy	ingēns , <i>gen.</i> ingentis , huge
indocilis , -e, unteachable, ignorant	ingenuē , <i>adv.</i> , nobly
indoctus , -a, -um, ignorant; unskilled	ingenuus , -a, -um, noble
indolēs , -is, <i>f.</i> , native quality, nature	ingerō , -ere, ingessī , ingestus , press upon
indolēscō , -ere, indoluī , —, be grieved	ingrātus , -a, -um, ungrateful
indūcō , -ere, indūxī , inductus , bring in, influence	ingravēscō , -ere, —, —, become heavier, grow
indulgentia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , kindness	worse
indulgeō , -ēre, indulsi , indultus , yield to, favor	ingredior , ingredī , ingressus , step into, enter (upon)
induō , -ere, indui , indūtus , put on, assume	ingressus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , entrance
Indus , -a, -um, Indian	inhabitō , 1, dwell in
industria , -ae, <i>f.</i> , diligence, care	inhaereō , -ēre, inhaesi , inhaesus , cling, stick to
industrius , -a, -um, enterprising	inhibeō , -ēre, -uī, -itus, restrain
inedia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , fasting	inhiō , 1, gape
ineō , inīre , iniī , initūrus , enter upon	inhonestus , -a, -um, dishonorable
inermis , -e, unarmed	inhospitālis , -e, inhospitable
inerrō , 1, wander, roam upon	inhūmānus , -a, -um, inhuman; rude
iners , <i>gen.</i> inertis , unskilled; sluggish	iniciō , -ere, iniēcī , iniectus , throw into, cause.
inertia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , lack of skill, inactivity, laziness	inspire
inexpiābilis , -e, irreconcilable, implacable	inimīcitia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , enmity
inexplēbilis , -e, insatiable	inimīcus , -a, -um, unfriendly, hostile: <i>as noun,</i>
infāmia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , disgrace	<i>m.</i> , enemy
infēlix , <i>gen.</i> īnfēlicis , unhappy, unfortunate	inīquitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , unfairness, injustice
īnferī , -ōrum, <i>m.</i> , inhabitants of the Underworld	inīquus , -a, -um, unequal, sloping; unfavorable,
īnferō , īnferre , intulī , illātus , apply, bring	discontented
	initiō , 1, initiate, consecrate
	initium , -tī, <i>n.</i> , beginning

iniūrātus, -a, -um, not having sworn
iniūria, -ae, *f.*, injustice, wrong, injury
iniūriōsus, -a, -um, harmful
iniūrus, -a, -um, unjust
iniūstus, -a, -um, unjust
innītor, **innītī**, **innīxus**, lean upon
innocēns, *gen.* -entis, harmless
innocentia, -ae, *f.*, innocence
innumerābilis, -e, countless
innumerus, -a, -um, countless
innuptus, -a, -um, unmarried; *as noun, f.*, virgin
innūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, nourish
inopia, -ae, *f.*, lack (of funds), poverty, need
inops, *gen.* inopis, poor
inōrnātus, -a, -um, unadorned
inprīmīs, *adv.*, especially
inquam, **inquis**, **inquit**, *defective*, say: **inquit**, he/
she says
inquinō, 1, stain, defile
inquīrō, -ere, **inquīsivī**, **inquīsītus**, inquire (into)
īnsānia, -ae, *f.*, madness
īnsānus, -a, -um, insane
īnsciēns, *gen.* -entis, not knowing
īnscitia, -ae, *f.*, ignorance
īnscius, -a, -um, not knowing; ignorant
īnscrībō, -ere, **īnscrīpsī**, **īnscrīptus**, inscribe, entitle
īnscrīptiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inscription
īnsecō, -āre, **īnsecuī**, **īnsectus**, cut into
īnsector, 1, attack
īnsepultus, -a, -um, unburied
īnsequor, **īnsequī**, **īnsecūtus**, follow up, pursue
īnserō, -ere, **īnseruī**, **īnserūtus**, thrust into
īnsideō, -ēre, **īnsēdī**, **īnsessūrus**, (sit upon), take
possession of; dwell, be fixed
īnsidiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, plot, danger
īnsidior, 1, plot against
īnsigne, -is, *n.*, mark
īnsignis, -e, remarkable, notable
īnsiliō, -īre, -uī, —, leap upon
īnsinuō, 1, ingratiate oneself
īnsistō, -ere, **īnstītī**, —, pursue
īnsolēns, *gen.* -entis, unaccustomed; haughty
īnsolentia, -ae, *f.*, insolence
īnsolitus, -a, -um, unusual

īnsonō, -āre, -uī, —, play on
īnspērātus, -a, -um, unexpected
īnspiciō, -ere, **īnspexī**, **īnspectus**, look at, inspect,
examine
īnstabilis, -e, unstable
īnstanter, *adv.*, earnestly
īnstituō, -ere, **īnstituī**, **īnstītūtus**, establish, decide
(upon), begin; train
īnstō, -āre, **īnstītī**, —, threaten, press on, pursue
īnstringō, -ere, **īnstrīnxī**, **īnstrictus**, fasten; set
īnstruō, -ere, **īnstrūxī**, **īnstrūctus**, arrange,
provide, draw up, instruct
īnsula, -ae, *f.*, island
īnsulānus, -ī, *m.*, islander
īnsum, **īnesse**, **īnfuī** —, be in
integer, -gra, -grum, untouched, fresh
intellegō, -ere, -lexī, -lectus, understand
īntempestus, -a, -um, timeless; unhealthy
īntendō, -ere, **īntendī**, **īntentus**, stretch, intend
īnter, *prep. w. acc.*, between, among
īntereā, *adv.*, meanwhile
īntercipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, intercept, cut
off, steal
īnterclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, cut off
īnterficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, kill
īnteriaceō, -ēre, -uī, —, lie between
īnterim, *adv.*, meanwhile
īnterimō -ere, -ēmī, ēemptus, kill
īnteritus, -ūs, *m.*, destruction, death
īnterius, *adv.*, within
īntermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, stop,
interrupt, neglect
īnterneciō, -ōnis, *f.*, massacre
īnternōdium, -dī, *n.*, space between two joints
īnternus, -a, -um, inward, internal
īnterpellātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, interruption
īnterpres, -pretis, *m.*, interpreter
īnterrogātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry, examination
īnterrogō, 1, ask
īntersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be between, be
present, be different
īntervāllum, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance
īnterveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come in
(between), interrupt

interventus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , intervention	irrigō , 1, water, irrigate
intestīnus , -a, -um, internal, civil	irritō , 1, excite, stir up
intexō , -ere, -texuī, -textus, interweave, envelop	is , ea , id , <i>dem. pron.</i> , this, that; <i>as pron.</i> , he, she, it
intimō , 1, intimate	Ismēnus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Ismenus, <i>one of Niobe's sons</i>
intimus , -a, -um, inmost	iste , ista , istud , <i>dem. pron.</i> , that (of yours), such this; that fellow
intōnsus , -a, -um, unshorn, long-haired	istīc , <i>adv.</i> , there
intrā , <i>prep. w. acc.</i> , within	istōc , <i>adv.</i> , that way
intrepidus , -a, -um, unshaken, undaunted	ita , <i>adv.</i> , so, in this way, thus; as follows; <i>w. ut</i> , just as
intrō , 1, enter	Ītalia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Italy
intrōdūcō , -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, bring in, introduce	Ītalicus , -a, -um, Italian
introeō , -īre, -īī, -itūrus, enter	itaque , <i>adv.</i> , and so, therefore, accordingly, and as a result
intueor , -ēri, -itus, look at <i>or</i> upon	item , <i>adv.</i> , also
inūrō , -ere, inussī, inustus, burn in, brand	iter , itineris , <i>n.</i> , journey, road, march, route
inūsītātus , -a, -um, unusual	iterum , <i>adv.</i> , again, a second time
inūtilis , -e, useless	itō , itāre , —, —, go
invādō , -ere, invāsī, invāsus, rush upon, seize	iubeō , -ēre, iussī, iussus, order, command
inveniō , -īre, invēnī, inventus, find, come upon, invent	iūcunditās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , pleasantness, delight
inventiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , invention	iūcundus , -a, -um, pleasant, agreeable
invēstīgō , 1, track, discover	iūdex , iūdicis , <i>m.</i> , judge, juror
inveterāscō , -ere, -āvī, —, become established	iūdicīālis , -e, judicial
invicem , <i>adv.</i> , in turn, alternately	iūdicium , -cī, <i>n.</i> , judgment, opinion, trial; court
invictus , -a, -um, unconquered, invincible	iūdicō , 1, judge
invidēō , -ēre, invīdī, invīsus, envy	iugālis , -e, yoked, together
invidia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , envy, unpopularity	iūgerum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , acre
invidiōsus , -a, -um, hateful	iugulum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , throat
invidus , -a, -um, envious	iugum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , yoke; ridge
inviolātē , <i>adv.</i> , inviolably	Iūlius , -lī, <i>m.</i> , Julius; Iūlia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Julia
invīsītātus , -a, -um, uncommon	iūnc̄tim , <i>adv.</i> , jointly, together
invīsus , -a, -um, hated, displeasing	iungō , -ere, iūnxī, iūnc̄tus, join (to), harness
invītō , 1, invite	iūnior , -ius, younger, junior
invītus , -a, -um, unwilling	Iūnius , -a, -um, of June
involvō , -ere, involvī, involūtus, wrap up in, bury	Iūnō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , Juno, <i>a goddess, sister and wife of</i> <i>Jupiter</i>
iō , <i>interj.</i> , hurrah!	Iūnōnius , -a, -um, sacred to Juno
iocor , 1, joke	Iuppiter , Iovis , <i>m.</i> , Jupiter, <i>king of the gods</i>
iocōsus , -a, -um, humorous	iūrgium , -gī, <i>n.</i> , quarrel
iocus , -ī, <i>m.</i> (<i>pl. ioca</i> , <i>n.</i>), joke	iūrō , 1, take an oath, swear
Iovis , Iovī , <i>see Iuppiter</i>	iūs , iūris , <i>n.</i> , right, justice, law, authority; iūs iūrandum , iūris , -ī, <i>n.</i> , oath
ipse , ipsa , ipsum , -self, the very	iussū , <i>abl.</i> , by order
īra , -ae, <i>f.</i> , anger	iussum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , order
īrāscor , -ī, īrātus, be angry at	
irreparābiliter , <i>adv.</i> , irreparably	
irrēpō , -ere, irrēpsī, —, creep in	
irrētiō , -īre, -īvī, -ītus, ensnare	

iūstē, *adv.*, justly
iūstitia, -ae, *f.*, justice
iūstus, -a, -um, just, proper
iuvenālis, -e, youthful
iuvenis, -is, *m. and f.*, youth
iuventa, -ae, *f.*, iuventūs, -tūtis, *f.*, youth
iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, help, aid; please
iūxtā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, near, close to

L

L., *abbreviation for Lūcius*
labefactō, 1, cause to fall, weaken, destroy
labellum, -ī, *n.*, little lip
labor, -ōris, *m.*, work, trouble, effort, hardship
lābor, -ī, lāpsus, slip, glide; err
labōrō, 1, work
labrum, -ī, *n.*, lip; edge, tub
lac, lactis, *n.*, milk
Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, Spartan
lacer, -era, -erum, shattered
lacertus, -ī, *m.*, arm
laccessō, -ere, laccessivī, laccessitus, provoke, attack
lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear
lacrimō, 1, weep
lactō, 1, suck milk
lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake
Laeca, -ae, *m.*, Laeca
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, hurt
Laelius, -lī, *m.*, Laelius
laetitia, -ae, *f.*, joy
laetor, 1, be glad, rejoice
laetus, -a, -um, joyous, glad
laevus, -a, -um, left
Lalagē, -ēs, *f.*, Lalage, *a girl's name*
lambō, -ere, lambī, lambitus, lick
lāmentātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, lamentation
lancea, -ae, *f.*, lance
languidus, -a, -um, weak
laniō, 1, tear (in pieces)
lanterna, -ae, *f.*, lantern
lapidātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, stoning
lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone
lāpsus, -ūs, *m.*, gliding, flight

Lār, Laris, *m.*, Lar, hearth; *a household god; w.*
familiāris, home
lardum, -ī, *n.*, lard
largior, -irī, itus, be lavish, bestow
largitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, gift
largus, -a, -um, plentiful, large
lascivē, *adv.*, wantonly, licentiously
lascivus, -a, -um, wanton, playful
lassitūdō, -tūdinis, *f.*, weariness
lassus, -a, -um, tired
lātē, *adv.*, widely, far and wide
latebra, -ae, *f.*, secret code; *pl.*, hiding place
lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, lie hidden, hide, escape notice
Latīnē, *adv.*, in Latin
Latīnus, -a, -um, Latin, belonging to Latium;
Latīni, -ōrum, *m.*, the Latins
Latīnus, -ī, *m.*, Latinus
Latium, -tī, *n.*, Latium, (Lā'shium), *a district of central Italy*
Latius, -a, -um, of Latium
Lātōna, -ae, *f.*, Latona, *mother of Apollo and Diana*
Lātōus, -a, -um, of Latona
latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, bandit, robber
latrōcinium, -nī, *n.*, robbery, brigandage
latrōcinor, 1, plunder
latus, lateris, *n.*, side, flank
lātus, -a, -um, wide, broad
laudātor, -ōris, *m.*, praiser
laudō, 1, praise
Laurentīnus, -a, -um, of Laurentum
laurus, -ī, *f.*, laurel
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise
lavō, -āre, lāvī, lautus, wash, bathe
laxō, 1, relax
laxus, -a, -um, open, relaxed
lea, -ae; leaena, -ae, *f.*, lioness
Lebinthus, -ī, *f.*, Lebinthus, *an island in the Aegean*
lēctiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reading
lēctitō, 1, read eagerly
lēctor, -ōris, *m.*, reader
lēctus, -a, -um, choice, excellent
lectus, -ī, *m.*, couch, bed
lēgātus, -ī, *m.*, envoy; legate, lieutenant general

legiō, -ōnis, f., legion	Liciniānus, -ī, m., Licinianus
lēgitimē, adv., lawfully	Licinius, -nī, m., Licinius (Lisin'ius)
lēgitimus, -a, -um, lawful	ligneus, -a, -um, wooden
lēgō, 1, appoint, bequeath	lignum, -ī, n., piece of wood; <i>n. pl.</i> , firewood
legō, -ere, lēgī, lectus, collect, gather, choose, pick; read	ligō, 1, bind, tie
lēniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, soften, conciliate	līmen, līminis, n., threshold, door
lēnis, -e, gentle, mild	līmes, līmitis, m., path
lēnitās, -tātis, f., leniency	līneāmentum, -ī, n., line, feature
lentē, adv., slowly	lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language
Lentulus, -ī, m., Lentulus	līnum, -ī, n., string, thread
lentus, -a, -um, flexible; slow, lazy	liquefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, melt
leō, -ōnis, m., lion	liquidus, -a, -um, flowing, clear
lepidus, -a, -um, charming	līquor, -ī, —, —, flow, melt
Lepidus, -ī, m., Lepidus	līs, lītis, f., lawsuit
lepōs, -ōris, m., charm	littera, -ae, f., letter (<i>of the alphabet</i>), <i>pl.</i> , a letter (<i>epistle</i>), letters (<i>if modified by an adjective such as multae</i>), literature; learning
lētum, -ī, n., death	litterātus, -a, -um, lettered, well-educated
levāmen, -minis, n., relief	litūra, -ae, f., erasure
levis, -e, light (<i>in weight</i>); trivial	lītus, -ōris, n., shore
levitās, -tātis, f., lack of principle	līvēns, gen. -entis, black and blue, bruised
leviter, adv., lightly, gently	Līvius, -vī, m., Livy, <i>a Roman historian</i>
levō, 1, lift, lighten, relieve	locō, 1, place
lēx, lēgis, f., law, condition, bill	locuplēs, gen. -ētis, rich
libellus, -ī, m., (little) book, manuscript; indictment	locuplētō, 1, enrich
libenter, adv., gladly, with pleasure	locus, -ī, m., (<i>pl. loca, -ōrum, n.</i>), place, room, rank, occasion
liber, -era, -erum, free, unrestricted	longē, adv., far, far away, by far; long
Liber, -erī, m., Bacchus	longus, -a, -um, long; distant
liber, librī, m., book	loquāx, gen. -ācis, talkative, chattering
Libera, -ae, f., Proserpina	loquor, loquī, locūtus, speak, talk
liberālis, -e, liberal	Lūcānus, -ī, m., Lucan, <i>a Roman poet</i>
liberē, adv., freely; boldly	lūceō, -ēre, lūxī, —, be light, shine
liberī, -ōrum, m. pl., children	lūcidus, -a, -um, bright, shining
liberō, 1, free, set free	Lūcilius, -lī, m., Lucilius
libertās, -tātis, f., freedom, liberty	Lūcius, -cī, m., Lucius
libertīnus, -ī, m., freedman	lucrum, -ī, n., gain, profit
libertus, -ī, m., freedman	luctāns, gen. -antis, struggling, reluctant
libet, -ēre, libuit or libitum, it pleases	lūctus, -ūs, m., sorrow, affliction
libīdo, -dinis, f., longing, pleasure, lust	lūculentus, -a, -um, brilliant
libō, 1, sip, offer; skim	Lūcullus, -ī, m., Lucullus
librārius, -rī, m., secretary	lūcus, -ī, m., grove
librō, 1, balance	lūdō, -ere, lūsī, lūsus, play
licentia, -ae, f., liberty, freedom	lūdus, ī, m., game, sport; school; <i>pl.</i> , public games
licet, -ēre, licuit or licitum, it is permitted, one may	

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctus, mourn
 lūmen, lūminis, *n.*, light; eye
 lūmināre, -āris, *n.*, lamp
 lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon
 luō, -ere, luī, —, loose; suffer
 lupus, -ī, *m.*, wolf
 Lūsītānia, -ae, *f.*, Portugal
 Lūsītānus, -a, -um, Lusitanian, Portuguese
 lūstrō, 1, light up, survey
 lūsus, -ūs, *m.*, playing
 lūx, lūcis, *f.*, light, daylight; life
 lūxuria, -ae, *f.*, extravagance
 Lydus, -a, -um, Lydian

M

M., *abbreviation for Mārcus, -ī, m.*, Marcus; M'
for Mānius, -nī, m., Manius
 māchinātor, -ōris, *m.*, plotter
 māchinor, 1, devise, plot
 maciēs, -ēī, *f.*, thinness
 mactē, *interj.*, well done!
 mactō, 1, sacrifice, put to death, afflict
 mādēfāciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, soak
 mādēscō, -ere, maduī, —, become moist
 madidus, -a, -um, drenched, dripping
 maestus, -a, -um, sad
 magis, *adv.*, more, rather; *superl.* maximē, most,
 especially
 magister, -trī, *m.*, teacher
 magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, (public) office; magistrate
 magnificēns, *gen.* -entis, magnifying, glorifying
 magnificus, -a, -um, splendid
 magnitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, greatness, size, importance
 magnus, -a, -um, large, great; *comp.* maior,
 maius, greater; maiōrēs (nātū), older men,
 ancestors, forefathers; *superl.* maximus, -a,
 -um, greatest, very great; magnō opere
 or magnopere, greatly
 maiestās, -tātis, *f.*, majesty
 maior, *see* magnus
 Maius, -a, -um, of May
 male, *adv.*, badly, unsuccessfully; *comp.*, peius,
 worse; *superl.* pessimē, worst
 maledīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictus, curse

maledictum, -ī, *n.*, insult
 maleficium, -cī, *n.*, evil deed, wrong
 malivolentia, -ae, *f.*, hatred, envy
 malleolus, -ī, *m.*, firebrand
 mālō, mälle, mālūī, —, prefer
 malum, -ī, *n.*, evil, trouble
 mālum, -ī, *n.*, apple
 malus, -a, -um, bad; *comp.* peior, peius, worse;
superl. pessimus, -a, -um, very bad, worst
 Mamertīnus, -a, -um, of Messina
 mandātum, -ī, *n.*, order, instruction, command
 mandātū, by order
 mandō, 1, commit, instruct, entrust
 māne, *adv.*, early in the morning
 maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, remain, last
 manicae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, handcuffs
 manifēstus, -a, -um, clear, plain
 Mānius, -nī, *m.*, Manius
 Mānliānus, -a, -um, of Manlius
 Mānlius, -lī, *m.*, Manlius
 mānō, 1, flow, drip
 mānsuētūdō, -dinis, *f.*, gentleness
 Mantua, -ae, *f.*, Mantua, a town of northern Italy
 manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, handwriting; force, band
 Mārcius, -cī, *m.*, Marcius (Mar'shus)
 Mārcus, -ī, *m.*, Marcus
 mare, maris, *n.*, sea
 marītus, -ī, *m.*, husband
 Marius, -rī, *m.*, Marius, a Roman general
 marmor, -oris, *n.*, marble
 marmoreus, -a, -um, made of marble, marble
 Marō, -ōnis, *m.*, Maro (Vergil)
 Maronilla, -ae, *f.*, Maronilla
 Mārs, Mārtis, *m.*, Mars, god of war
 Martiālis, -is, *m.*, Martial
 Martīnus, -ī, *m.*, Martin
 massa, -ae, *f.*, mass; mound, lump (of gold)
 māter, mātris, *f.*, mother
 māteria, -ae, *f.*, matter, timber
 mātrimōnium, -nī, *n.*, marriage
 mātūrēscō, -ere, mātūruī, —, come to maturity
 mātūritās, -tātis, *f.*, ripeness, maturity
 mātūrō, 1, hasten
 mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe, mature; early

Maurī, -ōrum, m. pl., the Moors, Mauritians
maximē, adv., very greatly, especially; *see* **magis**
Maximīna, -ae, f., Maximina
maximus, see **magnus**
Maximus, -ī, m., Maximus
mēcastor! interj., by Castor!
medicāmentum, -ī, n., medicine
medicīna, -ae, f., medicine
medicus, -ī, m., doctor, physician
mediocris, -cre, moderate, ordinary
mediocritās, -tātis, f., mean, moderation; mediocrity
mediocriter, adv., slightly, moderately
Mediterrāneum (Mare), Mediterranean Sea
meditor, 1, plan, compose
medius, -a, -um, middle; midst (of); intervening;
as noun, n., middle
medulla, -ae, f., marrow
mehercule, meherculēs! interj., by Hercules!
mel, mellis, n., honey
melior, see **bonus**
membrum, -ī, n., limb, member
meminī, meminisse, (perf. translated as pres.),
remember
memor, -oris, mindful of
memorābilis, -e, memorable
memoria, -ae, f., memory; **memoriā teneō,**
remember
memorō, 1, call to mind, relate
mendācium, -cī, n., lie
mendāx, gen. -ācis, lying
mēns, mentis, f., mind, intention, feeling, heart
mēnsa, -ae, f., table, banquet
mēnsis, -is, m., month
mēnsūra, -ae, f., measurement, extent
mentiō, -ōnis, f., mention
mentior, -īrī, -ītus, lie, deceive; invent
mentum, -ī, n., chin
mercātor, -ōris, m., merchant
mercātūra, -ae, f., trade
mercennārius, -rī, m., hired man
mercēs, -ēdis, f., pay, reward
mercor, 1, trade
Mercurius, -rī, m., Mercury
mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus, deserve, earn

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersus, sink
merīdiēs, -ēī, m., noon
Messāla, -ae, m., Messala
-met, enclitic, -self
mēta, -ae, f., goal, turning post (*in the Circus*)
metuō, -ere, -uī, —, fear
metus, -ūs, m., fear
meus, -a, -um, my, mine
micō, 1, flash
migrō, 1, depart
mīles, mīlitis, m., soldier
mīlitia, -ae, f., warfare
mille, pl., mīlia, thousand
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva, *a goddess*
minister, -trī, m., ministra, -ae, f., servant
minimē, adv., not at all; *interj.,* no
minimus, minor, see **parvus**
minor, 1, jut out, threaten
Mīnōs, -ōis, m., Minos
mīrābilis, -e, remarkable
mīrāculum, -ī, n., miracle
mīrē, adv., wonderfully, strangely
mīrificus, -a, -um, singular, extraordinary
mīror, 1, wonder, admire
mīrus, -a, -um, strange, wonderful
misceō, -ēre, -uī, mixtus, mix, mingle
miser, -era, -erum, unhappy, poor, wretched
miserābilis, -e, pitiable, wretched
miserātiō, -ōnis, f., pity
miserē, adv., wretchedness, miserably
misereor, -ērī, misertus, pity
miseria, -ae, f., wretchedness, trouble
misericordia, -ae, f., pity
misericors, -cordis, compassionate
miseror, 1, pity
Mithridātēs, -is, m., Mithridā'tes, *king of Pontus*
Mithridāticus -a, -um, Mithridatic
mītis, -e, mild, kind
mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, let go, send
mōbilitas, -tātis, f., fickleness
moderātus, -a, -um, self-controlled, restrained
moderor, 1, guide
modestia, -ae, f., restraint
modestus, -a, -um, moderate, scrupulous

modicus, -a, -um, moderate, small
modius, -dī, *m.*, bushel
modo, *adv.*, only, merely; just now; **nōn modo... sed**
 (or **vērūm**) **etiam**, not only . . . but also; **modo...**
modo, now . . . now; *conj.*, provided (that)
modus, -ī, *m.*, measure; moderation; manner,
 method, way; **quem ad modum**, how, as; **eius**
 (or **huius**) **modī**, of this kind, such
moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, (city) walls
mōlēs, -is, *f.*, mass, burden
molestia, -ae, *f.*, annoyance
molestus, -a, -um, troublesome, annoying,
 disagreeable
mōlior, -īrī, -ītus, strive, plan, undertake; plot
molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, soften
mollis, -e, soft; easy, mild
molliter, *adv.*, softly, gently
molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind
Molossī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Molossians, *people*
 of Epirus
monastērium, -rī, *n.*, monastery
moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, remind, warn, advise;
 suggest
monitus, -ūs, *m.*, warning
mōns, **montis**, *m.*, mountain, hill
mōnstrō, 1, point out, show, indicate
montānus, -a, -um, of the mountains
monumentum, -ī, *n.*, memorial, monument,
 remembrance
mora, -ae, *f.*, delay
morbus, -ī, *m.*, disease
mordeō, -ēre, **momordī**, **morsus**, bite
moribundus, -a, -um, dying
mорий, **morī**, **mortuus**, die
moror, 1, delay, linger
mors, **mortis**, *f.*, death
morsus, -ūs, *m.*, biting, teeth
mortālis, -e, mortal, human; *as noun, m.*, a mortal
mortuus, -a, -um, dead
mōs, **mōris**, *m.*, custom, manner; *pl.*, customs,
 character
mōtus, -ūs, *m.*, movement, activity
moveō, -ēre, **mōvī**, **mōtus**, move; influence, disturb
mox, *adv.*, soon

mūcrō, -ōnis, *m.*, point, edge
mulcō, 1, beat, injure
muliebris, -e, womanly, feminine
mulier, **mulieris**, *f.*, woman
mūliō, -ōnis, *m.*, mule driver
multiplex, -icis, manifold, many
multitūdo, -dinis, *f.*, multitude, great number
multō, 1, punish
multō, *adv.*, much, by far
multum, *adv.*, much; *comp.*, **plūs**, more; *superl.*,
plūrimum, most
multus, -a, -um, much; *pl.*, many; *comp.* **plūrēs**,
plūra, more, several; *superl.* **plūrimus**, -a,
 -um, most, very many
mūlus, -ī, *m.*, mule
Mulvius, -a, -um, Mulvian
munditia, -ae, *f.*, neatness
mundus, -ī, *m.*, world
mūniceps, -cipis, *m.*, fellow citizen
municipālis, -e, of the towns
municipium, -pī, *n.*, town
mūnificentia, -ae, *f.*, generosity
mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, fortify, defend; **viam**
mūniō, build a road
mūnus, **mūneris**, *n.*, duty, office, service; gift
mūrex, -ricis, *m.*, (shellfish), purple
murmur, -uris, *n.*, whisper
mūrus, -ī, *m.*, wall
mūs, **mūris**, *m.*, mouse
Mūsa, -ae, *f.*, Muse, *one of the nine goddesses of*
the fine arts
mūstica, -ae, *f.*, music
mūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, change
mutātus, -a, -um, changed
mūtō, 1, change
muttiō, -īre, -īvī, —, mutter
mūtus, -a, -um, mute
mūtuus, -a, -um, mutual

N

nactus, *part of nancīscor*
Naevius, -vī, *m.*, Naevius
nam, **namque**, *conj.*, for

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus, (nānctus), get, gain, obtain, find, meet with
Nannēs, -is, m., Nannes, *brother of Pope Pius II*
nārrō, 1, tell, relate
nāscor, nāscī, nātus, be born, be found; **duōs annōs nātus,** two years old; **nātus, -ī, m.,** son
Nāsō, -ōnis, m., P. Ovidius Naso, *the poet Ovid*
nāsus, -ī, m., nose
nātālis, -e, of one's birth; *as noun, m.,* birthday, natural
nātiō, -ōnis, f., nation, tribe
natō, 1, swim, float
nātūra, -ae, f., nature, character
nātūrālis, -e, natural
nātus, -a, -um, born; *as noun, m. and f.,* son, daughter; *pl.,* children
nausiābundus, -a, -um, seasick
nauta, -ae, m., sailor
nāvālis, -e, naval
nāvicula, -ae, f., small vessel, boat
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, f., sailing
nāvigō, 1, sail
nāvis, -is, f., ship
nē, adv., no, not; **nē... quidem** (*emphatic word between*), not even; *conj.,* that . . . not, not to, lest, for fear that
-ne, (enclitic), introduces question; whether
nebula, -ae, f., mist, cloud
nec, see neque
necdum, adv., not yet
necessārius, -a, -um, necessary; *as noun, m.,* relative, friend
necesse, indecl. adj., necessary
necessitās, -tātis, f., necessity
necessitūdō, -dinis, f., necessity; relationship
necō, 1, kill, put to death, murder
necopīnātus, -a, -um, unexpected
nectar, -aris, n., nectar, *the drink of the gods*
nefārius, -a, -um, impious, base
nefās, indeclinable, n., sin
neglegēns, gen. -entis, careless
neglegenter, adv., carelessly
neglegentia, -ae, f., negligence
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, disregard, neglect

negō, 1, say no, deny, say . . . not
negōtiōr, 1, carry on business, be a trader
negōtium, -tī, n., business, affair, trouble; undertaking
nēmō, dat. nēminī, acc. nēminem (*no other forms*), no one
nemus, -oris, n., grove, forest
nepōs, -ōtis, m., grandson
Neptūnus, -ī, m., Neptune, *god of the sea*
nēquam, indecl. adj., worthless, wretched; *compar. nēquior*
neque (or nec), and not, nor; **neque... neque,** neither . . . nor
nequeō, -īre, -ivī, —, be unable
nēquīquam, adv., in vain
nēquitia, -ae, f., worthlessness, neglect
nervōsus, -a, -um, sinewy
nervus, -ī, m., sinew, nerve; string
nesciō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus, —, not know, be ignorant; *ut an, I know not whether, very likely*
neuter, -tra, -trum, neither (*of two*)
nēve (neu), conj., and not, nor, and that . . . not
nex, necis, f., murder, (violent) death
nexus, -ūs, m., (binding together), embrace
nī, see nisi
Nicaeēnsis, -e, Nicene
Nīcānor, -oris, m., Nicanor
Nīcomēdensis, -e, of the Nicomedians; *as noun, m. pl.,* Nicomedians
Nīcomēdia, -ae, f., Nicomedia, *capital of Bithynia*
Nīcopolis, -is, f., Nicopolis
nīdus, -ī, m., nest
niger, -gra, -grum, black
nihil, adv., nothing; not at all; **nihildum,** nothing as yet
nihil, indeclinable, n., nothing
nihilō minus, adv., none the less, nevertheless
Nīlus, -ī, m., the Nile, *a river in Egypt*
nimbus, -ī, m., cloud; rain cloud
nīmīrum, adv., of course
nimis, adv., too much, too
nimum, adv., too, too much
Ninus, -ī m., Ninus, *an Assyrian king*
nisi, nī, conj., unless, except, if not

niteō, -ēre, —, —, shine, be well fed
nitescō, -ere, nituī, —, grow sleek (of animals)
nītor, nītī, nīxus (nīsus), strive, struggle
niveus, -a, -um, snow-white
nix, nivis, f., snow
nōbilis, -e, noble
nōbilitās, -tātis, f., fame; nobility
nōbīscum = cum nōbīs
nocēns, gen. -entis, harmful; guilty
noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus, do harm to, injure
(w. dat.)
noctū, adv., at night
nocturnus, -a, -um, of or by night
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —, be unwilling, not wish
nōmen, nōminis, n., name
nōminātim, adv., by name, expressly
nōminō, 1, name, call
nōn, adv., not; nōn iam, no longer
Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl., Nones
nōndum, adv., not yet
Nōniānus, -ī, m., Nonianus
nōnne, interrog. adv. (in a direct question), not; (in
an indirect question), if not, whether not
nōnnullus, -a, -um, some, several
nōs, nostrum, we, pl. of ego
nōscitō, -āre, —, —, know, recognize
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, learn; in perf. tenses,
have learned, know
noster, -tra, -trum, our
nota, -ae, f., mark
notābilis, -e, noteworthy, remarkable
notārius, -rī, m., secretary
nōtitiā, -ae, f., knowledge, acquaintance
notō, 1, note, mark, observe
nōtus, -a, -um, known, familiar
novem, nine
novitās, -tātis, f., newness, strangeness
novus, -a, -um, new, strange; last
nox, noctis, f., night
nūbēs, -is, f., cloud
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus, veil oneself, wed
nūdō, 1, strip, expose
nūdulus, -a, -um, bare, exposed
nūdus, -a, -um, bare, naked, vacant

nūgae, -ārum, f. pl., nonsense
nūllus, -a, -um, no, none; as noun, m., no one;
nōn nūllī, some
num, adv., introduces questions expecting negative
answer; conj., whether
nūmen, nūminis, n., nod; divine will or power;
divinity
numerōsus, -a, -um, numerous; manifold; full
of rhythm
numerus, -ī, m., number
Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., the Numidians
Numidicus, -ī, m., Numidicus
nummus, -ī, m., coin, money
numquam, adv., never
nunc, adv., now
nuncupō, 1, call by name, name
nūntiō, 1, report, announce
nūntius, -tī, m., messenger; message, news, report
nūper, adv., recently
nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl., wedding
nūptiālis, -e, nuptial
nūrus, -ī, f., daughter-in-law
nusquam, adv., nowhere
nūtriō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, nourish, keep alive, foster
nūtrīx, -īcis, f., nurse
nūtus, -ūs, m., nod, will
nux, nucis, f., nut
nympha, -ae, f., nymph

O

ō! interj., O! oh!
ob, prep. w. acc., because of, on account of, for
obeō, -īre, obīvī, obitūrus, go to meet, attend to,
engage in; reach
obequitō, 1, ride toward
obiciō, -ere, obiēcī, obiectus, throw to or against,
put in the way, oppose
obiurgātiō, -ōnis, f., rebuke
oblectātiō, -ōnis, f., delight
oblectō, 1, delight
obligō, 1, bind
oblinō, -ere, oblēvī, oblitus, smear, stain
oblitterō, 1, erase
obliviō, -ōnis, f., forgetting, forgetfulness

oblivīscor, -ī, oblītus, forget
 obnoxius, -a, -um, obliged, servile, weak
 oboediō, -īre, oboedivī, oboedītus, give heed to
 obrēpō, -ere, obrep̄sī, obreptus, steal in
 obruō, -ere, obruī, obrutus, overwhelm, bury
 obscūrō, 1, darken, hide
 obscūrus, -a, -um, dark, secret, obscure
 obsecrō, 1, implore
 obsequor, -ī, obsecūtus, yield, comply
 observō, 1, observe, watch, heed
 obses, obsidis, *m.*, hostage
 obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessus, beset, besiege,
 blockade, hem in
 obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.*, siege
 obsistō, -ere, obstitī, obstitūrus, resist
 obstinātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, stubbornness
 obstinātus, -a, -um, stubborn
 obstō, -āre, obstitī, obstātūrus, prevent, withstand,
 stand in the way
 obstrepō, -ere, obstrepuī, —, drown out
 (*with noise*)
 obstringō, -ere, obstrīnxī, obstrictus, bind
 obstruō, -ere, obstrūxī, obstrūctus, block
 obstupēscō, -ere, obstupuī, —, be astounded
 obsum, obesse, obfuī, —, injure
 obtemperō, 1, submit to, obey, consult
 obtestor, 1, entreat, pray
 obtineō, -ēre, obtinuī, obtentus, hold, obtain
 obtingō, -ere, obtigī, —, happen
 obturbō, 1, confuse, disturb
 obtūsus, -a, -um, blunt, dull; weak
 obviam, *adv.*, in the way; *w.* veniō, come to meet
 obvius, -a, -um, meeting, encountering
 occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*, opportunity
 occāsus, -ūs, *m.*, going down, downfall, setting;
 occāsus sōlis, sunset, west
 occidō, -ere, occidī, occāsūrus, set, fall down; die
 occīdo, -ere, occīdi, occīsus, kill
 occultē, *adv.*, secretly
 occultō, 1, conceal, hide
 occultus, -a, -um, secret, hidden
 occupātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, occupation, business
 occupō, 1, seize, occupy
 occupātus, -a, -um, busy

occurrō, -ere, occurri, occursūrus, run against,
 meet, occur
 ōceanus, -ī, *m.*, ocean (*esp. the Atlantic Ocean*)
 ōcior, ōcius, *comp. adj.*, swifter
 Octāviānus, -ī, *m.*, Octavian, *the emperor Augustus*
 Octāvius, -vī, *m.*, Octavius
 octāvus, -a, -um, eighth
 octō, eight
 oculus, -ī, *m.*, eye
 ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus (*perf. translated as pres.*), hate
 odiōsus, -a, -um, hateful, offensive
 odium, odī, *n.*, hatred
 odōrātus, -a, -um, fragrant
 offendō, -ere, offendī, offēnsus, (strike against);
 come upon, find
 offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, bear to, offer,
 present, expose; *mē offerō*, rush against
 officīna, -ae, *f.*, factory
 officiōsus, -a, -um, obliging, dutiful
 officium, -cī, *n.*, duty, service, allegiance, function
 ōh! *interj.*, oh!
 olfaciō, -ere, olfēcī, olfactus, smell
 ōlim, *adv.*, once, formerly; hereafter, sometime
 Olympia, -ae, *f.*, Olympia, *a Greek city*
 Olympicus, -a, -um, Olympic
 Olympiēum, -ī, *n.*, Olympieum, *temple of the*
Olympian Jupiter
 ōmen, ōminis, *n.*, omen, sign
 ōminor, 1, augur, prophesy
 omittō, -ere, omīsī, omissus, let go, pass over,
 drop, disregard
 omnīnō, *adv.*, altogether, in all, entirely, at all, to
 be sure
 omnis, omne, all, every, whole
 onerārius, -a, -um, for freight; *nāvis onerāria*,
 transport
 onerōsus, -a, -um, heavy
 onus, oneris, *n.*, weight, load, burden, cargo
 onustus, -a, -um, loaded
 opācus, -a, -um, gloomy
 opera, -ae, *f.*, work, service, assistance, aid, effort;
w. dare, see to it
 operiō, -īre, operuī, opertus, cover

operōsus, -a, -um, painstaking, industrious;
 troublesome
opifer, -era, -erum, helping
opifex, -ficus, m., workman
opīniō, -ōnis, f., belief, opinion, expectation;
 reputation
opīnor, 1, imagine, judge, think
opitutor, 1, bring aid, help
oportet, -ēre, oportuit, it is fitting *or* necessary,
 ought
oppetō, -ere, -ivī, -ītus, seek
oppidum, -ī, n., town
opportūnitās, -tātis, f., suitability
opportūnus, -a, -um, fit, timely, opportune,
 convenient, advantageous
opprimō, -ere, oppressī, oppressus; overcome,
 surprise, crush, oppress
oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f., siege, method of attack
oppugnō, 1, attack, besiege
ops, opis, f., aid, might; *pl.*, wealth, resources,
 influence
optimē, see bene
optimus, see bonus
optō, 1, desire, wish
opus, operis, n., work, labor, task, exercise;
magnō opere or magnopere, greatly; **tantō**
opere, so greatly
opus, n., indeclinable, need; necessary, necessity;
opus est, it is necessary, there is need
ōra, -ae, f., coast, edge
ōrāculum, -ī, n., oracle, prophesy
ōrārius, -a, -um, of the coast, coastal
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., speech, words, eloquence; argument
ōrātor, -ōris, m., speaker, orator
ōrātōria, -ae, f., oratory
orbis, -is, m., circle; *esp. w. or without terrae or*
terrārum, the world (*i.e., the circle of lands*
around the Mediterranean)
orbō, 1, deprive, rob; bereave
orbus, -a, -um, childless
Orcus, -ī, m., Orcus, *god of Hades*; Hades; the
 Lower World; Pluto
ōrdior, -irī, ōrsus, begin

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., row, order, turn, rank, company.
 body; class
oriēns, -entis, m., rising sun, east
orīgo, originis, f., origin
Ōrīōn, -ōnis, m., Orion, *a constellation*
orior, orīrī, ortus, rise, arise, begin, descend, be
 descended from
ōrnāmentum, -ī, n., (mark of) distinction,
 decoration, ornament
ōrnātus, -ūs, m., adornment, decoration
ōrnō, 1, adorn, furnish, equip; honor, **ōrnātus**,
 fitted out
ōrō, 1, beg, ask, pray (for), plead, implore
Orpheus, -ī, m., Orpheus (*Or'fūs*), *a famous*
musician
ortus, -ūs, m., rising; east
ōs, ōris, m., mouth, face, expression; lips
os, ossis, (gen. pl., ossium) n., bone
Oscē, adv., in Oscan
ōsculor, 1, kiss, embrace
ōsculum, -ī, n., kiss
ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus, (stretch out),
 point out, show, display; declare
ostentō, 1, hold up, display
Ōstiēnsis, -e, to Ostia
ōtiōsus, -a, -um, idle, unemployed; peaceful
ōtium, ōtī, n., leisure, quiet, peace
Ovidius, -dī, m., Ovid
ovis, -is, f., sheep
ōvum, -ī, n., egg

P

P., abbreviation for Pūblius
pābulos, 1, forage
pābulum, -ī, n., food (for cattle), fodder
pacīscor, -ī, pactus, agree, appoint
pācō, 1, pacify, subdue
pactum, -ī, n., agreement; manner
Paelignus, -a, -um, Pelignian, *of a people of*
central Italy
paene, adv., almost
paenitentia, -ae, f., repentance
paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers., it makes regret,
 it grieves

Paestum, -ī, *n.*, Paestum, *a town in southern Italy*
pāgānus, -a, -um, rustic, pagan
pāgus, -ī, *m.*, district, canton
palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly
Palātīnus (mōns), -ī, *m.*, **Palātium**, -tī, *n.*, the
 Palatine Hill; palace
Palātium, -tī, *n.*, the Palatine, *one of the seven*
hills of Rome
palātum, -ī *n.*, palate
palea, -ae, *f.*, chaff, straw
Palicānus, -ī, *m.*, Palicanus
palla, -ae, *f.*, robe
pallēscō, -ere, **palluī**, —, become pale, turn yellow
pallidus, -a, -um, pale
palma, -ae, *f.*, hand, palm; date
palūs, **palūdis**, *f.*, marsh, swamp
Pān, **Pānis**, *m.*, Pan, *god of shepherds*
pānis, -is, *m.*, bread
Pāniscus, -ī, *m.*, Paniscus, *a rural deity*
Pannonia, -ae, *f.*, Hungary
panthēra, -ae, *f.*, panther
Papa, -ae, *m.*, the pope
papae! *interj.*, indeed!
pār, *gen. paris*, equal, like, fair; *as noun, n.*, pair
parātus, -a, -um, ready, prepared
parcē, *adv.*, sparingly
parcō, -ere, **pepercī**, **parsūrus**, spare, save
parcus, -a, -um, sparing, economical, frugal, saving
parēns, -entis, *m. and f.*, parent
pāreō, -ēre, **pāruī**, **pāritūrus**, (appear), obey
pariēs, -ētis, *m.*, wall
parilis, -e, equal
pariō, -ere, **peperī**, **partus**, give birth,
 produce; gain
pariter, *adv.*, equally, in like manner, likewise
Parnāsis, -idis, of Parnassus
Parnassius, -a, -um, Parnassian
Parnassus, -ī, *m.*, Parnassus, *a mountain range*
in central Greece
parō, 1, get, get ready (for), prepare; **parātus**, -a,
 -um, prepared, ready
Paros, -ī, *f.*, Paros, *an island in the Aegean*
parricīda, -ae, *m.*, murderer
parricīdium, -dī, *n.*, parricide, murder

pars, **partis**, *f.*, part, role, side; direction; duty
particeps, **participis**, *m.*, participant, sharer
particula, -ae, *f.*, small part, particle
partim, *adv.*, partly
partiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, divide
partitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, division
partus, -ūs, *m.*, birth
parum, *adv.*, little, too little
parvulus, -a, -um, very small, little, petty
parvus, -a, -um, small, little, slight, low; *comp.*
minor, **minus**, smaller, less, lesser, younger;
superl. minimus, -a, -um, smallest, least, very
 little, youngest
pāscō, -ere, **pāvī**, **pāstus**, feed, feast
passim, *adv.*, everywhere
passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*about five feet*); **mille**
passūs, mile
passus, *part. of patior*
pāstor, -ōris, *m.*, shepherd
Patareus, -a, -um, of Patara, *a seaport of Lycia*
patefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, open (up), lay
 open, expose
patēns, *gen. patentis*, open, extending
pateō, -ēre, **patuī**, —, stand or be open, be
 exposed; extend
pater, **patris**, *m.*, father, senator; *pl.*, **patrēs**
cōnscriptī, senators, patricians
paternus, -a, -um, of the father
patienter, *adv.*, patiently
patientia, -ae, *f.*, patience
patior, **patī**, **passus**, suffer, endure, allow, permit
patria, -ae, *f.*, fatherland, native land, country
patricius, -a, -um, patrician
patrimonium, -nī, *n.*, paternal estate; inheritance
patrius, -a, -um, of a father, father's, ancestral
patrōcinium, -nī, *n.*, patronage
patrōnus, -ī, *m.*, patron
patrūus, -ī, *m.*, uncle
patulus, -a, -um, spreading, wide
paucī, -ae, -a, few, only a few
paucitās, -tātis, *f.*, small number, scarcity
pauculus, -a, -um, very few, very little
paucus, -a, -um, little; *pl.*, few, only a few

paulātim, *adv.*, gradually, little by little; a few at a time
paulisper, *adv.*, for a little while; for a short time
paulō and **paulum**, *adv.*, shortly, a little
paulum, *-ī, n.*, a little
pauper, *gen. pauperis*, poor
paupertās, *-tātis, f.*, poverty
paveō, *-ēre, pāvī*, —, be afraid, tremble with fear
pavidus, *-a, -um*, trembling, scared
pāx, *pācis, f.*, peace, truce
peccātum, *-ī, n.*, mistake
peccō, 1. sin
pectus, *pectoris, n.*, breast, heart
pecūnia, *-ae, f.*, money; *pl.*, riches
pecūniārius, *-a, -um*, pecuniary
pecus, *pecoris, n.*, cattle, flock
pecus, *-udis, f.*, beast; *pl.*, herds
pedes, *peditis, m.*, foot soldier; *pl.*, infantry
pedester, *-tris, -tre*, (of) infantry; on foot
peditātus, *-ūs, m.*, infantry
peierō, 1. commit perjury
pelagus, *-ī, n.*, sea
pellis, *-is, f.*, skin
pellō, *-ere, pepulī, pulsus*, beat, drive, put to flight; banish, defeat
pendeō, *-ēre, pependī*, —, hang, hover
pendō, *-ere, pependī, pēnsus*, hang, weigh, pay
penetrō, 1. penetrate
Pēnēius, *-a, -um*, Penē'an (of a river in Thessaly)
penetrō, 1. penetrate, enter
penitus, *-a, -um*, remote
penitus, *adv.*, deeply, within
penna, *-ae, f.*, feather, wing
per, *prep. w. acc.*, through, by, over, among, during, along, by means of, during; in the name of
peragō, *-ere, -ēgī, -āctus*, complete; obey
peragrō, 1. traverse
peramanter, *adv.*, very lovingly
perantiquus, *-a, -um*, very ancient
percipiō, *-ere, -cēpī, -ceptus*, seize; hear, feel, learn, appreciate, obtain
percontor, 1. inquire
percrebrēscō, *-ere, -crēbruī*, —, grow prevalent, be spread abroad

percurrō, *-ere, -cucurrī, -cursūrus*, hasten through, run over
percutiō, *-ere, -cussī, -cussus*, strike, pierce, beat
perdiscō, *-ere, -didici*, —, learn thoroughly
perditus, *-a, -um*, lost; desperate, corrupt
perdō, *-ere, -didī, -ditus*, lose, destroy, waste
perducō, *-ere, -dūxī, -ductus*, lead or bring through, extend, win over
perdūrō, 1. harden, endure
peregrinātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, foreign travel
peregrīnor, 1. go abroad
peregrīnus, *-a, -um*, strange, foreign; *as noun m.*, foreigner
perennis, *-e*, through the year, unceasing, perpetual
pereō, *-īre, -iī (-ivī), -itūrus*, perish, pass away, be lost, disappear
perexcelsus, *-a, -um*, exalted
perfero, *-ferre, -tulī, -lātus*, carry (through), report, bring; endure
perficiō, *-ere, -fēcī, -fectus*, do thoroughly, accomplish, make of, bring about, finish, carry out; cause
perfidēlis, *-e*, very faithful
perfidia, *-ae, f.*, faithlessness, treachery
perfidus, *-a, -um*, treacherous, dishonest, faithless
perfringō, *-ere, -frēgī, -frāctus*, break through or down, violate
perfruor, *-frui, -frūctus*, enjoy fully
perfuga, *-ae, m.*, deserter
perfugiō, *-ere, -fūgī*, —, flee
perfugium, *-gī, n.*, refuge
perfungor, *-ī, -fūnctus*, perform
Pergamum, *-ī, n.*, Troy
pergō, *-ere, perrēxī, perrēctus*, proceed, continue, hasten
perhorrēscō, *-ere, -horruī*, shudder at
perīclitor, 1. try, risk, endanger
perīculōsus, *-a, -um*, dangerous
perīculum, *-ī, n.*, trial, danger
perimō, *-ere, -ēmī, -ēemptus*, destroy
perior, *see malus*
perītus, *-a, -um*, skilled, experienced, acquainted with
periūrus, *-a, -um*, oath-breaking, perjured

perlegō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctus, read through,
 examine thoroughly
permaneō, -ēre, -mānsī, -mānsūrus, remain
permātūrēscō, -ere, -mātūruī, —, ripen fully
permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go through,
 leave, allow, grant, entrust, permit
permoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move deeply,
 induce, alarm
permultus, -a, -um, very much, very many
permūtātiō, -ōnis, f., exchange
permūtō, 1, exchange
perniciēs, -ēī, f., destruction, ruin
perniciōsus, -a, -um, destructive, dangerous
pernoctō, 1, spend the night
perofficiōsē, adv., very attentively
peropportūnus, -a, -um, very seasonable *or*
 opportune
perōsus, -a, -um, loathing
perparvulus, -a, -um, very little, very small
perpaucī, -ae, -a, very few
perpetior, -ī, perpersus, bear steadfastly, suffer
 firmly, endure
perpetuō, adv., permanently
perpetuus, -a, -um, constant, lasting; **in**
perpetuum, forever
perquīrō, -ere, -quīsivī, -quīsitus, make a
 diligent search for
perrārus, -a, -um, very rare
perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break through
Persae, -ārum, m. pl., the Persians
persaepe, adv., very often
perscribō, -ere, perscripsī, perscriptus, write out
persequor, -sequī, -secūtus, follow up, pursue,
 punish, avenge
persevērō, 1, persist, continue
persōna, -ae, f., part, character, personage
personō, -āre, personuī, personitus, resound
perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, see (through,
 clearly), perceive, examine
perspicuus, -a, -um, clear, manifest
perstō, -āre, -stitī, -stātūrus, persist, continue
 standing
persuādeo, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus, persuade

perterreō, -ēre, -terruī, -territus, frighten
 thoroughly, scare thoroughly, alarm
pertimēscō -ere, pertimuī, —, become
 thoroughly alarmed; fear, dread
pertinācia, -ae, f., obstinacy
pertināciter, adv., persistently
pertineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentūrus, extend (to),
 pertain to, belong to, concern
pertrāctō, 1, touch, investigate
pertrānseō, -īre, -ivī, -itūrus, pass through
perturbō, 1, disturb, alarm, throw into confusion
perturbātiō, -ōnis, f., confusion
pervagor, 1, wander through, spread through,
 pervade
pervenio, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come (through),
 arrive (at), reach, attain
pervetus, gen. -eris, very old, most ancient
pēs, pedis, m., foot; **pedibus**, on foot
pessimus, see malus
pestifer, -era, -erum, destructive
pestis, -is, f., plague, destruction, curse, ruin
petitiō, -ōnis, f., candidacy
petitor, -ōris, m., candidate
petō, -ere, petivī, petitus, seek, ask, beg; attack
petulantia, -ae, f., wantonness
pexus, -a, -um, combed
Phaedimus, -ī, m., Phaedimus, *one of Niobe's sons*
pharetra, -ae, f., quiver
Pharsālus, -ī, f., Pharsalus, *a town in Thessaly*
Philēmōn, -onis, m., Philemon, *husband of Baucis*
Philippī, -ōrum, m. pl., Philippi, *a city in Macedonia*
Philippus, -ī, m., Philip
Philistiōn, -ōnis, m., Philistion
philosophia, -ae, f., philosophy
philosophus, -ī, m., philosopher
Phoebus, -ī, m., Phoebus, Apollo
Phrygius, -a, -um, Phrygian
pictūra, -ae, f., picture, painting
pictus, -a, -um, painted
pietās, -tātis, f., dutiful conduct, devotion, piety
piger, -gra, -grum, reluctant, slow, lazy, dull
piget, -ēre, piguit, it grieves
pigrē, adv., slowly, reluctantly
pila, -ae, f., ball, ballplaying

pilula, -ae, *f.*, pill
pīlum, -ī, *n.*, spear (*for throwing*), javelin
piscis, -is, *m.*, fish
piscor, 1, fish
Pisistratus, -ī, *m.*, Pisistratus, *a tyrant of Athens*
Pisō, -ōnis, *m.*, Piso
pius, -a, -um, dutiful, righteous, pious, devoted, loyal, loving
Pius, -ī, *m.*, Pius
placeō, -ēre, **placuī**, **placitus**, be pleasing to, please; *impers.*, it seems best, (he) decides, it is decided by, **placet**, it pleases (him), *i.e.*, (he) decides, be decided
placidus, -a, -um, gentle, calm
plācō, 1, appease
plāga, -ae, *f.*, blow; disaster
plānē, *adv.*, plainly
plangor, -ōris, *m.*, beating (*of the breast*); shrieking
plānitiēs, -iēī, *f.*, level ground, plain
planta, -ae, *f.*, sprout, twig
plānus, -a, -um, level, plane
Platō, -ōnis, *m.*, Plato, *a Greek philosopher*
plaudō, -ere, **plausī**, **plausus**, applaud
plausus, -ūs, *m.*, clapping of hands, applause
plēbs, **plēbis**, *f.*, people, common people
plēctrum, -ī, *n.*, pick (*for striking the lyre*)
Plēiades, -um, *f.*, Pleiades, *the seven daughters of Atlas*
plēnus, -a, -um, full, abounding in
plērīque, -aeque, -aque, most, the majority
plērumque, *adv.*, usually
plexus, -a, -um, woven
plōrō, 1, cry out, wail, lament
Plōtius, -tī, *m.*, Plotius
plūma, -ae, *f.*, feather
plumbum, -ī, *n.*, lead
plūrēs, *see multus*
plūrimum, *adv.*, very much, most, especially, *see multum*
plūrimus, *see multus*
plūs, *see multum, multus*
pōcillātor, -ōris, *m.*, cupbearer
pōculum, -ī, *n.*, cup

poena, -ae, *f.*, penalty, punishment; **poenam dō**, pay the penalty
Poenī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians
Poenicus, *see Pūnicus*
Poenus, -a, -um, Punic; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Carthaginians
poēta, -ae, *m.*, poet
poēticus, -a, -um, poetic
Poggius, -ī, *m.*, Poggio
pol! *interj.*, by Pollux!
poliō, -īre, **polīvī**, **polītus**, polish
pollex, -icis, *m.*, thumb
polliceor, **pollicērī**, **pollicitus**, promise
pollicitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, promise
Pollux, -cis, *m.*, Pollux
pōmārium, -rī, *n.*, orchard
pōmifer, -era, -erum, fruit-bearing
pompa, -ae, *f.*, parade, procession
Pompeiānus, -a, -um, of Pompeii
Pompeius, -peī, *m.*, Pompey
Pompōnius, -nī, *m.*, Pomponius
Pomptīnae palūdēs, Pontine Marshes, *south of Rome*
Pomptīnus, -a, -um, Pontine
pōmum, -ī, *n.*, fruit, apple, berry
pondus, **ponderis**, *n.*, weight
pōnō, -ere, **posuī**, **positus**, put, place, set, pitch, lay aside, serve, lay down; *pass.*, be situated, depend upon; w. **castra**, pitch
pōns, **pontis**, *m.*, bridge
pontifex, **pontificis**, *m.*, priest
pontificātus, -ūs, *m.*, pontificate
pontus, -ī, *m.*, sea
Pontus, -ī, *m.*, Pontus, *the region south of the Black Sea*
poples, -litis, *m.*, knee
poposcī, *see poscō*
populāris, -e, popular
populor, 1, destroy
populus, -ī, *m.*, people; *pl.*, peoples
Porcius, -a, -um, Porcian
porrigō, -ere, **porrēxī**, **porrēctus**, stretch out, extend
porrō, *adv.*, then

- porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, door
portentum, -ī, *n.*, portent
Porthaōn, -ōnis, *m.*, a mythological character
porticus, -ūs, *f.*, colonnade, gallery, porch
portō, 1, carry
portus, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port
poscō, -ere, **poposcī**, —, demand, call for, ask
possessiō, -ōnis, *f.*, possession
possideō, -ēre, **possēdī**, **possessus**, own, possess
possum, **posse**, **potuī**, —, can, can do, be able;
 multum (**plūs**, **plūrimum**) **possum**, be very powerful
post, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, behind; after, later, since: **paulō post**, a little later
postea, *adv.*, afterwards, later
posteaquam, *conj.*, after
posteritās, -tātis, *f.*, the future, posterity
posterus, -a, -um, following, next: in **posterum**, for the future: *as noun, m. pl.*, posterity, descendants
posthāc, *adv.*, hereafter
postis, -is, *m.*, doorpost; *pl.*, door
postpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, put after, esteem less
postquam, *conj.*, after
postrēmō, *adv.*, at last, finally: in short
postrēmus, -a, -um, last
postrīdiē, *adv.*, on the next day
postulō, 1, demand
potēns, *gen. potentis*, strong, powerful
potentia, -ae, *f.*, power
potestās, -tātis, *f.*, power, opportunity
pōtiō, -ōnis, *f.*, drink
potior, **potirī**, **potitus**, get possession of, gain possession of (*w. gen. or abl.*)
potissimum, *adv.*, especially, above all, in preference to all others
potius, *adv.*, rather
prae, *prep. w. abl.*, before; in comparison with
praeacūtus, -a, -um, pointed
praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -itus, offer, hold forth, furnish, present, show
praecēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go before, precede
praeceps, *gen. praecipitis*, headlong, rash; rushing, steep; in **praeceps**, headfirst
praeceptum, -ī, *n.*, precept, rule; instructions
praecipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, instruct, direct, lay down a rule
praecipitō, 1, rush headlong, sink
praecipuē, *adv.*, especially
praeclārus, -a, -um, brilliant, remarkable
praecūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus, shut, close, hinder, impede
praecō, **praecōnis**, *m.*, announcer, crier, herald
praecōnium, -nī, *n.*, public praise
praecordia, -ōrum, *n.*, breast, heart
praecurrō, -ere, -cucurrī (-currī), -cursūrus, run before, precede, excel
praeda, -ae, *f.*, loot, prey
praedātor, -ōris, *m.*, robber
praedicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, proclamation
praedicō, 1, announce, declare, say, proclaim
praedicō, -ere, -dixī, -dictus, predict, foretell
praediolum, -ī, *n.*, small estate
praeditus, -a, -um, endowed, possessing
praedium, -dī, *n.*, farm, estate
praedō, -ōnis, *m.*, pirate
praedor, 1, loot
praedūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, extend
praefātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, preface, prologue
praefectūra, -ae, *f.*, prefecture
praefectus, -ī, *m.*, commander, prefect
praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, carry before, prefer
praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, put *or* place in charge of, set over, put in command of
praefor, 1, say, beforehand, preface
praefulgeō, -ēre, —, —, beam forth, shine greatly
praelambō, -ere, —, —, wash lightly
praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, send ahead
praemium, -mī, *n.*, reward, prize
praemūniō = **mūniō**
praenōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus, learn beforehand
praeparō, 1, prepare
praepōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, prefer
praeproperus, -a, -um, too hasty, sudden
praerumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptus, break off
praescius, -a, -um, foreknowing, foreseeing

praescribō, -ere, -scripsī, -scriptus, direct, require of
praescriptum, -ī, n., order
praesēns, gen. praesentis, present, in person, evident; providential
praesentia, -ae, f., presence; **in praesentiā**, for the present
praesentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus, foresee, look forward to
praesertim, adv., especially
praesidium, -dī, n., garrison, guard, fortification; protection, aid, help
praestāns, gen. praestantis, outstanding, preeminent
praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus, stand before, excel; guarantee; offer, perform, show; **praestat, impers.**, it is better
praestō, adv., at hand, ready
praestōlor, 1, wait for
praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be in charge of, be in command of
praesūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus, undertake
praeter, prep. w. acc., besides, contrary to, beyond; except
praetereā, adv., besides, furthermore, moreover
praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itus, go by, pass by, omit; outstrip
praeterhāc, adv., besides, moreover
praeteritus, -a, -um, past; *as noun, n. pl.*, the past
praetermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go, omit, pass over
praeterquam, adv., other than, *conj.*, except
praetor, -ōris, m., praetor (*an official*), judge, *a Roman judicial magistrate*
praetōrium, -rī, n., headquarters
praetōrius, -a, -um, praetorian; *as noun, m.*, ex-praetor
praetūra, -ae, f., the praetorship
praevalēō, -ēre, -valuī, -valitūrus, prevail
prandium, -dī, n., lunch
prātum, -ī, n., meadow
prāvus, -a, -um, crooked, vicious, depraved
precor, 1, entreat, pray

prehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus, grasp, seize, catch
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, press, press hard, oppress, crowd; cover
prēndō =prehendō
prēndō, -ere, prēndī, prēnsus, seize
prēnsātiō, -ōnis, f., soliciting, canvassing
pretiōsus, -a, -um, costly
pretium, -tī, n., price; reward
prex, precis, f., prayer, entreaty
pridem, adv., long ago; **w. iam**, now for a long time
prīdiē, adv., on the day before
prīmō, adv., at first
primum, adv., first, in the first place, at first, for the first time; **w. quam**, as soon as possible; **w. ut or cum**, as soon as
prīmus, -a, -um, first, foremost; **in prīmīs**, especially
prīnceps, prīncipis, adj. and noun, m., chief, first (man), leader, emperor; **prīnceps**, under the direction of
prīncipātus, -ūs, m., first place, leadership
prīncipiō, adv., in the first place
prīncipium, -pī, n., beginning
prior, prius, former, first; **prior, -ōris, m.**, prior
prīscus, -a, -um, ancient, primitive
Prīscus, -ī, m., Priscus
prīstinus, -a, -um, former
prius, compar. adv., before, first
priusquam (prius... quam), conj., before
prīvātīm, adv., privately
prīvātus, -a, -um, private; *as noun, m.*, private citizen
prīvō, 1, deprive
prō, prep. w. abl., in front of, before, for, instead of, as, in accordance with, in proportion to, in behalf of, in return for, on account of, instead of, according to
proavus, -ī, m., great-grandfather
probitās, -tātis, f., honesty
probō, 1, prove; approve
probrum, -ī, n., disgraceful conduct
probus, -a, -um, upright
procācitās, -tātis, f., boldness, impudence

prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, go forward,
 advance, proceed
prōcērītās, -tātis, f., height, tallness
procul, adv., at a distance, far off
prōcumbō, -ere, -cubui, -cubitūrus, lie down,
 sink down
prōcūrō, 1, take care of
prōcurrō, -ere, -curri, -cursūrus, run forward
prōdeō, -ire, prōdiī, prōditus, go *or* come forth
prōdigiōsus, -a, -um, unnatural, strange
prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus, give (forth), hand
 down, betray, transmit
prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus, lead forth *or* bring
 out, induce, prolong, coax (*of a fire*)
proelior, 1, battle
proelium, -lī, n., battle
profānus, -a, -um, unholy, profane
profectiō, -ōnis, f., departure
profectō, adv., for a fact, certainly, doubtless
prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus, bring out, bring
 forth, produce, extend
professor, -ōris, m., professor
prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, accomplish
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus, set out, start,
 march, depart
profiteor, -ērī, professus, confess; offer, promise;
 register
prōfligātus, -a, -um, corrupt, unprincipled
profugiō, -ere, -fūgī, -fugitūrus, flee, escape
profugus, -ī, m., fugitive
profundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsus, waste
prōgeniēs, -iēī, f., descendants
prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus, proceed, step
 forward, advance
prōgnātus, -a, -um, descended
prohibeō, -ēre, -hibui, -hibitus, prevent, keep
 from, cut off, protect
prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus, throw, thrust
 (forward), abandon
proinde, adv., therefore
prōlabor, -ī, prōlāpsus, slip
prōlēs, -is, f., offspring, young son
prōloquor, -loquī, -locūtus, say
prōmiscuus, -a, -um, mixed

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, let go; promise;
prōmissus, -a, -um, long
prōmō, -ere, prōmpsī, prōmptus, give out,
 bring forth
prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus, move forward
prōmptus, -a, -um, ready
prōnūntiō, 1, announce, recite
prōnus, -a, -um, flat, headlong, steep
prōpāgō, 1, extend
prope, adv., almost; *prep. w. acc.*, near
prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus, drive away, dislodge
propemodum, adv., nearly, almost
prōpēnsus, -a, -um, coming near; inclined, ready
properē, adv., quickly
properō, 1, hasten, hurry (on)
propinquitās, -tātis, f., nearness
propinquus, -a, -um, near; *as noun, m.*, relative
propitius, -a, -um, favorable, kind
prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus, explain, present,
 offer, raise, propose
prōpositum, -ī, n., subject
proprius, -a, -um, (one's) own, characteristic of,
 belonging to, proper
propter, prep. w. acc., because of, on account of,
 for the sake of; *adv.*, near
propterea, adv., on this account; **propterea quod**,
 because
prōpugnātiō, -ōnis, f., defense, vindication
prōpugnō, 1, fight on the offensive, fight for,
 defend
prōra, -ae, f., prow
prōrogō, 1, prolong, continue
prōrsum, prōrsus, adv., forward; certainly
prōscriptiō, -ōnis, f., prescription, list of
 condemned
prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, pursue, address,
 accompany, follow (after)
Prōserpina, -ae, f., Proser'pina, wife of Pluto
prōsiliō, -ire, prōsiluī, —, leap forth
prōspectō, 1, look at, look for
prōspectus, -ūs, m., view
prosperus, -a, -um, favorable
prōspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectus, look out for *or*
 over, foresee, look forward to

prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī, -strātus, overthrow
prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, —, benefit, help, profit
prōtegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctus, cover
prōtinus, *adv.*, immediately, at once
prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectus, carry forward
prōverbium, -bī, *n.*, saying, proverb
prōvidentia, -ae, *f.*, foresight
prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus, foresee, provide.
 look out for
prōvincia, -ae, *f.*, province
prōvinciālis, -e, provincial
proximē, *adv.*, recently
proximus, -a, -um, nearest, last, next, very near;
as noun, n., neighborhood
prūdēns, *gen. prūdētis*, sensible, wise
prūdētia, -ae, *f.*, foresight, good sense, discretion
pruīna, -ae, *f.*, frost
pruīnōsus, -a, -um, frosty
prūnum, -ī, *n.*, plum
Prūsēnsis, -e, of Prusa, a Bithynian town
Psychē, -ēs, *f.*, Psyche
Ptolemaeus, -a, -um, public; Ptolemaic, Egyptian;
as noun, m., Ptolemy, general name for the
 Egyptian kings
pūblicē, *adv.*, publicly
pūblicō, 1, confiscate
pūblicus, -a, -um, public
Pūblilia, -ae, *f.*, Publilia
Pūblius, -lī, *m.*, Publius
pudet, -ēre, **puduit**, *impers.*, it makes ashamed
pudicitia, -ae, *f.*, virtue
pudicus, -a, -um, modest, chaste
pudor, -ōris, *m.*, (sense of) shame, modesty, sense
 of honor
puella, -ae, *f.*, girl
puer, **puerī**, *m.*, boy, child
puerilis, -e, boyish, childish, youthful
pueriliter, *adv.*, childishly, foolishly
pueritia, -ae, *f.*, childhood, boyhood
pugillārēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, writing tablets
pugna, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle
pugnō, 1, fight
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, beautiful; honorable, fine
pulchritūdō, -dinis, *f.*, beauty

pullus, -a, -um, dark-colored
pulsō, 1, dash against, beat
pulsus, *part. of pellō*
pulvīnārius, -a, -um, of or belonging to the
 couches of the gods
pulvis, -eris, *m.*, dust
Pūnicus, -a, -um, Punic, Carthaginian
pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, punish
puppis, -is, *f.*, *acc. -im, abl. -ī*, stern; ship
pūrgō, 1, cleanse
pūritās, -tātis, *f.*, cleanness, purity
purpurātus, -a, -um, purple
purpureus, -a, -um, purple
purpurō, 1, beautify, adorn
pūrus, -a, -um, clean, pure
pusillus, -a, -um, very little, petty
putō, 1, think, consider
Pyramus, -ī, *m.*, Pyramus
Pŷthōn, -ōnis, Python, a mythological serpent
Pŷrēnaei montēs, Pyrenees Mountains

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus**
quā, *adv.*, where; *w. nē*, in any way
quadrāgēsīmus, -a, -um, the fortieth; *as noun, f.*,
 a tax of one fortieth
quadrāgintā, forty
quadrīngentī, -ae, -a, four hundred
quadrupēs, -pedis, *m.*, horse, steed
quaerō, -ere, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, seek, inquire,
 ask, examine
quaesō, -ere, —, —, beg
quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.*, investigation, trial; question
quaestiuncula, -ae, *f.*, a little question
quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor (a Roman official),
 treasury official
quaestus, -ūs, *m.*, gain, profit; business
quālis, -e, what kind of, what, such as, of what
 sort, of such a kind as; *w. tālis*, as
quālescūque, **quālecūque**, of whatever sort
quam, *adv. and conj.*, how, as; *w. comp.*, than; *w.*
superl., as . . . possible; **quam prīmum**, as soon
 as possible; **quam diū**, as long as, how long

quamlibet, *adv.*, according to inclination; however
much, to any extent
quamobrem (**quam ob rem**), *interrog. adv.*, for
what reason, why
quamquam, *conj.*, although; however; and yet
quamvis, *adv.*, however
quandō, *adv. and conj.*, when; at any time, ever
quandōquidem, *adv.*, since
quantuluscumque, **-lacumque**, **-lumcumque**,
however small
quantum, *adv.*, how much
quantus, **-a**, **-um**, how great, how much, what, as
(great *or* much as); **quantō... tantō**, the . . . the
quantuscumque, **-tatumque**, **-tumcumque**,
however great, however small
quāpropter, *adv.*, why, for what reason
quārē, *adv.*, why, wherefore; therefore
quartus, **-a**, **-um**, fourth; **quārtus decimus**,
fourteenth
quasi, *adv. and conj.*, as if, like, as it were
quatiō, **-ere**, **—**, **quassus**, shake, flutter
quattuor, four
-que, *conj.* (added to second word), (enclitic), and
quemadmodum, *adv.*, in what manner
queō, **quīre**, **quīvī**, **—**, be able, can
quercus, **-ūs**, *f.*, oak; garland
querēla, **-ae**, *f.*, complaint
querimōnia, **-ae**, *f.*, complaint
queror, **querī**, **questus**, complain
quī, **quae**, **quod**, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that;
interrog. adj., what; **quī**, **qua**, **quod**, *indef.*
adj., any
quia, *conj.*, because
quicumque, **quaecumque**, **quodcumque**, *rel.*
pron., whoever, whatever
quid, *adv.*, why
quīdam, **quaedam**, **quiddam** (*adj. quoddam*),
indef. pron., a certain one *or* thing; *adj.*, certain,
some, a, one
quidem, *adv.* (follows emphasized word), at least,
to be sure; **nē... quidem**, not even
quidnam, what in the world
quiēs, **quiētis**, *f.*, rest, sleep, quiet, repose
quiēscō, **-ere**, **quiēvī**, **quiētūrus**, be quiet, rest

quiētus, **-a**, **-um**, quiet, undisturbed; **quiētē**, *adv.*,
quietly
quīn, *conj.*, (but) that; *adv.*, why not; **etiam**, in
fact, moreover
Quīnctilis, **-e**, (of) July
quīngentī, **-ae**, **-a**, five hundred
quīnquāgintā, fifty
quīnque, five
quīnquennium, **-nī**, *n.*, five-year period
Quīntiliānus, **-ī**, *m.*, Quintilian
quīntus, **-a**, **-um**, fifth
Quīntus, **-ī**, *m.*, Quintus
quippe, *adv. and conj.*, surely, indeed
Quirīnālis (**mōns**), **-is**, *m.*, Quirinal Hill
Quirītēs, **-ium**, *m. pl.*, fellow citizens
quis, **quid**, *interrog. pron.*, who, what; **quid**, again;
quid quod, what of the fact that
quis, **quid**, *indef. pron.*, **quī**, **qua**, **quod**, *indef. adj.*,
any, anyone, anything (*usually after sī, nisi, nē*
or num)
quisnam, **quaenam**, **quidnam**, *interrog. pron.*,
who *or* what in the world
quispiam, **quaepiam**, **quidpiam** (**quodpiam**),
indef. pron., anyone, any; someone, something
quisquam, **quicquam**, *indef. pron.*, anyone,
anything, any; **neque quisquam**, not a single
one
quisque, **quidque**, *indef. pron.*, each one, each
thing, each, every
quisquis, **quicquid**, *rel. pron.*, whoever, whatever
quīvīs, **quaevīs**, **quidvīs**, *indef. pron.*, any
quō, *adv.*, where, wherefore, to which; **quō usque**,
how long; **quō modō**, how
quō, *conj.*, in order that, that; **quō minus**
(**quōminus**), that not
quoad, *conj.*, as long as
quōcumque, *adv.*, wherever
quod, *conj.*, because, that, since; **quod sī**, but if
quōmodō, *adv.*, how
quōmodōnam, *adv.*, how then
quondam, *adv.*, once (upon a time)
quoniam, *conj.*, since, because
quoque, *adv.*, also, even, too (*follows the word it*
emphasizes)

quot, *indeclinable adj.*, how many; as (many as), as
quotannīs, *adv.*, every year
quotiēns, *adv.*, as often as; how often
quotiēnscumque, *adv.*, as often as

R

radiō, 1, shine, gleam
radius, *-dī, m.*, rod; ray, beam; spoke
rādīx, *-dīcis, f.*, root, radish
raeda, *-ae, f.*, carriage, bus
rāmulus, *-ī, m.*, branch
rāmus, *-ī, m.*, branch
rana, *-ae, f.*, frog
rapiditās, *-tātis, f.*, swiftness
rapidus, *-a, -um*, fierce, swift
rapīna, *-ae, f.*, plunder, robbery
rapīō, *-ere, rapuī, raptus*, seize, carry off,
 hurry along
raptor, *-ōris, m.*, thief
rārō, *adv.*, rarely
rārus, *-a, -um*, rare
ratīō, *-ōnis, f.*, reckoning, account, plan, manner,
 reason, consideration, method, theory, system,
 judgment, means, nature
ratis, *-is, f.*, raft
rebelliō, *-ōnis, f.*, rebellion
Rebilus, *-ī, m.*, Rebilus
recēdō, *-ere, recessī, recessūrus*, withdraw,
 go back
recēns, *gen. recentis*, new, recent, fresh
recēnseō, *-ēre, recēnsuī, recēnsus*, count again,
 review
receptāculum, *-ī, n.*, receptacle, shelter
receptus, *-ūs, m.*, retreat, place of refuge
recidō, *-ere, recidī, recāsūrus*, fall
recingō, *-ere, recīnxī, recīnctus*, loosen
recipiō, *-ere, recēpī, receptus*, take (back),
 receive, recover; **mē recipiō**, withdraw, recover,
 retire, retreat
recitātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, reading, recitation
recitātor, *-ōris, m.*, reader, reciter
recitō, 1, recite, read aloud
reclinō, 1, bend back; *pass.*, lean

reclūdō, *-ere, reclūsī, reclūsus*, disclose, reveal;
 shut off *or* up
recognōscō, *-ere, recognōvī, recognitus*,
 recognize; review
recolō, *-ere, recolui, recultus*, renew
reconciliātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, reconciliation
reconciliō, 1, reconcile
recondō, *-ere, recondidī, reconditus*, hide; close
recordātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, recollection
recordor, 1, call to mind
recreō, 1, recreate, restore; *w. mē*, recover
rēctē, *adv.*, rightly, correctly
rēctus, *-a, -um*, right; **rēctā**, *adv.*, straight;
see regō
recumbō, *-ere, recubui, —*, lie down; fall
recuperō, 1, get back, recover
recursō, 1, run back and forth
recūsātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, declining
recūsō, 1, refuse, reluctant to do
reddō, *-ere, reddidī, redditus*, give (back),
 render, return, restore, make, deliver; reflect;
 vomit
redeō, *-īre, rediī, reditūrus*, go back, return
redigō, *-ere, redēgī, redāctus*, bring (back),
 drive back, reduce
redimō, *-ere, redēmī, redēptus*, buy back,
 ransom
redintegrō, 1, renew
reditus, *-ūs, m.*, return, revenue
redolēns, *gen. —entis*, fragrant
redormiō, *-īre, redormivī, redormitus*,
 sleep again
redūcō, *-ere, redūxī, reductus*, lead back, bring
 back, restore
redundō, 1, overflow, rodound
referō, *referre, rettulī, relātus*, bring *or* carry
 (back), lay *or* bring before, report, reply,
 reproduce; **pedem referō**, withdraw; **grātiā**
referō, show gratitude
reficiō, *-ere, refēcī, refectus*, repair, renew,
 refresh, restore, recruit, reinforce
refugiō, *-ere, refūgī, refugitūrus*, flee back, flee
 for safety, escape
regerō, *-ere, regessī, regestus*, throw back

rēgia, -ae, *f.*, palace
rēgīna, -ae, *f.*, queen
regiō, -ōnis, *f.*, district, region
rēgius, -a, -um, royal
rēgnō, 1, reign, rule
rēgnum, -ī, *n.*, royal power, kingdom, rule
regō, -ere, **rēxī**, **rēctus**, guide, rule, direct, control; **rēctus**, straight
regredior, -ī, **regressus**, return
Rēgulus, -ī, *m.*, Regulus
reiciō, -ere, **reiēcī**, **reiectus**, throw, drive back, reject; vomit
relābor, **relābī**, **relāpsus**, slip back
relanguēscō, -ere, -**languī**, —, become weak, sink down
relaxō, 1, relax
relevō, 1, lighten, relieve, rest
religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, religion, superstition, scrupulousness, sacredness
religiōsē, *adv.*, religiously
religiōsus, -a, -um, sacred
relinquō, -ere, **reliquī**, **relictus**, leave (behind), abandon; leave unmentioned
reliquiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, remains, relics
reliquus, -a, -um, remaining, rest (of), left, future: **w. tempus**, the future; **reliquum est**, it remains
remaneō, -ēre, **remānsī**, **remānsūrus**, remain (behind)
remedium, -dī, *n.*, remedy
rēmigō, -āre, —, —, row
remigrō, 1, go back
remissiō, -ōnis, *f.*, forgiveness, relaxation, recreation
remissus, -a, -um, gentle, mild
remittō, -ere, **remīsī**, **remissus**, send *or* throw back, remit, relax; drop
remoror, 1, hold back, delay
removeō, -ēre, **remōvī**, **remōtus**, move back, remove; **remōtus**, -a, -um, remote
rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar
Rēmus, -ī, *m.*, a Rē'man
renīdeō, -ere, —, —, shine; smile
renovō, 1, renew
renūntiō, 1, report, declare elected

reparō, 1, restore
repellō, -ere, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, drive back, repulse
repente, *adv.*, suddenly
repentinus, -a, -um, sudden
reperiō, -īre, **repperī**, **repertus**, find, discover
repetō, -ere, -**īvī**, -**ītus**, seek back, seek again, demand; repeat
repleō, -ēre, **replēvī**, **replētus**, fill again
repōnō, -ēre, **reposuī**, **repositus**, place
reportō, 1, carry *or* bring back
reposcō, -ere, **repoposcī**, —, demand in return
repraesentō, 1, show, represent
reprehendō, -ere, **reprehendī**, **reprehēnsus**, (hold back), censure, criticize
reprimō, -ere, **repressī**, **repressus**, stop, press back, check, thwart
rēptō, -āre, —, —, creep, crawl
repudiō, 1, divorce, reject, scorn
repugnō, 1, oppose, fight against, resist
reputō, 1, compute, ponder
requiēs, -ētis, *f.*, rest
requiēscō, -ere, -**ēvī**, -**ētus**, rest, repose
requirō, -ere, **requīsivī**, **requīsītus**, hunt up, search for, inquire; demand; miss
rēs, **reī**, *f.*, thing, fact, matter, affair, object, circumstance; **novae rēs**, **novārum rerum**, *f. pl.*, revolution; **rēs frūmentāria**, **reī frūmentāriae**, *f.*, grain supply, supplies; **rēs militāris**, military affairs, art of war, warfare; **rēs pūblica**, republic, state, public interest, public affairs, government, state; **rēs gestae**, deeds
rescindō, -ere, **rescidī**, **rescissus**, cut down
rescribō, -ere, **rescripsī**, **rescriptus**, write back
resecō, -āre, **resecuī**, **resectus**, cut off
reservō, 1, reserve
resideō, -ēre, **resēdī**, —, remain, be left, sit down
resistō, -ere, **restitī**, —, stand against; resist, stop
resolūtiō, -ōnis, *f.*, relaxing, looseness; solution
resolvō, -ere, **resolvī**, **resolūtus**, loosen, solve
respiciō, -ere, **respexī**, **respectus**, look back (at), look at, consider
resplendeō, -ēre, —, —, shine brightly, gleam
respondeō, -ēre, **respondī**, **respōnsus**, reply, answer

respōnsum, -ī, *n.*, answer, reply
respuō, -ere, **respuī**, —, reject
restinguō, -ere, **restīnxī**, **restīnctus**, extinguish
restituō, -ere, **restituī**, **restitūtus**, restore
restō, -āre, **restitī**, —, remain, withstand, be left
restringō, -ere, **restrīnxī**, **restrictus**, bind back, restrict
resupīnus, -a, -um, on one's back
resūmō, -ere, **resūmpsī**, **resūmptus**, take up again, resume
resurgō = **surgō**
retardō, 1, check, hinder
reticeō, -ēre, **reticuī**, —, be or keep silent
retineō, -ēre, **retinuī**, **retentus**, hold back, restrain, keep, hold to
retorqueō, -ēre, **retorsī**, **retortus**, turn back
retrahō, -ere, **retrāxī**, **retrāctus**, drag back
retrō, *adv.*, back, backward
retrūdō, -ere, —, **retrūsus**, thrust back
retundō, -ere, **rettudī**, **retūsus**, beat back
rettulī, *see referō*
reus, -ī, *m.*, defendant
revellō, -ere, **revellī**, **revulsus**, tear away
revereor, **reverēri**, **reveritus**, respect
revertō, -ere, **revertī**, **reversus**, (*sometimes deponent*), turn back, return
revīsō, -ere, —, —, revisit
revocābilis, -e, revocable
revocō, 1, recall, call back
revolō, 1, fly back
rēx, **rēgis**, *m.*, king
Rhēnus, -ī, *m.*, Rhine river
rhētor, -ōris, *m.*, rhetorician, orator
rhētorica, -ae, *f.*, rhetoric
rhētoricus, -a, -um, rhetorical
Rhodanus, -ī, *m.*, Rhone river
rictus, -ūs, *m.*, jaws
rīdeō, -ēre, **rīsī**, **rīsus**, laugh (at)
rīdiculus, -a, -um, absurd
rigeō, -ēre, —, —, be stiff
rigidus, -a, -um, stiff (with cold)
rigor, -ōris, *m.*, stiffness
riguus, -a, -um, well-watered
rīma, -ae, *f.*, crack

rīmor, 1, tear up; examine
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank (*of a river*)
rīte, *adv.*, duly, rightly
rōborō, 1, strengthen
rōbur, **rōboris**, *n.*, oak; strength
rōbustus, -a, -um, (of oak), hardy, robust
rogātus, -ūs, *m.*, request
rogitō, 1, keep on asking
rogō, 1, ask, beg; propose, pass
rogus, -ī, *m.*, funeral pile, grave
Rōma, -ae, *f.*, Rome
Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman; *as noun*, a Roman, *m. pl.*, the Romans
rosa, -ae, *f.*, rose
rostrum, -ī, *n.*, prow (of a ship); beak, mouth, bill
rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel; *pl.*, chariot
rotundus, -a, -um, round
rubēns, *gen. -entis*, red
ruber, **rubra**, **rubrum**, red
rubor, -ōris, *m.*, redness, blush; modesty
rudis, -e, untrained, ignorant, rough
Rūfus, -ī, *m.*, Rufus
rūgōsus, -a, -um, wrinkled
ruīna, -ae, *f.*, ruin, destruction
rūmor, -ōris, *m.*, rumor
rumpō, -ere, **rūpī**, **ruptus**, break, pierce
rūpēs, -is, *f.*, cliff, rock
rūrsus, *adv.*, again
rūs, **rūris**, *n.*, country; farm; *pl.*, fields
rūsticānus, -a, -um, rural
rūsticatiō, -ōnis, *f.*, living in the country
rūsticor, 1, go into the country
rūsticus, -a, -um, rustic

S

Sabella, -ae, *f.*, Sabella
Sabellus, -a, -um, Sabellian, Sabine
Sabidus, -ī, *m.*, Sabidus
Sabīna, -ae, *f.*, Sabine woman
Sabīnus, -a, -um, Sabine; *as noun, pl.*, the Sabines, *a people of Italy*
sacculus, -ī, *m.*, little sack
saccus, -ī, *m.*, sack, bag

sacer, sacra, **sacrum**, sacred; *n. pl.*, sacred rites, ceremonies
 sacerdos, -dōtis, *m. and f.*, priest, priestess
 sacerdotium, -tī, *n.*, priesthood
 sacramentum, -ī, *n.*, oath
 sacrarium, -rī, *n.*, shrine
 sacrificium, -cī, *n.*, sacrifice
 sacrificō, 1, sacrifice
 sacrōsāctus, -a, -um, sacred, inviolable
 saeculāris, -e, secular
 saeculum (saeculum), -ī, *n.*, age, generation
 saepe, *adv.*, often
 saepēs, -is, *f.*, hedge, fence; enclosure
 saeviō, -īre, saevīvī, saevītus, rage, rant
 saevitia, -ae, *f.*, fierceness
 saevus, -a, -um, cruel, fierce
 sagāx, *gen. -ācis*, keen
 sagitta, -ae, *f.*, arrow
 sagittārius, -rī, *m.*, bowman
 sagittifer, -fera, -ferum, arrow-bearing
 sagulum, -ī, *n.*, small military cloak
 sāl, salis, *m.*, salt
 salarium, -rī, *n.*, pension, stipend
 salignus, -a, -um, of willow
 Salii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Salii or "Jumpers" (*priests of Mars*)
 saliō, -īre, saluī, saltūrus, jump, beat
 saltātor, -ōris, *m.*, dancer
 saltō, 1, dance
 salūbris, -e, wholesome, healthy, healthful
 salūbritās, -tātis, *f.*, health
 salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, health, safety, greeting
 salūtātor, -ōris, *m.*, greeter, visitor
 salūtō, 1, greet, pay one's respects
 salvē, salvēte, be well, greetings, hail
 salvus, -a, -um, safe, well, solvent
 Samos, -ī, *f.*, Samos, *an island in the Aegean Sea*
 sānābilis, -e, curable
 sānciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus, decree
 sāncē, *adv.*, religiously, scrupulously
 sānctus, -a, -um, sacred, holy, venerable, upright
 sānē, *adv.*, indeed, truly, of course
 Sanga, -ae, *m.*, Sanga
 sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood

sānitās, -tātis, *f.*, sanity, soundness of mind
 sānō, 1, make sound, cure
 sānus, -a, -um, sound, in one's right mind, sane
 sapiēns, *gen. sapientis*, wise; *as noun, m.*, philosopher
 sapienter, *adv.*, wisely
 sapientia, -ae, *f.*, wisdom
 sapiō, -ere, sapīvī, —, taste, savor
 sarcina, -ae, *f.*, burden, load
 Sardēs, -ium, *f. pl.*, Sardis, *capital of Lydia, in Asia Minor*
 Sardinia, -ae, *f.*, Sardinia
 satellites, -litis, *m. and f.*, attendant; accomplice
 satietās, -tātis, *f.*, abundance, satiety
 satiō, 1, satisfy, sate
 satira, -ae, *f.*, miscellany, satire
 satis, *adv. and indeclinable adj.*, enough, rather; quite, sufficiently; *comp.*, satius, better
 satisfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, satisfy
 Sāturnālia, -ium, *n. pl.*, the Saturnalia, *a festival in honor of Saturn*
 Sāturnius, -a, -um, of Saturn, Saturnian
 Sāturnus, -ī, *m.*, Saturn
 saturō, 1, fill, saturate
 Satyrus, -ī, *m.*, Satyr, wood-deity
 sauciō, 1, wound
 saxum, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone
 scaena, -ae, *f.*, stage, theater
 scaenicus, -a, -um, of the theater, of the stage; *w. lūdī*, stage plays
 scandō, -ere, —, —, rise, climb
 scelerātē, *adv.*, wickedly, impiously
 scelerātus, -a, -um, wicked, accursed, criminal
 scelus, sceleris, *n.*, crime, wickedness
 scēptrum, -ī, *n.*, scepter
 schola, -ae, *f.*, school
 scholāris, -e, of or belonging to a school
 scholasticus, -a, -um, scholastic; *as noun, m.*, student
 scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge
 scīlicet, *adv.*, of course, doubtless
 scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, cut, split
 sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, know, know how
 Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Scipio

scītē, *adv.*, skillfully, well
scitor, 1, inquire
scrība, -ae, *m.*, secretary
scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write
scrīptor, -ōris, *m.*, writer
scrīptum, -ī, *n.*, writing
scrīptūra, -ae, *f.*, writing, Scripture
scrūtōr, 1, examine thoroughly
sculpō, -ere, sculpsī, sculptus, carve
scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield
Scythae, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the Scythians, *people*
beyond the Black Sea
sē, *acc. and abl. of suī*
sēcēdō, -ere, sēcēssī, sēcēssūrus, secede,
withdraw, go away, retire
sēcernō, -ere, sēcērvī, sēcērtus, separate
sēcēssus, -ūs, *m.*, departure, retirement
secō, secāre, secuī, sectus, cut
sēcērtō, *adv.*, in private, secretly
sectus, -a, -um, cut off
sēcum = cum sē
secundum, *prep. w. acc.*, following, according to,
behind, next to
secundus, -a, -um, second, favorable: successful;
w. rēs, prosperity
Secundus, -ī, *m.*, Secundus
secūris, -is, *f.*, ax
sed, *conj.*, but
sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus, sit, sit down, lie idle
sēdēs, -is, *f.*, abode, place: seat
sedīle, -is, *n.*, seat
sēditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, rebellion, sedition
sēdō, 1, quiet, bring to an end, stop
sēdūcō, -ere, sēdūxī, sēductus, set aside
sēductor, -ōris, *m.*, misleader, seducer
sēductus, -a, -um, separated
sēdulitās, -tātis, *f.*, diligence
sēdulō, *adv.*, busily, carefully, eagerly
sēdulus, -a, -um, diligent
segnitiēs, -eī, *f.*, slowness, inactivity
sēgregō, 1, exclude
sēiungō, -ere, sēiūnxī, sēiūctus, disjoint,
separate, sever
Seleucus, -ī, *m.*, Seleucus, *king of Syria*

sella, -ae, *f.*, chair, seat, stool
semel, *adv.*, once
sēmen, -minis, *n.*, seed
sēmēsus, -a, -um, half-eaten
sēmibarbarus, -a, -um, half-barbarian
sēminārium, -rī, *n.*, nursery
semita, -ae, *f.*, path, footpath
semper, *adv.*, always
sempiternus, -a, -um, everlasting, perpetual
Semprōnius, -a, -um, Sempronian
senātor, -ōris, *m.*, senator
senātōrius, -a, -um, senatorial
senātus, -ūs, *m.*, senate
Seneca, -ae, *m.*, Seneca
senecta, -ae, *f.*, old age
senectūs, -tūtis, *f.*, old age
senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, grow old
senex, senis, *m.*, old man; *adj.*, old; *comp.* senior
senīlis, -e, of an old man
senior, -ius, older: aged
sēnsus, -ūs, *m.*, feeling; consciousness
sententia, -ae, *f.*, feeling, opinion; proposal;
meaning, sentiment
sentīna, -ae, *f.*, sewage, sewer
sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel, think, realize,
vote, perceive, know
sentis, -is, *m.*, thorn, briar
sepliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultus, bury
sēpōnō, -ere, sēposuī, sēpositus, separate, assign
septem, seven
September, -bris, -bre, (of) September
septentriōnēs, -um, *m. pl.*, seven plow-oxen (*the*
seven stars of the constellation Great Bear or
Big Dipper), north
septimus, -a, -um, seventh
septingentī, -ae, -a, seven hundred
sepulchrum, -ī, *n.*, tomb
sepultūra, -ae, *f.*, burial
Sēquana, -ae, *m.*, the Seine river
Sēquanus, -a, -um, Sequanian; *as noun. m. pl.*,
the Sequanians
sequor, sequī, secūtus, follow, pursue, seek
serēnō, 1, clear up
serēnus, -a, -um, quiet, clear, serene

Serēnus, -ī, *m.*, Serenus
Sergius, -gī, *m.*, Sergius
sērius, -a, -um, grave, serious; *comp. adv.*, later
sermō, -ōnis, *m.*, conversation, talk, speech, report
serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, plant, sow, produce; satus, -a, -um, sprung from
sērō, *adv.*, late
serpēns, *gen. -entis, m. and f.*, snake
serpō, -ere, serpsī, serptus, crawl
sertum, -ī, *n.*, wreath of flowers, garland
sērus, -a, -um, late
serva, -ae, *f.*, slave
servilis, -e, of a slave
serviō, -īre, servīvī, servītus, be a slave (to), serve, have regard for, court
servitium, -tī, *n.*, slavery
servitūs, -tūtis, *f.*, slavery
Servius Tullius, *m.*, Servius Tullius, a Roman king
servō, 1, save, preserve, guard, keep
servus, -ī, *m.*, slave
sescentī, -ae, -a, six hundred
sēsē, *acc. and abl. of suī*
seu, *see sive*
sevērē, *adv.*, severely
sevērītās, -tātis, *f.*, severity
sevērus, -a, -um, stern, severe
sex, six
sexāgintā, sixty
Sextilis, -e, August
sextus, -a, -um, sixth
sexus, -ūs, *m.*, sex
sī, *conj.*, if
Sibylla, -ae, *f.*, the Sibyl, a prophetess
Sibyllīnus, -a, -um, Sibylline
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way
sīca, -ae, *f.*, dagger
sīcārius, -rī, *m.*, assassin
siccō, 1, dry up
siccus, -a, -um, dry
Sicilia, -ae, *f.*, Sicily
Siculī, -ōrum, *m.*, Sicilians
sīcutī (sīcut), *adv.*, just as, as if
sīdus, sīderis, *n.*, star, constellation
sigilla, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, small statues

signifer, -ferī, *m.*, standard bearer
significātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, signal, meaning
significō, 1, indicate, mean, show
signō, 1, seal, mark
signum, -ī, *n.*, sign, token, signal; standard; seal, mark
Silānus, -ī, *m.*, Silanus
silentium, -tī, *n.*, silence
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods
Silēnus, -ī, *m.*, Silenus
sileō, -ēre, siluī, —, be silent, leave unmentioned
silva, -ae, *f.*, forest, woods
Silvānus, -ī, *m.*, Silvanus
silvestris, -e, wild
Simeōn, -ōnis, *m.*, Simeon
similis, -e, like, similar
similitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, likeness, resemblance
simplex, -plicis, simple, single
simplicitās, -tātis, *f.*, simplicity, frankness, naturalness
simpliciter, *adv.*, plainly, openly
simul, *adv.*, at the same time, at once, together;
simul atque (ac), as soon as
simulācrum, -ī, *n.*, figure, image, likeness
simulātor, -ōris, *m.*, pretender
simulō, 1, pretend
simultās, -tatis, *f.*, rivalry, enmity
sīn, *conj.*, but if
sincērus, -a, -um, pure, chaste
sine, *prep. w. abl.*, without
singillātīm, *adv.*, one by one, individually, singly
singulāris, -e, one by one, remarkable, unique, separate
singulārius, -a, -um, single, separate; singular
singulī, -ae, -a, *pl. only*, separate, each, one after another, one at a time; one each, single
sinister, -tra, -trum, left; *comp.*, sinisterior, the left
sinō, -ere, sīvī, situs, allow
Sinōpēnsis, -e, of Sinope, a Greek colony; as *noun, m. pl.*, the people of Sinope
sinus, -ūs, *m.*, fold; bosom; bay
Sipylus, -ī, *m.*, Sipylus, a son of Niobe
sistō, -ere, stitī, status, place; stop, check

sitiō, -īre, sitīvī, —, be thirsty
sitis, -is, f., thirst
situs, -a, -um, placed; **situm est**, it lies
situs, -ūs, m., position
sīve (seu), conj., or if, or; **sīve (seu)... sīve (seu)**,
 whether . . . or, either . . . or
sōbrius, -a, -um, sober
socer, -erī, m., father-in-law
societās, -tātis, f., fellowship, alliance
socius, -cī, m., comrade, companion, associate,
 ally, accomplice; *pl.*, allies, provincials
Sōcratēs, -is, m., Socrates
sodālis, -is, m., companion
sōl, sōlis, m., sun
sōlācium, -cī, n., comfort
solea, -ae, f., sandal, shoe
soleō, -ēre, solitus, semideponent, be used to, be
 accustomed
solidus, -a, -um, solid
sōlitūdō, -dinis, f., wilderness, solitude
solitus, -a, -um, customary
sollemnis, -e, (annual), customary, appointed,
 solemn
sollertia, -ae, f., skill, ingenuity, adroitness
sollicitātiō, -ōnis, f., inciting
sollicitō, 1. stir up, disturb, incite to revolt, tamper
 with
sollicitūdō, -dinis, f., uneasiness, anxiety
sollicitus, -a, -um, anxious, worried
Solōn, -ōnis, m., Solon
sōlor, 1., comfort
solum, -ī, n., soil
sōlum, adv., only, alone; **nōn solum... sed (vērum)**
etiam, not only . . . but also
sōlus, -a, -um, alone, only, lonely
solūtiō, -ōnis, f., payment
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, loose, break, free,
 release, solve; set sail; w. **poenam**, pay
somnium, -nī, n., dream
somnus, -ī, m., sleep
sonitus, -ūs, m., sound
sonō, -āre, sonuī, sonitus, resound; **sonāns, gen.**
-antis, clanking
sonōrus, -a, -um, sonorous

sonus, -ī, m., sound, noise
Sophia, -ae, f., Wisdom
sophisma, -atis, n., false conclusion, sophism
sōpiō, -īre, sōpīvī, sōpītus, lull to sleep, stun
sopor, -ōris, m., deep sleep, stupor; laziness
sordidus, -a, -um, dirty, stained, mean
soror, -ōris, f., sister
sors, sortis, f., lot, prophecy
sortior, -īrī, sortītus, cast lots, ballot
sortitō, adv., by lot
Spanius, -ī, m., Spanius
spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsus, scatter, sprinkle,
 spread
Sparta, -ae, f., Sparta, a Greek city
Spartacus, -ī, m., Spartacus, leader in a revolt of
 gladiators
Spartānus, -ī, m., a Spartan
spatior, 1. take a walk, walk
spatiōsus, -a, -um, roomy, large
spatium, -tī, n., space, distance; time, period
speciēs, speciēī, f., appearance, sight
speciōsus, -a, -um, showy, glittering
spectābilis, -e, conspicuous, beautiful
spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle, show
spectātiō, -ōnis, f., viewing
spectātor, -ōris, m., spectator
spectō, 1. look at or on, face, see
speculāria, -ōrum, n. pl., windows
speculātor, -ōris, m., spy
speculor, 1. watch
speculum, -ī, n., mirror; copy
spēlunca, -ae, f., cave, cavern, den
spērō, 1. hope (for)
spēs, speī, f., hope
spīna, -ae, f., thorn
spīritus, -ūs, m., breath, spirit, air; pride
spīrō, 1. breathe
splendidus, -a, -um, shining, brilliant,
 distinguished
spolia, -ōrum, n. pl., spoils, booty
spoliō, 1. rob, deprive
spondeo, -ēre, sponendi, sponsus, promise, engage
sponsa, -ae, f., a betrothed woman
sponsus, -ī, m., a betrothed man

sponte, *w. suā*, of his/her/their own accord, by his/her/their own influence, voluntarily
spūmāns, *gen. -antis*, foaming
spūmiger, *-gera, -gerum*, foaming
squālēns, *gen. squālentis*, foul
squāleō, *-ēre, squāluī*, —, be stiff, be filthy
st! *interj.*, hush!
stabilitās, *-tātis, f.*, steadfastness, firmness
stabulum, *-ī, n.*, stable
Statilius, *-lī, m.*, Statilius
statim, *adv.*, at once, immediately
statiō, *-ōnis, f.*, outpost, guard, picket, station
statua, *-ae, f.*, statue
statunculum, *-ī, n.*, a little statue
statuō, *-ere, statuī, statūtus*, decide, determine, set up, place
statūra, *-ae, f.*, stature
status, *-a, -um*, fixed, appointed
status, *-ūs, m.*, state, position, condition, status
stēlla, *-ae, f.*, star
sterilis, *-e*, barren, unproductive, unfruitful
sternō, *-ere, strāvī, strātus*, strew, scatter; level, cover; overthrow, raze
stetī, *see stō*
stilus, *-ī, m.*, stylus (*instrument used in writing on wax tablets*)
stimulō, *1*, urge on; disturb
stimulus, *-ī, m.*, incentive
stīpendiārius, *-a, -um*, tributary
stīpendium, *-dī, n.*, pay, tribute; campaign
stīpes, *-itis, m.*, log, post, trunk, stake
stipula, *-ae, f.*, stem, straw
stō, *stāre, stetī, statūrus*, stand, stop
stolidus, *-a, -um*, dull, stupid
stomachus, *-ī, m.*, stomach
Strabō, *-ōnis, m.*, Strabo
stragēs, *-is, f.*, overthrowing, confusion; destruction
strāmen, *-minis, n.*, straw; *pl.*, thatch
strātum, *-ī, n.*, cover, horse blanket
strēnuē, *adv.*, briskly, actively
strēnuus, *-a, -um*, energetic
strepitus, *-ūs, m.*, noise
stringō, *-ere, strīnxī, strictus*, draw (tight); ruffle
studeō, *-ēre, studuī*, —, be eager (for), study, desire

studiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly
studiōsus, *-a, -um*, fond of
studium, *-dī, n.*, eagerness, desire, interest, zeal, enthusiasm; study, pursuit
stultitia, *-ae, f.*, stupidity, folly, foolishness, silliness
stultus, *-a, -um*, foolish, stupid
stupendus, *-a, -um*, stupendous
stupeō, *-ēre, -uī*, —, be amazed, stand aghast
suādeō, *-ēre, suāsī, suāsūrus*, urge, advise, persuade
suāvis, *-e*, sweet, pleasant, agreeable
suāvitās, *-tātis, f.*, sweetness, pleasantness, agreeableness
sub, *prep.*, under, close to, at the foot of, just before (*w. acc. after verbs of motion; w. abl. after verbs of rest or position*)
subdō, *-ere, subdidī, subditus*, put or plunge under
subdūcō, *-ere, -dūxī, -ductus*, lead up; draw up
subeō, *-īre, -iī, -itūrus*, go under, enter, come up, undergo
subiciō, *-ere, -iēcī, -iectus*, throw under, spread beneath, throw from below, subject, conquer;
subiectus, lying beneath
subigō, *-ere, -ēgī, -āctus*, force, subdue
subinde, *adv.*, suddenly
subinvideō, *-ēre, —, —*, be envious of
subitō, *adv.*, suddenly
subitus, *-a, -um*, sudden
sublātus, *part. of tollō*
sublevō, *1*, lighten, help, raise; *w. reflex.*, rise
sublimē, *adv.*, aloft, on high
submergō, *-ere, -mersī, -mersus*, plunge
subministrō, *1*, furnish
submittō, *-ere, -mīsī, -missus*, send, *see summittō*
submoveō, *-ēre, -mōvī, -mōtus*, drive back, send away, remove
subrēpō, *-ere, -rēpsī, —*, creep or steal along
subruō, *-ere, -ruī, -rutus*, undermine
subsellium, *-lī, n.*, bench, seat
subsequor, *-sequī, -secūtus*, follow (closely)
subsidium, *-dī, n.*, aid, reserve
substō, *-āre, —, —*, stand firm
subterrāneus, *-a, -um*, subterranean

- subtilis**, -e, fine, slender
subveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus, come to help
succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus, come up, enter, follow, succeed (w. *dat.*)
successor, -ōris, *m.*, follower, successor
successus, -ūs, *m.*, success
succrēscō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, grow
succurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursūrus, run to help, run to one's aid
Suēbī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Suebans or Suebi
sufferō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, hold up, sustain; undergo
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus, suffice
suffrāgium, -gī, *n.*, vote, ballot
suffundō, -ere, suffūdī, suffūsus, pour into, overspread, infuse
suī, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves
Sulla, -ae, *m.*, Sulla
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be, exist
summa, -ae, *f.*, sum, total, chief part, substance; leadership: **summa rērum**, general interest; **summa imperī**, supreme command; **ad summam**, in short
summittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, lower
summus, -a, -um, highest, most important, greatest; top of, surface of
summum, -ī, *n.*, top, greatest
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take, assume
sūmptuōsē, *adv.*, extravagantly
sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, extravagant: very expensive; lavish
sūmptus, -ūs, *m.*, expense, extravagance
super, *prep.* w. *acc.*, over, upon, above
superbē, *adv.*, arrogantly
superbia, -ae, *f.*, pride, arrogance
superbus, -a, -um, haughty, proud
superficiārius, -a, -um, situated on another man's land
superiniciō, -ere, -iniēcī, -iniectus, cast over, scatter upon
superior, -ius, higher, elder, upper, superior; previous, former
superō, 1, overcome, conquer; surpass; beat; defeat; pass over
superstitiō, -ōnis, *f.*, superstition
supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, be left (over), remain, survive
superus, -a, -um, upper; *as noun, m. pl.*, gods (above)
supīnus, -a, -um, thrown backwards, on the back, supine; sloping
suppeditō, 1, supply
suppetō, -ere, suppetivī, suppetitus, be at hand, be present; be sufficient for
suppilō, 1, pilfer, rob
suppleō, -ere, supplēvī, supplētus, fill
supplex, *gen. supplicis*, begging, suppliant
supplicātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, thanksgiving, public prayer
supplicium, -cī, *n.*, punishment, torture
supplicō, 1, kneel down (to), pray, worship
suprā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, above, beyond, before, previously
suprēmus, -a, -um, highest, last, dying
surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctūrus, rise, arise
surripīō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptus, seize (secretly), steal
suscēseō, -ēre, -cēsuī, —, be angry with
suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptus, undertake, incur, suffer
suscitō, 1, rekindle
suspendō, -ere, -pendī, hang, suspend; **suspēsus**, -a, -um, in suspense
suspīciō, -ōnis, *f.*, suspicion
suspīciō, -ere, suspexī, suspectus, esteem, admire; suspect
suspīcor, 1, suspect
suspīro, 1, sigh
suspīrium, -rī, *n.*, sigh
sustentō, 1, maintain
sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus, hold up, keep up or back; bear, endure, withstand, hold out, check
sustulī, *see tollō*
suus, -a, -um, *reflexive adj.*, his, her, its, their; his own, her own, etc.; *as noun*, **suī**, his (her, their) men, friends; **sua**, *n.*, his (her, their) possessions
syllaba, -ae, *f.*, syllable

Syrācūsae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse, a city in Sicily
Syrtis, -is, *f.*, Syrtis

T

T., abbreviation for Titus

tabella, -ae, *f.*, tablet; *pl.*, letter, ballot, record

tabellārius, -rī, *m.*, letter carrier

taberna, -ae, *f.*, shop, tavern

tābēscō, -ere, tābui, —, melt

tabula, -ae, *f.*, board, painting; table, tablet (of the law); writing tablet; *pl.*, records, accounts

taceō, -ēre, tacui, be silent, leave unmentioned

taciturnitās, -tātis, *f.*, silence

tacitus, -a, -um, silent, secret

taeda, -ae, *f.*, torch; wedding

taeter, -tra, -trum, foul, revolting

tālāris, -e, reaching the ankles

tālis, -e, such

tam, *adv.*, so, so much (*w. adj. and adv.*)

tamen, *adv.*, yet, still, nevertheless; however

tametsi, *conj.*, although

tamquam, *adv.*, as if, as, as it were

Tanais, -is, *m.*, Tanais, a river

tandem, *adv.*, at last, finally; *in questions*, I ask

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch, move, reach; partake of

Tantalus, -ī, *m.*, Tantalus, (1) Niobe's father, (2) son of Niobe

tantō, *adv.*, so much

tantulus, -a, -um, so small

tantum, *adv.*, so much, so greatly; only, merely; *w. modo*, only, merely

tantus, -a, -um, so great, so much, so large, such

tantusdem, tantadem, tantundem, as great or large

tardē, *adv.*, slowly, late, tardily

tarditās, -tātis, *f.*, slowness

tardō, 1, slow up, delay, check

tardus, -a, -um, slow, late

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the people of Tarentum

Tarpeius, -a, -um, Tarpeian

Tarquinius, -nī, *m.*, Tarquinius, Tarquin

Tarquinius Superbus, -ī, *m.*, Tarquin the Proud, king of Rome

Tartarus, -ī, *m.*, Hades

taurus, -ī, *m.*, bull

tēctum, -ī, *n.*, roof, house, dwelling, home

tegimentum, -ī, *n.*, cover

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover, conceal; protect

tellūs, -ūris, *f.*, earth; land

tēlum, -ī, *n.*, weapon, missile, shaft

temerārius, -a, -um, rash

temere, *adv.*, rashly, without reason

temeritās, -tātis, *f.*, rashness

temperāmentum, -ī, *n.*, right proportion; moderation

temperātē, *adv.*, moderately

temperātus, -a, -um, temperate

tempestās, -tātis, *f.*, weather, storm; season

templum, -ī, *n.*, temple

temptō, 1, test, try, attempt, tempt; attack

tempus, temporis, *n.*, time, period, temple (*of the head*); *w. ex*, offhand

tenāx, *gen. tenācis*, tenacious

tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentus, stretch, extend, go

tenebrae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, darkness

Tenedos, -ī, *f.*, Tenedos, an island

teneō, -ēre, tenuī, tentus, hold, keep, possess; memoriā teneō, remember

tener, -era, -erum, tender; young

tenuis, -e, thin, little; humble

tenuitās, -tātis, thinness, slenderness; poverty

tenuō, 1, make thin or slender

tenus, *postpositive prep. w. abl.*, up to

tepeō, -ēre, —, —, be warm

tepidus, -a, -um, warm

tepor, -ōris, gentle warmth

ter, *adv.*, three times

terebrō, 1, pierce

Terentius, -tī, *m.*, Terence

tergum, -ī, *n.*, tergus, -goris, *n.*, back; side (*of pork*); ā tergō, in the rear

terminō, 1, bound, limit; end, close

terminus, -ī, *m.*, boundary

ternī, -ae, -a, three at a time

terō, -ere, trīvī, trītus, wear away, grind; exhaust

terra, -ae, *f.*, land, earth, ground

terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus, scare, frighten, terrify

terrestris, -e, terrestrial
terribilis, -e, frightful
terror, -ōris, *m.*, terror
tertius, -a, -um, third
testa, -ae, *f.*, brick
testāmentum, -ī, *n.*, will
testimōnium, -nī, *n.*, testimony, proof
testis, -is, *m.*, witness
testor, 1, call to witness
testūdō, -dinis, *f.*, shed, turtle, testudo
Teutonī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Teutons
thalamus, -ī, *m.*, bedchamber; marriage bed,
 marriage
theātrum, -ī, *n.*, theater
Thēbae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Thebes, a Greek city
thema, -atis, *n.*, theme
Thermus, -ī, *m.*, Thermus
Thessalia, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly, part of Greece
Thisbē, -ēs, *f.*, Thisbe
Thrācia, -ae, *f.*, Thrace, a country north of Greece
Thrācius, -a, -um, Thracian; of Thrace, a country
 north of Greece
Thrāx, -ācis, *m.*, a Thracian
thronus, -ī *m.*, throne
Thynēius, -a, -um, of Thynaeum
tiāra, -ae, *f.*, turban, tiara
Tiberis, -is, *m.*, Tiber River, the Tiber, a river
 in Italy
Tiberius, -rī, *m.*, Tiberius
tībia, -ae, *f.*, pipe, flute
tignum, -ī, *n.*, beam
Tigurīnus, -ī, *m.*, Tigurinus, a Helvetian canton;
 pl., the Tigurini
timeō, -ēre, **timuī**, —, fear, be afraid
timidus, -a, -um, timid, cowardly; **timidē**, *adv.*,
 timidly
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear
tingō, -ere, **tīnxī**, **tīnctus**, wet; color, stain
tintinnābulum, -ī, *n.*, bell
Tīrō, -ōnis, *m.*, Tiro
Titius, -tī, *m.*, Titius
titulus, -ī, *m.*, title, sign
Tmōlus, -ī, *m.*, Tmolus, a mountain in Lydia
toga, -ae, *f.*, toga (cloak)

togātus, -a, -um, in civilian garb, toga-clad
tolerābilis, -e, endurable, tolerable
tolerō, 1, bear
tollō, -ere, **sustulī**, **sublātus**, raise, take or pick
 up, carry, remove, destroy
tormentum, -ī, *n.*, torture; artillery, hurling machine
torpor, -ōris, *m.*, numbness, sluggishness
torqueō, -ēre, **torsī**, **tortus**, twist, whirl, turn;
 torture
torus, -ī, *m.*, cushion, couch
torreō, -ēre, **torruī**, **tostus**, roast, scorch
tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many
totidem, *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number
totiēns, *adv.*, so often
tōtus, -a, -um, whole, entire, all
trabs, **trabis**, *f.*, beam
trāctātus, -ūs, *m.*, handling, treatment
trāctō, 1, handle, treat, conduct; draw into
trāditiō, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender
trādō, -ere, -**didī**, -**ditus**, give or hand over,
 transmit, relate, surrender; deliver
trādūcō, -ere, -**dūxī**, -**ductus**, lead across, win
 over
tragicus, -a, -um, of tragedy, tragic
trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin
trahō, -ere, **trāxī**, **trāctus**, draw, influence,
 derive, drag; take on; w. **ad mē**, claim
trāiciō, -ere, -**iēcī**, -**iectus**, strike through, hurl
 through, pierce
trāmittō, -ere, -**mīsī**, -**missus**, transmit, hand
 over; cross
trānō, 1, swim across
tranquillitās, -tātis, *f.*, calm, tranquility
tranquillus, -a, -um, peaceful, quiet
trāns, *prep. w. acc.*, across
Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, beyond the Alps,
 Transalpine
trāscendō, -ere, -**cendī**, —, board, climb over
trāscurrō, -ere, -**currī**, -**cursūrus**, traverse
trānseō, -īre, -**īī**, -**itūrus**, cross, pass, go over
trānsferō, -ferre, -**tulī**, -**lātus**, carry over, transfer
trānsfigō, -ere, -**fixī**, -**fixus**, pierce through
trānsfodiō, -ere, -**fōdī**, -**fossus**, pierce through
trānsfuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter

trānsigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, carry out
trānsiliō, -īre, -siluī, —, jump across
trānsitus, -ūs, *m.*, passage
trāsmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus, pass on
trānsportō, 1. carry over, transport
trānsverberō, -āre, —, —, strike through, pierce through
trānsversus, -a, -um, cross
trecentī, -ae, -a, three hundred
tremebundus, -a, -um, shake, trembling
tremō, -ere, tremuī, —, shake, tremble
tremor, -ōris, *m.*, shaking
tremulus, -a, -um, trembling
trepidō, 1. tremble; rush about
trepidus, -a, -um, trembling
trēs, tria, three
tribūnicus, -a, -um, tribunician
tribūnus, -ī, *m.*, tribune
tribuō, -ere, tribuī, tribūtus, bestow, grant, assign
tribūtum, -ī, *n.*, tax, tribute
trīclinium, -nī, *n.*, dining room, dining couch
trīduum, -ī, *n.*, three days
triennium, -nī, *n.*, (a period of) three years
trīgintā, thirty
Trimalchiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Trimalchio
triplex, *gen. triplicis*, threefold, triple
trīstis, -e, sad, severe
trīstitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness
triumphō, 1. triumph, celebrate a triumph
triumphus, -ī, *m.*, triumph, triumphal procession
Troia, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city in Asia Minor
Troiānus, -a, -um, Trojan; *as noun, m. pl.*, the Trojans
tropaeum, -ī, *n.*, trophy
trucīdō, 1. butcher, murder
trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus, thrust, shove forward
truncō, 1. strip
truncus, -ī, *m.*, trunk (*of a tree*)
tū, tuī, *pers. pron.* you, yourself
tuba, -ae, *f.*, trumpet
Tuberō, -ōnis, *m.*, Tubero
tubulātus, -a, -um, formed like a pipe, tubular
tueor, tuērī, tūtus, watch, look, guard, defend, maintain

tulī, *see ferō*
Tullia, Tulliola, -ae, *f.*, Tullia
Tullius, -lī, *m.*, Tullius
tum, *adv.*, then
tumeō, -ēre, —, —, swell
tumidus, -a, -um, swollen; enraged; haughty
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, uproar, disturbance
tumulus, -ī, *m.*, hill, tomb
tunc, *adv.*, then; accordingly
tunica, -ae, *f.*, tunic
turba, -ae, *f.*, turmoil, throng
turbō, 1. roughen
turbulentus, -a, -um, muddy, disorderly, violent
turma, -ae, *f.*, troop (*of cavalry*)
turpis, -e, disgraceful, ugly
turpiter, *adv.*, basely
turpitūdō, -dinis, *f.*, disgrace, baseness
turris, -is, *f.*, tower
tūs, tūris, *n.*, incense
Tuscia, -ae, *f.*, Tuscany
Tusculānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tusculans, people of Tusculum, a town in Italy
Tusculānum, -ī, *n.*, Tusculan estate
Tusculānus, -a, -um, Tusculan; *as noun, m.*, a citizen of Tusculum
tussiō, -īre, —, —, cough
tutēla, -ae, *f.*, charge, guardian
tūtō, *adv.*, safely
tūtus, -a, -um, safe
tuūs, -a, -um, your, yours (*referring to one person*)
tyrannus, -ī, *m.*, tyrant
Tyrius, -a, -um, Tyrian

U

ūber, -eris, abounding, full
ubi, *adv.*, where; when; ubi primum, as soon as
ubicumque, *adv.*, wherever
ubinam, *adv.*, where
ubique, *adv.*, everywhere
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, avenge, punish
ūllus, -a, -um, any, anyone
ulterior, -ius, farther; ultimus, -a, -um, farthest, last
ultimus, -a, -um, last, farthest

ultrā, *adv. and prep. w. acc.*, beyond, more
ultrix, *gen. ultricis*, avenging
ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily; actually
ultus, *part. of ulciscor*
umbra, *-ae, f.*, shade, shadow
Umbrēnus, *-ī, m.*, Umbrenus
umbrōsus, *-a, -um*, shady, shading
umerus, *-ī, m.*, shoulder
umidus, *-a, -um*, moist, dewy
umquam, *adv.*, ever, at any time
ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, along with, together
ūnanimus, *-a, -um*, of one mind, sympathetic
unda, *-ae, f.*, wave; water
unde, *adv.*, from which (place), by which, from
 where
undecimus, *-a, -um*, eleventh
undique, *adv.*, from *or* on all sides, everywhere
ungō, *-ere, ūnxī, ūnctus*, anoint
unguentārius, *-ī, m.*, ointment, perfume
unguentum, *-ī, n.*, ointment, perfume, salve
unguis, *-is, m.*, nail (*of finger or toe*); claw
ungula, *-ae, f.*, hoof, claw
ūnicē, *adv.*, singularly, devotedly
ūnicus, *-a, -um*, only
ūniversus, *-a, -um*, all (together), whole, in a body
ūnus, *-a, -um*, one, alone, single, sole
urbānitās, *-tātis, f.*, wit
urbānus, *-a, -um*, of *or* in the city; polished:
 facetious
urbs, *urbis, f.*, city
urgeō, *urgēre, ursī, ursus*, press hard
urna, *-ae, f.*, urn
ūrō, *-ere, ussī, ustus*, burn, parch
uspīam, *adv.*, anywhere
usque, *adv.*, even (to), all the time, as far as, up to,
 continuously, still; *w. adeō*, to such an extent
usquequāque, *adv.*, in everything, on every
 occasion
ūsūra, *-ae, f.*, use, enjoyment
ūsūrpātiō, *-ōnis, f.*, use
ūsūrpō, 1, use, employ
ūsus, *-ūs, m.*, use, need, advantage; practice,
 experience

ut, utī, conj., (in order) that, to, so that; as (to),
 when; *adv.*, how as; **ut... non**, that . . . not
uter, utra, utrum, which (of two); whichever
uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (of two),
 either, both
utervīs, utravīs, utrumvīs, either
utī = ut
ūtilis, *-e*, useful, helpful
ūtilitās, *-tātis, f.*, usefulness, advantage
utinam! *adv.*, o that! would that!
utique, *adv.*, certainly
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, use, employ, make use of (*w. abl.*),
 enjoy
utrimque, *adv.*, on both sides
utrum, conj., whether; **utrum... an**, whether . . . or;
 in dir. quest. it cannot be translated
ūva, *-ae, f.*, grapes
uxor, *-ōris, f.*, wife

V

vacillō, 1, stagger
vacō, 1, be uninhabited, have leisure, empty
vacuēficiō, *-ere, -fēcī, -factus*, make empty, free
vacuus, *-a, -um*, empty, free, without
vadimōnium, *-nī, n.*, bail bond
vādō, *-ere, —, —*, go
vadum, *-ī, n.*, ford, shallow place
vafer, vafra, vafrum, sly, crafty
vāgīna, *-ae, f.*, sheath
vagor, 1, wander
vagulus, *-a, -um*, wandering
vagus, *-a, -um*, wandering, uncertain, vague
valdē, *adv.*, strongly, very (much)
valeō, *-ēre, valuī, valitūrus*, be strong, be well, be
 able, be powerful, prevail; have influence, excel:
 imper., **valē, valēte**, farewell
Valerius, *-rī, m.*, Valerius
valētūdō, *-dinis, f.*, health; illness, sickness
validus, *-a, -um*, strong
vallēs, *-is, f.*, valley
vāllō, 1, defend
vāllum, *-ī, n.*, rampart, wall, barricade
valvae, *-ārum, f. pl.*, doors
vānitās, *-tātis, f.*, folly, vanity

vānum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , emptiness	venia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , favor, pardon
vānus , -a, -um, empty, false, vain	Venetī , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , the Veneti
vapor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , steam, heat	veniō , -īre, vēnī , ventūrus , come
vāpulō , 1, be flogged	vēnor , 1, hunt
Vargunteius , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Vargunteius	venter , -tris, <i>m.</i> , belly, stomach
varietās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , variety, variation	ventus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , wind
varius , -a, -um, changing, varying, various	Venus , -eris, <i>f.</i> , Venus, goddess of love and beauty
Varrō , -ōnis, <i>m.</i> , Varro	venustās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , charm
vas , vadis , <i>m.</i> , bail, security	venustē , <i>adv.</i> , gracefully, beautifully
vās , vāsis , <i>n.</i> , kettle, pot, vessel, dish, utensil; baggage	venustus , -a, -um, lovely, charming
vāstitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , devastation	vēr , vēris , <i>n.</i> , spring
vāstō , 1, destroy, ruin	Verānia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Verania
vāstus , -a, -um, huge, vast, immense	verber , -eris, <i>n.</i> , blow
Vatīnius , -nī, <i>m.</i> , Vatinius	verberō , 1, beat, strike
vātēs , -is, <i>m.</i> , prophet; poet	verbum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , word; verba faciō , speak, make a speech
-ve , <i>enclitic</i> , or	Vercingetorīx , -īgis, <i>m.</i> , Vercingetorix
vehemēns , <i>gen. vehementis</i> , vigorous, rigorous, strong	vērē , <i>adv.</i> , truly
vehementer , <i>adv.</i> , violently, greatly, earnestly	verēcundia , -ae, <i>f.</i> , modesty
vehiculum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , carriage	verēcundus , -a, -um, ashamed, shy, modest
vehō , -ere, vexī , vectus , carry, bear; <i>pass.</i> , sail, ride	vereor , verērī , veritus , fear, respect
Veīī , -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i> , Veīī, a town in Italy	Vergilius , -lī, <i>m.</i> , Vergil
vel , <i>conj.</i> , or; vel... vel , either . . . or; <i>adv.</i> , even, at least; very; <i>w. superl.</i> , the most . . . possible	Verginius , -nī, <i>m.</i> , Verginius
vēlāmen , -minis, <i>n.</i> , veil, cloak	vergo , -ere, —, —, slope, lie
Velleius Blaesus , -ī, <i>m.</i> , Velleius Blaesus	vēritās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , truth
vellus , -eris, <i>n.</i> , fleece, wool	vernīliter , <i>adv.</i> , servilely
vēlō , 1, cover, veil	vernus , -a, -um, of spring, spring
vēlōcitās , -tātis, <i>f.</i> , swiftness	vērō , <i>adv.</i> , in truth, in fact; but, however
vēlōx , -ōcis, swift	Vērōna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , Verona
vēlum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , sail; awning	verrēs , -is, <i>m.</i> , boar
velut , velutī , <i>adv.</i> , just as, as, like	Verrēs , -is, <i>m.</i> , Verres
vēna , -ae, <i>f.</i> , vein	verrō , -ere, verrī , versus , sweep
vēnābulum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , hunting spear	versicolor , <i>gen. -ōris</i> , of various colors
vēnālis , -e, for sale	versificātor , -ōris, <i>m.</i> , versifier, poet
vēnātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , hunting, hunt	versō , 1, turn over, turn (often); <i>pass.</i> , live, be engaged in, be employed; remain, exist; be skilled; depend on
vēnditō , 1, try to sell, sell	versor , 1, move about, be engaged, live, be
vendō , -ere, -didī, -ditus, sell	versus , -ūs, <i>m.</i> , line, verse
venēnō , 1, poison	vertex , -ticis, <i>m.</i> , (whirl), head, peak
venēnum , -ī, <i>n.</i> , poison	vertō , -ere, vertī , versus , turn; <i>pass.</i> , turn (oneself); <i>sometimes deponent</i> ; vertō , wheel about
venerābilis , -e, reverend	vērūm , <i>adv.</i> , but
venerātiō , -ōnis, <i>f.</i> , reverence, veneration	
veneror , 1, worship	

vērus, -a, -um, true; *as noun, n.*, truth; **rē vērā**, really
vēscor, vēscī, —, —, feed, eat
Vespasiānus, -ī, *m.*, Vespasian, *the emperor*
vesper, -erī, *m.*, evening; **vesperī**, in the evening
vespera, -ae, *f.*, the evening star, evening
Vesta, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, *goddess of the hearth*
Vestālis, -e, Vestal, of Vesta
vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours (*referring to two or more persons*)
vēstibulum, -ī, *n.*, entrance
vēstīgium, -gī, *n.*, footprint, foot, footstep, track, sole (*of the foot*); *pl.*, fragments
vestimentum, -ī, *n.*, clothing
vestiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus, clothe, dress
vestis, -is, *f.*, clothing, garment, robe
vestītus, -ūs, *m.*, clothing
veterānus, -a, -um, veteran, experienced
vetō, -āre, vetuī, vetitus, forbid
vetus, *gen. veteris*, old, former, ancient
vetustās, -tātis, *f.*, old age, age
vetustus, -a, -um, old, ancient
vexātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, harassment
vexō, 1, disturb, trouble, harass
via, -ae, *f.*, way, road, street; journey; **viam**
mūniō, build a road
viaticum, -ī, *n.*, traveling money
viātor, -ōris, *m.*, traveler; court officer
Vibō, -ōnis, *f.*, Vibo
vibrō, 1, brandish
vicēnī, -ae, -a, twenty (each)
vicēsīmus, -a, -um, twentieth
vicīēs, *adv.*, twenty times
vicīnia, -ae, *f.*, neighborhood, nearness
vicīnitās, -tātis, *f.*, neighborhood, vicinity
vicīnus, -a, -um, neighboring; *as noun, m.*, neighbor
(vici), -is, *f.*, change; in *vicem* or *vicēs*, in turn
victima, -ae, *f.*, victim
victor, -ōris, *m.*, victor; *adj.*, victorious
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory
victrīx, -īcis, *f.*, victor
vīctus, -ūs, *m.*, living, food
vīcus, -ī, *m.*, village, street

vidēlicet, *adv.*, evidently; of course, doubtless
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, see; *pass.*, be seen, seem, seem best
viduus, -a, -um, widowed
vigeō, -ēre, vīguī, —, be vigorous, thrive
vigil, *gen. vigilis*, wakeful, watchful
vigilāns, *gen. -antis*, watchful, active
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, loss of sleep, guarding; watchman, watch; sentinel (*a fourth part of the night*)
vigilō, 1, keep awake, watch
vīgintī, twenty
vigor, -ōris, *m.*, force, vigor
vīlicus, -ī, *m.*, farm manager
vīlis, -e, cheap, worthless
vīlla, -ae, *f.*, farmhouse, country home, villa
vīllula, -ae, *f.*, small villa
vīllus, -ī, *m.*, shaggy hair
Vīminālis (mōns), -is, *m.*, the Viminal Hill
vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīctus, bind
vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus, conquer, defeat, overcome, win; exhaust
vinculum, -ī, *n.*, bond, chain, fastening
Vindex, -dicis, *n.*, Vindex
vindicō, 1, avenge, punish; claim, assert one's claim to, appropriate
vīnea, -ae, *f.*, grape arbor, shed, vineyard
vīnētum, -ī, *n.*, vineyard
vīnum, -ī, *n.*, wine
violō, 1, wrong, dishonor, injure
vir, virī, *m.*, man, husband
virēns, *gen. -entis*, green
virga, -ae, *f.*, twig, rod
virginālis, -e, maidenly, virgin
virginitās, -tātis, *f.*, virginity
virgō, -ginis, *f.*, virgin, maiden
Viriāthus, -ī, *m.*, Viriathus
virīlis, -e, manly
virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*, manliness, courage, virtue, character, ability
vīs, —, *f.*, force, power, violence, energy; *pl.*, vīrēs, vīrium, strength
vīscera, -um, *n. pl.*, vitals
vīsō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus, go to see, view
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life

vītātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, shunning, avoidance
 vītīcula, -ae, *f.*, little vine
 vitiōsus, -a, -um, full of faults, wrong
 vītis, -is, *f.*, vine
 vitium, -tī, *n.*, fault, defect, vice
 vītō, 1, avoid, escape
 vitta, -ae, *f.*, headband
 vituperō, 1, blame, censure
 vīvo, -ere, vīxī, victus, live
 vīvus, -a, -um, alive, living
 vix, *adv.*, hardly, scarcely, with difficulty, hardly
 vōbīscum = cum vōbīs
 vocābulum, -ī, *n.*, word
 vocātīvus, -a, -um, vocative
 vocō, 1, call, summon, invite, invoke
 volātus, -ūs, *m.*, flying, flight
 volō, 1, fly
 volō, velle, voluī, —, want, wish, intend, be willing
 Volscī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Volscians
 Volturcius, -cī, *m.*, Volturcius

volucris, -ris, *f.*, bird
 volūmen, -minis, *n.*, roll, volume
 voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, will, good will, wish, purpose;
 consent
 voluptās, -tātis, *f.*, pleasure
 volvō, -ere, volvī, volūtus, roll (up): turn over,
 ponder; *pass.*, roll, be hurled, toss about
 vōs, you, *pl. of tū*
 vōsmet, you yourselves
 vōtum, -ī, *n.*, vow, wish, prayer
 voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, vow, wish for, promise
 vōx, vōcis, *f.*, voice, cry; word, remark, talk
 Vulcānus, -ī, *m.*, Vulcan, *god of fire*
 vulgus, -ī, *n.*, common people, crowd
 vulnerō, 1, wound
 vulnus, vulneris, *n.*, wound
 vultus, -ūs, *m.*, expression, face, features; presence

X

Xerxēs, -is, *m.*, Xerxes, *king of Persia*

English-Latin

For proper nouns and proper adjectives not given in this vocabulary, see the Latin-English Vocabulary or the text.

Verbs of the first conjugation whose parts are regular are indicated by the figure 1.

A

able (be), possum, posse, potuī, —

about, dē, *w. abl.*

accomplice, socius, -cī, *m.*

accomplish, cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

account, ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*; **on account of**, *see on*,
ob, propter

accustomed (be), cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētus

achieve, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus; efficiō,
-ere, effēcī, effectus

acknowledge, cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitus

across, trāns, *w. acc.*

action, factum, -ī, *n.*

add, adiciō, -ere, adiēcī, adiectus

admire, admīror, 1

adopt, adoptō, 1

adorn, ōrnō, 1

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*

affairs (public), rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*

afraid (be), timeō, -ēre, timuī, —

after, post (*conj.*), postquam; *use abl. abs.*

again, rūrsus, iterum

against, contrā, *w. acc.*

age, aetās, -tātis, *f.*

agree, cōnsentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsus

aid, auxilium, -ī, *n.*

all, omnis, -e; tōtus, -a, -um; **all other**, cēterī,
-ae, -a

allow, licet, -ēre, licuit *or* licitum est

almost, paene

alone, sōlus, -a, -um

already, iam

also, etiam

although, etsī, cum; quamquam; *use participle or
abl. abs.*

always, semper

among, inter, *w. acc.*

and, et; -que

another, alius, alia, aliud

answer, solūtio, -ōnis, *f.*

any, ūllus, -a, -um; **any longer (not)**, nōn iam

anyone, quisquam, quicquam; quis, quid (*after sī*)

appear, appāreō, -ēre, appāruī, appāritūrus

Appian, Appius, -a, -um

apply, subiciō, -ere, subiēcī, subiectus

approach (noun), adventus, -ūs, *m.*; (*verb*),

accēdō, -ere, accessī, accessūrus (*w. ad*); adeō,

adīre, adiī, aditūrus; appropinquō, 1 (*w. dat.*)

approve, probō, 1

arena, arēna, -ae, *f.*

arise, orior, orīrī, ortus

arouse, commoveō, -ēre, commōvī, commōtus

arm, armō, 1

arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*

arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*

arrive, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus

art, ars, artis, *f.*

as, quantum; **as... as**, quam; **as long as**, dum;

as much, tantum; **as... as possible**, quam.

w. superl.; **as soon as possible**, quam primum;

as to, ut

ask, rogō, 1; **ask for**, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus

assign, attribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus

at (near), ad, *w. acc.*; *abl. of time or place*

at once, statim

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

attack, impetus, -ūs, *m.*; oppugnō, 1; aggredior,

aggredī, aggressus

author, auctor, -ōris, *m.*

await, exspectō, 1

away (be), absum, -esse, āfuī, āfutūrus

away (go), discēdō, -ere, cessī, -cessūrus

B

bad, malus, -a, -um
 badly, male
 baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
 band, manus, -ūs, *f.*
 bandit, latrō, -ōnis, *m.*
 banish, expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus
 battle line, aciēs, aciēī, *f.*
 be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus
 bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
 beat, superō, *l*
 beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum
 because, *use participle or abl. abs.*; quod, quoniam
 become, fīō, fierī, (factus)
 before, priusquam, (*adv. and prep.*), ante, *w. acc.*
 beg, ōrō, *l*; petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus
 begin, incipiō, -ere, incēpī, inceptus; **began**, coepī, coeptus
 believe, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus (*w. dat.*)
 besiege, obsideō, -ēre, obsēdī, obsessus
 best, optimus, -a, -um
 betroth, dēspondeō, -ēre, dēspondī, dēspōnsus
 better, melior, melius
 between, inter, *w. acc.*
 blame, accūsō, *l*
 block, comprimō, -ere, compressī, compressus
 body, corpus, -oris, *n.*
 book, liber, librī, *m.*
 born (be), nāscor, nāscī, nātus
 boy, puer, puerī, *m.*
 brave, fortis, -e: **bravely**, fortiter
 bridge, pōns, pontis, *m.*
 bring, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; afferō, afferre, attulī, allātus; īferō, īferre, intulī, illātus; **bring together**, condūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductus; **bring back**, reportō, *l*
 Britons, Britannī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
 build, exstruō, -ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus; aedificō, *l*
 building, aedificium, -cī, *n.*
 burn, incendō, -ere, incendī, incēnsus
 business, negōtium, -tī, *n.*
 but, sed; **but also**, sed etiam
 buy, emō, -ere, -ēmī, ēemptus
 by, ā, ab, *w. abl.*; *sometimes abl. alone*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, *m.*
 call, appellō, *l*
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
 can, possum, posse, potuī, —
 capture, expugnō, *l*; capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus
 care, eī cūra est
 careful, diligēns, *gen. diligentis*; **carefully**, diligenter
 carry, portō, *l*; ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus; **carry on war**, bellum gerō; **carry back**, referō, referre, rettulī, relātus
 carry out, administrō, *l*
 Carthage, Carthāgō, -ginis, *f.*
 Catiline, Catilīna, -ae, *m.*
 Cato, Catō, -ōnis, *m.*
 cause, efficiō, -ere, effēcī, effectus (*w. ut and subjunct.*)
 cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m.*; equitēs, -um, *m. pl.*
 censor, cēnsor, -ōris, *m.*
 certain, a certain (one), quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; **certainly**, certē
 chain, vinculum, -ī, *n.*
 chance, occāsiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 charge, crīmen, -minis, *n.*
 check, sustineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus
 children, liberī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
 choose, dēligō, -ere, dēlēgī, dēlēctus
 Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m.*
 circumstance, rēs, rei, *f.*
 citadel, arx, arcis, *f.*
 citizen, cīvis, -is, *m. and f.*
 city, urbs, urbis, *f.*
 civil, cīvīlis, -e
 clearly, clārē
 client, cliēns, -entis, *m.*
 close, claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus
 collect, conferō, conferre, contulī, collātus
 come, veniō, -īre, vēmī, ventūrus; **come out**, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus
 command (be in), praesum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus (*w. dat.*)
 commit, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus
 common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f.*
 compel, cōgō, -ere, cōēgī, cōactus

complain, queror, querī, questus
complete, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
conceal, cēlō, 1
concern, cūra, -ae, *f.*
condemn, damnō, 1
condition, condiciō, -ōnis, *f.*
conference, colloquium, -quī, *n.*
conquer, vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus; superō, 1
conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
conspire, coniūrō, 1
consul, cōsul, -sulis, *m.*
consult (for), cōsulō, -ere, -suluī, -sultus
correct, vērus, -a, -um
country, patria, -ae, *f.*
courage, virtūs, -tūtis, *f.*
cover, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus
creditor, crēditor, -ōris, *m.*
crime, scelus, sceleris, *n.*
criticize, accūsō, 1
cross, trāseō, -īre, -īī, -itūrus
crow, corvus, -ī, *m.*
crowded together, cōnfertus, -a, -um
cruel, crūdēlis, -e
cruelty, crūdēlitās, -tātis, *f.*
custom, mōs, mōris, *m.*
cut off, interclūdō, -ere, -clūsī, -clūsus

D

danger, periculum, -ī, *n.*
dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus
daughter, filia, -ae, *f.*
day, diēs, diēī, *m. and f.*; **day by day**, in diēs
dead, mortuus, -a, -um
dear, cārus, -a, -um
debt, aes aliēnum, aeris aliēnī, *n.*
decide, cōstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus
decided (be), placet, -ēre, placuit
decorated, adōrnātus, -a, -um
decree (noun), dēcrētum, -ī, *n.*; **(verb)**, dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētus
deed, factum, -ī, *n.*
defeat, superō, 1
defeat (noun), calamitās, -tātis, *f.*; **(verb)**, superō, 1; pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus; vincō, -ere, vīcī, victus

defend, dēfendō, -ere, dēfendī, dēfēnsus
defenses, mūnitiō, -ōnis, *f.*
definite, certus, -a, -um
delay, mora, -ae, *f.*
demand, postulō, 1
depart, dēcēdō, -ere, dēcessī, dēcessūrus; proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus; excēdō, -ere, excessī, excessūrus
departure, exitus, -ūs, *m.*; profectiō, -ōnis, *f.*
deserve, mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus
desire, (noun), cupiditās, -tātis, *f.*; **(verb)**, cupiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus
despair (of), dēspērō, 1
destroy, dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētus; ēvertō, -ere, -ēvertī, ēversus
determine, cōstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus
dictate, dictō, 1
die, morior, -īrī, mortuus
differ, differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus
difficult, difficilis, -e
dinner, cēna, -ae, *f.*; convīvium, -vī, *n.*
divide, dīvidō, -ere, dīvīsī, dīvīsus
disagree, dissentiō, -īre, dissēnsī, dissēnsus
disaster, calamitās, -tātis, *f.*
disgrace (in), turpiter
do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus
Domitian, Domitiānus, -ī, *m.*
draw up, īnstruō, -ere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctus
drive out, ēiciō, -ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus; expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus
during, per, *w. acc.*
dutiful, pius, -a, -um
duty, officium, -cī, *n.*

E

each one, quisque, quidque
eager, cupidus, -a, -um
eager for (be), studeō, -ēre, studuī, — (*w. dat.*)
eagerness, studium, -dī, *n.*
earn, mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus
earth, terra, -ae, *f.*
easy, facilis, -e; **easily**, facile
eat, edō, -ere, -ēdī, ēsus
elect, creō, 1

elevated, ēditus, -a, -um
 eloquence, ēloquentia, -ae, *f.*
 embassy, lēgātiō, -ōnis, *f.*
 empire, imperium, -rī, *n.*
 encourage, cōfirmō, 1
 endure, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus
 enemy (*personal*), inimīcus, -ī, *m.*; (*national*),
 hostis, -is, *m.*
 enjoy, fruor, fruī, frūctus; ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (*w. abl.*)
 enmity, inimīcitia, -ae, *f.*
 enter, introeō, -īre, -iī, -itūrus; ingredior, ingredī,
 ingressus
 entire, tōtus, -a, -um
 entrust, mandō, 1
 envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
 envy, invidēō, -ēre, invīdī, invīsus (*w. dat.*)
 equal, aequālis, -e
 erect, exstruō, -ere, exstrūxī, exstrūctus
 escape, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
 establish, cōstituō, -ere, -stituī, -stitūtus
 ever, umquam
 everybody, omnēs
 everyone, omnis, -is, *m. and f.*
 everything, omne *or* omnia, omnium, *n. pl.*
 examine, excutiō, -ere, excussī, excussus
 example, exemplum, -ī, *n.*
 excel, praestō, -āre, -stitī, -stitūrus (*w. dat.*)
 excellent, bonus, -a, -um; optimus, -a, -um
 exclaim, (ex)clāmō, 1
 exile, exsilium, -lī, *n.*
 expel, expellō, -ere, expulī, expulsus
 explain, expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positus

F

facility, facultās, -tātis, *f.*
 fact that, quod
 Faesulae, Faesulae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 fall, incidō, -ere, incidī, —
 fame, fāma, -ae, *f.*,
 family, familia, -ae, *f.*
 famous, clārus, -a, -um
 farm, ager, agrī, *m.*,
 farmer, agricola, -ae, *m.*
 farthest, extrēmus, -a, -um; ultimus, -a, -um

fate, fātum, -ī, *n.*
 father, pater, patris, *m.*
 fault, culpa, -ae, *f.*
 favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautūrus
 fear, timeō, -ēre, timuī, —; vereor, verērī, veritus
 feel, sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus
 few, paucī, -ae, -a
 fierce, ferus, -a, -um
 fiercely, ferōciter
 fight, pugnō, 1
 find, find out, inveniō, -īre, invēnī, inventus
 fine, pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum
 finish, cōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus
 fire, incendium, -dī, *n.*
 firm, firmus, -a, -um
 first, prīmus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), prīmum; **at first**, prīmō
 flame, flamma, -ae, *f.*
 flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus
 food, cibus, -ī, *m.*
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m.*
 for (*conj.*), nam; (*prep.*), ad, ob, *w. acc.*; prō, *w.*
 abl.; **for the purpose or sake of**, causā *or* grātiā
 (*preceded by gen.*); *sometimes not expressed*
 force, cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus
 forest, silva, -ae, *f.*
 forget, oblivīscor, -ī, oblītus
 former, ille, illa, illud; **the former . . . the latter**,
 ille... hic
 fortify, mūniō, -īre, -ivī, -ītus
 fortune, fortūna, -ae, *f.*
 Forum, Forum, -ī, *n.*
 found, condō, -ere, condidī, conditus
 four, quattuor
 free (*adj.*), liber, -era, -erum; (*verb*), liberō, 1; **be**
 free, careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus
 freedom, libertās, -tātis, *f.*
 fresh, integer, -gra, -grum
 friend, amīcus, -ī; *m.*; (**girl**) **friend**, amīca, -ae, *f.*
 friendly, amīcus, -a, -um
 frighten, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus
 frog, rāna, -ae, *f.*
 from, ē, ex, ā, ab, dē, *w. abl.*; **from one another**,
 inter sē
 furnish, praebeō, -ēre, -uī, -ītus

G

game, lūdus, -ī, *m.*
garden, hortus, -ī, *m.*
gate, porta, -ae, *f.*
Gaul, Gallus, -ī, *m.*; Gallia, -ae, *f.*; **Gauls**, Gallī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*
general, dux, ducis, *m.*; lēgātus, -ī, *m.*
get, accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus; parō, 1; **get** (possession of), potior, potīrī, potītus (*w. abl.*)
girl, puella, -ae, *f.*
give, dō, dare, dedī, datus; **give up**, dēdō, -ere, dēdidī, dēditus
gladiator, gladiātor, -ōris, *m.*; **gladiatorial**, gladiātōrius, -a, -um
glory, glōria, -ae, *f.*
go, eō, īre, iī, itūrus; **go out**, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus; exeō, exīre, exiī, exitūrus; **go away**, discēdō, -ere, discessī, discessūrus; **go from**, abeō, abīre, abiī, abitūrus
god, deus, -ī, *m.*
goddess, dea, -ae, *f.*
gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*
good, bonus, -a, -um
government, rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, *f.*
grain, frūmentum, -ī, *n.*
grammarian, grammaticus, -ī, *m.*
grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*
great, magnus, -a, -um; **greater**, maior, maius; **greatest**, maximus, -a, -um; summus, -a, -um;
great deal, plūrimum; **so great**, tantus, -a, -um
Greece, Graecia, -ae, *f.*
Greek, Graecus, -a, -um
grow, crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētus
guard, praesidium, -dī, *n.*
guest-friend, hospes, -ītis, *m.*

H

happen, ēveniō, -īre, ēvēnī, ēventūrus; accidō, -ere, accidī, —
harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*
hardly, vix
harm, damnum, -ī, *n.*; dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*
harsh, dūrus, -a, -um
hasten, properō, 1; contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūrus

hate, ōdī, ōsūrus
have, habeo, -ēre, habuī, habitus; **have to**, use fut. pass. part.
he, is; hic; ille; *often not expressed*
head, caput, capitis, *n.*
hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus
heat, aestus, -ūs, *m.*
height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*
heir, hērēs, -ēdis, *m.*
help, auxilium, -lī, *n.*
her (*poss.*), eius; (*reflex.*), suus, -a, -um; **herself** (*reflex.*), suī
hesitate, dubitō, 1
high, altus, -a, -um
hill, mōns, montis, *m.*; collis, -is, *m.*
himself (*reflex.*), suī; (*intens.*), ipse
hinder, impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus
his (*poss.*), eius; **his own** (*reflex.*), suus, -a, -um
history, historia, -ae, *f.*
holiday, fēriae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
home, domus, -ūs, *f.*
honor, honor, -ōris, *m.*
Horace, Horātius, -tī, *m.*
horse, equus, -ī, *m.*
horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*
host, dominus, -ī, *m.*
hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*
hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*
house, domus, -ūs, *f.*
how, quōmodō; **how much**, quantus, -a, -um
however, autem (*never first word*)
humble, humilis, -e
hurry (on), properō, 1

I

I, ego, meī: *often not expressed*
if, sī
ill, aeger, aegra, aegrum
immediately, statim
impel, impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus
in, in, *w. abl.*; **in order to or that**, ut (*w. subjunctive*); **in order not to**, nē
inferior, inferior, -ius
influence (*verb*) addūcō, -ere, addūxī, adductus; (*noun*), auctōritās, -tātis, *f.*

inform, (eum) certiōrem faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus;

pass., certior fiō, fierī

inhabit, incolō, -ere, incoluī, —

injure, noceō, -ēre, nocuī, nocitūrus

inspire, iniciō, -ere, iniēcī, iniectus

into, in, *w. acc.*

investigate, explōrō, 1

invite, vocō, 1

it, is, ea, id; hic, haec, hoc; ille, illa, illud; *often not expressed*

Italy, Italia, -ae, *f.*

J

journey, iter, itineris, *n.*

Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, *m.*

K

keep, retineō, -ēre, retinuī, retentus; **keep from**, prohibeō, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus

kill, interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus; caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus; occīdō, -ere, occīdī, occīsus

kind, genus, generis, *n.*

kindness, beneficium, -cī, *n.*

king, rēx, rēgis, *m.*

knight, eques, equitis, *m.*

know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus; *perf. of* nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *or of* cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus; **not know**, nesciō, -īre, nescīvī, —

L

lack, careō, -ēre, caruī, caritūrus; **be lacking**, dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus

large, magnus, -a, -um; **so large**, tantus, -a, -um

last (*adj.*), proximus, -a, -um; (*verb*), maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus

later, posteā, post

latter, hic, haec, hoc

law, lēx, lēgis, *f.*

lay aside, dēpōnō, -ere, dēposuī, dēpositus

lead, dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus; **lead a life**, vītam agō

leader, dux, ducis, *m.*; prīnceps, prīncipis, *m.*

learn, discō, -ere, didicī, —; cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus

leave (behind), relinquō, -ere, relīquī, relīctus;

leave bare, vacuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus

legion, legiō, -ōnis, *f.*

let, permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus

let go, mittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus

letter (*epistle*), litterae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

liberty, lībertās, -tātis, *f.*

life, vīta, -ae, *f.*

like, (*adj.*), similis, -e; (*verb*), amō, 1; (*adv.*), tamquam

little, paulum, -ī, *n.*

little later, paulō post

live (a life), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; (*dwelt*), habitō, 1; vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus

long, longus, -a, -um; **long** (*adv.*), (*for*) **a long time**, diū; **as long as**, dum; **not any longer**, nōn iam

look at or on, spectō, 1

lose, āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissus; perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditus

loss, dētrīmentum, -ī, *n.*

love, (*noun*) amor, amōris, *m.*; (*verb*), amō, 1

luxurious, lautus, -a, -um

luxury, lūxuria, -ae, *f.*

M

make, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus; **make war upon**, bellum īferō (*w. dat.*)

man, vir, virī, *m.*; homō, hominis, *m.*

manage, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus

manner, modus, -ī, *m.*

many, multī, -ae, -a; **so many**, tot; **very many**, plūrimī, -ae, -a

march, iter, itineris, *n.*

master, dominus, -ī, *m.*

matter, rēs, reī, *f.*

may, licet, -ēre, licuit *or* licitum est

meanwhile, intereā, interim

meet (in battle), congregior, congregī, congressus

memory, memoria, -ae, *f.*

merciful, misericors, *gen.* -cordis

mercy, clēmētia, -ae, *f.*

messenger, nūntius, -tī, *m.*

method, modus, -ī, *m.*

mile, mīlle passūs; *pl.* mīlia passuum

mind, animus, -ī, *m.*

miracle, mīrāculum, -ī, *n.*

molest, *noceō*, -ēre, *nocuī*, *nocitūrus* (w. *dat.*)
money, *pecūnia*, -ae, *f.*
month, *mēnsis*, -is *m.*
monument, *monumentum*, -ī, *n.*
more, *magis*, *plūs*, *amplius*; use *comparative*
most, *maximē*
mother, *māter*, *mātris*, *f.*
mountain, *mōns*, *montis*, *m.*
move, *moveō*, -ēre, *mōvī*, *mōtus*; *afficiō*, -ere, *affēcī*, *affectus*
much, *multus*, -a, -um
murder, *caedēs*, -is, *f.*
must, use *fut. pass. part.*
my, *meus*, -a, -um

N

name, *nōmen*, *nōminis*, *n.*
narrow, *angustus*, -a, -um
nature, *nātūra*, -ae, *f.*
near, ad w. *acc.*; (*adj.*), *propinquus*, -a, -um
necessary (it is), *oportet*, -ēre, *oportuit*; *necesse est*
need (is), *opus est*
neglect, *neglegō*, -ere, -lēxī, -lectus
neighbors, *fīnitimī*, -ōrum, *m.*
never, *numquam*
nevertheless, *tamen*
new, *novus*, -a, -um
next, *proximus*, -a, -um
night, *nox*, *noctis*, *f.*
no, *nōn*, *nūllus*, -a, -um; **no longer**, *nōn iam*
noble, *nōbilis*, -e
no one, *nēmō*, *dat.* *nēminī*, *acc.* *nēminem*
none, *nūllus*, -a, -um
not, *nōn*, *nē* (w. *negative volitive and purpose clauses*); **not only**, *nōn solum*
noted, *īnsignis*, -e; *nōtus*, -a, -um
nothing, *nihil*
now, *nunc*
notice, *animadvertō*, -ere, -vertī, -versus
number, *numerus*, -ī, *m.*
numerous, *multus*, -a, -um

O

obey, *pāreō*, -ēre, *pāruī*, *pāritūrus* (w. *dat.*)
obstruct, *impediō*, -īre, -īvī, -ītus

obtain (one's request), *impetrō*, *l*
occupy, *occupō*, *l*
occur, *intercēdō*, -ere, -cessī, -cessus
often, *saepe*
Oh! *utinam!*
old man, *senex*, *senis*, *m.*
omen, *ōmen*, *ōminis*, *n.*
on, *in*, w. *abl.*; **on account of**, *ob* or *propter*, w. *acc.*
once (at), *statim*
one, *ūnus*, -a, -um; **one (the) . . . the other**, *alius... alius*
only, *solum*
open, *aperiō*, -īre, *aperuī*, *apertus*
opinion, *sententia*, -ae, *f.*
opportunity, *occāsiō*, -ōnis, *f.*
oppress, *opprimō*, -ere, *oppressī*, *oppressus*
or, *vel*, *aut*; *an*
oracle, *ōrāculum*, -ī, *n.*
oratory, *ēloquentia*, -ae, *f.*
order (noun), *imperium*, -rī, *n.*; (*verb*), *iubeō*, -ēre, *iussī*, *iussus*; *imperō*, *l*, (w. *dat.*); **in order to or that**, *ut*; **in order not to or that**, *nē*
other, *alius*, *alia*, *alium*; **the other**, *alter*, -a, -um;
others, see **some**; **all other**, see **all**
ought, *dēbeō*, -ēre, *dēbuī*, *dēbitus*; *oportet*, -ēre, *oportuit*; use *fut. pass. part.*
our, *noster*, -tra, -trum
ourselves, *nōs*, *nostrī*
overcome, *superō*, *l*; *vincō*, -ere, *vīcī*, *victus*

P

part, *pars*, *partis*, *f.*
pass over, *praetereō*, -īre, -īī, -itus
pay, *solvō*, -ere, *solvī*, *solūtus*; *pendō*, -ere, *pependī*, *pēnsus*; **pay the penalty**, *poenam dō*
peace, *pāx*, *pācis*, *f.*
peacefully, *tranquillē*
people, *populus*, -ī, *m.*; *hominēs*, -um, *m. pl.*
perform, *fungor*, *fungī*, *functus*
Pergamum, *Pergamum*, -ī, *n.*
permit, *licet*, -ēre, *licuit* or *licitum est*; *permittō*, -ere, -mīsī, -missus
persuade, *persuādeō*, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsūrus (w. *dat.*)
philosopher, *philosophus*, -ī, *m.*

pity, misericordia, -ae, *f.*

place (*noun*), locus, -ī, *m.*; *pl.* loca, -ōrum, *n.*;

(*verb*), pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus; place in charge, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

plainly, simpliciter

plan (*noun*), cōnsilium, -lī, *n.*; (*verb*), in animō habeo; cōgitō, 1

please, be pleasing to, placeō, -ēre, placuī, placitus (*w. dat.*)

pleasure to me, mihi placet

Pliny, Plīnius, -nī, *m.*

plot, coniūrō, 1

poem, carmen, carminis, *n.*

poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*

Pompey, Pompeius, -peī, *m.*

poor, pauper, *gen.* -eris

possession of (get), potior, potīrī, potītus (*w. gen. or abl.*)

possible (as soon as), quam primum

power, potestās, -tātis, *f.*; imperium, -rī, *n.*

praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*

praise, laudō, 1

prefer, mālō, mālī, mālūī, —

prepare, parō, 1

present (be), adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus

preserve, cōservō, 1

prevent, prohibeo, -ēre, -hibuī, -hibitus

prison, carcer, -eris, *m.*

prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*

prize, praemium, -mī, *n.*

proceed, prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus

procession, pompa, -ae, *f.*

produce, pariō, -ere, peperī, partus

promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus

property, bona, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

protect, tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus

protection, praesidium, -dī, *n.*

provided that, dum

public affairs, rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*

punish, pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītus

punishment, supplicium, -cī, *n.*

purpose (for the), causā, grātiā

pursue, īnsequor, īnsequī, īnsecūtus

put in charge of, praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, *f.*

question, quaestiō, -ōnis, *f.*

quickly, celeriter

R

reach, perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventūrus

read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus

ready, parātus, -a, -um

realize, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus

reason, causa, -ae, *f.*

recall, recordor, 1; revocō, 1

receive, accipiō, -ere, accēpī, acceptus; excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptus

recitation, recitātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

recite, recitō, 1

recognize, cognōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus

reconnoiter, explōrō, 1

refrain, abstineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentus

region, regiō, -ōnis, *f.*

rejoice, gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus

remain, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus

remember, memoriā teneō

repair, reficiō, -ere, refēcī, refectus

reply, respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus

report (*noun*), nūntius, -tī, *m.*; (*verb*), nūntiō, 1

republic, rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*

reputation, fāma, -ae, *f.*

reserve, reservō, 1

resist, resistō, -ere, restitī, — (*w. dat.*)

resources, opēs, -um, *f. pl.*

respond, respondeō, -ēre, respondī, respōnsus

rest (of), reliquus, -a, -um; cēterī, -ae, -a

retire, mē recipiō

return (*verb*), redeō, -īre, rediī, reditūrus; (*noun*), reditus, -ūs, *m.*

revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, *f. pl.*

reward, praemium dō, dare, dedī, datus

rich, beātus, -a, -um; dīves, *gen.* dīvitis

right, rēctus, -a, -um

river, flūmen, flūminis, *n.*

road, via, -ae, *f.*; iter, itineris, *n.*

Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um

Rome, Rōma, -ae, *f.*

rule, regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus; imperō, 1 (*w. dat.*)

S

sacrifice, sacrificium, -cī, *n.*

safe, tūtus, -a, -um

safety, salūs, -ūtis, *f.*

sail, vēlum, -ī, *n.*; nāvigō, 1

sailor, nauta, -ae, *m.*

sake of (for the), causā *or* grātiā (*w. gen. preceding*)

sally, ēruptiō, -ōnis, *f.*

same, idem, eadem, idem

save, servō, 1

say, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; *inquit* (*w. direct quotations*)

scare, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus

school, lūdus, -ī, *m.*

Scipio, Scīpiō, -ōnis, *m.*

scout, explōrātor, -ōris, *m.*

sea, mare, maris, *n.*

seal, signum, -ī, *n.*

seats, subsellia, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

section, pars, partis, *f.*

see, videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus; **see to it**, prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsus

seek, petō, -ere, petīvī, petītus

seem, seem best, videor, vidērī, vīsus

seize, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; occupō, 1;

comprehendō, -ere, -hendī, -hēnsus

select, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus; dēligō, 1

senate, senātus, -ūs, *m.*

senator, senātor, -ōris, *m.*

send, mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus; **send out**, dīmīttō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; **send ahead**, praemittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missus; **send for**, arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus

set out, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus; **set on fire**, incendō, -ere, incendī, incensus

severe, acerbus, -a, -um

she, ea; haec; illa; *often not expressed*

shield, scūtum, -ī, *n.*

ship, nāvis, -is, *f.*

short, brevis, -e

show (noun), mūnus, -eris, *n.*; (*verb*), ostendō, -ere, ostendī, ostentus; dēmōnstrō, 1; monstro, 1

sign, signal, signum, -ī, *n.*

sight, cōspectus, -ūs, *m.*

since, quod, cum, quoniam; *use abl. abs.*

sing, cantō, 1

singing teacher, cantandī magister, -trī, *m.*

single one (not a), neque quisquam

sister, soror, -ōris, *f.*

sit, sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessūrus

six, sex; **sixty**, sexāgintā

size, magnitūdō, -dīnis, *f.*

slave, servus, -ī, *m.*

slavery, servitūs, servitūtis, *f.*

small, parvus, -a, -um

snow, nix, nivis, *f.*

so, ita, tam; **so great, so much or so large**, tantus, -a, -um; (*adv.*), tantopere; **so that**, ut; **so as not to, so that not**, nē

soldier, mīles, mīlitis, *m.*

some, nōn nullī, -ae, -a; quīdam, quaedam, quiddam; **some . . . others**, aliī... aliī; **some (one)**, aliquis

son, fīlius, -lī, *m.*

soon as possible (as), quam primum

speak, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus; loquor, loquī, locūtus; verba faciō

speaker, ōrātor, -ōris, *m.*

spear, pīlum, -ī, *n.*

spectacle, spectāculum, -ī, *n.*

speech, ōrātiō, -ōnis, *f.*

spend, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus; (*of time*), agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus; **spend the winter**, hiemō, 1

stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus

start, proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus

state, rēs pūblica, reī pūblīcae, *f.*; (*noun*), cīvītās, -tātis, *f.*; (*verb*), dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus

station, collocō, 1

statue, statua, -ae, *f.*

stay, maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus

sternness, sevērītās, -tātis, *f.*

stop, subsistō, -ere, substitī, —; cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitūrus

storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*

story, fābula, -ae, *f.*

strange, novus, -a, -um
strive, contendō, -ere, -tendī, -tentūrus
struggle, labōrō, 1
stupid, stultus, -a, um
succeed, succēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessus
such, tālis, -e; tantus, -a, -um
suffer, patior, patī, passus
suffice, sufficiō, -ere, fēcī, -fectus
summer, aestās, -tātis, f.
summon, vocō, 1; convocō, 1
supplies, commeātus, -ūs, m.
surpass, superō, 1
surrender, mē dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī; trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditus
surround, circumsistō, -ere, -stetī, —
survive, supersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus
suspect, suspicor, 1
swear, iūrō, 1
swiftly, celeriter
swim, natō, 1

T

tablet (of the law), tabula, -ae, f.
take away, adimō, -ere, adēmī, adēptus
talk, loquor, loquī, locūtus
tall, altus, -a, -um
task, opus, operis, n.
teach, doceō, -ēre, docuī, doctus
teacher, magister, -trī, m.
tell, dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus
temple, templum, -ī, n.
tempt, temptō, 1
tenant, colōnus, -ī, m.
terrible, terribilis, -e
terrify, terreō, -ēre, terruī, territus
territory, fīnēs, -ium, m. pl.
terror, terror, -ōris, m.
than, quam
thank, grātiās agō, agere, ēgī, āctus
that (dem. pron.), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; (conj.), quod, ut; so **that**, ut; **that not**, nē;
that, in order that, so that (conj.), ut(ī); **that . . . not (purpose)**, nē; (result), ut... nōn

their (poss.), eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (reflex.), suus, -a, -um
themselves (reflex.), suī; (intens.), ipsī, -ae, -a
then, tum
they, eī, eae, ea; illī, illae, illa; often not expressed
thing, rēs, reī, f.; often not expressed
think, putō, 1; existimō, 1; arbitror, 1
third, tertius, -a, -um
this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id
thousand, mille; pl. milia
threaten, minitor, 1
throw, iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus; coniciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus; **throw down**, dēiciō, -ere, dēiēcī, deiectus; proiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectus
thus, ita
time, tempus, temporis, n.
to, ad, in, w. acc.; (purpose), ut
toga, toga, -ae, f.
too, quoque; use comparative
too much, nimius, -a, -um
top (of), summus, -a, -um
torture, cruciātus, -ūs, m.
toward, ad, w. acc.
tower, turris, -is, f.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
train, instituō, -ere, instituī, institūtus
Trajan, Traiānus, -ī, m.
travel, iter faciō
traveler, viātor, -ōris, m.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.
trouble, labor, -ōris, m.
trust, crēdō, -ere, crēdidī, crēditus
truth, vērūm, -ī, n.
try, cōnor, 1
tunic, tunica, -ae, f.
twenty, vīgintī
two, duo, duae, duo

U

under, sub, w. abl.; **under the direction of**, dux or prīnceps in abl. abs.
understand, intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus
unfriendly, inimīcus, -a, -um

unharmed, incolumis, -e
 unless, nisi
 unlike, dissimilis, -e
 until, dum
 unwilling (be), nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —
 unworthy, indignus, -a, -um
 urge, hortor, 1; impellō, -ere, impulī, impulsus
 use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus (w. *abl.*)

V

various, varius, -a, -um
 verse, versus, -ūs, *m.*
 very, use *superlative*; very many, plūrimī, -ae, -a
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*
 villa, vīlla, -ae, *f.*
 village, vīcus, -ī, *m.*
 Vergil, Vergilius, -lī, *m.*

W

wage war, bellum gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus
 wait, exspectō, 1
 walk, ambulō, 1
 want, volō, velle, voluī, —
 war, bellum, -ī, *n.*
 warn, moneō, -ēre, monuī, monitus
 waste, cōnsūmō, -ere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptus
 water, aqua, -ae, *f.*
 wave, unda, -ae, *f.*
 way, via, -ae, *f.*
 we, nōs, nostrī; *often not expressed*
 wealth, opēs, opum, *f. pl.*
 weapon, tēlum, -ī, *n.*; weapons, tēlā, -ōrum, *n. pl.*
 wear, gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus
 wearied, dēfessus, -a, -um
 wedding, nūptiae, -ārum, *f. pl.*
 weep, fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus
 well, bene
 well (be), valeō -ēre, valuī, valitūrus
 what (*pron.*), quis, quid; (*adj.*), quī, quae, quod
 when, ubi; cum; *expressed by participle or abl. abs.*
 where in the world, ubinam gentium
 whether, utrum
 which (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; which (of two),
 uter, utra, utrum
 while, dum

who (*rel. pron.*), quī, quae, quod; (*interrog. pron.*),
 quis, quid
 whole, tōtus, -a, -um
 wholesome, salūbris, -e
 why, cūr
 wicked, nefārius, -a, -um
 wife, uxor, -ōris, *f.*
 will, testāmentum, -ī, *n.*
 willing (be), volō, velle, voluī, —; be unwilling,
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —
 win, capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus; vincō, -ere, vīcī,
 victus; mereō, -ēre, meruī, meritus
 window, fenestra, -ae, *f.*
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*
 wisely, sapienter
 wish, (*noun*), voluntās, -tātis, *f.*, cupiō, -ere, -īvī,
 -ītus; (*verb*), volō, velle, voluī, —; wish not,
 nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —

with, cum, w. *abl.*; sometimes *abl. alone*
 withdraw, concēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus;
 discēdō, -ere, -cessī, -cessūrus
 without, sine, w. *abl.*
 woe, dolor, -ōris, *m.*
 woman, mulier, -eris, *f.*; fēmina, -ae, *f.*
 wonder, mīror, 1
 word, verbum, -ī, *n.*
 work (*noun*), labor, -ōris, *m.*; opus, operis, *n.*;
 (*verb*), labōrō, 1; worship, colō, -ere, coluī,
 cultus
 world, mundus, -ī, *m.*; where in the world,
 ubinam gentium
 worthwhile, operae pretium
 worthy, dignus, -a, -um
 write, scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus
 writing, scrīptum, -ī, *n.*

Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*
 yield, cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessūrus; concēdō, -ere,
 -cessī, -cessūrus
 you, tū (*sing.*); tuī, vōs (*pl.*); *often not expressed*
 young man, adulēscēns, -entis; iuvenis, -is, *m.*
 your, tuus, -a, -um; yourself (*reflex.*), tuī
 youth, adulēscēns, -entis, *m.*

Subject Index



A

Academy, the, 195
Acropolis of Athens, 195
aedile, 93
Aemilia, Basilica, *iv*, 81
Aemilius Lepidus, 46, 47
Aeneas, 57
Aesop, 222
Africanus, Scipio, 37, 40, 46
Age of
 Augustus, 222
 Pericles, 218
Alexander the Great, 247
Allobroges, 101, 140
ambitiō, 128
ambitus, 128
Amiens, France, 184
Anaximander, 195
Anaximenes, 195
Andronicus, Livius, 146
Antioch, Syria, 146
Antonines, 43
Antoninus
 and Faustina, Temple of, *iv*, 43
 Pius, Emperor, 43, 109
Antony, 65, Unit VI
Apelles, 247
Apollo, 211, 259, 268
Apollo and the Muses, 211
Aponus, 228
Appian Way, 21
Apuleius, 231
Apulia, 218
Arch of
 Constantine, 127
 Marcus Aurelius, 127
 Septimius Severus, 99, 107
 Titus, *iv*, 9, 15, 99
 Trajan, 127

Archias (Aulus Licinius Archias), Unit V
Arezzo, Italy, 238
Argos, 156
Aristotle, 195
Arpinum, 64
Asia Minor, 2, 65, 146, 192
Asiatic, style of, 66
Athens, 156, 195
Attic, style of, 66
Attic Nights, 38, 232
Attica, 38
Atticus, Unit VII, 196
Augustan Age, 218
Augustine, 185
Augustus,
 Age of, 222
 Emperor, 44, 45, 67, 69, 92, 215, 248
Aulus Gellius, Unit II, 232
Aurelius, Marcus, 43

B

Babylonia, 250
Bacchus, 254
Balkans, 65
Barca, Hannibal, 37, 41, 42
Basilica
 Aemilia, *iv*, 81
 Julia, 9, 169
 of Constantine, 23
 of Maxentius, 23
 St. Peter's, 23
Baucis, 265
Bede, 234
Bible, 233
Bingen, Hildegard von, 229, 235
Bithynia, 2, 22
bonī, 128
Bonn, Germany, 236
Botticelli, Sandro, 247
Bruni, Leonardo, 241, 242

C

Caesar

- Forum of Julius, 153
- Julius, 38, 39, 54, 64, 65, 69, 92, 119, 122, 130, 141, 142, 164, 174, 175, 181, 184, 186, 187, 188, 232, 248, 263
- of Heisterbach, 236
- Temple of Julius, 71, 81

Calliopē, 211

Calpurnia, 5

Calumny of Apelles, The, 247

Campus Martius, 120, 178

candidātus, 128

Capitoline

- Hill, iv, 107, 112, 117, 119, 124, 135, 243
- She-Wolf, 177
- Square, 107, 117

Caracalla, 99

Carolingian script, 221

Carrara marble, 127

Carthage, 41, 42

Carthaginians, 37

Castor and Pollus, Temple of, 9

Catilīna, Lucius Sergius, Units III & IV, 161, 164

Catiline, see Catilīna

Cato, 38, 39, 119, 142, 143, 155

- the Elder, 146, 165, 196

Catullus, C. Valerius, 214, 227, 228

cavea, 163

Censor, the, 157

Ceparius, 110

Ceres, 170-171

Cerinthus, 220

Cethegus, 111

Christianity, 29

Christians, 34, 35

Chrysoloras, Manuel, 240

Church of

- Saints Cosmas and Damian, 29
- St. Mary, 1

Cicero, Marcus Tullius, Units III-VIII, 232, 237, 239

Cilicia, 65

Cimbri, 114, 157

Cinna, 114

Circus Maximus, 112

Cisalpine Gaul, 227

Claudia, 49

Claudius, Emperor, 2

Cliō, 211

Cloāca Maxima, 1, 81

Clodius, 65, 180-181, 182

College of Augurs, 65

Colosseum, 127, 135

Coluccio Salutati, 240, 241, 242

Column of Phocas, 9

comitia centūriāta, 93

comitia tribūta, 93

Comitium, 169

Como, Italy, 2

Concord, Temple of, 119

concordia ordinum, 128

Conspiracy of Catiline, The, 130

Constance, Germany, 242

Constantine, 23, 89

- Arch of, 127

- Basilica of, 23

consul, 93

Corvinus, 44, 45

Cosmedin, 1

Crassus, 38, 39, 65

Cratippus, 192

Crete, 258

Cupid, 231, 268

Cūria, 71, 89

Curius, 74

cursus honōrum, 64, 128

cūriōsa fēlicitās, 218

Cybele, 186

D

Daedalus, 258

Daphne, 268

Dē amīcitiā, 196

Dē officiīs, 196

Dē Ōrātōre, 237

Dē senectūte, 196

Delos, 260

Demosthenes, 66, 164
Diana, 259, 264
Diocletian, 23
Dolabella, 232
Domitian, 53

E

Elizabethan Age, 218
Empire, Roman, 215
Ennius, 157
Ephesus, Turkey, 145
Epictetus, 52
Epicureanism, 195
epigrams, 227
Epistulae ad familiārēs, 178
equitēs, 67, 92, 128
Eratō, 211
Erymanthian boar, 170
Esquiline, 135
ethics, 196
Etruria, 119
Etruscans, 78, 177
Euterpē, 211

F

Fabius Maximus, General, 37
Faustina, 43, 76, 84, 101
Flaccus, Fulvius, 46, 47, 74
Florence, Italy, 240
Forum
 of Julius Caesar, 153
 Roman, *iv*, 1, 9, 43, 81, 107, 112, 119, 135, 153, 169
Furius, 155

G

Gaul, 174, 187, 188
 Cisalpine, 227
Gauls, 44, 45, 117, 186
Gellius, Aulus, Unit II, 232
Geta, 99
Gorgias, 193
Gospel according to John, 221
government, Roman, 92-94

Gracchus
 Gaius, 46, 47, 67, 70, 129
 Tiberius, 46, 47, 67, 70
Grattius, 150, 151, 152
Greece, 146

H

Hadrian (Publius Aelius Hadrianus), Emperor, 145, 231
Hannibal Barca, 37, 41, 42, 216, 217
Hasdrubal, 54
Heius, 167
Heraclea, 146, 151, 158
Herculus, 170
 Temple of, 168
Historia ecclēsiastica gentis Anglōrum, 234
Histories, The, 130
Homer, 146
Horace (Q. Horatius Flaccus), 218
Hortensius, 64
House of the Vestal Virgins, 49

I

Icaria, 259
Icarian Sea, 259
Icarus, 258
Ides, 77
improbī, 128
Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria, 226

J

Jerome, 233
Jerusalem
 siege of, 15
 Temple of, 15
Julia, Basilica, 9, 169
Juno, 117
Jupiter, 114, 231, 265
 statue of, 75, 113
 Temple of, *iv*, 67, 124
Juvenal, 129, 164

K

Kalends, 77, 78

L

Laelius, 155, 208
 Lalage, 218
Lapis Niger, 169
 Latona, 259
 Laurentum, 19
 Lentulus (P. Cornelius Lentulus Sura), 101, 106, 108-111, 140
 Lepidus, 65
 Aemilius, 46, 47
 Emilius, 80, 81
 Lesbia, 214
 Licinius, 146
 Livy, Titus, 215, 218, 227, 228
 Lombards, 235
 Lorrain, Claude, 127
 Loschi, Antonio, 243
 Lucan, 227, 247
 Lucilius, 224
 Lucullus, 146, 147

M

Macaulay, 66
 Macrobius, 232
 Maelius, 69
 Magna
 Graecia, 152
 Mater, 186
 Manlius, 76, 95, 98, 137
 Mansel, Jean, 263
 Marcus Aurelius, 43, 117
 Arch of, 127
 Marius, 67, 84, 114, 157
 Martial, 227, 230
 Maxentius, 23
 Basilica of, 23
 Maximus, Fabius, 37, 45
 Maximus, Flavius Constantinus, 127
 Melpomenē, 211
Menaechmī, 212
 Menander, 212
 Menippus, 48
 Mercury, 265
 Merida, 228

Messalla, 220
 Messina, 172
Metamorphōsēs, 231, 248, 249, 255
 Metellus, 151
 Michelangelo, 107, 117
 Midas, King, 247, 254
 Milan, Italy, 2
 Minerva, 57
 Minos, King, 258
 Minotaur, 258
 Mithridates, 64, 114, 116, 146
 Mnemosyne, 211
 Monte Cassino, 235
 Mouth of Truth, 1
 Mt. Vesuvius, 2
 Mulvian bridge, 101
 Muses, 211

N

Naevius, 40
 Nero, 224, 226
 Nerva, 2
 Nicaea, 26
 Niccoli, Niccolo, 241
 Niobe, 259, 264
 Nobilior, Fulvius, 81
novus homō, 87, 128, 173
nōbilēs, 67, 92
 Numa, 57, 169

O

Octavian, 65, 71
Odyssey, 146
optimātēs, 128
 Oscan, 61
 Ourania, 211
 Ovid (Pūblius Ovidius Nāsō), 218, 228, Unit X

P

Padua, Italy, 215, 228
 Paeligni, 228
 Palatine Hill, 9, 69, 135, 169, 181
 Pales, 69
palimpsests, 185
 Parthians, 99

pater patriae, 63, 65
patrēs, 93
patrēs cōnscrīptī, 93
 Paul the Deacon, 235
 Peneus, 268
 Pergamum, 25
 Pericles, Age of, 218
 Peruzzi, Baldassarre, 211
 Petrarch, 238, 240
 Petronius, 226
 Phaedrus, 222
 Pharsalus, 65
 Philemon, 265
 Philip of Macedon, King, 164, 247
Philippics, 65, 164
 Phocas, Column of, 9
 Phrygia, 254, 265
 Pius II, Pope, 245
 Plato, 195
 Plautus, 212
plēbs, 67, 92, 93
 Pliny, Unit 1, 203
 the Elder, 247
 Poggio Bracciolini, 241, 242
 Pollaiuolo, Simone del, 177
 Polyhymnia, 211
 Pompeii, 128-129
 Pompey, 64, 65, 92, 116, 174, 188, 232
 Pontus, King of, 64
populārēs, 128
 praetor, 93, 130, 164
prēnsātiō, 128
 Propertius, 218
 Proserpina, 170-171
 Prusa, 22, 25
 Psyche, 231
 Publilia, 65
 Punic Wars, 37, 215
 Pyramus, 250

Q

quaestor, 93, 130, 164
 Quinctius, Publius, 64

Quintilian (M. Fabius Quintilianus), 226, 227
 manuscript, 242
 Quintus, 147, 184, 232

R

Record Office, 9, 107
Rēgia, 169
 Regulus, 17, 18
 Remus, 135, 177
 Renaissance, 238, 247, 263
 Rex, 180
 rhetoric, 66
 Rhodes, 156
 Romans, 37, 44, 45
 Rome, 20, 21, 37, 42
 government of, 92-94
 rise and decline of, 132-133
 symbol of, 177
 Romulus, 75, 135, 169, 177
 Temple of, 29
 Roscius, Sextus, 64
Rōstra, 107, 169
 Rubicon River, 65

S

Sacred Way, *see Via Sacra*
 Saints Cosmas and Damian, church of, 29
 Sallust (Gaius Sallustius Crispus), 77,
 Unit IV, 189
 Samarobriua, 184
 Samos, 259
 Saturn, Temple of, 169
 Saturnalia, 55, 106
Sāturnālia, 232
 Satyr, 254
 Scīpiō, 47, 208
 Africanus, 37, 40
 the Elder, 157
 the Younger, 155
 Segesta, Sicily, 163
 Senate, Roman, 63, 89
 Seneca, 224, 227
 Septimius Severus, Arch of, 99, 107
 Sertorius, 116
 Sicily, 64, 164-165

Silanus, 119
 Silenus, 254
 Social War, 64, 146, 151
socii, 146
 Socrates, 195
 Spartianus, 231
 S.P.Q.R., 112
 St. Gall, Switzerland, 242
 St. Peter's
 Basilica, 23
 statue, 168
 Stoicism, 195
 Sulla, 67, 79, 98, 114, 130, 159, 172
 Sulmo, 228, 248
 Sulpicia, 220

T

tabernae, 169
Tabulārium, 9, 107, 169
 Tacitus, 7, 8, 12, 13
 Tarpeian rock, 243
 Temple of
 Antoninus and Faustina, *iv*, 43
 Castor and Pollus, 9
 Concord, 119
 Hercules, 168
 Jerusalem, 15
 Julius Caesar, 71, 81
 Jupiter, *iv*, 124
 Jupiter Stator, 67
 Romulus, 29
 Saturn, 169
 Vesta, 9, 49, 57, 169
 Terence, 212
 Terentia, 64, 65, 189
 Terpsichorē, 211
tetrachs, 145
 Teutons, 114
 Thales of Miletus, 195
 Thalia, 211
 Thebes, 259
 Thisbe, 250
 Tiber River, 146
 Tibullus, 218, 200

Tiro, 178, 232
 Titus, Arch of, *iv*, 9, 15, 99
 Tomb of the Unknown Soldier, 153
 Tomis, 248
 Trajan, Emperor, 2, 22, 26, 145
 Arch of, 127
 Trebatius, 186
 Trebonius, 192
 Trimalchio, 226
 Trio, 192-193
 triumvirate
 first, 65
 second, 65
 Troy, 57
 Tullia, 65, 189
 Tullianum, 119
 Tusculum, 243

V

Valerius, 44, 45
 Valla, Lorenzo, 244
 Varro, 48
vellum, 185
 Venus, 231
 Vergil, 218, 227, 228
 Verona, Italy, 215
 Verres, 64, Unit VI
 Vesta, Temple of, 9, 49, 57, 169
 Vestal Virgins, *iv*, 57, 106
 House of the, 49
Via Sacra, *iv*, 9
 Victor Emmanuel II, 153
Virtues, The, 235
 Vulgate, 233

W

War with Jugurtha, The, 130
 "Wedding Cake," 153

Z

Zama, 37
 Zeno, 196
 Zeus, 211
 Zosimus, 14

Grammar/Vocabulary Index

A

- ablative**, 149, 298-301
 - absolute, 11, 88, 90
 - of accompaniment, 6
 - of comparison, 21
 - of degree of difference, 16
 - of description, 45
 - of origin, 45
 - of *place from which*, 53
 - of *place where*, 24
 - of respect, 8
 - of separation, 53
 - with *dignus*, 27
- absolute, ablative**, 11, 88, 90
- accompaniment, ablative of**, 6
- accusative**, 297-298
 - double accusative, 47
 - of extent, 27
- adjectives**, 274-276
 - comparison of, 8
 - irregular, 16
- adverbs, comparison of**, 8, 276
- alliteration**, 76
- anaphora**, 69, 75, 90, 91, 94, 114
- antecedent**
 - definite, 6
 - indefinite, 3
- anticipatory clauses**, 42
- antithesis**, 82
- apposition, noun in**, 149
- asyndeton**, 84, 90, 91
- attraction, subjunctive by**, 39

C

- causal clauses**, 42
- chiasmus**, 72, 79, 120
- Cicero's periodic sentences/style**, 90, 91, 94, 102
- climax**, 85, 91
- commands, indirect**, 18, 39
- comparatives**, 8, 16

comparison

- ablative of, 21
- of adjectives, 8
- of adverbs, 8
- conditions**, 24, 48
- contracted verb forms**, 18
- contrary-to-fact condition**, 24, 48
- correlatives**, 73
- cōss.*, 53
- cum* clauses, 6

D

- dactyl*, 249
- dative**, 296-297
 - of purpose, 6
 - of reference, 6
 - with special verbs, 13
- defective verbs**, 18
- definite antecedent**, 6
- degree of difference, ablative of**, 16
- demonstrative pronouns**, 11
- deponent verbs**, 3
- description**
 - ablative of, 45
 - genitive of, 8
- descriptive relative clauses**, 3
- difference, ablative of degree of**, 16
- discourse, indirect**, 88

E

- elision**, 250
- extent, accusative of**, 27

F

- fearing, verbs of**, 13
- future-less-vivid condition**, 25, 48

G

- genitive**, 294-296
 - of description, 8
 - of the whole, 11
 - partitive, 11

gerund, 3, 309

gerundive, 3, 308-309

H

hortatory subjunctive, 40, 141

I

impersonal verbs, 3, 13, 308

inceptive verbs, 80

indefinite

antecedent, 3

pronouns, 24

indirect

commands, 18, 39

discourse, 88

questions, 3, 39

statement, 39

infinitives, 27, 309

irony, 72

irregular adjectives, 16

J

jussive subjunctive, 40

L

locative case, 24, 149, 301

M

metaphor, 78

N

noun clauses of result, 13

numerals, 16, 275, 277

O

origin, ablative of, 45

oxymoron, 82, 114, 116

P

palace, 69

partitive genitive, 11

periodic sentences/style, Cicero's, 90, 91, 94, 102

persōna, 149

personal pronouns, 18

personification, 80

place

from which, ablative of, 53

where, ablative of, 24

poetic word order, 248-249

praeteritiō, 69

prepositional phrases, 102

pronouns, 278-280

demonstrative, 11

indefinite, 24

personal, 18

reflexive, 18

purpose

clauses, 6, 16

dative of, 6

Q

questions, indirect, 3, 39, 305

R

reference, dative of, 6

reflexive pronouns, 18

relative

descriptive clauses, 3

purpose clauses, 6, 303

respect, ablative of, 8

result, noun clauses of, 13

rhythm, 87

S

scansion, 250

separation, ablative of, 53

simple condition, 24, 48, 307

spondee, 249

statement, indirect, 39, 309-310

subjunctive, 303-307

after verbs of fearing, 13

by attraction, 39

hortatory, 40, 141

jussive, 40

with anticipatory clauses, 42

with indirect discourse, 88

superlatives, 8

syllable length, 249

V

verse, Latin, 249-250

W

whole, genitive of the, 11

word

order, poetic, 248-249

play, 85

Z

zeugma, 114









1. The first part of the document is a list of names and addresses of the members of the committee. The names are written in a cursive hand, and the addresses are written in a printed hand. The list is organized in two columns, with names on the left and addresses on the right. The names are: John A. Smith, John B. Smith, John C. Smith, John D. Smith, John E. Smith, John F. Smith, John G. Smith, John H. Smith, John I. Smith, John J. Smith, John K. Smith, John L. Smith, John M. Smith, John N. Smith, John O. Smith, John P. Smith, John Q. Smith, John R. Smith, John S. Smith, John T. Smith, John U. Smith, John V. Smith, John W. Smith, John X. Smith, John Y. Smith, John Z. Smith. The addresses are: 123 Main St., 456 Main St., 789 Main St., 101 Main St., 202 Main St., 303 Main St., 404 Main St., 505 Main St., 606 Main St., 707 Main St., 808 Main St., 909 Main St., 1010 Main St., 1111 Main St., 1212 Main St., 1313 Main St., 1414 Main St., 1515 Main St., 1616 Main St., 1717 Main St., 1818 Main St., 1919 Main St., 2020 Main St., 2121 Main St., 2222 Main St., 2323 Main St., 2424 Main St., 2525 Main St., 2626 Main St., 2727 Main St., 2828 Main St., 2929 Main St., 3030 Main St., 3131 Main St., 3232 Main St., 3333 Main St., 3434 Main St., 3535 Main St., 3636 Main St., 3737 Main St., 3838 Main St., 3939 Main St., 4040 Main St., 4141 Main St., 4242 Main St., 4343 Main St., 4444 Main St., 4545 Main St., 4646 Main St., 4747 Main St., 4848 Main St., 4949 Main St., 5050 Main St., 5151 Main St., 5252 Main St., 5353 Main St., 5454 Main St., 5555 Main St., 5656 Main St., 5757 Main St., 5858 Main St., 5959 Main St., 6060 Main St., 6161 Main St., 6262 Main St., 6363 Main St., 6464 Main St., 6565 Main St., 6666 Main St., 6767 Main St., 6868 Main St., 6969 Main St., 7070 Main St., 7171 Main St., 7272 Main St., 7373 Main St., 7474 Main St., 7575 Main St., 7676 Main St., 7777 Main St., 7878 Main St., 7979 Main St., 8080 Main St., 8181 Main St., 8282 Main St., 8383 Main St., 8484 Main St., 8585 Main St., 8686 Main St., 8787 Main St., 8888 Main St., 8989 Main St., 9090 Main St., 9191 Main St., 9292 Main St., 9393 Main St., 9494 Main St., 9595 Main St., 9696 Main St., 9797 Main St., 9898 Main St., 9999 Main St.

WITHDRAWN

No longer the property of the
Boston Public Library.
Sale of this material benefited the Library.





GLENCOE

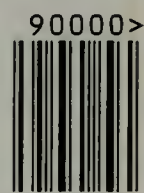
McGraw-Hill



ISBN 0-02-640914-3



9 780026 409148



90000>